0-- IDENTIFICATION BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains those numbers that identify the record or the resource recorded in it.

The following fields are defined:

001	RECORD IDENTIFIER
003	PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER
005	VERSION IDENTIFIER
010	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)
011	ISSN
012	FINGERPRINT IDENTIFIER
013	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSIC NUMBER (ISMN)
014	ARTICLE IDENTIFIER
015	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TECHNICAL REPORT NUMBER (ISRN)
016	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD RECORDING CODE (ISRC)
017	OTHER IDENTIFIER
018	[RESERVED FOR OTHER INTERNATIONAL STANDARD NUMBERS]
020	NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY NUMBER
021	LEGAL DEPOSIT NUMBER
022	GOVERNMENT PUBLICATION NUMBER
033	OTHER SYSTEM PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER
035	OTHER SYSTEM IDENTIFIERS
036	MUSIC INCIPIT
040	CODEN
071	PUBLISHER'S NUMBER
072	UNIVERSAL PRODUCT CODE (UPC)
073	INTERNATIONAL ARTICLE NUMBER (EAN)

Field 001 is mandatory in every record. Other fields are entered only when data is available.

History

2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Corrections and additions.

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains characters uniquely associated with the record, i.e. the identifier for the record of the agency preparing the record.

Occurrence & Subfields

Field	Field name	Repeatability	Occurrence
001	RECORD IDENTIFIER	NR	M

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not contain subfields.

Indicators

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not have indicators.

Notes on Field Contents

There are no restrictions on the form of the record identifier.

When the record identifier consists of or incorporates any form of an International Standard Number, other identifiable number such as a national number, or other data such as country of publication, this information is nevertheless to be entered in the field specified for that data in addition to recording it as the record identifier in this field.

Related Fields

An agency may be using other separately identified numbers such as ISBN or National Bibliography Number as a Record Identifier. See Notes on Field Contents above for treatment in these cases.

Examples

EX 1
001 2002-00000000011
A number in the Joint Catalogue file of the South African State Library.
EX 2
001 B7512345
The record identifier of a record from the *British National Bibliography* is the National Bibliography Number B7512345. In addition, the number is entered in field 020: NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY NUMBER.
EX 3
001 02512645
The record identifier used for a record in a file of continuing resources is the ISSN without its hyphen. In addition, the ISSN with hyphen is entered in field 011, ISSN.
EX 4
001 83.041470.3
The record identifier allocated to a Deutsche Bibliothek record. This is not identical with the national bibliography number.
EX 5
001 ###73002284#//r752

The identifier of a record issued by the Library of Congress. The basic identifier has a fixed length of 12 characters which in this instance requires blank fill. This number also includes revision information in a suffix.

History

2012	Corrections.

003 PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the persistent identifier of the record assigned by the agency which creates, uses or issues the record. This is the persistent identifier for the bibliographic record, not for the resource itself.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field	Field name	Repeatability	Occurrence
003	PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER	NR	O

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not contain subfields.

Indicators

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not have indicators.

Notes on Field Content

Persistent identifiers are specific internet addresses which allow one to reference an electronic resource with the aid of a hypertext link, while making sure that this link will not change. There are several systems which allow the creation of persistent identifiers.

A bibliographic record appearing in an OAI repository can also be referenced through a persistent identifier. Thanks to this tool, it is possible to add this bibliographic record to one's own bookmarks or to quote it on a website, in an e-mail, on a blog or in a forum, simply by using the address which is displayed in the browser during an online session.

Related Fields

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER	The persistent identifier is the equivalent on the web of the system identifier for the record in the database.
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	The persistent identifier for the resource described by the record is entered in field 856.

Examples

EX 1
001 FRBNF401336220000001
003 http://catalogue.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/cb40133622z/PUBLIC

History

2008	New field.

005 VERSION IDENTIFIER

Field Definition and Scope

The field contains the date and time of the last record transaction. It allows machine systems to determine whether the version of the record being processed is later, earlier or the same as one previously processed.

The use of the field is recommended.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field	Field name	Repeatability	Occurrence
005	VERSION IDENTIFIER	NR	O

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field has no subfield identifiers.

Indicators

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field has no indicators.

Notes on Field Contents

The date is entered in ISO standard form (ISO 8601-1) for dates: YYYYMMDD where YYYY represents the year, MM the month and DD the day of the month. The time is entered in the form HHMMSS.T where HH represents the hour using the twenty four hour clock, MM the minutes, SS the seconds and .T tenths of a second. In all cases a leading 0 is added if necessary.

Related Fields

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA (character positions 0-7)	This is the date of original creation of the record and will not change even if the record is corrected or exchanged
801 ORIGINATING SOURCE, subfield $c	This subfield gives solely year, month and day of modification, transcription and/or issue.

Examples

EX 1
005 20050901141236.0
The date of last transaction was 1st September 2005 at 14:12:36 hours (i.e. 2:12:36 p.m.). In accordance with ISO 8601-1, "1st" is entered as "01" not "1", "September" as "09" not "9", to preserve the format.

History

1996	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains an International Standard Book Number and a qualification which distinguishes between ISBNs when more than one is contained in a record. The field corresponds to the ISBD Resource Identifier and Terms of Availability Area. The field may contain the terms of availability and/or price, even if it does not contain an ISBN.

Repeatable when more than one valid ISBN etc. is to be recorded. If it is desired to make links between a 13-digit and a 10-digit ISBN, $6 subfields can be used in each 010 field.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
010	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER	R	O
a	Number (ISBN)	NR	O
b	Qualification	R	O
d	Terms of Availability and/or Price	NR	O
z	Erroneous ISBN	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Number (ISBN)

A correctly applied ISBN including hyphens. The ISBN are assigned by the designated agency in each country. Not repeatable.

$b Qualification

An indication of the scope of the ISBN in subfield $a (if present), usually the name of a publisher, an indication of the binding of the resource, or an indication of the relationship of an ISBN to a set or to a particular volume. (EX 3, 5, 6, 7). Repeatable.

$d Terms of Availability and/or Price

The price of the resource and any comment on its availability (EX 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8). Not repeatable.

$z Erroneous ISBN

An ISBN that has been identified as being erroneously applied to the resource or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications and in this instance cancelled (EX 8), or it may have been incorrectly printed (EX 9). Repeatable.

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13 Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure).

Notes on Field Contents

ISBN structure:

From 1 January 2007, national ISBN agencies are providing only ISBNs that consist of 13 digits, comprising the following elements:

- Prefix element
- Registration group element
- Registrant element
- Publication element
- Check digit

When printed, the ISBN is always preceded by the letters "ISBN". In field 010, these are generated automatically from a UNIMARC record and should not be entered into the text whether the agency uses Latin or local script for this abbreviation. The ISBN is divided into 5 elements, 3 of them of variable length. The elements must each be separated clearly by hyphens when displayed in human readable form: it is recommended hyphens be used in UNIMARC records. The first and last elements are of fixed length. The number of digits varies in the second, third and fourth elements of the ISBN. The length of the registration group element and of the registrant element is relative to the expected publishing output of the registration group or registrant. When these elements are short in length it indicates that the output is expected to be large.

Prefix element: The first element of the ISBN is a 3-digit number that is made available by EAN International. Currently two prefixes are used 978 and 979.

Registration Group element: The second element of the ISBN identifies the country, geographical region or language area in the ISBN system. Some members in the ISBN system form language areas (e.g. registration group number 3 is the German language group); others form regional groups (e.g. registration group number 982 is South Pacific). The length of the element varies between 1 and 5 digits.

Registrant element: The third element of the ISBN identifies a particular publisher or imprint within a registration group. The length of this element varies in relation to the anticipated output of the publisher concerned and varies between 2 and 7 digits.

Publication element: The fourth element of the ISBN identifies a specific edition of a publication by a specific publisher. The length of this element varies in relation to the length of the registration group and registrant elements which precede it and varies between 1 and 6 digits. To ensure the correct length of ISBN is maintained, the number is filled with leading zeroes.

Check digit: The fifth element of the ISBN is the check digit. This is calculated using a modulus 10 algorithm. Each of the first 12 digits of the ISBN is alternately multiplied by 1 and 3. The check digit is equal to 10 minus the remainder resulting from dividing the sum of the weighted products of the first 12 digits by 10 with one exception: if the calculation results in a remainder of 10 the check digit is 0. Here is a sample calculation for the ISBN 978-0-11-000222-?.

Step 1: determine the sum of the weighted products for the first 12 digits of the ISBN according to the table below.

	Prefix			Registration Group		Registrant			Publication				Check Digit	Sum
ISBN	9	7	8	0	1	1	0	0	0	2	2	2	?	
Weight	1	3	1	3	1	3	1	3	1	3	1	3		
Product	9	21	8	0	1	3	0	0	0	6	2	6		56

Step 2: Divide the sum of the weighted products by 10: 56 / 10 = 5 remainder 6.

Step 3: Subtract the remainder calculated in step 2 from 10. This is the check digit (unless the remainder is 10 in which case the check digit is 0). In the example, 10 – 6 = 4, so the result is ISBN 978-0-11-222-4.

The 10-digit ISBN, no longer applied to new resources consists of four distinct parts, each of which is separated by a hyphen or space. Hyphens are recommended in UNIMARC.

For the sake of completeness, the description of the 10-digit ISBN follows.

The four parts are:

Group identifier: Allocated to each country or group of countries or language groups by the International ISBN Agency. International organizations, e.g., the UN, also have their own group identifier.

Publisher identifier: Allocated to each publisher by a National or Regional ISBN Agency.

Title identifier: Allocated to each title (and each edition and format of each title) by the publisher.

Check digit: calculated using a modulus 11 algorithm.

All digits of the ISBN are numeric except the check digit which may be numeric or a roman numeral X (capital X, representing a numeric value of 10). ISO 2108 gives the standard specifications of the form of the ISBN.

Verification of check digit:

To check for accuracy of a ten-digit ISBN: take each digit and multiply by a number whose value depends on the position of the digit (the "weight"), add the results and divide by 11. If the remainder is not zero then one or more of the digits is wrong. Using EX 9 as an example:

ISBN	0	1	1	8	8	4	0	9	4	X (i.e. 10)
'Weight'	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
Result	0	9	8	56	48	20	0	27	8	10 -- total 186

186 is not exactly divisible by 11, so the ISBN is incorrect.

Data format:

The letters ISBN, which are usually found printed with an ISBN on the resource, should not be entered in field 010.

Any ISBN which is found to be wrongly printed on the resource can be entered in subfield $z, Erroneous ISBN, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number appearing on the resource.

Hyphens are inserted to separate the distinct parts of the number in the $a or $z subfield. No other punctuation is permitted. The purpose of the hyphens in the ISBN is to separate the distinct parts. When an ISBN is displayed in a catalogue entry the inclusion of the hyphens is mandatory. Many national agencies do not store the hyphens in the machine-readable record since they can be generated by algorithm if the range of publisher identifiers which have been allocated is known. When records are exchanged internationally the recipient of records may not always know the range of publisher identifiers allocated within the group represented by the first part of the ISBN. Therefore, it is recommended that hyphens always be included in the ISBN in field 010 to ensure their display on output.

Strictly, each book has one ISBN. However, there are circumstances in which a single record may need to include more than one ISBN, depending on the policy of the cataloguing agency. Examples of situations in which multiple ISBN might appear in a record are: where a publisher issues a resource in more than one binding or physical format, each with a different ISBN, and a single record is created by the agency encompassing more than one of these "editions", where a single record is created for a multipart resource (multi-volume monograph) and different ISBN have been assigned by the publisher to each volume, or to each volume and to the set as a whole; where a single resource is published, or published and distributed, by more than one entity, each of which has assigned a separate ISBN to the resource.

In order to distinguish between ISBN when there is more than one in a record, qualifications may be added to one or more of them, according to the practice of the agency preparing the record.

Terms of availability and price are often related to each ISBN. Thus this information is recorded in the same field. Punctuation is included with the data as required.

The field should be repeated for each valid ISBN. It should also be repeated for an invalid ISBN unless that invalid ISBN clearly relates to a known valid equivalent entered in the record, in which case the invalid ISBN will be entered in the same field as its corresponding valid ISBN (EX 8, 9).

Some agencies use the ISBN as record identifier and enter it in the field 001. In those cases the ISBN should be entered additionally in field 010.

Related Fields

011 ISSN	A number similar in use to the ISBN but applied to continuing resources.
013 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSIC NUMBER (ISMN)	A number similar in use to the ISBN but applied to printed music.
225 SERIES	An ISBN for a multipart monographic resource to which the resource being catalogued belongs may be entered in subfield 225 $y.

Examples

EX 1
010 ##$a0-246-11007-4$d£2.95
A book published in England and cloth bound priced at £2.95 with the ISBN on the resource as follows: 0 246 11007 4.
EX 2
010 ##$a963-592-149-7$d$25.00 (outside Hungary)
A resource published in Hungary and sold outside the country for $25.00.
EX 3
010 ##$d£3.50
010 ##$bpbk$d£2.50
A resource published in both cloth and paper covers. No ISBN is available.
EX 4
010 ##$a0-85997-276-3$d£5.20 (£3.90 to members of the Library Association)
A resource is published with a discount to members of the Library Association.
EX 5
010 ##$a0-915408-15-5$dUnpriced
010 ##$a0-915408-16-3$bSigned ed.$dUnpriced
A resourceis available in cloth bound form with the option of purchasing it in a cased edition signed by the translator. The alternatives each have their own ISBN.
EX 6
010 ##$a0-306-35054-8$d£22.05
010 ##$a0-306-35050-5$bSet of six vols$d£97.29
The record is for volume 4 of a monograph *Treatise on solid state chemistry* published in 6 volumes, each with its own ISBN. The set also has an ISBN and a price is available for the set.
EX 7
010 ##$a0-563-12887-9$b(B.B.C.)
010 ##$a0-233-96847-4$b(Deutsch)
A book is jointly published by the British Broadcasting Corporation and Deutsch.
EX 8
010 ##$a0-95045-372-2$d£0.55$z0-95045-711-6

A publisher erroneously gives the same ISBN to all the resources he publishes. The national ISBN agency provides correct ones for each. In the record for each of the resources, the correct one is found in subfield $a and the wrongly applied one is $z.
EX 9
010 ##$a0-11-884094-0$z0-11-884094-X
ISBN 0-11-884094-0 is incorrectly printed with an X as the check digit.
EX 10
010 ##$a2-87900-777-1$bParis-Musées
010 ##$a2-7118-4723-3$bRéunion des musées nationaux$brel.$d30 EUR
$b is repeatable because there is more than one type of qualifier.
EX 11
010 ##$a978-2-7073-1326-3$bbr.$d8,30 EUR
200 1#$aDu nerf$bTexte imprimé$fRobert Pinget
Simple example of ISBN-13.
EX 12a
010 ##$a978-2-220-04854-3$bvol. 1
010 ##$a2-220-04854-3
010 ##$a978-2-220-04855-0$bvol. 2
010 ##$a2-220-04855-1$z2-220-04854-1
010 ##$bsous étui$d57,21 EUR (les 2 vol.)
200 0#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠Bible et sa culture$bTexte imprimé$fsous la direction de Michel Quesnel et Philippe Gruson
215 ##$a2 vol. (575 p.-XII p. de pl. en coul., 606 p.-XII p de pl. en coul.)$cill.$d24 cm
An example of a multi-volume monograph.
EX 12b
010 ##$6z01$a978-2-220-04854-3$bvol. 1
010 ##$6z01$a2-220-04854-3
010 ##$6z02$a978-2-220-04855-0$bvol. 2
010 ##$6z02$a2-220-04855-1$z2-220-04854-1
010 ##$bsous étui$d57,21 EUR (les 2 vol.)
200 0#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠Bible et sa culture$bTexte imprimé$fsous la direction de Michel Quesnel et Philippe Gruson
215 ##$a2 vol. (575 p.-XII p. de pl. en coul., 606 p.-XII p de pl. en coul.)$cill.$d24 cm
An example of a multi-volume monograph. Alternative method using $6 subfields.

History

2008	Extensive change to reflect change of ISBN to 13-digit.
2012	Corrections.
2020	$6 corrections. Examples 12 and previously 13 corrections. Update section Related Fields.

011 ISSN

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the ISSN (International Standard Serial Numbers) as assigned by an ISSN International Centre, any ISSN which has been assigned and cancelled, details of terms of availability and/or price. It corresponds to the ISBD Resource Identifier and Terms of Availability Area, although the Key Title is entered in field 530.

It may also include Cluster ISSNs, which are assigned centrally by the ISSN International Centre to identify specific groups of ISSNs, such as different media editions of a continuing resource or serials related through preceding and succeeding title relationships.

Repeatable. If the resource has been assigned an ISSN and one or more cluster ISSN.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
011	ISSN	R	O
a	Number (ISSN)	NR	O
b	Qualification	NR	O
d	Terms of Availability and/or Price	R	O
f	Cluster ISSN Identifier	NR	O
g	Cancelled Cluster ISSN	R	O
y	Cancelled ISSN	R	O
z	Erroneous ISSN or Cluster ISSN	R	O
2	Source	NR	MA
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
R	Real World Object URI	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Level of Interest Indicator
	#	Not specified / Not applicable
	0	Continuing resource of international or national interest
	1	Continuing resource of local interest
2		Cluster Identifier Indicator
	#	Not specified / Not applicable
	0	ISSN-L
	1	ISSN-H

Subfields Description

$a Number (ISSN)

A correctly applied ISSN including the hyphen between the fourth and fifth digits. Not repeatable.

$b Qualification

Used to distinguish between ISSN if a record contains more than one.

Not used by the ISSN International Centre. Not repeatable.

$d Terms of Availability and/or Price

The price of the resource and any comment on its availability (EX 3, 6). Repeatable.

$f Cluster ISSN Identifier

An ISSN designated by the ISSN network to link together resources with specific relationships to each other such as medium versions (ISSN-L), and earlier and later titles (ISSN-H). (EX 10, 11a, 11b).

The appropriate prefix for the ISSN type denoted by the second indicator value may be generated for display, for value 0 "ISSN-L"; for value 1 "ISSN-H".

Not repeatable.

$g Cancelled Cluster ISSN

A Cluster ISSN that has been associated with the resource but subsequently cancelled, often because a duplicate Cluster ISSN was assigned. Each cancelled Cluster ISSN is contained in a separate $g (EX 12b). Repeatable.

$y Cancelled ISSN

This includes any ISSN that was formerly valid, but which has been cancelled by an ISSN centre (EX 2). Repeatable.

$z Erroneous ISSN or Cluster ISSN

This includes any incorrect ISSN or Cluster ISSN other than those recorded in $g or $y. Most often this will be the result of a printing error. Repeatable (EX 5).

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the system from which the identifier is derived.

ISSN Centre responsible for assigning and maintaining ISSN and/or Cluster ISSNs. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier or standard number for the related authority record or classification record, or standard identifier.

The identifier may be in the form of text or a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI). If the identifier is text, the control number or identifier is preceded by the appropriate organization code from the International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL) or the MARC Code List for Organizations. No preceding parenthetical is used when the identifier is given as Web retrieval protocol, e.g., HTTP URI.

Subfield may contain a URI that identifies a name or label for an entity. When dereferenced, the URI points to information describing that name. A URI that directly identifies the entity itself is contained in $R.

A URI for the ISSN or Cluster ISSN in subfield $a or $f. Not repeatable.

$R Real World Object URI

An URI that identifies an entity, is sometimes referred to as a Thing, a Real World Object or RWO, whether actual or conceptual.

A URI that identifies a name or label for an entity is contained in $3. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The ISSN is a unique and unambiguous identification number for continuing resources assigned in accordance with ISO 3297. The system for allocating ISSN is controlled by the ISSN International Centre, i.e. the Registration Authority, based in Paris. National Centres, i.e. the Registration Agencies, allocate ISSN to new continuing resources from a batch of identifiers allocated to them by the ISSN International Centre, and share metadata with the ISSN International Centre.

Data format: An ISSN and Cluster ISSN consists of eight digits. These are the Arabic numerals 0 to 9, except in the case of the last or check digit where a roman numeral X (capital X) can occur. Since ISSN are likely to be used in the same context as codes designed for other purposes, such as the International Standard Book Number (ISBN) or control numbers, a distinction must be preserved in the form of

presentation when printed or displayed. An ISSN is, therefore, preceded by the letters "ISSN" and a space, and appears as two groups of four digits separated by a hyphen, for example: ISSN 1234-5679. An ISSN-L and an ISSN-H are Cluster ISSN identifier preceded by these letters and a space, and appears as two groups of four digits separated by a hyphen, for example: ISSN-L 1234-5679. The check digit is always located in the extreme right position, and is calculated on a modulus 11 basis using weights 8 to 2. The letters ISSN are not included in field 011 in the UNIMARC record, though the hyphen is. Detailed specifications for the ISSN and calculation of its check digit are found in ISO 3297.

Punctuation: A hyphen should separate the fourth and fifth digits of a valid or cancelled ISSN or Cluster ISSN. No other punctuation should be present. Punctuation for the $b, $f, $g and $d subfields is entered in these subfields according to the practices of the agency preparing the record.

Cluster ISSN: These linking ISSNs are defined in the ISO 3297 to provide a mechanism for grouping, or collocating the various medium versions of a resource, for instance, the print and online versions of a journal, through the ISSN-L, and subsequently extended in 2020 to other potential groups of continuing resources that are relevant to the community, such as a group that includes all preceding and succeeding titles of a continuing resource over time (ISSN-H). The standard specifies that future Cluster ISSNs will consist of their own unique 8-character ISSN, distinguished by a prefix that identifies the type of cluster, e.g. "ISSN-H". Unlike ISSN-L, other Cluster ISSNs do not repeat the ISSN of one of the members of the cluster to avoid confusion.

Multiple ISSN: Any ISSN or Cluster ISSN that is wrongly assigned and then cancelled or wrongly printed is entered in subfield $g, $y or $z respectively. Such ISSN should be entered in the same field as the correctly assigned ISSN.

Those agencies following ISSN International Centre practices for making records of continuing resources will always have only one valid ISSN in field 011 of their records. Those agencies with different practices for making records of continuing resources may have records which contain more than one valid ISSN in repeated 011 fields.

Some agencies use the ISSN as a record identifier and enter it in field 001. In these cases, the ISSN should also be entered in field 011.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)	International identifier for books.
013 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSIC NUMBER (ISMN)	International identifier for printed music.
040 CODEN	An additional identification system for continuing resources.
225 SERIES	An ISSN for a series to which the resource being catalogued belongs may be entered in subfield 225 $x.
530 KEY TITLE	The Key title part of the ISBD Resource Identifier and Terms of Availability Area is entered in field 530.
4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK	An ISSN that is assigned to a higher level bibliographic resource (series) or a lower level bibliographic resource (sub-series) that is related to the continuing resource being catalogued, may be entered in an 011 field embedded in the appropriate linking entry field (4--) or in a $x if the embedded field technique is not used.

Examples

EX 1
011 ##$a0003-9756
011 #0$f0003-9756$Rhttps://portal.issn.org/resource/ISSN-L/0003-9756$2_2

The first field contains ISSN for *Archives européennes de sociologie,* the repeated field also ISSN-L, its URI for ISSN-L and code of registration agency, that is for the ISSN National Centre for the UK.
EX 2
011 ##$a0105-0064$y0036-5646
011 #0$f0105-0664$Rhttps://portal.issn.org/resource/ISSN-L/0105-0664$2_h
Scandinavian Times and *Scandinavian Times Magazine* were allocated the same ISSN, 0036-5645. This number is cancelled and a new number allocated to each. The example gives the contents of the ISSN field in the record of the *Scandinavian Times*. Second field 011 contains the Cluster ISSN, with a URI provided and code of registration agency, that is for the ISSN National Centre for Denmark.
EX 3
011 ##$a0260-7743$dFree to members of the federation only
The Newsletter of the London Federation of Museums and Art Galleries has the ISSN 0260-7743. Details of terms of availability are included in the record.
EX 4
011 ##$a0009-3947$d£1.00$d£13.25 yearly
Both a single issue price and a subscription rate are given on the resource.
EX 5
011 ##$a0263-3264$z0226-7223$z0068-2691
Two different ISSN are given in the *Yearbook of European Law*, 1984 edition. Both are wrong. The correct and the two incorrect ISSN are listed in the field.
EX 6
011 ##$d£2.95
The *Moomins annual* has a price; but no ISSN has been assigned.
EX 7
011 0#$a0011-1643
ISSN of the continuing resource *Croatica chemica acta*, which is of international interest.
EX 8
011 1#$a1144-9853
ISSN of the continuing resource *Bulletin – Académie musicologique du Forez*, which is of local interest.
EX 9
011 1#$a0884-402X
ISSN of the continuing resource *The racing report,* which is of local interest.
EX 10
011 0#$a1819-1371
011 00$f1819-1371
ISSN and ISSN-L of the continuing resource *Construction law international*, which is published in printed form, with no other medium form.
EX 11a
011 0#$a1818-5894
011 00$f1818-5894
Record for printed version.
EX 11b
011 0#$a1818-5940

011 00$f1818-5894
Record for online version. ISSNs and ISSN-L of the continuing resource *Social policy highlight*, which is published in printed and online forms
EX 12a
Fictitious example
011 0#$a1234-1231
011 00$f1234-1231
Record for printed version.
EX 12b
Fictitious example
011 ##$a1560-1560
011 #0$f1234-1231$g1560-1560
Record for online version. The medium versions of the resource were identified separately and not immediately linked together, by mistake.
EX 13
011 0#$a2524-2741$Rhttp://issn.org/resource/ISSN/2524-2741#ISSN
011 00$f0065-4019
In the $R is the ISSN URI of the resource. It follows the $a to which it applies.
EX 14
011 0#$a095-8355$Rhttp://issn.org/resource/ISSN/1095-8355$z1065-6995
011 00$f1065-6995
Subfield $R provides the URI of the record at the ISSN Portal. It follows the subfield to which it applies ($a).

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Change of name and subfields added to reflect new ISSN standard.
2012	Corrections.
2024	Adapted for Cluster ISSN.

012 FINGERPRINT IDENTIFIER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the Fingerprint Identifier for older monographic publications (antiquarian) and a code for the institution to which the field applies which distinguishes between Fingerprint Identifiers when more than one is contained in a record. The field corresponds to the ISBD Resource Identifier and Terms of Availability Area.

The use of the field is recommended.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
012	FINGERPRINT IDENTIFIER	R	O
a	Fingerprint	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Fingerprint

Calculated Fingerprint Identifier. The Fingerprint is assigned by the agency creating a record. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system from which fingerprint identifier is derived. Not repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A fingerprint is a means of identifying older monographic publications constructed by taking groups of characters from certain pages in order to make each publication uniquely identifiable.

Since no definitive formula for fingerprint has been determined by international agreement, various forms of fingerprint will be considered acceptable. It is recommended to use a method of fingerprint construction found in *Fingerprints = Empreintes = Impronte. Paris : Institut de Recherche et d'Histoire des Textes in association with the National Library of Scotland, 1984*.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)	The field contains the International Standard Book Number.

301 NOTES PERTAINING TO IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS	The field may contain a note on the fingerprint identifier.

Examples

EX 1
012 ##$aocon humi nche covn 3 MDLXXX$2fei$5CiZaNSB: R II F-8° -307
Fingerprint for *Opera di Marco Marulo da Spalato Circa L'Institutione del buono e beato vivere*. In Venetia, 1580. Fingerprint taken from a item in the National and University Library (Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka), Zagreb, pressmark R II F-8° 307, using the rules of Fingerprints = Empreintes = Impronte.
EX 2
012 ##$a165512 - a1 *2 dol : a2 *6 m$ - b1 A r : b2 2E7$quid$$2stcn$5NeHKB
Fingerprint for Erasmus' Colloqvia. Amstelodami, 1655. Fingerprint taken from a item in the Royal Library (Koninklijke Bibliothek), Den Haag, using the system devised for the Short Title Catalogue (Netherlands). The dollar signs of "m$" and "$quid$" form part of the fingerprint and are not subfield identifiers.

History

1996	New field.
2008	Field may be linked to indicate to which a specific item of a field relates.
2012	Subfield $5 make optional.

013 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSIC NUMBER (ISMN)

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains an International Standard Music Number and a qualification which distinguishes between ISMN when more than one is contained in a record.

The field corresponds to the ISBD Resource Identifier and Terms of Availability Area. The field may contain the terms of availability and/or price, even if it does not contain an ISMN.

Repeatable when more than one valid ISMN is to be recorded. If it is desired to make links between a 13-digit and a 10-digit ISMN, $6 subfields can be used in each 013 field.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
013	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSIC NUMBER (ISMN)	R	O
a	Number (ISMN)	NR	O
b	Qualification	NR	O
d	Terms of Availability and/or Price	NR	O
z	Erroneous ISMN	R	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Number (ISMN)

A correctly applied ISMN including hyphens. The ISMN are assigned by the designated agency in each country. Not repeatable.

$b Qualification

An indication of the scope of the ISMN in subfield $a (if present), usually the name of a publisher, an indication of the binding of the resource, or an indication of the relationship of an ISMN to a set or to a particular volume (EX 1, 2, 4-5). Not repeatable.

$d Terms of Availability and/or Price

The price of the resource, and any comment on its availability. Where there is an 010 International Standard Book Number (ISBN) field and the contents of this subfield would simply repeat what is in 010$d then the subfield can be omitted. Not repeatable.

$z Erroneous ISMN

An ISMN that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an the resource or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed (EX 3). Repeatable.

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13 Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure). (EX 6).

Notes on Field Contents

ISMN Structure

The ISMN is used to identify music publications, whether available for sale, hire, gratis or for copyright purposes only, according to the provisions of ISO 10957.

Each separately available constituent part of a publication must receive its own ISMN.

From 1 January 2008 ISMN has been converted into a 13-digit system, comprising the following elements:

- Prefix element
- Publisher element
- Item element
- Check digit

When printed or displayed, the identifier is always preceded by the letters: ISMN. In field 013, these are generated automatically from a UNIMARC record and should not be entered into the text whether the agency uses Latin or local script for this abbreviation. The ISMN is divided into 4 elements, 2 of them of variable length. The elements must each be separated clearly by hyphens when displayed in human readable form: it is recommended hyphens be used in UNIMARC records. The first and last elements are of fixed length. The number of digits varies in the second and third elements of the ISMN. The length of the registration group element and of the registrant element is relative to the expected publishing output of the registration group or registrant. When these elements are short in length it indicates that the output is expected to be large.

Prefix element: The first element "979-0" distinguishes the ISMN from the ISBN. 979 introduces the "Bookland" field within the EAN (GS1) barcoding system, and "0" denotes the first tenth of the overall numbers capacity which is defined for ISMN.

Publisher element: The second element of the ISMN identifies the publisher of a given music publication. It is allocated to each publisher by a national or regional ISMN agency. The length of this element varies in relation to the anticipated output of the publisher concerned.

Item element: The third element of the ISMN identifies an edition of notated music which can represent a full score, a miniature score, a set of wind parts, an oboe part, etc. An *item*, in the terms of the Standard, is one separately saleable or available or obtainable constituent part of a music publication. The item element is assigned to a particular resource by the publishers from within the range of numbers assigned to them. The length of the item element will be inversely proportional to the length of the publisher element.

Check digit: The fourth element of the ISMN is the check digit. This is calculated using a modulus 10 algorithm. Each of the first 12 digits of the ISMN is alternately multiplied by 1 and 3. The check digit is equal to 10 minus the remainder resulting from dividing the sum of the weighted products of the first digits by 10 with one exception: if the calculation results in a remainder of 10 the check digit is 0.

Here is a sample calculation for the ISMN 979-0-3452-4680-?.

Step 1: determine the sum of the weighted products for the first 12 digits of the ISMN according to the table below.

	Prefix				Publisher				Item				Check digit	Sum
ISMN	9	7	9	0	3	4	5	2	4	6	8	0		
Weight	1	3	1	3	1	3	1	3	1	3	1	3		
Product	9	21	9	0	3	12	5	6	4	18	8	0		95

Step 2: Divide the sum of the weighted products by 10: 95 / 10 = 9 remainder 5.

Step 3: Subtract the remainder calculated in step 2 from 10. This is the check digit (unless the remainder is 10 in which case the check digit is 0). In the example, 10 – 5 = 5, so the result is ISMN 979-0-3452-4680-5.

The 10-digit ISMN, no longer applied to new resources, consists of four distinct parts, each of which is separated by a hyphen or space. Hyphens are recommended in UNIMARC. For the sake of completeness, the description of the 10-digit ISBN follows.

The four parts are:

Distinguishing element: The letter M distinguishes the ISMN from the ISBN.

Publisher identifier: Designates the publisher of a given music publication. It is allocated to each publisher by a national or regional ISMN agency.

Item identifier: Identifies an edition of a work and the various items within it. An *item*, in the terms of the standard, is one separately saleable or available or obtainable constituent part of a music publication.

Check character: This is a single digit at the end of the ISMN that provides an automatic verification of the correctness of the ISMN. It is computer calculated.

Verification of Check Character

The check character is calculated on a modulus 10 with alternating weights of 3 and 1 assigned from left to right beginning with the letter M prefix. The letter M counts as 3.

This means that each of the first nine characters of the ISMN - i.e. excluding the check digit itself - is multiplied by an alternating sequence of the numbers 3 and 1 from left to right and that the sum of the products thus obtained, plus the check digit, must be divisible without remainder by 10.

For example:

	Publisher prefix			Title Number						Check digit
ISMN	M	3	4	5	2	4	6	8	0	5
Weight	3	1	3	1	3	1	3	1	3	
Products	9	3	12	5	6	4	18	8	0	=65

Total: 65 + 5 (check digit) = 70

As 70 can be divided by 10 without remainder M-345-24680-5 is a valid International Standard Music Number.

Data Format

The letters ISMN, which are usually found printed with an ISMN on the resource, should not be entered in field 013.

Any ISMN which is found to be wrongly printed on the resource can be entered in subfield $z, Erroneous ISMN, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number appearing on the item. When only an erroneous number is known, the field will contain a subfield $z without subfield $a being present.

Hyphens are inserted to separate the four parts of the number in the $a or $z subfield. No other punctuation is permitted. When an ISMN is displayed in a catalogue entry the inclusion of the hyphens is mandatory. Many national agencies do not store the hyphens in the machine-readable record since they can be generated by algorithm if the range of publisher identifiers which have been allocated is known. When records are exchanged internationally the recipient of records may not always know the range of publisher identifiers. Therefore it is recommended that hyphens always be included in the ISMN in field 013 to ensure the display output.

Strictly speaking, each music publication has one ISMN. However, there are circumstances in which a single record may need to include more than one ISMN, depending on the policy of the cataloguing agency. Examples of situations in which multiple ISMN might appear in a record are: where a publisher issues a work in more than one binding or physical format, each with a different ISMN, and a single record is created by the agency encompassing more than one of the "editions", where a single record is created for a multi-volume publication and different ISMN have been assigned by the publisher to each

individual volume in the set and to the set as a whole; where a single resource is published, or published and distributed, by more than one entity, each of which has assigned a separate ISMN to the resource.

In order to distinguish between ISMN when there is more than one in a record, qualifications may be added to one or more of them, according to the practice of the agency preparing the record.

Terms of availability and price are often related to each ISMN. Thus, this information is recorded in the same field. Punctuation is included with the data as required.

The field should be repeated for each valid ISMN. It should be repeated for an invalid ISMN unless that invalid ISMN clearly relates to a known valid equivalent entered in the record, in which case the invalid ISMN will be entered in the same field as its corresponding valid ISMN (EX 3).

Some agencies may use the ISMN as record identifier and enter it in the field 001. In those cases, the ISMN should be entered additionally in field 013.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)	The field contains the International Standard Book Number. It is sometimes difficult to decide whether a publication is a music edition or a "normal" book, or both. In these cases, both an ISMN and an ISBN may be assigned.
011 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD SERIAL NUMBER (ISSN)	There are only a few periodicals of printed music, but many music publications are issued in series. Both categories should be assigned, an ISSN for the title of a continuing resource and an ISMN for each individual resource in the series.
225 SERIES	An ISMN for a multipart monographic notated music resource to which the resource being catalogued belongs may be entered in subfield 225 $y.

Examples

EX 1
013 ##$aM-706700-00-7$b(HDS)
013 ##$aM-705701-00-4$b(MIC)
Example of ISMN-10. The resource is published jointly by Hrvatsko drustvo skladatelja and Muzicki informativni centar.
EX 2
013 ##$aM-9005202-2-7$b(bound)
013 ##$aM-9005202-3-4$b(pbk)
Example of ISMN-10. The publication is available both in bound and in paperback edition.
EX 3
013 ##$aM-9005202-1-0$zM-9005202-1-X
Example of ISMN-10. ISMN M-9005202-1-0 is incorrectly printed with an X as the check digit.
EX 4
013 ##$a979-0-3217-6546-7$b(score, bound)
013 ##$a979-0-3217-6547-4$b(score, pbk.)
Example of ISMN-13. The score is published both in bound and in paperback edition.
EX 5
013 ##$a979-0-3217-6543-6$b(score)
013 ##$a979-0-3217-6544-3$b(vocal score)
013 ##$a979-0-3217-6545-0$b(set of parts)
Example of ISMN-13. The resource is published in score, vocal score and set of parts.

EX 6
013 ##$6z01$aM-9005202-1-0$zM-9005202-1-X
013 ##$6z01$a979-0-9005202-1-0
Example with subfield $6: ISMN-10, with its wrong ISMN, linked with the new ISMN-13.

History

1998	New field.
2012	Corrections and additions.
2020	Update section Related Fields.

014 ARTICLE IDENTIFIER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a unique, unambiguous code assigned to journal articles.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
014	ARTICLE IDENTIFIER	R	O
a	Article Identifier	NR	O
z	Erroneous Article Identifier	R	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Article Identifier

Not repeatable.

$z Erroneous Article Identifier

Repeatable.

$2 Source

The subfield contains an identification of the system under which the identifier was constructed. Not repeatable.

Codes:

biblid	Bibliographic Identification of Contributions in Serials and Books (ISO 9115).	Note: ISO 9115 has been withdrawn and the use of this code is not recommended.
sici	Serial Item and Contributor Identifier (ANSI/NISO Z39.56)	Note: ANSI/NISO Z39.56 - 1996 [R2002] has been withdrawn and the use of this code is not recommended.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains the number formatted according to the systems identified in subfield $2.

Serial Item and Contribution Identifier (SICI – ANSI/NISO Standard Z39:56-1996):

The SICI is a variable length code that provides unique identification of serial issues (SII) and serials (SCI) contributions (https://groups.niso.org/apps/group_public/download.php/6514/Serial%20Item%20and%20Contribution%20Identifier%20%28SICI%29.pdf). The elements of the SICI are separated by punctuation. Retain punctuation in the UNIMARC record.

Serial Issue Identifier components:

- ISSN
- Issue Date

- Issue Numbering
- SICI Standard Version Number
- Check Character

Serial Contribution Identifier (additional elements)

- Contribution location (e.g. page number)
- Contribution title code (e.g. if more than one contribution title begins on a single page). The barcode version of the number will differ from the eye-readable version.

Examples

EX 1
014 ##$a0024-2519/91/6103-0003$01.00$2sici
The article identifier for "Core Journal Networks and Cocitation Maps: New Bibliometric Tools for Serials Research and Management" in Library Quarterly, v.61, no.3. The second $ is part of the citation and not a subfield mark.
EX 2
014 ##$a0015-6914(19960101)157:1<62:KTSW>2.0.TX;2-F$2sici
An example of a SICI for the Resource: Hutheesing, Nikhil, "Keeping the seats warm" *Forbes*, 1 January 1z996, vol. 157 no. 1 p. 62.

History

1994	New field.
2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2022	Update $2.

015 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TECHNICAL REPORT NUMBER (ISRN)

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the International Standard Technical Report Number as assigned by a national ISRN Centre. It corresponds to the ISBD Resource Identifier and Terms of Availability Area.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
015	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TECHNICAL REPORT NUMBER (ISRN)	R	O
a	Number (ISRN)	NR	O
b	Qualification	NR	O
d	Terms of Availability and/or Price	NR	O
z	Cancelled/Invalid/Erroneous ISRN	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Number (ISRN)

A correctly applied ISRN including hyphens. The ISRN are assigned by the designated agency in each country. Not repeatable.

$b Qualification

An indication of the scope of the ISRN in subfield $a (if present), usually the name of a publisher, an indication of the binding of the resource, or an indication of the relationship of an ISRN to a set or to a particular volume. Not repeatable.

$d Terms of Availability and/or Price

The price of the resource and any comment on its availability. Not repeatable.

$z Cancelled/Invalid/Erroneous ISRN

An ISRN that has been identified as being erroneously applied to resource or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains the number formatted according to ISO 10444. This number has a maximum of 36 characters.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)	A number similar in use to the ISRN but applied to books.
011 ISSN	A number similar in use to the ISRN but applied to continuing resources.
014 ARTICLE IDENTIFIER	A code assigned to journal articles.

040 CODEN	An additional identification system for continuing resources.

Example

EX 1
015 ##$aKU-CL-TR--6-96--GB
Kent University Computing Laboratory Technical Report 6-96. An ISRN assigned by the issuing agency in the United Kingdom (country code GB).
EX 2
015 ##$aCEA-DAS-STAS-SPI--88/1-FR
Commissariat à l'Energie Atomique, Département d'Analyse de Sûreté, Service Technique d'Analyse de Sûreté, Section Protection Incendie. 1988, rapport n° 1. An ISRN assigned by the issuing agency in France

History

1998	New field.

016 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD RECORDING CODE (ISRC)

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains an International Standard Recording Code and a qualification which distinguishes between ISRCs when more than one is contained in a record.

The ISRC identifies sound recordings and music video recordings and not physical products. There is no conflict with existing product catalogue numbering systems (EAN, publisher's number) with which it coexists.

Repeatable when more than one valid ISRC is to be recorded.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
016	INTERNATIONAL STANDARD RECORDING CODE (ISRC)	R	O
a	Number (ISRC)	NR	MA
b	Qualification	NR	O
d	$d Terms of Availability and/or Price [Obsolete]	-	-
z	Erroneous ISRC	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Number (ISRC)

A correctly applied ISRC including hyphens. The ISRCs are assigned by the designated agency in each country. Mandatory unless $z is present. Not repeatable.

$b Qualification

An indication of the scope of the ISRC in subfield $a (if present), usually an indication of the relationship of an ISRC to a particular expression. Not repeatable.

$d Terms of Availability and/or Price [Obsolete]

The ISRC does not identify a manifestation.

$z Erroneous ISRC

An ISRC that has been identified as being erroneously applied to a recording or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different recordings and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

ISRC Structure

The ISRC is used to identify an audio, video or audio-visual recording, according to the provisions of ISO 3901.

Each separately available constituent part of a publication must receive its own ISRC.

An ISRC consists of twelve digits. Whenever it is printed or written, the number is preceded by the letters ISRC. In countries where the Latin alphabet is not used, an abbreviation in the local script may be used in addition to the Latin letters ISRC.

The ISRC is now divided into four elements, each of which is separated by a hyphen. The former fourth and fifth elements are now one element without hyphen.

Country code: A two-letter country code assigned from ISO 3166-1.

Registrant code: An alphanumeric 3 character code assigned by nominated agencies.

Year of reference: The last two digits of the year in which the ISRC was allocated to the recording.

Designation code: This consists of five digits, assigned by the registrant.

Data Format

The letters "ISRC", which are usually found printed with an ISRC on the resource, should not be entered in field 016.

Any ISRC which is found to be wrongly printed on the resource can be entered in subfield $z, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number appearing on the resource.

Hyphens are inserted to separate the four parts of the number in the $a or $z subfield. No other punctuation is permitted. The purpose of the hyphens in the ISRC is to separate the distinct parts. When an ISRC is displayed in a catalogue entry the inclusion of the hyphens is mandatory. Many national agencies do not store the hyphens in the machine-readable record since they can be generated by algorithm.

In order to distinguish between ISRCs when there is more than one in a record, qualifications may be added to one or more of them, according to the practice of the agency preparing the record.

Terms of availability and price are not related to ISRC. This information is recorded in another field of the identification block (010, 071, etc.).

The field should be repeated for each valid ISRC. It should be repeated for an invalid ISRC unless that invalid ISRC clearly relates to a known valid equivalent entered in the record, in which case the invalid ISRC will be entered in the same field as its corresponding valid ISRC.

Unlike the ISBN the ISRC cannot be used as record identifier and entered in field 001.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)
011 ISSN
071 PUBLISHER'S NUMBER
073 INTERNATIONAL ARTICLE NUMBER (EAN)

Examples

EX 1
016 ##$aFR-Z03-91-01231
An ISRC for Phonogram France allocated in 1991, now written in four elements.

History

2000	New field.
2008	Subfield $d made obsolete.

017 OTHER IDENTIFIER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains an identifier, published on the resource that cannot be accommodated in another field and a qualification that distinguishes between identifiers when more than one identifier of the same type is contained in a record.

The field corresponds to the ISBD Resource Identifier and Terms of Availability Area. The field may contain the terms of availability and/or price, even if it does not contain an identifier.

Repeatable with different first indicator values when more than one type of identifier is used; repeatable with the same first indicator value when more than one instance of a specific type of identifier is to be recorded.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
017	OTHER IDENTIFIER	R	O
a	Identifier	NR	O
b	Qualification	NR	O
d	Terms of Availability and/or Price	NR	O
z	Erroneous Identifier	R	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Type of Identifier
	7	System specified in subfield $2
	8	Unspecified type of identifier
2		Difference Indicator
	0	No information provided
	1	No difference
	2	Difference

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Difference Indicator

Contains a value that indicates whether there is a difference between a scanned identifier and the same identifier in eye-readable form.

Subfields Description

$a Identifier

A correctly formatted identifier. Numbers or codes are formulated according to type. Not repeatable.

$b Qualification

An indication of the scope of the identifier in subfields $a (if present), usually the name of publisher, an identification of the binding of the resource, or an indication of the relationship of an identifier to a set or to a particular volume. Not repeatable.

$d Terms of Availability and/or Price

The price of the resource and any comment on its availability. Not repeatable.

$z Erroneous Identifier

An identifier that has been identified as being erroneously applied to the resource or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications or products and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. If a valid identifier of the same type is not known, subfield $z may appear alone in field 017. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the system from which the identifier is derived. Use only when the first indicator contains the value 7 (System specified in subfield $2). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Other Identifiers are unique, permanent, and internationally recognized alphanumeric codes used to identify resource. The structure of these identifiers is determined by the agencies formulating them.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)
011 ISSN
013 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSIC NUMBER (ISMN)
014 ARTICLE IDENTIFIER
020 NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY NUMBER
040 CODEN
071 PUBLISHER'S NUMBER
072 UNIVERSAL PRODUCT CODE (UPC)
073 INTERNATIONAL ARTICLE NUMBER (EAN)

History

2002	New field.
2017	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

020 NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY NUMBER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the number allocated to the record of a bibliographic resource by the national bibliographic agency, and an indication of the country of the agency.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
020	NATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY NUMBER	R	O
a	Country Code	NR	O
b	Number	NR	O
z	Erroneous Number	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Country Code

An identification of the country of the national bibliography (EX 1-4). Two characters. For country codes use ISO 3166-1. Not repeatable.

$b Number

The number as assigned by the agency (EX 1-4). Not repeatable.

$z Erroneous Number

A number erroneously assigned to a record (EX 2). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The preferred form of the national bibliography number entered in subfield $b is the form in which it is assigned by the agency including spaces, hyphens and other punctuation and following capitalization, etc. The country code of the country of the national bibliography is entered in subfield $a as a two-character, upper case. For country codes use ISO 3166-1. When a country has more than one national bibliography, it is suggested that the agencies providing the bibliographies agree on a numeric code suffix to add to the country code to differentiate them.

An erroneous number may be entered in subfield $z. When only an erroneous number is known, the field will contain a subfield $z without subfield $b being present.

When the national bibliography number is used as the record identifier in field 001, it should be entered additionally in field 020.

Examples

EX 1
020 ##aAUb67-6
An Australian National Bibliography Number.
EX 2
020 ##aCAbCM73-6722XF
020 ##aCAzCM78-6722XF

A correct and an erroneous Canadian number.
EX 3
020 ##aDDb83,A16,0553
020 ##aDDb82,N46,0092
The record for the resource in the *Deutsche Bibliographie* contains a repeated 020 field since the resource has appeared twice in the *Deutsche Bibliographie*; the earlier version of the record was a CIP record. Though the record containing the repeated fields is simply an upgrade of the CIP record, it includes the earlier number since this is the practice of the agency preparing the record.
EX 4
020 ##aGBbB81-15605
A number from the British National Bibliography.

021 LEGAL DEPOSIT NUMBER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the number assigned to the resource being recorded by the legal deposit or copyright office in each country.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
021	LEGAL DEPOSIT NUMBER	R	O
a	Country Code	NR	O
b	Number	NR	O
z	Erroneous Number	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Country Code

An identification of the country of the legal deposit agency assigning the number. For country codes use ISO 3166-1. Two characters. Not repeatable.

$b Number

As assigned by the agency. Not repeatable.

$z Erroneous Number

A number erroneously assigned to the resource. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The preferred form of the legal deposit number is the form in which it is assigned by the agency, including spaces, hyphens and other punctuation, and following original capitalization, etc. The country code of the country of legal deposit assigning the number is entered in subfield $a as a two-character, upper case. For country codes use ISO 3166-1.

An erroneous number may be entered in subfield $z. When only an erroneous number is known the field will contain a subfield $z without subfield $b being present.

If the legal deposit number is used as the record identifier in field 001, it should be entered additionally in field 021.

Examples

EX 1
021 ##aUSbA68778
A United States legal deposit number

History

2020	Errata / text edit.

022 GOVERNMENT PUBLICATION NUMBER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the number assigned to one of its own publications or to a resource published on its behalf by a government body.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
022	GOVERNMENT PUBLICATION NUMBER	R	O
a	Country Code	NR	O
b	Number	NR	O
z	Erroneous Number	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Country Code

An identification of the country in which the resource is published (EX 1-3). Two characters. For country codes use ISO 3166-1. Not repeatable.

$b Number

The number as assigned by the government body. Not repeatable.

$z Erroneous Number

A number erroneously assigned to a government publication. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used for numbers on government documents at any level. It may be used for the publications of any level of governmental authority and for international and intergovernmental organizations. In the case of international and intergovernmental organizations, subfield $a is omitted (EX 4). The country code entered in subfield $a is a two-character, upper case. For country codes use ISO 3166-1. The number is entered in the form in which it appears on the document including spaces, hyphens and other punctuation.

An erroneous number may be entered in subfield $z. When only an erroneous number is known, the field will contain subfield $z without subfield $b being present.

Related Fields

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Government Publication Code (character position 20)	This character position indicates whether the resource is a government publication and the level of government responsible for it.

Examples

EX 1
022 ##aZAbRP64/77
South African government publication number.

EX 2
022 ##aUSbhE17.302.W58/91
United States government publication.
EX 3
022 ##aGBbECC.56/81
A publication of Essex County Council, United Kingdom.
EX 4
022 ##$bPGI/81/WS/22
A UNESCO publication.

033 OTHER SYSTEM PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the persistent identifier of records obtained from other sources. The persistent identifier is assigned by the agency which creates, uses or issues the record. This is the persistent identifier for the bibliographic record, not for the resource itself.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
033	OTHER SYSTEM PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER	R	O
a	Persistent Record Identifier	NR	O
z	Cancelled or Invalid Persistent Record Identifier	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Persistent Record Identifier

Non repeatable.

$z Cancelled or Invalid Persistent Record Identifier

Repeatable.

Notes on Field Content

Persistent identifiers are specific Internet addresses which allow one to reference an electronic resource with the aid of a hypertext link, while making sure that this link will not change. There are several systems which allow the creation of persistent identifiers.

A bibliographic record appearing in an OAI repository can also be referenced through a persistent identifier. Thanks to this tool, it is possible to add this bibliographic record to one's own bookmarks or to quote it on a website, in an e-mail, on a blog or in a forum, simply by using the address which is displayed in the browser during an on-line session.

Related Fields

035 OTHER SYSTEM IDENTIFIERS	The persistent identifier carried in a 033 field is the equivalent on the web of the system identifier for the record in another database carried in a 035 field.
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	The persistent identifier for the resource described by the record is entered in field 856.

Examples

EX 1
001099573598
033 ##$ahttp://catalogue.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/cb40133622z/PUBLIC
035 ##$a(FrPBN)FRBNF401336220000001

A record originally created in the catalogue of the Bibliothèque nationale de France after its import into the Sudoc (the French national academic union catalogue). The original record identifier is carried in an 035 field, while the original persistent record identifier is stored in a 033 field.

History

2012	New field.

035 OTHER SYSTEM IDENTIFIERS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the identifier of records obtained from other sources.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
035	OTHER SYSTEM IDENTIFIERS	R	O
a	System Identifier	NR	O
z	Cancelled or Invalid Identifier	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a System Identifier

A code for the organisation in parentheses followed by the system identifier for the record in that organisation's database. Since there are no internationally accepted codes, the codes from *MARC Code List for Organizations* are recommended. Otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used. Not repeatable.

$z Cancelled or Invalid Identifier

Repeatable.

Related Fields

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER	The identifier used as the unique identifier by the agency preparing the record.

Examples

EX 1
001 b9301298
035 ##$a(CiZaNSB)920701098
801 #0aHRbCiZaNSB$c960507$gPPIAK$2unimyu
801 #2aGBbUk$c960702
The original identifier of a record derived from one created by the National and University Library, Zagreb.
EX 2
035 #$a(FrPBN)frBN001148436
801 #0aFRbFrPBN$c951105$gAFNOR$2intermarc
801 #2aUSbDLC$c970212
The identifier originally assigned by the Bibliothèque nationale in France.

History

2000	New field.
2020	Errata / text edit. Field renamed.

036 MUSIC INCIPIT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains data describing the musical incipit for music in partially coded form.

This field is widely used to identify music manuscripts but it can be applied for printed music or other music resources as well (sound recordings, etc.).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
036	MUSIC INCIPIT	R	O
a	Number of Work	NR	MA
b	Number of Movement	NR	MA
c	Number of Incipit	NR	MA
d	Voice/Instrument	NR	MA
e	Role	NR	O
f	Movement Caption/Heading	R	O
g	Key or Mode	NR	O
m	Clef	NR	MA
n	Key Signature	NR	O
o	Time Signature	NR	O
p	Musical Notation	NR	O
q	Comments (free text)	R	O
r	Codified Note	NR	O
t	Text Incipit	R	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O
z	Language of Text	R	O
2	Source	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Number of Work

A two-digit code indicates the work to which the incipit refers, if a set of compositions (e.g. six sonatas) is entirely described in a single record, without the use of pieceanalytic level records. If the record describes only one work use "01". Mandatory. Not repeatable.

E.g. An incipit describing the second sonata of a set of six: 036 $a = 02

$b Number of Movement

A two-digit code indicates the movement within a work to which the incipit refers. If the work has only one movement use "01". Mandatory. Not repeatable.

E.g. An incipit describing the third movement of a symphony: 036 $b = 03

$c Number of Incipit

A two-digit code distinguishes different incipits referring to the same movement. If there is only one incipit for a movement use "01". Mandatory. Not repeatable.

E.g. In an aria needing an incipit for the instrumental introduction and one for the vocal part the two incipits will have respectively 036 $c = 01 and 036 $c = 02

$d Voice/Instrument

The voice or instrument coded in 036 $p. Mandatory if 036 $p is present. Not repeatable.

$e Role

The name of the character singing the incipit coded in 036 $p. Not repeatable.

$f Movement Caption/Heading

Caption or heading of the movement, as it appears on the source. Repeatable.

$g Key or Mode

The key or mode of the movement, if applicable. Use capital letters A-G to indicate major keys, lowercase a-g to indicate minor keys, "x" for sharps and "b" for flats, numbers 1-12 for gregorian modes. Not repeatable.

$m Clef

Three-character code. Use capital "F" or "C" or "G" to indicate the clef shape, then "-" as separator, then number 1-5 to indicate the clef position on the staff, starting from the bottom line. Use "+" as separator to indicate mensural notation. Mandatory if 036 $p is present, otherwise void. Not repeatable.

E.g. to indicate the bass clef 036 $m = F-4

$n Key Signature

Use "x" to indicate sharps and "b" to indicate flats, followed by capitals F,C,G,D,A,E,B or B,E,A,D,G,C,F respectively to indicate sharpened or flattened notes. Not repeatable.

E.g. an incipit in A major with three sharps: 036 $n = xFCG

$o Time Signature

The time value or mensuration sign reported on the staff is transcribed with a symbol (c, c/, c., o, etc.) and/or a number (3, 2, c3, etc.) or a fraction (4/4, 12/8, etc.). Not repeatable.

$p Musical Notation

Use the notation symbols of Plaine & Easie Code or DARMS code to transcribe the first notes of the selected staff. Not repeatable.

$q Comments (free text)

Free-text note. Repeatable.

$r Codified Note

A one-character code indicates a comment note. Use "?" to indicate a mistake in the incipit, not corrected, "+" to indicate a mistake in the incipit, corrected, "t" to indicate that the incipit has been transcribed (e.g. from mensural notation). Not repeatable.

$t Text Incipit

The literary text (if present) as it appears on the source. If the source has multiple texts each one is transcribed in a separate occurrence of 036$t. Repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be repeated only if one location of the digital object has multiple identifiers (URIs) or if the digital object has multiple locations.

$z Language of Text

Coded identification of the language of the incipit. Use if text is different or may be misinterpreted from 101 Language of the Resource. When the subfield is repeated, the order of language codes should reflect the extent and significance of the languages within the work. If this is not possible, enter the language codes in alphabetical order. Code "mul" may be entered when a large number of languages applies in the subfield. For codes use ISO 639-2 (see Appendix A). Repeatable.

$2 Source

A code that specifies the system used to code the musical notation.

A two-character code indicates the code used to transcribe in $p. Mandatory if 036 $p is present. Not repeatable.

pe = plaine & easie code

Available online at http://www.iaml.info/files/plain_and_easy_code.pdf

da = DARMS code

Beyond MIDI : The Handbook of Musical Codes / edited by Eleanor Selfridge-Field. – Cambridge, Mass. [etc.], MIT Press, 1997. –xviii, 630 p. : mus.; 24 cm. ISBN 0262-19394-9.

Also available on line at http://www.ccarh.org/publications/books/beyondmidi/online/darms/

Note: graphic images are not available.

Examples

EX 1
036 ##$a01$b01$c01$dS$fAria$ge$mC-1$oc$p'2B4B8BB/4G8GxF4FF/4xA8AA4.At8B/4B$tRei d'impuniti eccessi$2pe
Coding of the following incipit: 1.1: Aria, S   Rei d'impuniti eccessi
EX 2
036 ##$a01$b01$c01$dvl1$fScena. Largo$mG-2$nbBEA$oc$p8{'C+8(3{CDEFG};5)}8{GC}{,nB'G}4(-)/"2G+6{GnB'"C"E}6{DCAG}$2pe
036 ##$a01$b01$c02$dS$eSara$fScena. Largo$mC-1$nbBEAocp=5/4-"6C3CC6DEgF6CC8-6ED/q8D4C8C'nB"4D-/2-/$tChi per pietà mi dice il figlio mio che fà$2pe
036 ##$a01$b02$c01$dvl1$fAria. Allegro$mG-2$nbBEA$oc$p6{'EDEF}{GABG}{EDEF}{GABG}/{"C'BAG}{FEDC},4B-/$2pe
036 ##$a01$b02$c02$dS$eSara$fAria. Allegro$mC-1$nbBEAocp2-/2-"4.F8D/gC'8BB4-2(-)/=2/"2E'G/"4.C'8A4F-/-Fq8B4A8GF/$tDeh parlate che forse tacendo$2pe
Coding of the scena ed aria Deh parlate che forse tacendo by D.Cimarosa.
EX 3
036 ##$a01$b01$c01$d1st violin$fAndante$mG-2$nxFC$o4/4
$p4-8'A/{6"DA}gG{6F3ED}{6EB}gA{6G3FE}8F4D8C/{6DA}$2pe
036 ##$a01$b02$c01$fAllegrogDo4/4
036 ##$a01$b03$c01$fAllegrettogDo3/4
Coding of C.A.Campion's trio for 2 violins and bass in D major in three movements.
EX 4

036 ##$a01$b01$c01$dOb. 1$mG-2$nbBocp RE 9S((8)) 9((8 9 8)) 9E(6) 7(6S(5)) / 4S((3 2 3)) /$uhttp://www.classicalarchives.com/cgi-bin/n.cgi/prep/6/jsbbrc11.mid$2da:
DARMS coding and URL of MIDI source of J.S.Bach's Brandenburg Concerto nr.1 BWV 1046, 1st oboe part   K Oboe 1 $!I1 !G !K1- !MC,12@Ob. 1$ RE 9S((8)) 9((8 9 8)) 9E(6) 7(6S(5)) / 4S((3 2 3)) /

History

2005	New field.
2024	Update $u.

040 CODEN

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a unique, unambiguous code formerly assigned to titles of continuing resources by the International CODEN Service.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
040	CODEN	R	O
a	CODEN	NR	O
z	Erroneous CODEN	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a CODEN

The six character code of which the last character is an alphanumeric digit. Not repeatable.

$z Erroneous CODEN

A CODEN that has been identified as being erroneously applied to the resource or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

CODEN is a unique six-character code for a title which was formerly assigned by the International CODEN Service to scientific and technical continuing resources.

The first five characters of the CODEN are alphabetic and based on the title of the resource, the last is an alphanumeric check digit, e.g. JACSAT for Journal of the American Chemical Society, where T is the check digit.

The CODEN is no longer assigned to new continuing resources.

Related Fields

011 ISSN	A numeric code applied to continuing resources to identify them uniquely. This field should be used in preference to CODEN.

Examples

EX 1
040 ##$aANPYA2
The CODEN for Annalen der Physik.
EX 2
040 ##$aJPHYA7
The CODEN for *Journal of Physiology* (London).
EX 3
040 ##$aKREBAG

The CODEN for *Krebsarzt*.

071 PUBLISHER'S NUMBER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a publisher's number not governed by an international standard. These are generally used for sound recordings, publications of music, video recordings and electronic resources.

The field corresponds to the ISBD Resource Identifier and Terms of Availability Area. The field may contain the terms of availability and/or price, even if it does not contain a publisher's number.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
071	PUBLISHER'S NUMBER	R	O
a	Publisher's Number	NR	O
b	Source	NR	O
c	Qualification	NR	O
d	Terms of Availability and/or Price	NR	O
z	Erroneous Publisher's Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Type of Publisher's Number
	0	Sound recording: Issue number
	1	Sound recording: Matrix number
	2	Printed music: Plate number
	3	Printed music: Other publisher's number
	4	Video recording number
	5	Other type of publisher's number
	6	Electronic resource number (e.g. CD-ROM)
2		Note Indicator
	0	Do not make a note
	1	Make a note

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Type of Publisher's Number

This indicator specifies the type of publisher's number contained in the field. It may be used to generate introductory text if a note is to be displayed from this field (EX 2, 4, 5).

Indicator 2: Note Indicator

This indicator specifies whether the agency supplying the record would use the data to display a note. If a generated note is not required (perhaps because the agency has also entered details in a 300 or 301 field (EX 3) then this number should be set to 0.

Subfields Description

$a Publisher's Number

The number as assigned by the publisher. Not repeatable.

$b Source

The publisher which assigned the number. Not repeatable.

$c Qualification

Used to distinguish between numbers if a record contains more than one publisher number. Not repeatable.

$d Terms of Availability and/or Price

The price of the resource and any comment on its availability. Not repeatable.

$z Erroneous Publisher's Number

A publisher's number that has been identified as being erroneously applied to the resource or otherwise invalid. For example, it may have been applied to two publications and in this instance cancelled or it may have been incorrectly printed. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The issue or label number is the number used to identify the issue designation or serial identification assigned by a publisher to a specific sound recording, to a side of a sound recording, to a performance on a sound recording, or to a group of sound recordings issued as a set. The issue number normally appears on the label and often on the packaging for these recordings. For a set of recordings there may be issue numbers on each disc and an additional set number on the packaging.

The matrix number is used to identify the master from which the specific recording was pressed, usually appearing inscribed in the wax disc. It may be used for identification of a sound recording in the absence of an issue or label number.

The plate number is a serial number assigned by a publisher to a specific music publication. It is usually printed at the bottom of each page of music and sometimes appears also on the title page.

Other publishers' numbers are numbers similar to plate numbers but not appearing on each page of the publication. They may appear on the title page, the cover, and/or the first page of music.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)	
011 ISSN	
013 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSIC NUMBER (ISMN)	
015 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TECHNICAL REPORT NUMBER (ISRN)	
016 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD RECORDING CODE (ISRC)	
017 OTHER IDENTIFIER	
301 NOTES PERTAINING TO IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS	Unformatted publisher's numbers are recorded solely in this field. If the number as recorded in field 071 can be used in the same form, indicator 2 is set to 1 and a note will be generated. Otherwise indicator 2 is set to 0 and a note is added in field 301.

Examples

EX 1
071 01$aSTMA 8007$bTamla Motown
An issue designation for a sound recording published by Tamla Motown. A note will be generated, e.g.: Tamla Motown: STMA 8007.
EX 2
071 21$aA 880 V$bArs Viva Verlag

A plate number for printed music. A note will be generated, e.g.: Pl. no.: A 880 V.
EX 3
071 20$aB. & H. 8797$bBreitkopf & Härtel
071 20$aB. & H. 8798$bBreitkopf & Härtel
071 20$aB. & H. 8799$bBreitkopf & Härtel
071 20$aB. & H. 8800$bBreitkopf & Härtel
071 20$aB. & H. 8801$bBreitkopf & Härtel
301 ##$aPlate no.: B. & H. 8797-8801
A sequence of plate numbers for printed music. Notes are not to be generated from the 071 fields; because a summary note is made in field 301. This example and example 2 illustrate differing practices in abbreviating "Plate number" by different agencies.
EX 4
071 31$aN.M. 170$bNova Music
A publisher's number for printed music. A note will be generated, e.g.: Publisher's no.: N.M. 170.
EX 5
071 41$a990103$bTAG films production$cboîte
200 1#$aSculptez vos cuisses et vos fessiers$bImages animées$fCatherine Jeannin, Alain Derenne, réal.$gNancy Marmorat, concept., présent.$gSandra Macedo, voix
A publisher's number for a video recording.
EX 6
071 61$aSLES 51203$bPlayStation 2
200 1#$aEnter the Matrix$bRessource électronique$fwritten and directed by the Wachowski brothers $g developed by Shiny entertainment
A publisher's number for an electronic resource.

History

2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

072 UNIVERSAL PRODUCT CODE (UPC)

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the Universal Product Code.

The field corresponds to the ISBD Resource Identifier and Terms of Availability Area. The field may contain the terms of availability and/or price, even if it does not contain a number.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
072	UNIVERSAL PRODUCT CODE (UPC)	R	O
a	Standard Number	NR	O
b	Qualification	NR	O
c	Additional Codes Following Standard Number or Codes	NR	O
d	Terms of Availability and/or Price	NR	O
z	Erroneous Number or Code	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Difference Indicator
	0	No information provided
	1	No difference
	2	Difference

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Difference Indicator

The second indicator position contains a value that indicates whether there is a difference between a scanned number or code and the same number or code in eye readable form.

Subfields Description

$a Standard Number

A correctly formatted standard number or code. Number or code is formatted according to type. Not repeatable.

$b Qualification

An indication of the scope of the number or code in subfield $a, usually the name of a publisher, an indication of the binding of the resource, or an indication of the relationship of a number or code to a set or to a particular volume. Not repeatable.

$c Additional Codes Following Standard Number or Codes

Contains any coded suffix to the identifier. Not repeatable.

$d Terms of Availability and/or Price

The price of the resource and any comment on its availability. Not repeatable.

$z Erroneous Number or Code

A number or code that has been identified as being erroneously applied to the resource or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications or products and in this instance cancelled or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

UPC structure: (UCC-12)

The UPC appears as a bar-code symbol with 12 digits printed below it. Hyphens or spaces usually separate the elements of the number on the resource, but these are not input in the UNIMARC record. For further information visit the the GS1 website, at https://www.gs1.org/ . The code has three basic parts:

Number System Character (NSC) is the first digit (Subfield $a: Character position 0), which appears on the left side of the symbol outside of the bars

Identifier is the next ten digits (Subfield $a: Character positions 1-10). These are shown below the bars.

Check digit is the twelfth digit (Subfield $a: Character position 11), and usually appears at the bottom right of the symbol.

The composition of the "Identifier" varies for different categories of material:

Audio/Video. The 10 digit "identifier" consists of three elements:

Manufacturer's Designation (Subfield $a: Character Positions 1-5). Local GS1 organization assigns this designation.

Selection Number (Subfield $a: Character Positions 5-9). Note that the first digit of the selection number is also the last digit of the manufacturer's designation.

Configuration Number (Subfield $a: Character Position 10). The format of the product is indicated by the configuration number.

Continuing Resources

Publisher/Distributor Identifier (Subfield $a: Character Positions 1-5)

BIPAD title identification number (Subfield $a: Character Positions 6-10)

Issue identifier (Subfield $c: Character positions 0-1) optional suffix

Paperback Books

For paperback books there are two models:

Model A

Publisher Identifier (Subfield $a: Character Positions 1-5)

Title Portion of ISBN (Subfield $a: Character Positions 6-10)

Model B

Publisher or Bookline Identifier (Subfield $a: Character Positions 1-5)

Cover price/price category (Subfield $a: Character Positions 6-10)

Title Portion of ISBN (Subfield $c: optional suffix)

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)	The ISBN may be a component in other standard numbers.
011 ISSN	The ISSN may be a component in other standard numbers.

Examples

EX 1
072 #1$a070993005955$c35740
A UPC for a paperback book using Model B. The cover price/price category is represented by 00595. The title element of the ISBN is stored in subfield $c.

EX 2
072 #1$a070993357405
A UPC for the same resource as EX 1, using Model A.

History

2002	New field.

073 INTERNATIONAL ARTICLE NUMBER (EAN)

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the International Article Number. The field corresponds to the ISBD Resource Identifier and Terms of Availability Area. The field may contain the terms of availability and/or price, even if it does not contain a number.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
073	INTERNATIONAL ARTICLE NUMBER (EAN)	R	O
a	Standard Number	NR	O
b	Qualification	NR	O
c	Additional Codes Following Standard Number or Codes	NR	O
d	Terms of Availability and/or Price	NR	O
z	Erroneous Number or Code	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Difference Indicator
	0	No information provided
	1	No difference
	2	Difference

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Difference Indicator

The second indicator position contains a value that indicates whether there is a difference between a scanned number or code and the same number or code in eye readable form.

Subfields Description

$a Standard Number

A correctly formatted standard number or code. Not repeatable.

$b Qualification

An indication of the scope of the number or code in subfield $a, usually the name of a publisher, an indication of the binding of the resource, or an indication of the relationship of a number or code to a set or to a particular volume. Not repeatable.

$c Additional Codes Following Standard Number or Codes

Contains any coded suffix to the identifier. Not repeatable.

$d Terms of Availability and/or Price

The price of the resource, and any comment on its availability. Not repeatable.

$z Erroneous Number or Code

A number or code that has been identified as being erroneously applied to the resource, or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different publications or products and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The EAN-13 is a 13 digit number (EAN-14 is being developed). The format of the number varies according to the type of material being identified.

Continuing Resources

Prefix (Subfield $a: Character positions 0-2). The prefix is 977 and identifies the resource as a continuing resource.

Continuing Resource Identifier (Subfield $a: Character positions 3-9). The identifier is either the ISSN or a nationally administered standard number, such as BIPAD in North America. The final digit and the hyphen are omitted from the ISSN, if used.

Sequence Variant (Subfield $a: Character positions 10-11). This is a two digit number. It is used to indicate price changes. It does not include the actual price.

Check Digit (Subfield $a Character position 12). This is a single digit, calculated from the preceding 12 digit number.

Issue identifier (Subfield $c: Character position 0-1)

Paperback Books

Prefix (Subfield $a: Character positions 0-2). The prefix is 978 and identifies the resource as a paperback book.

Book Identifier (Subfield $a: Character positions 3-11). The identifier is the first 9 characters of the ISBN, omitting the final ISBN check digit. All punctuation is omitted from the ISBN.

Check Digit (Subfield $a: Character position 12). An all numeric Modulus -10 check digit is the 13th character of the EAN.

Supplement (Subfield $c, Character positions 0-4). The supplement may contain a five digit code, representing additional data, e.g. price.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)	The ISBN may be a component in other standard numbers.
011 ISSN	The ISBN may be a component in other standard numbers.

Examples

EX 1
073 #0$a9780838934326$c90000
An EAN-13 for a paperback book, including a price code in subfield $c.
EX 2
073 #0$a9771466258007$c08
The prefix 977 indicates that it is a continuing resource. The suffix in $c is the code for the issue number.
EX 3
073 #0$a9780306350542$bvol. 4$c2205
073 #0$a9780306350504$bSet$c9729
Examples of EAN-13. The record is for volume 4 of a monograph *Treatise on solid state chemistry* published in 6 volumes, each with its own ISBN. The set also has an ISBN and a price is available for the set. The EAN-13 does not contain any indication that it relates to a set, but this information may be conveyed in Product Metadata, e.g. ONIX International.
EX 4

073 #1$a97895045722$z9780950457116
Example of an incorrect EAN-13, superseded by the correct EAN.

History

2002	New field.

1-- CODED INFORMATION BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains coded fixed-length data elements.

Notes on Field Contents

Data in these fields is defined in terms of the position of the character, counting the first character following the subfield identifier as zero. If a bibliographic agency does not supply any coded information in a given field, the field will be omitted unless mandatory. If some data in a field is supplied but not all, the omitted data element positions will contain fill characters.

The following fields are defined:

100	GENERAL PROCESSING DATA
101	LANGUAGE OF THE RESOURCE
102	COUNTRY OF PUBLICATION OR PRODUCTION
105	CODED DATA FIELD: TEXTUAL LANGUAGE MATERIAL, MONOGRAPHIC
106	CODED DATA FIELD: TEXTUAL RESOURCE – FORM
110	CODED DATA FIELD: CONTINUING RESOURCES
111	CODED DATA FIELD: SERIALS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES [OBSOLETE]
115	CODED DATA FIELDS: VISUAL PROJECTIONS, VIDEO RECORDINGS AND MOTION PICTURES
116	CODED DATA FIELD: GRAPHICS
117	CODED DATA FIELD: THREE-DIMENSIONAL ARTEFACTS AND REALIA
120	CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – GENERAL
121	CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES
122	CODED DATA FIELD: TIME PERIOD OF RESOURCE CONTENT
123	CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – SCALE AND CO-ORDINATES
124	CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – SPECIFIC MATERIAL DESIGNATION ANALYSIS
125	CODED DATA FIELD: SOUND RECORDINGS AND MUSIC
126	CODED DATA FIELD: SOUND RECORDINGS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES
127	CODED DATA FIELD: DURATION OF SOUND RECORDINGS AND NOTATED MUSIC
128	CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY OR MODE
130	CODED DATA FIELD: MICROFORMS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES
131	CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – GEODETIC, GRID AND VERTICAL MEASUREMENT
135	CODED DATA FIELD: ELECTRONIC RESOURCES
140	CODED DATA FIELD: ANTIQUARIAN – GENERAL
141	CODED DATA FIELD: ITEM SPECIFIC ATTRIBUTES
145	CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE [OBSOLETE]
146	CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE
181	CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT FORM
182	CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIA TYPE
183	CODED DATA FIELD: TYPE OF CARRIER

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Corrections and additions.

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains fixed-length coded data applicable to records of materials in any media.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
100	GENERAL PROCESSING DATA	NR	M
a	General Processing Data	NR	M

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a General Processing Data

Codes indicate the aspects of general processing.

The subfield is 36-characters in length. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Date Entered on File (Mandatory)	8	0-7
Type of Date	1	8
Date 1	4	9-12
Date 2	4	13-16
Target Audience Code	3	17-19
Government Publication Code	1	20
Modified Record Code	1	21
Language of Cataloguing (Mandatory)	3	22-24
Transliteration Code	1	25
Character Set (Mandatory)	4	26-29
Additional Character Set	4	30-33
Script of Title	2	34-35

Notes on Field Contents

$a/0-7 Date entered on File

8-numeric characters in ISO standard form (ISO 8601-1) for dates: YYYY MMDD where YYYY represents the year, MM the month with leading 0 if necessary and DD the day of the month with leading 0 if necessary.

The date will usually be the date when the record was originally created and entered into machine-readable form, to give some idea of the age of the record. A record corrected because of errors in keying or editing will not have a change of date. On exchange, the record should also retain its original date.

EX 1
Character positions 0-7: 19671005
The record was originally entered into a machine readable data file on 5th October 1967.

$a/8-16 Type of Date; Dates 1 and 2

1-character code indicates the type of date according to 13 categories which take into account the issuing or creation status of the resource being recorded. This code defines the types of dates which appear in

Date 1 (character positions 9-12) and Date 2 (character position 13-16). These dates are always entered as a four character representation of the year.

Note: It may not be possible always to provide blanks as required for dates from source formats where any digit has been supplied as an approximation in a corresponding field.

Related field: A date is also entered in field 210 or 214. The date of coverage if different from the date of publication may be entered in field 122 (see EX 4)

a	currently published continuing resource	Date 1 contains the beginning year of publication or coverage if coverage differs from publication (EX 1). If the beginning date is uncertain, any unknown digit may contain a blank (EX 2). Date 2 contains 9999.
b	continuing resource no longer being published	Date 1 contains the beginning year of publication or coverage if coverage differs from publication. If the beginning date is uncertain, any unknown digit may contain a blank. Date 2 contains the year publication ceased (EX 3). For resource known to have ceased but whose final date is uncertain, any unknown digit may contain a blank. (EX 4)
c	continuing resource of unknown status	A continuing resource about which it is not known whether publication is continuing or whether publication has ceased (EX 5). Date 1 contains the beginning year of publication or coverage if coverage differs from publication. If the beginning date is uncertain, any unknown digit may contain a blank. Date 2 contains four blanks.
d	monograph complete when issued, or issued within one calendar year	A monograph published in one volume/part or in a number of volumes/parts all published at one time or with the same date of publication, i.e. published within the same calendar year (EX 6-9). If the date is uncertain use code "f". If the monograph was published over a span use code "g". Date 1 contains the date of publication. Date 2 contains blanks.
e	reproduction of a document	The resource being catalogued is a reproduction, i.e. a reprint, facsimile, reissue, etc. but not a new edition (EX 10). If the reproduction is of a continuing resource, or if either the original or the reproduction was published over a span of years, the beginning year of reproduction and publication are used (EX 11). Date 1 contains the date of publication of the reproduction. Date 2 contains the date of publication of the original. If either date is uncertain and cannot be expressed as a single year, any digit may be replaced by a blank (EX 12).
f	monograph, date of publication uncertain	Date 1 contains the earliest possible date of publication. Date 2 contains the latest possible date of publication (EX 13-16).
g	monograph whose publication continues for more than a year	Date 1 contains the beginning year of publication (EX 17-19). If the beginning year of publication is uncertain, any unknown digit may be replaced by a blank. Date 2 contains the date of final publication (EX 17) or 9999 if publication is still in progress (EX 18). If the final date of publication is uncertain, the unknown digits contain blanks (EX 19).
h	monograph with both actual and copyright/privilege date	The resource's date of publication differs from the copyright/privilege date quoted in the resource (EX 20). If the date of publication is unknown, use "d" (EX 8). Privilege is defined as a monopoly granted by a government body to an author or a bookseller for an edition over a fixed period of time. Date 1 contains the date of publication. Date 2 contains the copyright/privilege date.

i	monograph with both release/issue date and production date	Used for films, music, etc. when there is a gap between the production/recording of the resource and its distribution/release (EX 21). Date 1 contains the release/issue date. Date 2 contains the production date.
j	document with detailed date of publication	Use when it is considered important to record the month (and possibly day) of publication (EX 22). Date 1 contains the year of publication. Date 2 contains the detailed date in the form "MMDD", with month and day right-justified with zero fill. If the day positions are not used, they hold blanks (EX 23).
k	monograph published in a certain year and printed in a different year	Most commonly found in antiquarian materials (EX 24, 25). Date 1 contains the year of publication. Date 2 contains the year of printing.
l	inclusive dates of collection	Date 1 contains the earliest year of material in collection. If the earliest year of material is uncertain, any unknown digit may be replaced by a blank. Date 2 contains the latest year of material in collection (EX 28-29). If all resources in the collection were created within one calendar year that date is given in both places. If the latest date of material in the collection is uncertain, any unknown digit may be replaced by a blank.
u	date(s) of publication unknown	Date 2 contains blanks.

EX 1
a19599999
A continuing resource was first published in 1959 and is still being published.
EX 2
a192#9999
A continuing resource was first published at a date somewhere between 1922 and 1925 and is still being published.
EX 3
bl8101860
A continuing resource began in 1810 and finished in 1860.
EX 4
b1890191#
A continuing resource began in 1890 and finished somewhere between 1910 and 1915.
EX 5
c1980####
A continuing resource began in 1980; but issues are no longer arriving and the publisher cannot be traced.
EX 6
d1750####
The resource actually or probably published in 1750. The date may be recorded in subfield 210$d variously as 1750, [1750] or [1750?].
EX 7
d1972####

A monograph was published in three volumes in 1972.
EX 8
d1972####
A resurce where only the copyright date is known. Code “h” is therefore not used.
EX 9
d1995####
A resurce with a publication date of 1416 according to the Muslim calendar, known to have been published in 1995 C.E.
EX 10
e19681952
A document originally published in 1952 was reprinted in 1968.
EX 11
e19561835
A continuing resource published from 1835 to 1914 was reprinted in 1956.
EX 12
e1983183#
A book originally published in the 1830s (date uncertain) was reprinted in 1983.
EX 13
f19621966
A monograph has no date of publication but its contents reveal it was published no earlier than 1962 and it was acquired in 1966. It is assumed it was published between 1962 and 1966.
EX 14
f17801789
A monograph believed to have been published in the 1780s; the date is given in subfield 210$d as [178-?].
EX 15
f19941995
The resource with an imprint date of 5755 according to the Jewish calendar; the precise year C.E. has not been determined; but it must be either 1994 or 1995.
EX 16
f####1510
The resource was published in or before 1510.
EX 17
g19751976
A monograph was published in 3 volumes in 1975 and 1976.
EX 18
g19839999
A monograph is to be published in 5 volumes, the first in 1983 and the rest at future dates. The record is an open-ended record since the bibliographic details of the as yet unpublished volumes are not known.
EX 19
g1962196#

A monograph began publication in 1962. The date of the final volume is uncertain, but is believed to be 1968 or 1969.
EX 20
h19851983
A document published in 1985 has 1983 as copyright date.
EX 21
i19501943
A film made in 1943 but not released until 1950.
EX 22
j19850412
A technical report published 12 April 1985.
EX 23
j198511##
A report published in November 1985. The day of publication is not known or is considered unimportant.
EX 24
k15861587
210 ##$aRomae$cex officina Bartholomaei Grassi$d1586$eRomae$gapud Iacobum
Ruffinellum$h1587 A document published in 1586 and printed in 1587.
EX 25
k15221521
210 ##$a[Milano]$capud fratres de Lignano ad signum Angeli$d1522 $eMediolani$gapud Iohannem Angelum Scinzenzeler$h1521 die XXX mensis Iulii.
A document published in 1522 and printed in 1521.
EX 26
u########
200 1#$aViola Springs Limestone$bObject
300 ##$aMid-Ordovician
The resource is a rock. Character positions 9-16 cannot be coded for a date range of 478 to 458 million years; so code “u” is assigned.
EX 27
u########
210 ##$aParisii$cGourm$d[s.d.]
The record is the result of unedited retrospective conversion; it is not possible to derive even approximate dates from the data in the source file.
EX 28
l18601991
200 1#$aНиколай II, император. 1868-1918$j1860-1991
Archive of records of Nikolay II, Emperor of Russia. Includes documents of political activities of Nikolay II: rescripts, decrees, manifests, photos, letters, etc. The earliest resource in the collection is dated 1860, the latest one - 1991. Label, pos. 7 (bibliographic level) contains code “c” = collection.
EX 29
l19171917
200 1#$aАкты отречения от престола Николая II и великого князя Михаила

Александровича$j2-3 марта 1917
One of files in the collection in EX 28 – Акты отречения от престола Николая II и великого князя Михаила Александровича (Acts of abdication of Nikolay II and Grand Duke Michael Alexandrovich); includes two documents, both dated 1917. Label, pos. 7 (bibliographic level) contains code "c" = collection.

$a/17-19 Target Audience Code

There are three positions for target audience codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks.

a	juvenile, general	Use when b, c, d or e have not been used or cannot be used.
b	pre-primary, ages 0-5	
c	primary, ages 5-10	
d	children, ages 9-14	
e	young adult, ages 14-20	
k	adult, serious	
m	adult, general	
u	unknown	
x	not applicable	To be used only once, i.e. x##.

Related field: For coded information indicating the intended audience of work or an expression of a work see UNIMARC Auhorities Format Manual, field 125.

$a/20 Government Publication

1-character code indicates whether the record is for a government publication or not and the level of government issuing the publication. A government publication is defined as one issued or financed by a government agency. Academic institutions are not to be regarded as government agencies.

a	federal/national	Sovereign states and territories with some measure of self-government, for example having their own legislature.
b	state/province	An administrative subdivision at one level below the federal or national level, having some measure of internal self-government and legislative control, though with no responsibility for external affairs, e.g. provinces of Canada, Länder in the Federal Republic of Germany.
c	county/departmen t	A middle-level administrative subdivision, generally without any legislature, e.g. départements in France, counties in the United Kingdom.
d	local (municipal, etc.)	An administrative unit at the lowest level of jurisdiction, e.g. a city, town, or village.
e	multi-local (interstate departments, etc. below the national level)	Any administrative unit below the national level combining or crossing more than one jurisdiction, e.g. a joint computer unit which is shared by a number of municipal authorities or a transport authority that crosses several municipalities.
f	intergovernmental	International organisations and their agencies, e.g. those entities which are capable of making treaties with sovereign states such as the International Monetary Fund or the United Nations.
g	government in exile or clandestine	A non-official government such as the government of France in exile from 1941-1944.
h	level not determined	Used when the record is for a government publication but the level of government cannot be determined from the information at hand.
u	unknown	Used when it is impossible to determine whether the work is a government publication.
y	not a government publication	This code is entered in all cases when the document is not a government publication.

z	other government level	Used when the record is for a government publication at a particular level of government but this level does not fit into any of categories a-g.

$a/21 Modified Record Code

1-character code indicates whether the character set available is sufficient to transcribe the data as found on the resource. Due to limitations of the machine character set, the transcription may have to be modified to accommodate, for example, special scripts (i.e. by transliteration) or special mathematical formulae, e.g. a Greek letter or other notation written out in full. A record would not be considered modified, however, if the title page cannot be transcribed because it contains symbols or pictures which obviously would be found in no other character set.

0	unmodified record
1	modified record

$a/22-24 Language of Cataloguing (Mandatory)

3-character code indicating the language used in cataloguing. For codes use ISO 639-2 (https://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/).

If a source record is completely multi-lingual, i.e. all information not from the title page is repeated in more than one language, it is recommended that a separate UNIMARC record should be produced, as required, for each language. See also Format structure 3.9.

UNIMARC has no mechanism to denote the language of individual fields throughout the format.

$a/25 Transliteration Code

UNIMARC assumes the utilisation of international standards. However, in the area of conversion of scripts, international standards are not yet completely adequate, and other schemes may be used. This code indicates whether or not an ISO transliteration scheme is used in the record.

a	ISO transliteration scheme	
b	other	Used for identified transliteration schemes for which no specific code has been defined.
c	multiple transliterations	ISO or other schemes.
d	transliteration table established by the national bibliographic agency	
e	transliteration without any identified transliteration scheme	
f	other identified transliteration scheme	
g	ALA-LC romanization table	
h	DIN transliteration scheme	
y	not applicable	No transliteration scheme used.

$a/26-29 Character Sets (Mandatory)

Two 2-character codes designating the principal graphic character sets used in communication of the record. Positions 26-27 designate the G0 set and positions 28-29 designate the Gl set. If a Gl set is not needed, positions 28-29 contain blanks. For further explanation of character coding see Appendix D. The following two-character codes are to be used. They will be augmented as required.

01	ISO 646, IRV version (basic Latin set)
02	ISO Registration # 37 (basic Cyrillic set)
03	ISO 5426 (extended Latin set)
04	ISO 5427 (extended Cyrillic set)
05	ISO 5428 (Greek set)
06	ISO 6438 (African coded character set)
07	ISO 10586 (Georgian set)
08	ISO 8957 (Hebrew set) Table 1

09	ISO 8957 (Hebrew set) Table 2
10	[Reserved]
11	ISO 5426-2 (Latin characters used in minor European languages and obsolete typography)
50	ISO 10646 Level 3 (Unicode, UTF-8)

$a/30-33 Additional Character Sets

Two 2-character codes indicate up to two additional graphic character sets used in communication of the record. The two-character codes specified for character positions 26-29 are used. Positions 30-31 designate the G2 set and positions 32-33 designate the G3 set. If no additional character sets are needed the bytes contain blanks.

$a/34-35 Script of Title

2-character code indicating the script of the title used as the title proper. This refers to the script in the resource, not the character set of the record.

The following codes are recommended for use in UNIMARC. ISO codes have been developed in ISO 15924, but are not yet implemented in UNIMARC.

ba	Latin
ca	Cyrillic
da	Japanese -- script unspecified (mixed scripts)
db	Japanese – kanji
dc	Japanese – kana
ea	Chinese
eb	Chinese – simplified variant
ec	Chinese – traditional variant
ed	Mongolian
ee	Manchu
ef	Yi
eg	Naxi Dongba (Nakhi Tomba)
eh	Naxi Geba
fa	Arabic
ga	Greek
ha	Hebrew
ia	Thai
ib	Burmese
ic	Khmer (Cambodian)
id	Lao
ie	Cham
ja	Devanagari
jb	Bengalese
jc	Gujarati
jd	Gurmukhi
je	Odia (Oriya)
jf	Tibetan
jg	Newa (Newar)
ka	Korean
la	Tamil
lb	Kannada
lc	Malayalam
ld	Sinhala (Singhalese)
le	Telugu
lf	Grantha

ma	Georgian
mb	Armenian
na	Ethiopic (Ge'ez)
nb	Tifinagh (Berber)
nc	N'ko
oa	Syriac
pa	Egyptian hieroglyphs
zz	Other

The script code is optional if the script is the usual one relating to the language found in field 101 $g or in the absence of subfield $g, $a.

Related Fields

Related fields are noted in connection with the individual codes above.

Examples

Full examples

EX 1		
100 ##$a20120204a19599999m##c0engy0103####ba		
The record was originally entered into a machine-readable data file on 4th February 2012. The continuing resource was first published in 1959 and is still being published. The target audience is "general adult". The continuing resource is an annual report published by Hampshire County Council; it is an unmodified record, catalogued in English, using no transliteration scheme.		
Character position	Value	Notes
0-7	20120204	Date entered on file.
8	a	Currently published continuing resource.
9-12	1959	Commencement of publication.
13-16	9999	Continuing resource still being published.
17-19	m##	Target audience general adult.
20	c	A subdivision of a sovereign state, without any legislature.
21	0	Unmodified record.
22-24	eng	English language of cataloguing.
25	y	No transliteration scheme used.
26-29	0103	ISO 646 (IRV) and ISO 5426 8-bit codes used
30-33	####	No additional character set.
34-35	ba	Latin alphabet of title.

EX 2		
100 ##$a20120202bl8101860|||y0frey0103####ba		
The record was originally entered into a machine-readable data file on 2nd February, 2012. The continuing resource was first published in 1810 and ceased publication in 1860. The target audience code is not used, and therefore contains fill characters. The record has not been modified, no transliteration scheme is used, and French is the language of cataloguing.		
Character Positions	Value	Notes
0-7	20120202	Date entered on file.
8	b	Continuing resource no longer being published.
9-12	1810	Beginning of publication.
13-16	1860	End of publication.
17-19	|||	Target audience not designated.
20	y	Not a government publication.

21	0	Unmodified record.
22-24	fre	French language of cataloguing.
25	y	No transliteration scheme used.
26-29	0103	ISO 646 (IRV) and ISO 5426 8-bit codes used.
30-33	####	No additional character sets.
34-35	ba	Latin alphabet of title.

History

1994	Changes of status: $a character position 21: Modified record code. No longer mandatory.
2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Change to coded subfields: $a 34/35 Recognition of ISO 15924 and note that its codes may be accommodated in a future edition of UNIMARC Bibliographic.
2012	Align with FRBR and add x n/a to cp 17-20; add l (inclusive dates of collection) to cp 8 Type of Date.
2018	Changed text: $a/22-24 Language of Cataloguing.
2020	Added related field information to $a/8-16 and $a/17-19. Updated table in $a/34-35. Errata / text edit (deleted FRBR align, no field 184).
2022	New codes $a/34-35 Script of Title.
2023	New codes $a/25 Transliteration Code. Text edit.

101 LANGUAGE OF THE RESOURCE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains coded information relating to the language or languages used in the manifestation being described.

It was designed prior to the release of the FRBR and IFLA LRM as well as of the cataloguing rules that conform to them. According to the FRBR/IFLA LRM, some of the information carried in this field pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entities other than the Manifestation. Such data should preferably be carried in linked authority records describing the relevant related entity rather than in the record describing the Manifestation. However, those data can still be carried in bibliographic records describing manifestations under certain conditions, especially when the records are/were created in a pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM or a non-FRBR/IFLA LRM context.

Repeatable if more than one code schema is used.

Mandatory if the content of the resource has language, and the language is not entered in a separate linked authority record describing the expression of the work contained. See Notes on Field Contents.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
101	LANGUAGE OF THE RESOURCE	R	MA
a	Language of Text, Soundtrack etc. [LRM: Expression]	R	O
b	Language of Intermediate Text when Resource is not Translated from Original [LRM: Expression]	R	O
c	Language of Original Work [LRM: Expression]	R	O
d	Language of Summary [LRM: Expression]	R	O
e	Language of Contents Page	R	O
f	Language of Preferred Source of Information for the Title Page when it Differs from the Language or Languages of the Text	R	O
g	Language of Title Proper if not First Language of Text, Soundtrack, etc.	NR	O
h	Language of Libretto, etc.	R	O
i	Language of Accompanying Material (Other than Summaries, Abstracts or Librettos)	R	O
j	Language of Subtitles [LRM: Expression]	R	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Translation Indicator
	0	Resource is in the original language(s) of the work (EX 3, 5, 7, 12)
	1	Resource is a translation of the original work or an intermediate work (EX 1, 2, 4, 6)
	2	Resource contains translations other than translated summaries (EX 8-11, 15)
	8	The data pertaining to the expression of the work are coded in a separate linked authority record describing that expression
2		Source of Code
	#	ISO 639-2 language code
	7	Source specified in subfield $2

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Translation Indicator

This indicator specifies whether or not the resource is a translation or contains translations. If it is not possible to allocate this indicator in records converted from a source format, the fill character should be used in place of the values outlined above. Value "2" should not be used if the only translations in the document are summaries of articles, etc., in the document.

Indicator 2: Source of Code

This indicator specifies the source of the language code(s) used in the field.

Subfields Description

$a Language of Text, Soundtrack etc. [LRM: Expression]

The language of the text, soundtrack etc. Repeatable when the text is in more than one language (EX 5).

See Notes on Field Contents.

$b Language of Intermediate Text when Resource is not Translated from Original [LRM: Expression]

The language of any intermediate translation (EX 2, 4, 6). Repeatable when the text is translated from more than one intermediate language (EX 6), or when the translation has occurred via more than one intermediate language (e.g. Greek – Latin – French – English).

See Notes on Field Contents.

$c Language of Original Work [LRM: Expression]

The language of the original work when the resource being recorded is a translation (EX 1, 2, 4, 6, 8). Repeatable when the original is in more than one language.

See Notes on Field Contents.

$d Language of Summary [LRM: Expression]

The language of any summaries or abstracts of the resource or of works, articles, etc. contained within it. Repeatable when the resource contains summaries in more than one language (EX 7).

See Notes on Field Contents.

$e Language of Contents Page

The language of the table of contents when this differs from the language of the text (EX 3). Repeatable for each language of the contents page(s).

$f Language of Preferred Source of Information for the Title Page when it Differs from the Language or Languages of the Text

EX 8. Repeatable for each language of the title page.

$g Language of Title Proper if not First Language of Text, Soundtrack, etc.

The language of the title proper when it differs from that in the first or only occurrence of subfield $a (EX 1). This is not repeatable since the title proper is by definition in one language. Any repeats of the title proper in other languages are parallel titles and their language is indicated in a subfield $z in field 200.

$h Language of Libretto, etc.

The language or languages of the text when the resource being catalogued includes the vocal/textual content of the work(s) printed as text, whether as accompanying material or printed with the resource. Note that this subfield is not limited to librettos as such. Repeatable. (EX 9)

$i Language of Accompanying Material (Other than Summaries, Abstracts or Librettos)

The language or languages of accompanying material, such as programme notes, prefaces, commentaries, instructions etc. Repeatable. (EX 10)

$j Language of Subtitles [LRM: Expression]

The language(s) of subtitles (overprinted titles) of moving pictures when different from the language of the soundtrack. Repeatable (EX 11, 12, 15).

See Notes on Field Contents.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code is derived. Use only when the second indicator contains the value 7 (Source specified in subfield $2). For the list of language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable (EX 13, 14, 15).

Notes on Field Contents

Each subfield contains a three-character language code. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2.

When a subfield is repeated, the order of language codes should reflect the extent and significance of the languages within the work. If this is not possible, enter the language codes in alphabetical order. Code "mul" may be entered when a large number of languages applies in any subfield (EX 8).

Special Note for Data Complying with FRBR/IFLA LRM

In catalogues and exchange files that comply with the *Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records* (FRBR) and IFLA *Library Reference Model* (LRM), a substantial part of the information relating to the language(s) of the resource pertains to the Expression level.

Hence, in catalogues and/or exchange files where records describing manifestations are linked to separate records describing expressions, the language metadata should be divided between both levels and carried in the relevant records.

In such catalogues and/or files, the following subfields should not normally be used in records describing manifestations: $a, $b, $c, $d, $j.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities format	
101 LANGUAGE OF THE ENTITY	The language or languages pertaining to the expression of a work that is embodied in the manifestation being described should be coded in field 101 in the authority record describing that expression.
UNIMARC/Bibliographic format	
100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Language of Cataloguing (character positions 22-24)	In these character positions is entered a code indicating the language used by the cataloguer for those parts of the record such as the notes which do not depend on the language of the resource.
200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	The language(s) of the parallel title(s) proper appearing in this field may be indicated in the $z subfield(s) in field 200.
510-541 RELATED TITLES	Various title fields have a subfield indicating the language of the title contained in the title subfields. These are used when a title is in a language other than the main language of the work.

Examples

EX 1
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in a separate record)
101 8#$geng
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 1#$afre$ceng$geng

A book entitled Guidebook to Henry VIII's Palace of Hampton Court is a French translation of an English original. The title proper is in English and is followed by a parallel title in French; the rest of the text is in French.
EX 2
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in a separate record)
No 101 field.
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 1#$afre$beng$crus
A scientific research paper published in Russian is translated by an international agency into English. This intermediate text is then used by a national research institute in France to produce a French translation.
EX 3
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in a separate record)
101 8#$eeng$feng
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 0#$ajpn$eeng$feng
A Japanese government publication contains a table of contents and an added title page in English; the rest of the text is in Japanese.
EX 4
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in a separate record)
No 101 field.
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 1#$aeng$bger$crus
A traveller's diary is published as Journey to Khiva through the Turkoman country by Nikolay Murav'yov, translated from the German by W S A Lockhart, and originally published in Russian.
EX 5
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in a separate record)
No 101 field.
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 0#$aeng$awel
A local government publication from Gwent County Council consists of a parallel Welsh-English text.
EX 6
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in a separate record)
No 101 field.
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 1#$aeng$bger$bfre$cakk
A text in Akkadian, an ancient language, has been translated parts into German and parts into French. An English translation is made based on the German and French translation.
EX 7
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in a separate record)
No 101 field.
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record

101 0#$aeng$afre$ager$deng$dfre$dger
IFLA Journal contains abstracts of all its contributions in English, French and German. The majority of the contributions are in English followed equally by French and German which are entered in alphabetical order.
EX 8
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in a separate record)
101 8#$ffre
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 2#$amul$ceng$ffre
A book intended for a French readership and having a French title page consists mostly of one act of a play of Shakespeare translated from the English into 25 languages.
EX 9
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in a separate record)
101 8#$hfre$hger
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 2#$afre$hfre$hger
A sound recording sung in French with accompanying text in French and German.
EX 10
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in a separate record)
101 2#$ieng
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 2#$ieng
A non-language sound recording with programme notes translated into English.
EX 11
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in a separate record)
No 101 field.
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 2#$aswe$jfre
A copy of Bergman's *Tystnaden* with French subtitles.
EX 12
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in a separate record)
No 101 field.
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 0#$jeng
A copy of Chaplin's *Modern times* with English subtitles.
EX 13
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in an authority record)
No 101 field.
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 17$avep$crus$2iso639-3
A collection of stories for children "Vauged o", translated from Russian into Veps by Marina Ginijatullina. Code for the Veps language is taken from ISO 639-3.

EX 14
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in an authority record)
No 101 field.
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 1#$arus$csit
101 17$arus$cdng$2iso639-3
A collection of poems, translated from Dungan into Russian. ISO 639-2 has only a collective code "sit" which represents Sino-Tibetan languages and ISO 639-3 has specific code for Dungan Language ("dng"). Two language code schemes are used and field 101 is repeated.
EX 15
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in an authority record)
No 101 field.
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 2#$amyn$jeng$jfre$jspa
101 27$ayua$jeng$jfra$jspa$2iso639-3
"Apocalypto" by Mel Gibson. The soundtrack is in Yucatec Maya, with optional English, French, or Spanish subtitles. Two language code schemes are used and field 101 is repeated. Since ISO 639-2 does not provide specific code for the Yucatec Maya language, the collective language code for Mayan languages ("myn") is given in the first field 101. The repeated field 101 contains code ("yua") derived from ISO 639-3. Code for French in this case is also derived from ISO 639-3 ("fra").
EX 16
Data complying with LRM (the data pertaining to the expression of the work are carried in an authority record)
No 101 field.
Data pertaining to the expression of the work present in the manifestation record
101 0#$azxx$fslv
The resource contains instrumental music. Since it has no lyrics, code "zxx" – no linguistic content in subfield 101a is inserted. In the subfield 101f hase the code of the language of the title page.

History

2012	Align with FRBR and add new value to Indicator 1.
2018	Added new values to Indicator 2, new subfield 2, new examples and replaced text FRBR with the LRM.
2020	Errata / text edit. New EX 16.

102 COUNTRY OF PUBLICATION OR PRODUCTION

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains codes for one or more countries of publication or production of the resource.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
102	COUNTRY OF PUBLICATION OR PRODUCTION	NR	O
a	Country of Publication	R	O
b	Locality (non-ISO)	R	O
c	Locality (ISO)	R	O
2	Source of non-ISO Code	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Country of Publication

Contains a code representing the country in which the resource was published or produced. For country codes use ISO 3166-1. Repeatable if the resource is published in more than one country or in more than one locality in the same country (EX 3).

$b Locality (non-ISO)

A code representing the locality, where a more specific code is required. Repeatable if there is more than one country code. The codes are taken from code lists other than ISO 3166-2. Details of the code list are given in subfield $2.

$c Locality (ISO)

A code representing the locality, where a more specific code is required. Repeatable if there is more than one country code. The codes are to be taken from ISO 3166-2.

$2 Source of non-ISO Code

The source of the code used in subfield $b. For a list of code sources see Appendix A. Repeatable if there is more than one country code.

Notes on Field Contents

Any locality code should follow immediately after the country code to which it refers. When it is necessary to record more than one locality within the same country, it is recommended for ease of processing that the country code be repeated in each case, i.e. that each subfield $b or $c be preceded by a subfield $a. It is recommended that a code be recorded for each place of publication or production present in the 210 field.

Due to the fact that in older monographic publications the name and location of the printer are given equal status to those of the publisher or distributor, the country and locality of a printer, publisher or distributor is given here in a coded form. For older monographic publications the country or locality of publication or production is coded according to the present state of country borders.

Additional codes

XX Country unknown (UNIMARC user-assigned code element)

ZZ International or multiple countries (i.e. more than three)

Related Fields

210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.	This field carries the place of publication or production in textual form.
214 PRODUCTION, PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, MANUFACTURE STATEMENTS	This field contains statements relating to the publication, production, distribution or manufacture of a manifestation, when the rules applied by the cataloguing agency specify that a distinction must be made between these statements, e.g. rules based on the RDA code.
620 PLACE AND DATE PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, ETC.	This field carries the place of publication or production in structured textual form.

Examples

EX 1
102 ##$aHU
The resource is published in Hungary.
EX 2
102 ##aGBcSCT
The resource is published in Scotland.
EX 3
102 ##aUSccaaUScny
The resource is published in California and New York.
EX 4
102 ##$aIT
The resource was published in Venice in 1485.
EX 5
102 ##aALbkx$2local
The code used for the subdivision of Albania is a local one.
EX 6
102 ##$aXX
It is not possible to determine the country of publication of the resource described in the record.

History

1996	New paragraphs/subfield/examples.
2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Corrections.
2022	Update section Related fields.

105 CODED DATA FIELD: TEXTUAL LANGUAGE MATERIAL, MONOGRAPHIC

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains coded data relating to monographic language material.

It is recommended that it is always present in records of monographic printed language materials.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
105	CODED DATA FIELD: TEXTUAL LANGUAGE MATERIAL, MONOGRAPHIC	NR	O
a	Monograph Coded Data	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Monograph Coded Data

Codes indicate aspects of monographic language material.

The subfield is 13-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Table of subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	No. of Characters	Character Positions
Illustration Codes	4	0-3
Form of Contents Codes	4	4-7
Conference or Meeting Code	1	8
Festschrift Indicator	1	9
Index Indicator	1	10
Literature Code	1	11
Biography Code	1	12

Notes on Field Contents

If no attempt is made to assign a data element value, the fill character should be used in the character positions designated for that data element.

$a/0-3 Illustration Codes

4-character positions available for illustration codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If more than four codes are applicable, select the first four in the order they appear on the list below. Note that blanks are used in preference to "y" in unused character positions.

These codes usually relate to terms in the physical description of the resource (in field 215). If the data element is not used, fill characters should be entered in character positions 0-3; if they are used but fewer than four types of illustration are present, then remaining positions contain blanks.

a	illustrations	Used for types of illustrations which are not covered below, e.g., diagrams, graphs, or when types of illustrations are not being specifically coded.
b	maps	
c	portraits	Individual or group portraits.

d	charts	Special purpose maps designed for the use of navigators.
e	plans	E.g. ground plans of buildings.
f	plates	A leaf containing illustrative matter with or without explanatory text, which does not form part of any sequence of pages or leaves.
g	music	In monographic textual-language material. For sound recordings accompanying materials use code "m".
h	facsimiles	Reproductions of a part of or the whole of a document not only reproducing the text but also simulating the original appearance of the work.
i	coats of arms	
j	genealogical tables	
k	forms	
1	samples	
m	sound recordings	E.g. a sound disc in a folder in a book.
n	transparencies	E.g. a set of transparencies in a pocket attached to a book.
o	illuminations	Manuscript embellishments of a letter or writing with colours etc.
y	no illustrations	To be used only once, i.e. y###.
#	value position not needed	

$a/4-7 Form of Contents Codes

4-character positions available for the form of contents codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If more than four codes are applicable, select the first four in the order in which they appear in the list below.

These codes should be used whether the resource contains this form of material or consists completely of this form of material except in the case of code "c", index, which should be used only if the resource is an index. Thus, if the resource is a catalogue, code "b" will be used; if it contains a catalogue within it, along with other material, again, "b" will be used. If the data element is not used, fill characters should be entered in character positions 4-7. If a form not listed is required, code "z" is used.

7	academic thesis below the doctoral level, including the masters	
a	bibliography	A list of the bibliographic resources sharing one or more common features such as subject, place of publication.
b	catalogue	A list of bibliographic resources in a collection or exhibition or available from a particular agency such as a publisher or bookshop.
c	index	An alphabetical list of terms, i.e. names or subject giving the locations where they can be found elsewhere. For an index to the text of the book itself use Index indicator character position 10.
d	abstract or summary	Includes descriptive, indicative, and informative abstracts.
e	dictionary	Alphabetical listings of words with a short description of their meaning and usage or with equivalents in another language.
f	encyclopaedia	Listing of names or terms on a given subject with an extensive description usually alphabetically arranged.
g	directory	Ordered list of persons, organizations or places, with information about each.
h	project description	
i	statistics	Numerical facts on a subject systematically collected and usually arranged in tabular form.

j	programmed text book	A text book in which material is presented to be learnt immediately before passing on to the next section.
k	patent	A document including a specification of a new invention giving the right to maker or sell it for a certain number of years. Includes patent applications.
l	standard	A document produced by an official body specifying a recommended way of producing an object with a view to achieving high quality.
m	dissertation or thesis (original)	A statement of investigation or research presenting the author's findings and any conclusions reached, submitted by the author in support of his candidature for a higher degree, professional qualification or other award. Use code "7" if doctoral dissertation/thesis needs to be distinguished from others. Use code "v" for a thesis that has been revised or reproduced for commercial publication.
n	laws and legislation	Resources including texts of laws. For treaties use code "s".
o	numeric table	Numerical information presented in a tabular form. Use code "i" if the data is statistical.
p	technical report	A document containing the findings of an investigation or study of a scientific or technical subject.
q	examination paper	A set of questions printed for use in an examination.
r	literature surveys/reviews	Narrative surveys, often critical, of activity in a specific field as documented in the literature, often linked to a bibliography. Also known as current publication surveys.
s	treaties	Formally concluded and ratified agreements between states. For other laws use code "n".
t	cartoons or comic strips	Books published as cartoons for children or adults.
v	dissertation or thesis (revised)	A thesis or dissertation reproduced or revised for commercial publication. Use code "m" for the original.
w	religious text	Language material containing religious, liturgical or sacred text and/or music (i.e. Bible stories, catechisms, devotional literature, hymns, indulgences, litanies, religious plays, sermons, service books, antiphonaries, breviaries, missals, etc.)
z	other	
#	value position not needed	

$a/8 Conference or Meeting Code

1-character code indicating whether the resource contains the proceedings, reports, or summaries of a conference, meeting or symposium. This may be used whether or not the conference, etc., is given a formal entry.

0	not a conference publication
1	conference publication

$a/9 Festschrift Indicator

1-character code indicating whether the resource is a festschrift. A festschrift is defined as a complimentary or memorial publication in the form of a collection of essays, addresses or bibliographical, scientific or other contributions often embodying the results of research, issued in honour of a person, institution or society, usually on the occasion of an anniversary celebration.

0	not a festschrift
1	festschrift

$a/10 Index Indicator

1-character code indicating whether the resource contains an index to its text. If the resource is an index to a different work see character positions 4-7 Form of contents codes, code "c".

0	no index
1	index present

$a/11 Literature Code

1-character code indicates the type of literary text if the work is a literary text.

a	fiction	
b	drama	Includes television plays, scenarios, etc.
c	essays	
d	humour, satire	For cartoons, etc. see character positions 4-7 Form of contents codes, code "t".
e	letters	As a literary form. For correspondence see character position 12 Biography code.
f	short stories	
g	poetry	Includes non-literary works in verse.
h	speeches, oratory	
i	libretto	A book giving the literary text, both sung and spoken, of an opera or other musical work.
y	not a literary text	
z	multiple or other literary forms	The resource is known to be literary but the precise form is not known, e.g. because of lack of specificity in the source format or more than one code applies.

$a/12 Biography Code

1-character code indicates the type of biography if the work is biographical.

a	autobiography	Includes letters, correspondence.
b	individual biography	
c	collective biography	E.g. works containing biographies of more than one person or of a family.
d	contains biographical information	E.g. directory, who's who.
y	not biographical	

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, Implementation Codes (character positions 6 and 7)	Character position 6 in the RECORD LABEL designates whether the resource is text material and character position 7 indicates whether it is monographic.
106 CODED DATA FIELD: TEXTUAL RESOURCE – FORM	This field holds further coded data pertaining specifically to the physical form of the resource.
215 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION	The codes relate to terms in the physical description of the resource.
328 DISSERTATION (THESIS) NOTE	This field can hold free text on resources coded "m" or "v" in $a/4-7.

Examples

EX 1

105 ##$abf##a###001yb

A document contains maps and plates. It has a bibliography and an index. It is about the life and travels of one individual. The components of the example 105 field are as follows:

Character position	Value	Notes
0-3	bf##	Resource contains maps and plates but no other illustrated material.
4-7	a###	Resource has a bibliography but no other distinctive form of contents.

8	0	Not a conference publication.
9	0	Not a festschrift.
10	1	Resource has an index.
11	y	Not a literary text.
12	b	Individual biography.

History

1994	Changes in name and function of field.
1994	New subfields/values: $a character positions 4-7: Content codes. New value h = project description.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Subfield $a 4-7: new code for academic works.
2023	Text edit.

106 CODED DATA FIELD: TEXTUAL RESOURCE – FORM

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains coded data relating to the form of textual unmediated resources (i.e., no mediation device is required to use or perceive the textual content of the resource).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
106	CODED DATA FIELD: TEXTUAL RESOURCE – FORM	NR	O
a	Form of Resource: Coded Data: Medium Designator	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Form of Resource: Coded Data: Medium Designator

1-character code indicates the physical medium of the resource. The following codes are used:

d	large print	
e	newspaper format	
f	Braille or Moon script	
g	microprint	
h	hand-written	
i	multimedia	Obsolete. This code is replaced by field 182 Coded Data Field - Media type, $a/0 code “m”= “multiple media”.
j	mini-print	
r	regular print	
s	electronic	Obsolete. This code is replaced by field 182 Coded Data Field - Media type, $a/0 code “b”= “electronic”.
t	Microform	Obsolete. This code is replaced by field 182 Coded Data Field - Media type, $a/0 code “c”= “microform”.
z	other form of material	

Notes on Field Contents

Where the textual material is regular print, the field may contain code “r” or be omitted altogether. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, character position 6, Type of Record	
1-- CODED DATA FIELDS for other types of materials	
182 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIA TYPE	
451 OTHER EDITION IN THE SAME MEDIUM	

452 OTHER EDITION IN ANOTHER MEDIUM	Used to link the current record to the original physical medium of the resource.

Examples

EX 1
106##$ae
The resource is a newspaper presented in a newspaper format.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2016	Textual resource-form of item.

110 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTINUING RESOURCES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains coded data relating to continuing resources including monographic series catalogued as series rather than as individual monographs.

It is recommended that it should always be present in records of continuing resources.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
110	CODED DATA FIELD: CONTINUING RESOURCES	NR	O
a	Continuing Resource Coded Data	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Continuing Resource Coded Data

Codes indicate aspects of continuing resource.

The subfield is 11-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Type of Continuing Resource Designator	1	0
Frequency of Issue	1	1
Regularity	1	2
Type of Material Code	1	3
Nature of Contents Code	3	4-6
Conference Publication Indicator	1	7
Title Page Availability Codes	1	8
Index Availability Code	1	9
Cumulative Index Availability Code	1	l0

Notes on Field Contents

If coding is not attempted on a data element, the fill character should be used in the character positions designated for that data element.

$a/0 Type of Continuing Resource Designator

1-character code indicating the type of serial or continuing resource.

a	periodical	Broad category of publications that includes resources with separate articles, stories, other writings, etc. that are published or distributed generally more frequently than annual including journals, magazines, print directories, and newsletters. Periodicals can be print or digital. Use this code if less granularity is desired. Otherwise, prefer codes for the specific types of periodicals.
b	monographic series	A type of continuing resource characterised by each part having a distinctive title and often individual authorship in addition to the series having a constant title.

		Each part will usually contain only a single work or a closely related group of works. Systematic or sequential numbering of parts is a common but not invariable further characteristic.
c	newspaper	A type of periodical characterised by the fact that it contains topical information and is usually printed in columns down each page.
d	directory	An itemized listing of information for the identification or location of persons, objects, organisations or places, arranged alphabetically, chronologically, or in other systematic order, and updated over time. Directories can be print or digital. If less granularity is desired for a digital directory, code "g" (Updating Website) can be used ; for a print directory, code "a" (Periodical) can be used.
e	updating loose-leaf	A bibliographic resource that consists of a base volume(s) updated by separate pages which are inserted, removed, and/or substituted.
f	updating database	A collection of logically interrelated data stored together in one or more computerised files, usually created and managed by a database management system and which may be accessible via a search interface. If less granularity is desired, code "g" (Updating website) can be used.
g	updating website	A collection of web pages and related content that is changing or customizing to give someone the most recent information. Use this code if less granularity is desired. Otherwise, prefer codes for the specific types of updating websites (updating database, blog, digital directory or repository).
h	blog	Online periodical appearing on a web page that may contain web links and/or comments on a particular topic or subject (broad or narrow in scope), often in the form of short articles arranged in reverse chronological order, the most recently added piece of information appearing first. Blog content may be written or collected by the site owner, or contributed by users. If less granularity is desired, code "w" (Updating Website) can be used.
i	repository	An archive for collecting, preserving, and disseminating digital copies of the intellectual output of an institution or a group of institutions, particularly a scholarly or research. It can also be a collection of materials on a specific subject, or from a specific community. It includes materials such as e-prints, technical reports, theses and dissertations, datasets, and teaching and learning materials.
j	journal	A periodical addressing readers interested in a specific subject or profession. Often includes original research and current developments.
m	magazine	A specialized periodical addressing non-scientific, non-professional general interest topics.
n	newsletter	A short periodical that can be issued by an organization, generally to its members, or to a specific audience to give current information about a topic or sphere of activity.
z	other	

$a/1 Frequency of Issue

A one-character code indicating the frequency of a continuing resource.

a	daily	
b	semiweekly (twice a week)	
c	weekly	
d	biweekly (every two weeks)	
e	semimonthly (twice a month)	
f	monthly	
g	bimonthly (every two months)	
h	quarterly	
i	three times a year	
k	annual	
l	biennial (every two years)	
m	triennial (every three years)	

n	three times a week	
o	three times a month	
p	continuously updated	
u	unknown	
y	no frequency (i.e. irregular)	See also character position 2 below.
z	other	

$a/2 Regularity

A one-character code indicating the regularity of a continuing resource.

a	regular	Continuing resource is issued at regular intervals.
b	normalised irregular	Continuing resource is not completely regular, but is irregular in a predictable pattern (e.g. monthly except July-August).
u	not known	
y	irregular	

$a/3 Type of Material Code

A one-character code indicating whether a continuing resource, as a whole, is one of certain frequently used types of reference materials. One character position only is available and the category most prominent in the resource should be selected.

a	bibliography	The continuing resource consists of a bibliography, e.g., a national bibliography
b	catalogue	A list of bibliographic resources in a collection or exhibition or available from a particular agency such as a publisher or bookshop, e.g. a publisher's catalogue in serial form.
c	index	E.g. a continuing resource index to a continuing resource. For the availability of an index to the continuing resource itself see character position 9.
d	abstract or summary	Includes descriptive, indicative and informative abstracts.
e	dictionary	Continuing resource consisting of an alphabetical listing of words with a short description of their meaning and usage or with equivalents in another language.
f	encyclopaedia	Continuing resource listing names or terms in a given subject with an extensive description usually alphabetically arranged.
g	directory	Ordered list of persons, corporate bodies or places with information about each
h	yearbook	Continuing resource designed to present a body of reference matter intended to be revised at annual intervals, or reporting or reviewing the year's work or the main events of the year in a particular field of interest.
i	statistics	Numerical facts on a subject systematically collected and usually arranged in tabular form, e.g. statistical reports.
j	programmed texts	Continuing resource in which material is presented to be learnt immediately before passing on to the next section.
k	reviews	i.e. a continuing resource consisting of book reviews and/or reviews of moving pictures, etc.
l	laws and legislation	Documents including texts of laws.
m	law reports and digests	Regular reviews of legal proceedings.
n	legal articles	Articles in a journal dealing with general legal topics.
o	legal cases and case notes	Reports and discussions on legal cases.
p	biography	Used when a continuing resource consists of an individual bibliography, collective biographies or contains biographical information, e.g. a who's who.

r	literature surveys/reviews	Narrative surveys, often critical, of activity in a specific field as documented in the literature, often linked to a bibliography. Also known as state-of-the-art reviews.
t	cartoons or comic strips	Continuing resources published as cartoons for children or adults.
z	other kinds of contents	
#	value position not needed	

$a/4-6 Nature of Contents Code

Three characters indicating whether a continuing resource contains one or more frequently-used types of reference materials, to be distinguished from Type of material code which indicates what the continuing resource is. Up to three codes can be used (left justified); unused positions contain blanks. If more than three codes are appropriate, their order in the list determines which are recorded. The codes given for character position 3 above are used.

$a/7 Conference Publication Indicator

A one-character code indicating whether the continuing resource contains the proceedings, reports or summaries of a conference, meeting or symposium, e.g. annual conference proceedings.

0	not a conference publication
1	conference publication

$a/8 Title Page Availability Code

A one-character code indicating the existence of a title page for separate volumes of a continuing resource and the method of acquisition.

a	in last issue of volume – loose
b	in last issue of volume – attached
c	in first issue of next volume – loose
d	in first issue of next volume – attached
e	published separately – free upon request
f	published separately – free – sent automatically
g	published separately – purchase – request
u	unknown at time of record creation
x	not applicable
y	no title-page issued
z	other

$a/9 Index Availability Code

A one-character code indicating the availability of an index or a table of contents for separate volumes of a continuing resource and the method of acquisition. A continuing resource which is an index is indicated by code "c" in character position 3.

a	each issue contains an index to its own contents – loose
b	in last issue of volume – loose – separately paged
c	in last issue of volume – unpaged
d	in last issue of volume – attached
e	in first issue of next volume – loose – separately paged
f	in first issue of next volume – loose – unpaged
g	in first issue of next volume – attached
h	published separately – free – sent automatically
i	published separately – free upon request
j	published separately – bound from publisher – free – sent automatically
k	published separately – bound from publisher – free upon request

l	published separately – bound from publisher – purchase upon request
m	this continuing resource is a supplement or subseries indexed
u	unknown at time of record creation
x	not applicable
y	index is not available
z	other

$a/10 Cumulative Index Availability Code

A one-character code indicating whether a cumulative index or table of contents is issued.

0	no cumulative index or table of contents
1	cumulative index or table of contents available

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, Bibliographic level (character position 7)	Bibliographic level in the RECORD LABEL designates whether the resource is a continuing resource, hence whether this field would be expected to be present.

Examples

EX 1

110 ##$aakahg##1zz1

The yearbook of a learned society includes mainly its conference proceedings and a directory of its members. Each volume is bound with title page and index. An index is published every five years. The components of this field are as follows.

Character position	Value	Notes
0	a	Periodical
1	k	Annual
2	a	Regular
3	h	Yearbook
4-6	g##	Contains directory information
7	l	Contains annual conference proceedings
8	z	Other (title page is part of annual volume)
9	z	Other (index is part of annual volume)
10	1	Cumulative index available

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2017	Corrections and additions.
2021	Update and additions in $a/0.
2023	Text edit.

111 CODED DATA FIELD: SERIALS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES [OBSOLETE]

Field Definition and Scope

This field contained coded information on the physical attributes of serials.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
111	CODED DATA FIELD: SERIALS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES [OBSOLETE]	-	Obsolete

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

115 CODED DATA FIELD: VISUAL PROJECTIONS, VIDEO RECORDINGS AND MOTION PICTURES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains fixed-length coded data applicable to visual projections, video recordings and motion pictures.

This field was designed prior to the release of the FRBR and IFLA LRM, therefore, all data from this field are relevant for pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM or non-FRBR/IFLA LRM context.

According to the FRBR/IFLA LRM, some data in this field are preferably carried in the linked authority data describing the relevant related entity (see Related Fields) unless the information pertains to the manifestation.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
115	CODED DATA FIELD: VISUAL PROJECTIONS, VIDEO RECORDINGS AND MOTION PICTURES	R	O
a	Coded Data – General	NR	O
b	Motion Picture Coded Data Archival	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

All data entered in the subfields is identified by character position within the subfield. Conventionally the character positions are numbered from 0.

$a Coded Data – General

Codes indicate aspects of visual projection, video recording or motion picture.

The subfield is 20-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Type of Material	1	0
Length	3	1-3
Colour Indicator	1	4
Sound Indicator	1	5
Media for Sound	1	6
Width or Dimensions	1	7
Form of Release – Visual Projection, Motion Picture	1	8
Technique – Video recording, Motion Picture	1	9
Presentation Format – Motion Picture	1	10
Accompanying Material	4	11-14
Form of Release – Video recording	1	15
Presentation Format – Video recording	1	16
Base of Emulsion Material – Visual Projection	1	17
Secondary Support Material – Visual Projection	1	18
Broadcast Standard – Video recording	1	19

$b Motion Picture Coded Data Archival

Codes indicate aspects of motion pictures.

The subfield is 15-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $b fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Generation	1	0
Production Elements	1	1
Refined Categories of Colour for Moving Pictures	1	2
Film Emulsion (Polarity)	1	3
Film Base	1	4
Kind of Sound for Moving Images	1	5
Kind of Film Stock or Print	1	6
Deterioration Stage	1	7
Completeness	1	8
Film Inspection Date	6	9-14

Notes on Field Contents

All character positions must appear in the subfield; if coding is not attempted on a data element, the fill character (|) should be used.

$a Coded Data – General

$a/0 Type of Material

1-character code indicates the type of material.

a	motion picture
b	visual projection
c	video recording

$a/1-3 Length

3-characters give the length of the material indicated in the preceding character, Type of material. Length for motion pictures, videotapes, or electronic video recordings will be expressed in minutes; length for filmstrips, slides, or transparencies will be expressed in number of frames, number of slides, or number of transparencies, respectively. If the length is not known or the type of material is not specific, this data element contains three blanks (###). If the length exceeds three characters, this data element contains three zeros (000). The number is right justified; unused positions contain zeros.

Examples:

Motion picture that is 19 minutes long

Type of material: a

Length: 019

Filmstrip that is 44 frames in length

Type of material: b

Length: 044

$a/4 Colour Indicator

1-character code indicates the colour characteristics.

Use blank if this data pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entity other than the Manifestation.

a	black-and-white	The image or motion picture is in black-and-white tones only.

b	multicoloured	The image or motion picture is in more than one colour.
c	mixed	The image(s) or motion picture(s) is in a combination of black-and-white, one colour, and/or colours.
d	one colour	The image is in a single colour. Used only for transparency sets. Not used with video recordings and motion pictures. Does not include black-and-white images.
u	unknown	
z	other	The image or motion picture has colour characteristics not covered by the other defined codes. Includes stained, tinted, toned (e.g., sepia).
#	value position not needed	According to cataloguing rules based on IFLA LRM, this data is not needed at the manifestation level.

$a/5 Sound Indicator

1-character code indicates whether the sound is on the medium or separate.

Use blank if this data pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entity other than the Manifestation.

a	sound on medium	
b	soundtrack separate	
u	unknown	
y	no sound	
#	value position not needed	According to cataloguing rules based on IFLA LRM, this data is not needed at the manifestation level.

$a/6 Media for Sound

1-character code indicates the medium used to carry the sound, when sound is present.

a	optical sound track on motion picture film
b	magnetic sound track on motion picture film
c	magnetic audio tape in cartridge
d	sound disc
e	magnetic audio tape on reel
f	magnetic audio tape in cassette
g	optical and magnetic sound track on motion picture film
h	videotape
i	videodisc
u	unknown
x	no sound
z	other

$a/7 Width or Dimensions

1-character code indicates the width of films or the dimensions of slides, transparencies, and videotapes.

a	8mm	Motion pictures and filmstrips
b	Super 8mm	Motion pictures and filmstrips
c	9.5mm	Motion pictures and filmstrips
d	16mm	Motion pictures and filmstrips
e	28mm	Motion pictures and filmstrips
f	35mm	Motion pictures and filmstrips
g	70mm	Motion pictures and filmstrips
a	8mm	Videotapes
m	¾ in. (2 cm.)	Videotapes
n	¼ in. (½ cm.)	Videotapes
o	½ in. (1 1/3cm.)	Videotapes
p	1 in. (2½ cm.)	Videotapes
q	2 in. (5 cm	Videotapes

k	2¼ x 2¼ in. (5½ x 5½ cm.)	Slides
l	2 x 2 in. (5 x 5 cm.)	Slides
r	8 x 10 in (20 x 25 cm.)	Transparencies
s	4 x 5 in. (10 x 12½ cm.)	Transparencies
t	5 x 7 in. (12½ x 17½ cm.)	Transparencies
u	7 x 7 in. (17½ x 17½ cm.)	Transparencies
v	8 x 8 in. (20 x 20 cm)	Transparencies
w	9 x 9 in. (22½ x 22½ cm.)	Transparencies
x	10 x 10 in (25 x 25 cm.)	Transparencies
z	none of these	

$a/8 Form of Release – Visual Projection, Motion Picture

1-character code indicates the form of release.

a	film reel	
b	film cartridge	
c	film cassette	
d	other film type	
g	filmstrip cartridge	
h	filmslip	
i	other filmstrip type	
j	film strip roll	
k	slide, slide set, stereograph	
l	transparency	
u	unknown	
x	not a motion picture or visual projection	
z	other forms of release	See character position 15 for form of release for video recording.

$a/9 Technique Video Recording, Motion Picture

1-character code indicates the technique used for motion pictures and video recordings.

a	animation
b	live action
c	animation and live action
u	unspecified/unknown
x	not a motion picture or video recording
z	other

$a/10 Presentation Format – Motion Picture

1-character code indicates whether a motion picture has used a standard or special presentation format.

a	standard sound aperture (reduced format)
b	non-anamorphic (widescreen)
c	3D
d	anamorphic (widescreen)
e	standard silent aperture
f	other widescreen format
x	not a motion picture
u	unknown
z	other

$a/11-14 Accompanying Material

Alphabetic character codes indicate the types of material that accompany the material. Up to four codes can be used (left justified), unused positions contain blanks. If more than four codes are appropriate, their order on the following list determines which are recorded.

a	stills
b	script material
c	posters
d	programmes and pressbooks
e	lobby cards
f	instructional materials
g	score or other music format
h	set or costume designs
z	other accompanying material

$a/15 Form of Release – Video Recording

a	videocartridge
b	videodisc
c	videocassette
d	videoreel
e	electronic video recording (EVR)
x	not a video recording
z	other videotype

NOTE: "Electronic video recording (EVR)" is an obsolete form of video recording on 16mm film.

$a/16 Presentation Format – Video Recording

a	Beta (videocassette)	Home video format introduced in 1975 by Sony Corporation.
b	VHS (videocassette)	Home video format developed by Japan Victor Corporation (JVC) and marketed in 1977.
c	U-matic (videocassette)	Video format using Sony's trademark name, referring to its tape threading path in a Ushape. Also known as "U type standard".
d	EIAJ (reel)	The standard ½-inch reel-to-reel helical scan videotape format. Named for the Japanese standards committee (the Electronics Industries Association of Japan) which set the standard for ½ inch video tape recorders manufactured since 1969.
e	Type C (reel)	Video format using one recording head, with tape speed at 9.61 inches per second. This is the broadcast standard in most countries. Type C equipment and technology is made by Sony, RCA, and others.
f	Quadruplex (reel)	Video system using four recording heads, developed by Ampex in the 1950s.
g	Laser optical (Reflective) videodisc	A grooveless, smooth round plastic disc with a mirror-like surface, usually 12" in diameter, on both sides of which is stored video information. The disk is read by a weak laser beam. This system became available to the public in 1978 and is currently used in home and industrial applications.
h	CED (capacitance electronic disk) videodisc	A grooved, plastic disk, usually 12" in diameter, containing information recorded as deep pits in the bottom of the grooves, and played by an electronic stylus. In 1984 RCA, the manufacturer of CED videodisc players, announced its decision to cease production.
i	V2000 (videocassette)	Home video format developed in Europe by Philips since 1980. Reversible.
j	Video8 (videocassette)	Home video format.
k	DVD-Video	Digital Versatile Disc.
l	Blu-ray Disc	
u	unknown	
x	not a video recording	
z	other	

$a/17 Base of Emulsion Material – Visual Projection

1-character code is used to specify the type of material for the base of the emulsion. The following values are used:

a	safety film	
b	film base other than safety film	
c	synthetics (plastic, vinyl, etc.)	
u	unknown	
v	mixed collection	Containing more than one type of base.
x	not a visual projection	
z	other	

$a/18 Secondary Support Material – Visual Projection

1-character code is used to specify the type of material used for the mounting.

a	cardboard	
b	glass	
c	synthetics (plastic, vinyl, etc.)	
d	metal	
e	metal and glass	
f	synthetics (plastic, vinyl, etc.) and glass	
u	unknown	
x	not a visual projection	
y	not present	No secondary support.
z	other	

$a/19 Broadcast Standard – Video Recording

1-character code indicates the number of lines (and the system where necessary).

a	405	
b	525 (e.g. NTSC)	
c	625 PAL	
d	625 SECAM	
g	1125	
#	not a video recording	EX 3

$b Motion Picture Coded Data – Archival

$b/0 Generation

1-character position indicates the generation of the film.

a	original
b	master
c	duplicate
d	reference print/viewing copy
u	unknown
x	not applicable
z	other

$b/1 Production Elements

1-character code indicates the production elements of the film. If more than one production element is present, code for the element considered most important.

a	workprint
b	trims
c	outtakes
d	rushes
e	mixing tracks

g	title bands/intertitle rolls
h	production rolls
u	unknown
x	not applicable
z	other

$b/2 Refined Categories of Colour for Moving Pictures

1-character code indicates the colour category.

a	3 layer colour	
b	2 colour, single strip	
c	undetermined 2 colour	
d	undetermined 3 colour	
e	3 strip colour	
f	2 strip colour	
g	red strip	
h	blue or green strip	
i	cyan strip	
j	magenta strip	
k	yellow strip	
l	S E N 2	
m	S E N 3	
n	sepia tone	
o	other tone	
p	tint	
q	tinted and toned	
r	stencil colour	
s	handcoloured	
u	unknown	
x	not applicable	Resource not a colour film.
z	other	

$b/3 Film Emulsion (Polarity)

1-character code indicates the film emulsion polarity of the film.

a	positive
b	negative
u	unknown
x	not applicable
z	other

$b/4 Film Base

1-character code indicates the type of film base.

a	safety (triacetate)
b	nitrate
c	safety (diacetate)
d	polyester base (e.g. ester)
u	unknown
v	mixed base (nitrate and safety)
z	other

$b/5 Kind of Sound for Moving Images

1-character code indicates the number of channels for sound reproduction the resource is designed to support.

Use blank if this data pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entity other than the Manifestation.

a	monaural	
b	stereophonic	
c	multichannel, surround or quadraphonic	
u	unknown	
v	mixed	
x	not applicable	Resource is silent.
z	other	
#	value position not needed	According to cataloguing rules based on IFLA LRM, this data is not needed at the manifestation level.

$b/6 Kind of Film Stock or Print

1-character code indicates the type of colour film stock or colour print.

a	imbibition dye transfer	
b	three layer stock	
c	three layer stock (low fade)	
d	duplitised stock	
u	unknown	
x	not applicable	Resource not a colour film.
z	other	

$b/7 Deterioration Stage

1-character code indicates the amount of deterioration of the film stock. If more than one condition is present, use the code for the most serious condition.

b	nitrate – suspicious odour	
c	nitrate – pungent odour	
d	nitrate – brownish, discoloration, fading, dusty	
e	nitrate – sticky	
f	nitrate – frothy, bubbles, blisters	
g	nitrate – congealed	
h	nitrate – powder	
k	non-nitrate – detectable deterioration	E.g. diacetate odour.
l	non-nitrate – advanced deterioration	
m	non-nitrate – disaster	
y	no deterioration	

$b/8 Completeness

1-character code indicates whether film is judged to be complete or not.

a	incomplete	
b	complete	
u	unknown	
x	not applicable	When it is impossible or inapplicable to determine completeness, e.g. home movies, unedited footage, out-takes, unidentified material.

$b/9-14 Film Inspection Date

6-character code records the most recent film inspection date. The components of the date are:

(a) Year. Four numeric characters.

(b) Month. Two numeric characters, right justified. Unused positions contain zeros.

EX 1
198109
Last inspection date was September 1981.

EX 2
198300
Last inspection date was in 1983. The month is not known.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities format	
147 CODED DATA FIELD: COLOUR AND SOUND CONTENT	In the case of LRM compliant cataloguing, information related to colour and sound content should be entered in field A147 in expression entity records. Only information pertaining to the manifestation level should be entered in field 115.

Examples

EX 1
115 ##$ac185baizxbx####bkxxc
A DVD video recording ($a/16: k, $a/0: c) of The Last samurai is 185 minutes long ($a/1-3: 185). It is in colour ($a/4: b) and has sound (on the disc) ($a/5: a, $a/6: i). Dimensions are not coded for videodiscs ($a/7: z). The form of release is videodisc ($a/8:x, $a/15: b), and the presentation format is DVD-Video ($a/16: k). There is no accompanying material ($a/11-14: ####), broadcast standard is 625 PAL ($a/19: c).
EX 2
115 ##$ac050cahoxbx####cbxxc
A videocassette ($a/16: c) with a documentary film *Smaragdna reka*, in combination of black-and-white and colour ($a/4: c), has sound on videotape ($a/5: a, $a/6: h), width is 1 1/3 cm ($a/7: o), and there is no accompanying material.
EX 3
115 ##$ab042byxrlxx####xxcy#
A set of 42 transparencies ($a/0: b, $a/8: l) Geografija I, coloured ($a/4: b), without sound ($a/5: y, $a/6: x), dimensions 20 x 25 cm, without accompanying material.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2017	Changes for colour indicator.
2020	Changes to scope of field, subfield a positions 4 and 5 and subfield b position 5, added related fields.
2023	Text edit.

116 CODED DATA FIELD: GRAPHICS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains coded data relating to non-projected graphics (e.g. prints and photographs) needed for library and museum-based cataloguing.

Repeatable if more than one type of graphic material is covered by the same catalogue record.

This field was designed prior to the release of the FRBR and IFLA LRM, therefore, all data from this field are relevant for pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM or non-FRBR/IFLA LRM context.

According to the FRBR/IFLA LRM, some data in this field are preferably carried in the linked authority data (see Related Fields) describing the relevant related entity, unless the information pertains to the manifestation.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
116	CODED DATA FIELD: GRAPHICS	R	O
a	Coded Data for Graphics	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Coded Data for Graphics

Codes indicate aspects of graphic.

The subfield is 17-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Specific Material Designation	1	0
Primary Support Material	1	1
Secondary Support Material	1	2
Colour	1	3
Technique (Drawings, Paintings)	6	4-9
Technique (Prints)	6	10-15
Functional Designation	2	16-17

Notes on Field Contents

If coding is not attempted for a data element, the fill character should be used in the character positions designated for the data element. If all seven data elements are not coded, the field should not be present.

$a/0 Specific Material Designation

1-character code is used to record the specific material designation that describes the special class of material (usually the class of physical object) to which the resource belongs. The following codes are used:

a	collage	An original work created by affixing various materials (paper, wood, newspaper, cloth, etc.) to a surface.
b	drawing	An original visual representation (other than a print or painting) made with pencil, pen, chalk, or other writing instrument on paper or similar non-rigid support.

c	painting	An original visual representation produced by applying paint to a surface.
d	photomechanical reproduction	Any picture produced in imitation of another picture through the use of a photographic process to transfer the image to a printing surface. Hence, a snapshot made to document a painting or a Xerox copy of a print are considered photomechanical reproductions. Art reproductions, postcards, posters, and study prints are included here.
e	photonegative	A piece of film, a glass plate, or paper on which appears a "negative" image, i.e. directly opposite to a "positive" image (photoprint), slide, or transparency. Used to produce a positive print. Does not include negative photoprints, photoprints that are a combination of negative and positive images, photographs or solarized prints, all of which are considered to be techniques used when making photoprints.
f	photoprint	A positive image made either directly or indirectly on a sensitised surface by the action of light or other radiant energy. The term "photoprint" is used here as a more precise term than "photograph", which technically can cover both the print and the negative. Radiographs and opaque stereographs are included here.
h	picture	A two-dimensional visual representation accessible to the naked eye and generally on an opaque backing. This term is used when a more specific designation is unknown or not desired.
i	print	A design or picture transferred from an engraved plate, wood block, lithographic stone, or other medium. Generally, there are four types: planographic print, relief print, intaglio print, and stencil print.
k	technical drawing	A cross section, detail, diagram, elevation, perspective, plan, working plan, etc., made for use in an engineering or other technical context.
m	master	Any plate, mould, matrix, die etc. which allows the reproduction of the same impression.
z	other non-projected graphic type	Other types not included in the above. Includes mixed media productions made by a combination of freehand and printing techniques when one or the other does not predominate. In some cases, where mixed media are applied, one must decide whether the creator intends the resource to be a photoprint (even though it is painted over the photographic image). Hand colouring is considered a technique applied to a printing process; this aspect is covered by a character position 3.Computer-produced graphics and the various duplication masters (including spirit masters and transparency masters) are included here.

$a/1 Primary Support Material

1-character code is used to specify the type of material used for the primary support (i.e., the support or base on which an image is printed or executed) of a non-projected graphic. The following codes are used:

a	canvas
b	bristol board
c	cardboard/illustration board
d	glass
e	synthetics (plastic, vinyl, etc.)
f	skins (leather, parchment, vellum, etc.)
g	textiles (including man-made fibres)
h	metal
i	paper
j	plaster
k	hardboard
l	porcelain
m	stone
n	wood

u	unknown
v	mixed collection
z	other

$a/2 Secondary Support Material

1-character code is used to specify the type of material (other than normal museum matting) to which the primary support is attached (mounting).

This character position is coded only when the mount or mat is of historical, informational, aesthetic, or archival importance. (In other cases code "y" is used.) The same codes are used within this element as with Primary Support Material (character position 1), with the following additional code:

y	no secondary support

$a/3 Colour

1-character code indicates the colour characteristics of the non-projected graphic resource.

Use blank if this data pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entity other than the Manifestation.

a	one colour	The image is in a single colour (i. e. monochrome). Used for monochrome artwork. Not used with photographic materials. Does not include black-and-white.
b	black-and-white	The image is in black-and-white tones only.
c	multicoloured	The image is in more than one colour.
d	hand coloured	The image, produced by a printing or photographic process, is coloured by hand.
u	unknown	
v	mixed	The image is in a combination of black-and-white, one colour, and/or colours.
x	not applicable	The colour characteristics do not apply.
z	other	The image has colour characteristics not covered by the other defined codes. Includes stained, tinted, toned (e.g., sepia).
#	value position not needed	According to cataloguing rules based on IFLA LRM, this data is not needed at the manifestation level.

$a/4-9 Techniques (Drawings, Paintings)

2-character code is used to specify the technique in which drawing and paintings are executed. There are three two-character positions for technique codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If a graphic is not a drawing or painting, the first character positions contain xx (Not Applicable) and the remaining positions contain blanks. The following codes are used:

aa	pencil
ab	graphite
ac	colour pencil
ad	India ink
ae	lavierung India ink
af	coal
ag	chalk
ah	black chalk
ai	sanguine
aj	water colour
ak	tempera
al	gouache
am	pastel
an	oil
ba	felt-tip pen

bb	stain
bc	crayon
bd	sepia
be	writing ink
bf	casein
bg	golding
bh	encaustic
bi	acrylics
bj	collage
bk	silver point
bl	air brush
uu	unknown
vv	mixed
xx	not applicable
zz	other

$a/10-15 Technique (Prints)

2-character code is used to specify the technique in which prints are executed. There are three two-character positions for technique codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If a graphic is not a print, the first two character positions contain xx (not applicable) and the remaining positions contain blanks. The following codes are used:

ba	woodcut
bb	chiaroscuro woodcut
bc	white-line woodcut
bd	camaiu
be	heliogravure
bf	chromolithography
bg	lino-cut
bh	etching
bi	lithography
bj	photolithography
bk	zincography
bl	algraphy
bm	aquatint
bn	reservage (sugar aquatint)
ca	vernis-mou (soft ground etching or tracing)
cb	engraving
cc	engraving in the crayon manner
cd	burin engraving
ce	drypoint
cf	mezzotinta (mezzotint)
cg	monotype
ch	silkscreen
ci	steel engraving
cj	computer graphics
ck	photocopying
uu	unknown
vv	mixed
xx	not applicable
zz	other

$a/16-17 Functional Designation

2-character code is used to describe the functional form of the resource. If the code does not apply, the two character positions contain xx (not applicable). The following codes are used:

aa	architectural drawing	Graphic delineation made for the design and construction (or documentation of design and construction) of sites, structures, buildings, details, fixtures, furnishings, and decorations, as well as other objects designed by an architect or architectural office.
ab	item cover	Cover forming the binding or outer enclosure of an resource, i.e. hardback or paperback book covers, record sleeves, etc. Covers may be detached or attached to the resource.
ac	sticker	Message or design on slips of paper that are gummed or otherwise treated to adhere to a surface. Also included book owners' identification labels (ex libris); usually intended for attaching inside a book. Book plates may be attached or detached.
ad	poster	Single or multi-sheet chiefly pictorial notice made for posting, usually in a public place, to attract attention to events, activities, causes, goods, or services. The purely decorative posters made since about 1960 are included.
ae	postcard	Card with a graphic scene on one side, on which a message may be written or printed for mailing without an envelope.
af	greetings card	Card sent or given on special occasions; usually bearing messages of good will.
ag	chart	An opaque sheet that exhibits information in a graphic or tabular form, e.g. a wall chart.
ah	playing cards	Cards made in sets of a designated number of cards and marked for use in playing one or more games or telling fortunes; marks may follow a standard suit and rank system or may be special designs.
ai	flash card	A card or other opaque material printed with words, numerals, or pictures and designed for rapid display. Activity cards are included here.
aj	ephemera	Transient everyday resources, usually printed and on paper, that are manufactured for a specific limited use, then often thrown away. Also included everyday resources that are meant to be saved, at least for a while. Code as ephemera if no more specific code is suitable.
an	calendar	A table showing the months, days, of the week, and dates of a given year.
as	place card	Decorated card that marks a place reserved for occupancy.
au	santino	Printed card which has, on one side, the picture of a holy or sacred subject and, on the other side a prayer or an appeal formula.
uu	unknown	
vv	mixed	
xx	not applicable	
zz	other	

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities format	
147 CODED DATA FIELD: COLOUR AND SOUND CONTENT	In the case of LRM compliant cataloguing, information related to colour and sound content should be entered in field 147 in expression entity records. Information pertaining to the manifestation level should be entered in field 116.

History

1994	New subfields/values: Revised and no longer provisional.
2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2017	Changes for colour indicator.
2020	Changes to scope of field, subfield a position 3 and added Related fields.
2023	Text edit.

117 CODED DATA FIELD: THREE-DIMENSIONAL ARTEFACTS AND REALIA

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains coded data relating to three-dimensional artefacts and realia for library and museum-based cataloguing.

If a precise description of the numismatic resource is required (e.g. according to the Numismatic Description Standard (NUDS)), both subfields may be used.

Repeatable if more than one type of three-dimensional artefacts and realia material is covered by the same catalogue record.

This field was designed prior to the release of the FRBR and IFLA LRM, therefore, all data from this field are relevant for pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM or non-FRBR/IFLA LRM context.

According to the FRBR/IFLA LRM, some data in this field are preferably carried in the linked authority data (see Related Fields) describing the relevant related entity, unless the information pertains to the manifestation.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
117	CODED DATA FIELD: THREE-DIMENSIONAL ARTEFACTS AND REALIA	R	O
a	Coded Data for Three-Dimensional Artefacts and Realia	NR	O
b	Coded Data for Numismatic Resources	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Coded Data for Three-Dimensional Artefacts and Realia

Codes indicate the class of material to which the object belongs and other specific physical characteristics of the three-dimensional artefact or realia.

The subfield is 9-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Specific Material Designation	2	0-1
Material	6	2-7
Colour	1	8

$b Coded Data for Numismatic Resources

Codes indicate specific physical and production information and the class of material to which the numismatic resource belongs.

The subfield is 11-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $b fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions

Specific Material Designation	1	0
Manufacture	3	1-3
Peculiarity of Production	3	4-6
Secondary Treatment	3	7-9
Monetary Status	1	10

Notes on Field Contents

If coding is not attempted for a data element, the fill character should be used in the character positions designated for the data element. If all three data elements are not coded, the field should not be present.

$a/0-1 Specific Material Designation

2-character code is used to record the specific material designation that describes the special class of material (usually the class of physical object) to which the resource belongs. The following codes are used:

aa	study kit	
ab	laboratory and construction kits	
ac	specimens (biological etc.)	
ad	fauna	
ae	flora	
af	minerals	
ag	microscope slides	
ah	jigsaws	
ai	tools and equipment	
aj	arms	
ak	containers	
al	furniture	
am	transport	
an	textiles	
ao	clothes	
ap	games and recreation	
aq	toys	
ar	dolls	
as	models	
at	models for making	
az	seals	1) A piece of wax or some other plastic or adhesive substance fixed on a folder letter or document, etc. in such a way that an opening cannot be effected without breaking it. 2) A piece of wax, lead etc. with an individual design stamped into it, attached to a document as a guarantee of authenticity.
ba	dioramas	
bb	replicas	
bc	sculptures	
bd	design objects	
be	industrial production	
bf	machines	
bg	coins	Only for use in non-specific numismatic cataloguing. Otherwise, use zz and indicate the specific numismatic designation in subfield $b.
bh	medals	Only for use in non-specific numismatic cataloguing. Otherwise, use zz and indicate the specific numismatic designation in subfield $b.
bg	coins	
bh	medals	

bi	jewellery	
bj	artefacts	
uu	unknown	
vv	mixed	
zz	other	

$a/2-7 Material

2-character code is used to specify the type of material the three-dimensional artefact or realia is made of. There are three two-character positions for type of material codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. The following codes are used:

aa	terra-cotta
ab	wax
ac	clay
ad	majolica
ae	porcelain
af	ceramic
ag	plaster
ah	glass
ba	wood
ca	ivory
da	stone
db	precious stones
dc	marble
dd	basalt
de	Obsolete; where used, recode as da.
df	porphyry
ea	paper
eb	cardboard
fa	precious metals
fb	metal
fc	bronze
fd	copper
fe	gold
ff	silver
fg	iron
fh	nickel
fi	tin
fj	aluminum
fk	platinum
fl	lead
fm	zinc
fn	billon
fo	electrum
fp	orichalcum
fq	pewter
fr	brass
fs	cupro-nickel
ft	bronze aluminum
fu	nickel silver
fv	copper alloy
ga	synthetics
ha	textile
ia	plastic

uu	unknown
vv	mixed
zz	other

$a/8 Colour

1-character code indicates the colour characteristics of the three-dimensional artefact and realia.

Use blank if this data pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entity other than the Manifestation.

a	one colour	The resource is in a single colour. Does not include black-and-white.
b	black-and-white	The resource is in black-and-white tones only.
c	multicoloured	The resource is in more than one colour.
d	hand coloured	The resource is coloured by hand.
u	unknown	
v	mixed	The resource or collection is in a combination of black-and-white and/or colours.
x	not applicable	The colour characteristics do not apply.
z	other	The resource has colour characteristics not covered by the other defined codes. Includes stained, tinted, toned (e.g., sepia).
#	value position not needed	According to specific cataloguing rules based on IFLA LRM, this data is not needed at the manifestation level.

$b/0 Specific Material Designation of a Numismatic Resource

1-character code indicates the specific material designation describing the particular class to which a numismatic resource belongs.

a	coin	Small, flat, usually round piece of metal or plastic used primarily as a medium of exchange or legal tender. They are standardized in weight, and produced in large quantities at a mint in order to facilitate trade. They are most often issued by a government.
b	medal	Small portable artistic object, a thin disc, normally of metal, carrying a design, usually on both sides. They typically have a commemorative purpose of some kind, and many are given as awards.
c	token	A coin-like item used in commerce but not issued by a government as official currency.
d	tesserae	An ancient form of token.
e	medallion	A coin-like Roman period object, often commemorative in nature, that seem not to have been issued for general circulation.
f	coin ornament	Imitation of a coin used as jewellery or as decoration on clothing or similar; often very light, frequently only struck on one side.
g	pattern coin	Test strike with a coin die.
h	coin weight	Weight for checking whether coins are of the correct weight.
i	paper money	A banknote (often known as a bill, paper money, or simply a note) is a type of negotiable instrument known as a promissory note, made by a bank, payable to the bearer on demand.
j	die	Stamps, usually engraved, used for impressing a design upon a softer material, as in coining money, medals, and printing banknotes.
k	punch	Small stamp for making test or similar marks on coins or similar objects, or for stamping an individual element of the design into a coin die.
l	flan	Coin flan, generally in the form of a small metal plate.
m	ingot	A mass of metal, usually purified, sometimes with indication of its value in a known weight standard.
n	commodity money	Object that originally had another function, but that at the same time or subsequently is used as money (or a money substitute)
o	piedfort	A coin often exactly twice its normal weight and thickness. The name derives from a French word meaning “heavy weight”. They are normally not

		circulated, and are only struck for presentation purposes by mint officials for collectors or VIPs. The word is commonly misspelled as "piefort".
z	other	Other numismatic objects.

$b/1-3 Manufacture

A three 1-position codes indicate how a numismatic resource was manufactured. They should be entered from left to right.

a	struck	Technique of manufacture that involves the hammering or pressing together of two dies to impress a blank disk.
b	cast	Technique of manufacture by pouring into a mould.
c	gilded	
d	plated	Technique of manufacture that involves covering a (normally base) metal core with a layer of (normally precious) metal.
e	pressed	Technique involving the pressing of material into a form.
f	electrotyped	Production of metal copies of an original by an electrochemical process (generally referred to as electroforming).
g	enameled	The process of applying a vitreous coating to metal, ceramic, glass, or other surfaces by fusion using heat in a kiln or furnace, with the result of creating a smooth, hard surface.
u	unknown	
z	other	

$b/4-6 Peculiarity of Production

A three 1-character codes indicate any peculiarity of production that can be observed on a numismatic resource. They should be entered from left to right.

a	flawed die	A cracked, worn, corroded, or similarly defective die used to strike a numismatic resource.
b	recut die	Secondary re-engraving of a coin die after it has already been used to strike coins, for example to repair defects in the die or modify the design.
c	off centre	A strike whereby the die was not placed centrally on the flan, but displaced to one side so that part of the design is missing.
d	brockage	A misstrike whereby a numismatic resource remains in the upper die after striking and acts as the die to strike the next coin, thereby producing a negative image of the design in the lower die.
e	double strike	Double or multiple strike during production whereby the die is displaced for the second or subsequent strike.
f	overstrike	Striking of a new type using an existing numismatic resource as a flan. Elements of the original type are visible beneath the new one.
g	gouging	The practice of scraping material from the surface of a flan to reduce its weight.
h	cracked flan	Flan that has cracked and been partially split as a result of the striking process.
i	folded flan	A flan or coin which is folded in two or more prior to being struck on the outer faces.
j	surface enrichment	The intentional practice of increasing the precious metal content of the surface of a numismatic resource.
k	central point	Central point marked into a flan before striking.
l	hammered rim	Creation of a raised rim by hammering parallel to the two faces of the numismatic resource.
m	serratus	A numismatic resource with a notched edge.
n	hybrid	A combination of obverse and reverse dies that do not correspond to an official emission.

$b/7-9 Secondary Treatment

A three 1-character codes indicate indicating any secondary treatment that a numismatic resource might have been subjected to after it was originally manufactured. They should be entered from left to right.

a	mounted	Mounted in such a way that the coin has become part of a new object.
b	rivetted	Result of being fixed to an object by rivetting.
c	suspension loop	Modified with a loop fixed secondarily to a coin, for example in order for it to be suspended from a necklace.
d	pierced	Intentional hole pierced through a numismatic resource so that it can be worn on a necklace, sewn onto textiles, etc.
e	halved	The result of intentional division of a numismatic resource producing a half of the original numismatic resource.
f	quartered	The result of intentional division of a numismatic resource producing a quarter of the original numismatic resource.
g	cut	Intentional division of a numismatic resource into smaller parts by cutting, other than halved or quartered.
h	fragmented	Broken or fragmented unintentionally (in contrast to cut)
i	punched	Intentionally marked with a punch.
j	countermark	The impression left by a countermark punch (q.v.: A tool that is used to punch into a numismatic resource subsequent to the original striking an additional mark or symbol that had meaning in the contemporary context of the numismatic resource – for example to mark a specific payment or to revalue a coin).
k	defaced	Intentional removal of the design or part of the design of a numismatic resource (for example following damnatio memoriae or the reuse of a coin for other purposes).
l	pecked	Marks made by pointed instrument (e.g. a knife) onto the surface of the numismatic resource.
m	chop mark	A mark of undefined form made normally with a chisel-like tool, for example to test the purruity of the core of a numismatic resource. It can also be the result of damage caused when the numismatic resource was found.
n	notched	Cuts into the rim of the coin - also used on other object types such as hacksilber and jewellery
o	folded	
p	clipped	Part of the rim of the numismatic resource has been removed by clipping (for example to obtain metal to strike further coins).
q	burned	
r	melted	Partially or fully melted.
s	graffito	Lettering or similar mark incised into the surface of a numismatic resource that had meaning in the contemporary context of the numismatic resource.
t	repaired	Contemporary or later repair of a defect or other alteration (for example refilling of pierced hole, removal of suspension loop, etc.).
u	reverse reinforced	The practice whereby the reverse of a thin numismatic resource (e.g. a medieval bracteate) is reinforced by a collector or a restorer in a museum in order to conserve or stabilise it.
v	enamelled	With an overlay (wholly or in parts) of enamel.

$b/10 Monetary Status of a Numismatic Resource

1-character code indicates the monetary status of the numismatic object.

a	official issue	A numismatic resource issued by an official authority.
b	unofficial issue	A numismatic resource which is not produced by an official authority.
c	imitation	A numismatic resource whose type imitates the characteristics another issue or currency.

d	contemporary forgery	A counterfeit numismatic resource made at the original time of issue or circulation.
e	ulterior forgery	A counterfeit numismatic resource made after the time of the original issue or circulation, for the collectors' market.
#	not applicable	

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities format	
147 CODED DATA FIELD: COLOUR AND SOUND CONTENT	In the case of LRM compliant cataloguing, information related to colour and sound content should be entered in field 147 in expression entity records. Information pertaining to the manifestation level should be entered in field 117.

History

1994	New field.
2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2017	Changes for colour indicator.
2020	Changes to scope of field, subfield $a position 8 and added related fields.
2023	New subfield $b and new values in $a/2-7 Material.

120 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – GENERAL

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains fixed-length coded data generally applicable to cartographic resources.

Mandatory for cartographic resources.

This field was designed prior to the release of the FRBR and IFLA LRM, therefore, all data from this field are relevant for pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM or non-FRBR/IFLA LRM context.

According to the FRBR/IFLA LRM, some data in this field are preferably carried in the linked authority data (see Related Fields) describing the relevant related entity unless the information pertains to the manifestation.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
120	CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – GENERAL	NR	MA
a	Cartographic Resource Coded Data (General)	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Cartographic Resource Coded Data (General)

Codes indicate aspects of cartographic resource.

The subfield is 13-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Colour Indicator	1	0
Index Indicator	1	1
Narrative Text Indicator	1	2
Relief Codes	4	3-6
Map Projection	2	7-8
Prime Meridian	4	9-12

Notes on Field Contents

$a/0 Colour Indicator

1-character code indicates the colour characteristics of the cartographic material.

Use blank if this data pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entity other than the Manifestation.

a	one colour	The resource is in a single colour, including black-and-white.
b	multicoloured	The resource is in more than one colour.
#	value position not needed	According to cataloguing rules based on IFLA LRM, this data is not needed at the manifestation level.

$a/1 Index Indicator

1-character code indicates whether the resource carries an index or name list.

a	index or name list on cartographic resource itself
b	index or name list accompanying cartographic resource in booklet, pamphlet, unattached cover, etc.
c	index or name list present but location not specified
y	no index or name list

$a/2 Narrative Text Indicator

1-character code indicates whether the resource has text.

a	text on cartographic resource itself
b	text accompanying cartographic resource in booklet, pamphlet, unattached cover, etc.
y	no narrative text

$a/3-6 Relief Codes

Alphabetic character codes indicate the types of relief. The list is intended to encode only the most commonly found types of relief representation. Up to four codes can be used (left justified); unused positions contain blanks, when no relief code is applied, the 4-character positions contain blanks. The types are recorded in the record in order of their importance to the material being described.

a	contours
b	continuous tone shaded relief
c	hypsometric tints – layer method
d	hachures
e	bathymetry – soundings
f	form lines
g	spot heights
h	other methods in colour (e.g. in the style of Imhof)
i	pictorially
j	landforms (e.g. in the style of Lobeck, Raisz, Fenneman)
k	bathymetry – isolines
x	not applicable
z	other methods of relief representation

$a/7-8 Map Projection

2-character code indicates the type of projection if the projection is on the resource.

aa	Aitoff	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
ca	Albers equal area	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
ab	gnomonic	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
cb	Bonne	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
ac	Lambert's azimuthal equal area	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
cc	Lambert's conformal conic	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
ad	orthographic	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
cd	conic (simple)	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
ae	azimuthal equidistant	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
ce	Miller's bipolar oblique conformal conic	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
af	stereographic	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
cf	De Lisle	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
ag	azimuthal equal area	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
cg	projection of the International Map	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
au	azimuthal, specific type unknown	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
az	azimuthal, other known specific type	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
ch	Tissot's conformal conic	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
cp	polyconic	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
cu	conic, specific type unknown	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections

cz	conic, other known specific type	Azimuthal projections: Conic projections
ba	Gall	Cylindrical projections
bb	Goode's homolographic	Cylindrical projections
bc	Lambert's cylindrical equal area	Cylindrical projections
bd	Mercator	Cylindrical projections
be	Miller	Cylindrical projections
bf	Mollweide	Cylindrical projections
bg	sinusoidal	Cylindrical projections
bh	transverse Mercator	Cylindrical projections
bi	Gauss	Cylindrical projections
bj	Plate Carree	Cylindrical projections
bk	Cassini's	Cylindrical projections
bl	Laborde	Cylindrical projections
bm	Oblique Mercator	Cylindrical projections
bu	cylindrical, specific type unknown	Cylindrical projections
bz	cylindrical, other known specific type	Cylindrical projections
da	armadillo	Other projections
db	butterfly	Other projections
dc	Eckert	Other projections
dd	Goode's homolosine	Other projections
de	Miller's bipolar	Other projections
df	Van der Griten	Other projections
dg	dimaxion	Other projections
dh	cordiform	Other projections
di	polyhedric	Other projections
uu	type of projection unknown	
xx	not applicable	
zz	other known type	

$a/9-12 Prime Meridian

2-character code indicates the prime meridian of the resource when it is mentioned or is easily determined. Up to two prime meridians can be specified (left justified); unused positions contain blanks.

aa	Greenwich, United Kingdom	International prime meridian
ab	Amsterdam, Netherlands	
ac	Athens, Greece	
ad	Batavia (Djakarta) Indonesia	
ae	Berne, Switzerland	
af	Bogota, Colombia	
ag	Bombay, India	
ah	Brussels, Belgium	
ai	Cadiz, Spain	
aj	Capetown, South Africa	
ak	Caracas, Venezuela	
al	Copenhagen, Denmark	
am	Cordoba, Argentina	
an	Ferro, Canary Islands	
ao	Helsinki, Finland	
ap	Istanbul, Turkey	
aq	Julianehaab, Greenland	
ar	Lisbon, Portugal	
as	London, United Kingdom	
at	Madras, India	
ba	Madrid, Spain	

bb	Mexico City, Mexico	
bc	Moscow, Russia	
bd	Munich, Germany	
be	Naples, Italy	
bf	Oslo (Christiania) Norway	
bg	Paris, France	
bh	Peking, China	
bi	Philadelphia, USA	
bj	Pulkova, Russia	
bk	Rio de Janeiro, Brazil	
bl	Rome, Italy	
bm	Santiago, Chile	
bn	Stockholm, Sweden	
bo	Sydney, Australia	
bp	Tirana, Albania	
bq	Tokyo, Japan	
br	Washington, DC, USA	
uu	unknown	
zz	other	

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Bibliographic format	
131 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – GEODETIC, GRID AND VERTICAL MEASUREMENT	This field describes other physical attributes.
206 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – MATHEMATICAL DATA	Contains statements of projection in the form required by ISBD.
215 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION	This field also contains data about an resource's colour.
UNIMARC/Authorities format	
147 CODED DATA FIELD: COLOUR AND SOUND CONTENT	In the case of LRM compliant cataloguing, information related to colour and sound content should be entered in field 147 in expression entity records. Information pertaining to the manifestation level should be entered in field 120.

Examples

EX 1
120 ##$abyaa###bdaa##
A coloured map has text on it but no index. The projection is Mercator's, relief is shown by contours and the prime meridian is Greenwich.

History

2017	Changes for colour indicator.
2020	Changes to scope of field, subfield $a position 0 and Related fields.
2023	Text edit.

121 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains coded data relating to the physical attributes of cartographic resources.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
121	CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES	NR	O
a	Cartographic Resources Coded Data: Physical Attributes (General)	NR	O
b	Aerial Photography and Remote Sensing Coded Data: Physical Attributes	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Cartographic Resource Coded Data: Physical Attributes (General)

Codes indicate aspects of the physical attributes of cartographic resource.

The subfield is 9-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Physical Dimension	1	0
Primary Cartographic Image	2	1-2
Physical Medium	2	3-4
Creation Technique	1	5
Form of Reproduction	1	6
Geodetic Adjustment	1	7
Physical Form of Publication	1	8

$b Aerial Photography and Remote Sensing Coded Data: Physical Attributes

Codes indicate aspects of the aerial photography and remote sensing attributes of cartographic resource.

The subfield is 8-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $b fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Altitude of Sensor	1	0
Attitude of Sensor	1	1
Spectral Bands	2	2-3
Quality of Image	1	4
Cloud Cover	1	5
Mean Value of Ground Resolution	2	6-7

Notes on Field Contents

$a/0 Physical Dimension

1-character code indicates the physical dimensions of the resource.

a	2-dimensional
b	3-dimensional

$a/1-2 Primary Cartographic Image

1-character codes indicate the techniques used for the creation of the primary cartographic image. Up to two techniques can be recorded (left justified); unused positions contain blanks.

a	manually and plotted	E.g. maps produced by plotting instruments such as stereo plotters with or without computer assistance; maps drawn or painted by hand.
b	photographically	E.g. cartographic resources produced by conventional (visible spectrum) aerial photographic techniques such as aerial photography, photo maps, orthophotos.
c	by computer	E.g. maps produced by a computer line printer.
d	by active remote sensing techniques	Excludes techniques covered by codes a, b, or c.
e	by passive remote sensing techniques	Excludes techniques covered by codes a, b, or c.

Examples:

Printed line map is coded: a#

Photomap enhanced with line map features is coded: ba

MSS satellite remote sensing image is coded: e#

Radar remote sensing image is coded: d#

$a/3-4 Physical Medium

2-character code indicates the physical medium of the cartographic resource. The first character of the code indicates the general type of physical medium. The second character gives the specific type. This code is used to show that the cartographic resource is made of the material indicated, e.g. when the cartographic resource is a metal plate, a lithographic stone, a scribed plate on a plastic base, etc.

aa	paper	Non-photographic medium
ab	wood	Non-photographic medium
ac	stone	Non-photographic medium
ad	metal	Non-photographic medium
ae	synthetics (e.g. plastics, vinyl)	Non-photographic medium
af	skin (e.g. parchment, vellum)	Non-photographic medium
ag	textile including man-made fibre textiles (e.g. silk, cloth, nylon)	Non-photographic medium
ah	magnetic storage medium – computer compatible	Non-photographic medium
ai	magnetic storage medium – not computer compatible	Non-photographic medium
aj	tracing paper	Non-photographic medium
ak	cardboard	Non-photographic medium
ap	plaster	Non-photographic medium
au	unknown	Non-photographic medium
az	other non-photographic medium	Non-photographic medium
ba	transparent or opaque flexible base positive	Photographic medium
bb	transparent or opaque flexible base negative	Photographic medium
bc	transparent or opaque non-flexible base positive	Photographic medium
bd	transparent or opaque non-flexible base negative	Photographic medium
bz	other photographic medium	Photographic medium

$a/5 Creation Technique

A one-character code indicates the final step creation technique of the original cartographic resource.

a	manuscript	Hand drawn, including constructions of unique resources such as stone carvings, models, etc.
b	printing	Offset, engraving, wood block print, lithographed, stamped, Braille, relief, etc.
c	photocopying	All macroform hard copy produced directly on opaque material by radiant energy through contact or projection.
d	microphotography	All microform copy on transparent material produced either by filming or by computer output.
u	unknown	
y	the cartographic resource is not a final product but is on a pre-production medium as specified in character positions 3-4, Physical medium	
z	other	

Examples:

Printed photomap enhanced with line map feature: b

Photomap on photographic paper: c

$a/6 Form of Reproduction

1-character code indicates the form of reproduction of the resource.

a	by hand	
b	printed	
c	photography	
d	transfer line print	E.g., Xerox, blueprints, ozalid.
y	not a reproduction	

$a/7 Geodetic Adjustment

1-character code indicates the geodetic adjustment of the resource. Further details are given in field 131.

a	no adjustment
b	adjusted but without grid system
c	adjusted with grid system
x	not applicable

$a/8 Physical Form of Publication

1-character code indicates the physical form of publication of the resource.

a	single
b	in parts
c	atlas including loose-leaf published atlas
d	as a separate supplement to a journal, monograph, etc.
e	bound into a journal, monograph, etc.
z	other

$b/0 Altitude of Sensor

1-character code indicates the altitude of the sensor's platform for cartographic resources.

a	terrestrial
b	aerial

c	space

$b/1 Attitude of Sensor

1-character code indicates the attitude of the sensed image resulting from the angle of the sensor when recording the image for cartographic resources.

a	low oblique
b	high oblique
c	vertical

$b/2-3 Spectral Bands

2-characters indicate the number of spectral bands involved. The number is right justified, unused positions contain zeros. Applicable only to remote sensing.

01 to 99	number of bands
xx	not applicable

$b/4 Quality of Image

1-character code indicates the quality of the image.

a	poor
b	fair
c	good
d	very good

$b/5 Cloud Cover

1-character indicates the cloud cover in eighths.

1	1/8 cover
2	2/8 cover
3	3/8 cover
4	4/8 cover
5	5/8 cover
6	6/8 cover
7	7/8 cover
8	completely covered by clouds

$b/6-7 Mean Value of Ground Resolution

2-character code indicates the mean value of the ground resolution. Character position 6 carries either the numeric mean value for the resolution or an indication that it is less than 1 centimetre or greater than 9 kilometres. Character position 7 carries a code for the metric unit used. Applicable only to remote sensing.

$b/6 Mean Ground Resolution Values

-	less than 1 centimetre
1-9	numeric value
+	greater than 9 kilometres
x	not applicable

$b/7 Metric Unit Codes

c	centimetres
i	decimetres
m	metres
d	decametres
h	hectametres
k	kilometres
x	not applicable

Examples:

Mean ground resolution of 5 centimetres: 5c

Mean ground resolution of 80 metres: 8d

Mean ground resolution of 10 kilometres: +k

Not remote sensing: xx

Related Fields

120 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – GENERAL	These fields are used to code other attributes of cartographic resources.
131 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – GEODETIC, GRID AND VERTICAL MEASUREMENT	These fields are used to code other attributes of cartographic resources.

History

2023	Text edit.

122 CODED DATA FIELD: TIME PERIOD OF RESOURCE CONTENT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a formatted indication of the period covered by the resource.

It was designed prior to the release of the FRBR and IFLA LRM as well as of the cataloguing rules that conform to them. According to the FRBR/IFLA LRM, some of the information carried in this field pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entities other than the Manifestation. Such data should preferably be carried in linked authority records describing the relevant related entity rather than in the record describing the Manifestation. However, those data can still be carried in bibliographic records describing manifestations under certain conditions, especially when the records are/were created in a pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM or a non-FRBR/IFLA LRM context.

Repeatable only to distinguish between multiple single dates and a range of dates (EX 1).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
122	CODED DATA FIELD: TIME PERIOD OF RESOURCE CONTENT	R	O
a	Time Period, 9999 B.C. to Present	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Number of Dates Indicator
	0	Single dated resource
	1	Multiple single dates
	2	Range of dates
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Time Period, 9999 B.C. to Present

Codes and structured data indicate the time period from 9999 BC to the present.

The subfield is minimum of 5-character and a maximum of 11-character in length. Repeatable. (EX 1) See also EX 2,3,4.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Era Identifier	1	0
Year	4	1-4
Month	2	5-6
Day	2	7-8
Time	2	9-10

Notes on Field Contents

$a/0 Era Identifier

Codes indicate an era of the period.

The subfield is 1-character in length. Mandatory.

Codes:

c	date falls before the year 1 in the Gregorian calendar, i.e. B.C.
d	date falls after the year 1 in the Gregorian calendar, i.e. A.D.

$a/1-4 Year

4-numeric characters right justified; unused positions contain zeros. Mandatory.

$a/5-6 Month

2-numeric characters right justified; unused positions contain zeros. Optional.

$a/7-8 Day

2-numeric characters right justified; unused positions contain zeros. Optional.

$a/9-10 Time

2-numeric characters right justified; unused positions contain zeros. Based on a 24-hour clock, local time, rounded to the nearest whole hour. Optional.

If one optional code is used, all the earlier optional codes must be used.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities Format	
122 CODED DATA FIELD: TIME PERIOD OF WORK CONTENT	This field contains a formatted indication of the period covered by the work.
UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format	
100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Date of publication (character positions 8-16)	This field is used as well as or instead of field 122 where the date of issue is the same as the time period of the resource content.
661 TIME PERIOD CODE	This field contains the Time Period Code, indicating only the decades covered by the resource. It may be used as well as or instead of field 122.

Examples

EX 1
122 2#$ad1971$ad1979
122 0#$ad1986
Codes for a map surveyed between 1971 and 1979 and then revised to add 1986 information.
EX 2
122 0#$ad16051105
The code for Guy Fawkes' Gunpowder Plot, 5 November 1605
EX 3
122 0#$ad1976080214
The situation date (2 August 1976, 14:08 hours) of a remote sensing image
EX 4
Full record example
001 990521053
100 ##$a19990521b19981998y0scry0191 ba
101 0#$ascr$aeng
102 ##$aHR
110 ##$aaka###0xx0tx
122 2#$ad1992$ad1997

200 0#$aGodišnje izvješće ...$fRepublika Hrvatska, Državni zavod za intelektualno vlasništvo$dAnnual report ...$fRepublic of Croatia, State Intellectual Property Office$g<glavni i odgovorni urednik Nikola Kopčić>
207 #0$a1992/97(1998)
210 ##$aZagreb$cDržavni zavod za intelektualno vlasništvo Republike Hrvatske$d1998
215 ##$d30 cm
300 ##$aTekst usporedo na hrv. i engl. jeziku
326 ##$aGodišnje
510 1#$aAnnual report / Republic of Croatia State Intellectual Property Office$zeng
532 13$aGodišnje izvješće (Državni zavod za intelektualno vlasništvo Republike Hrvatske)
712 02$3990426016$aDržavni zavod za intelektualno vlasništvo Republike Hrvatske$cZagreb
801 #0aHRbNSK$gHR PPIAK
The Annual Report published in 1998 for the years 1992 to 1997. The Publication Date 1 and Publication Date 2 in 100$a/8-16 are 1998 because only one issue was published. The coverage dates are recorded in 122 field.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Align with FRBR.
2023	Text edit.

123 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – SCALE AND CO-ORDINATES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the scale and co-ordinate data as entered in field 206 but in coded form.

It was designed prior to the release of the FRBR and IFLA LRM as well as of the cataloguing rules that conform to them. According to the FRBR/IFLA LRM, some of the information carried in this field pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entities other than the Manifestation. Such data should preferably be carried in linked authority records describing the relevant related entity rather than in the record describing the Manifestation. However, those data can still be carried in bibliographic records describing manifestations under certain conditions, especially when the records are/were created in a pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM or a non-FRBR/IFLA LRM context.

Repeatable when the resource contains material in different scales and with different co-ordinates.

Mandatory for cartographic resources.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
123	CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – SCALE AND CO-ORDINATES	R	MA
a	Type of Scale	NR	MA
b	Constant Ratio Linear Horizontal Scale	R	O
c	Constant Ratio Linear Vertical Scale	R	O
d	Co-ordinates – Westernmost Longitude	NR	O
e	Co-ordinates – Easternmost Longitude	NR	O
f	Co-ordinates – Northernmost Latitude	NR	O
g	Co-ordinates – Southernmost Latitude	NR	O
h	Angular Scale	R	O
i	Declination – Northern Limit	NR	O
j	Declination – Southern Limit	NR	O
k	Right ascension – Eastern Limits	NR	O
m	Right ascension – Western Limits	NR	O
n	Equinox	NR	O
o	Epoch	NR	O
p	Planet to which the Field Applies	NR	MA

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Type of Scale Code Indicator
	0	Scale indeterminable
	1	Single scale
	2	Multiple scales
	3	Range of scales
	4	Approximate scale
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Type of Scale

Mandatory. Not repeatable.

A one-character code indicating the type of scale with the following values:

a	linear scale
b	angular scale
z	other type of scale (e.g., time scale, quantitative statistical scale)

$b Constant Ratio Linear Horizontal Scale

The horizontal scale in the form of the denominator of a representative fraction. Used for planetary as well as terrestrial cartographic resources. Repeatable.

$c Constant Ratio Linear Vertical Scale

The vertical scale in the form of the denominator of a representative fraction. Used for planetary as well as terrestrial resources. Repeatable.

$d Co-ordinates – Westernmost Longitude

$e Co-ordinates – Easternmost Longitude

$f Co-ordinates – Northernmost Latitude

$g Co-ordinates – Southernmost Latitude

Co-ordinates for planetary or terrestrial resources. Each subfield is fixed at 8 characters and is not repeatable. Each contains the following data:

Character position 0

Hemisphere: one-character code:

w	west
e	east
n	north
s	south

Character positions 1 to 3

Degree: 3 numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros

Character positions 4 to 5

Minute: 2 numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros

Character positions 6 to 7

Second: 2 numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros

$h Angular Scale

The angular scale of celestial maps in the form of a 4 character number right justified and filled with zeros, giving the scale in terms of millimetres to a degree. Repeatable.

$i Declination – Northern Limit

$j Declination – Southern Limit

$k Right Ascension – Eastern Limits

$m Right Ascension – Western Limits

Co-ordinates for celestial cartographic resources. Subfields are not repeatable. Subfields $i and $j are each 8 characters long and contain the same components as subfields $f and $g (see above) except that character position 0 contains a plus sign (for the northern celestial hemisphere) or a minus sign (for the southern celestial hemisphere). Subfields $k and $m are each 6 characters long and contain the following data:

Character positions 0 to 1

Hour: 2 numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros

Character positions 2 to 3

Minute: 2 numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros

Character positions 4 to 5

Second: 2 numeric characters right justified, filled with zeros

$n Equinox

The equinox for celestial cartographic resources with the year entered according to the Gregorian calendar as a four character date right justified with zeros. Not repeatable.

$o Epoch

The epoch for celestial cartographic resources with the year entered according to the Gregorian calendar as a four character date right justified with zeros. Not repeatable.

$p Planet to which the Field Applies

This subfield indicates whether the co-ordinates recorded in subfields $d-$g apply to the Earth or to another planet, or to a satellite of these bodies. Mandatory except for cartographic resources relating to the earth and celestial charts.

The planet is expressed in position 0-1, while position 2 indicates whether the body is a satellite of the planet coded on pos. 0-1.

Character positions 0-1: Planet: two-character code:

ea	Earth
ju	Jupiter
ma	Mars
me	Mercury
ne	Neptune
pl	Pluto
sa	Saturn
ur	Uranus
ve	Venus
zz	other

Character position 2: Satellite: one-character code:

s	The body whose co-ordinates are recorded in subfields $d-$g is a satellite of the planet coded on pos. 0-1.
y	Not applicable: the body whose co-ordinates are recorded in subfields $d-$g is the planet itself, as coded on pos. 0-1.

This subfield is mandatory, except for cartographic resources relating to the earth and celestial charts. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

When the scale is indeterminable, the field contains only subfield $a and co-ordinates if they are present.

When the resource is multipart and has multiple horizontal and/or vertical scales, all of the scales are given in repeating subfields. However, for three or more scales, the range of scales can be given in subfields $b or $c; the smaller denominator is recorded in the first occurrence of the particular subfield and the larger in the second occurrence.

When the co-ordinates for a map or plan are given in terms of a centre point rather than outside limits, the longitude and latitude that form the central axes are each recorded twice, in subfields $d and $e (longitude) and subfields $f and $g (latitude). Similarly, when the declination and right ascension for

celestial charts are given relative to the centre of the chart rather than to its limits, they are each recorded twice, in subfields $i and $j (declination) and subfields $k and $m (ascension).

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities format	
123 CODED DATA FIELD: TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME	This field contains the scale and co-ordinate data in coded form.
UNIMARC/Bibliographic format	
206 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – MATHEMATICAL DATA	Scale and co-ordinates are recorded in field 206 in the form prescribed by ISBD.

Examples

Flat maps and globes:
EX 1
123 1#aab253440$de0790000$ee0860000$fn0200000$gn0120000$peay
A map covering part of India which is 4 inches to the mile (1:253440) longitude 79°E to 86°E, latitude 20°N to 12°N.
EX 2
123 2#aabl50000$b25000$de0150000$ee0173045$fn0013012$gs0023035$peay
A map of part of Zaire of linear scale of 1:150000 and 1:25000, longitude 15°E to 17°30'45 E; latitude 1°30'12 N to 2°30'35 S.
Relief models:
EX 3
123 2#aab744080$c96000$de1193000$eel220000$fn0250000$gn0220000$peay
A relief map of Taiwan with horizontal scale of 1:744080 and vertical scale of 1:96000; longitude 119°30'E to 122°E, latitude 25°N to 22°N.
EX 4
123 2#aab90000$cl0000$dwll20000$ewl090000$fn0600000$gn0490000$peay
A relief map of part of Alberta and Saskatchewan in Canada with a horizontal scale of 1:90000 and a vertical scale of 1:10000; longitude 109°W to 112°W; latitude 60°N to 49°N.
Celestial chart:
EX 5
123 0#abi-0160000$j-0490000$k163000$m193000$n1950$o1948
A celestial chart with an angular scale, with declination -16° to -49°, right ascension from 16 hr 30 min to 19 hr 30 min, equinox 1950, epoch 1948.
Map of a planet:
EX 6
123 1#aab2000000$dw1500000$ew1350000$fn0350000$gn0250000$pmay
200 1#$aPlanet Mars, Olympus Mons$bDocument cartographique$eNordwestlicher Teil mit Aureole$ePlanetenbildkarte$fDeutsche Forschungsanstalt für Luft- und Raumfahrt ; Institut für angewandte Geodäsie
A map of a region of Planet Mars (as indicated in subfield $p).

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Align with FRBR.

124 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – SPECIFIC MATERIAL DESIGNATION ANALYSIS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains fixed length coded data relating to the characteristics of photographic, non-photographic and remote sensing image types of cartographic resources.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
124	CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES -SPECIFIC MATERIAL DESIGNATION ANALYSIS	NR	O
a	Character of Image	NR	O
b	Form of Cartographic Resource	R	O
c	Presentation Technique for Photographic or Non-Photographic Image	R	O
d	Position of Platform for Photographic or Remote Sensing Image	R	O
e	Category of Satellite for Remote Sensing Image	R	O
f	Name of Satellite for Remote Sensing Image	R	O
g	Recording Technique for Remote Sensing Image	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Character of Image

1-character code. Not repeatable.

a	non-photographic image
b	photographic image
c	remote sensing image

$b Form of Cartographic Resource

1-character code. Repeatable.

a	atlas
b	diagram
c	globe
d	map
e	model
f	profile
g	remote sensing image
h	section
i	view
j	plan
z	other

$c Presentation Technique for Photographic or Non-Photographic Image

2-character code. Repeatable.

aa	anaglyphic
ab	polarized
ac	planimetric
ad	diagram map
ae	flowline map, flow map
af	dot map
ag	diagrammatric map (i.e. cartogram map)
ah	choropleth
ai	chorochromatic
aj	dasymetric
ak	isopleth
am	anamorphic
an	pictorial map
ao	spatial model on two dimensional surface
ap	mental or cognitive map
aq	views with horizon showing (includes bird's eye views and panoramas)
ar	views without horizon showing (includes bird's eye views and panoramas)
as	map view
da	picto map
db	random dot map
dc	screened
dd	not screened

$d Position of Platform for Photographic or Remote Sensing Image

1-character code. Repeatable.

a	terrestrial
b	aerial
c	space

$e Category of Satellite for Remote Sensing Image

1-character code. Repeatable.

a	meteorological
b	earth resources
c	space observing

$f Name of Satellite for Remote Sensing Image

2-character code. Repeatable.

aa	Tiros	Meteorological
ab	ATS	Meteorological
ac	NOAA	Meteorological
ad	Nimbus	Meteorological
ae	METEOSAT	Meteorological
ga	ERTS	Earth resources
gb	Landsat I	Earth resources
gc	Landsat II	Earth resources
gd	Landsat III	Earth resources
ge	Seasat	Earth resources
gf	Skylab	Earth resources
gg	Spacelab	Earth resources
ma	Explorer I	Space observing
mb	Explorer II	Space observing

$g Recording Technique for Remote Sensing Image

2-character code. Repeatable.

aa	video recording	Light emission
ab	false colour photography	Light emission
ac	multispectral photography	Light emission
ad	multispectral scanning	Light emission
av	combination of various light emission techniques	Light emission
da	infrared line scanning	Thermal infrared scanning
dv	combination of various thermal infrared scanning techniques	Thermal infrared scanning
ga	Sidelooking Airborne Radar (SLAR)	Microwave emission
gb	Synthetic Aperture Radar (SAR)	Microwave emission
gc	passive microwave mapping	Microwave emission

125 CODED DATA FIELD: SOUND RECORDINGS AND MUSIC

Field Definition and Scope

This field describes the format of music, notes whether parts exist and codes the type of literary text for non-music performances.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
125	CODED DATA FIELD: SOUND RECORDINGS AND MUSIC	NR	O
a	Format of Notated Music	NR	O
b	Literary Text Indicator (Non-Music Performance)	NR	O
c	Multiple Musical Formats	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Format of Notated Music

Codes indicate the aspects of the format of notated music.

The subfield is 2-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Type of Score	1	0
Parts Indicator	1	1

$b Literary Text Indicator (Non-Music Performance)

2-characters long. Not repeatable.

$c Multiple Musical Formats

Variable length. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Terms used here as examples are suggestive, not exclusive or restrictive.

$a/0 Type of Score

1-character code indicates the type of music score.

The choice of the code depends on the resource itself and on factors like the number of instruments or voices, the arrangement of the work, the reduction or the absence of the original accompaniment. Statements such as choral score or vocal score may appear in the resource or in the cataloguing record with variant meanings and thus should not alone determine the choice of a code. Codes “c” and “d” are assigned strictly on the basis of the presence or absence of accompaniment in the original scoring. If the resource includes the parts, their presence is not considered in this position. “Score and parts” is thus not coded as a multiple format.

a	full score	The resource is a full score format, i.e. a series of staves on which all the instrumental and/or vocal parts of a musical work are written, one under the other in vertical alignment, so that they can be read simultaneously. Works for a single voice or instrument cannot be rendered in score format (and should be coded "z").
b	score (miniature or study size)	A musical score not primarily intended for performance use, with the notation and/or text reduced in size.
c	vocal score, accompaniment reduced for keyboard	Accompaniment is reduced for keyboard instrument(s), and the voice and/or instrumental solo part(s) remain unaltered.
d	voice score, chorus score, accompaniment has been dropped	The accompaniment to vocal or choral parts has been omitted and only the voice parts remain. Vocal and choral works originally unaccompanied are assigned other codes as appropriate.
e	condensed score, piano-conductor score	Format presenting only the principal musical parts on a minimum number of staves, and generally organized by instrumental sections. A conductor score is a performance part for a particular instrument of an ensemble work to which cues have been added for the other instruments to permit the performer of the part also to conduct the performance.
f	graphic score	Notation including non traditional graphic elements.
g	close score	Format giving all the parts on a minimum number of staves, normally two, as with hymnals.
h	tablature	A music notation where letters, numbers or graphic symbols indicate the finger position on the instrument or the name of the notes.
i	choir-book	Format giving the different vocal parts on two facing pages of the book.
j	compressed score	Score of only voices and continuo, omitting the other instruments.
k	pseudo-score	Score without vertical coincidence of voices.
l	solo part	A part containing only one solo for a voice of a choir.
m	multiple formats	Indicate individual formats in subfield $c.
n	score with only homogeneous groups of instruments of the orchestra	
o	condensed score with text and chord symbols	Frequently used in modern pop music, it consists generally in a melodic line with letters and/or graphic symbols representing chords or finger positions on the guitar. ~;
p	table book	Parts written with different orientation on facing pages, so as to enable reading by players standing around a table.
u	unknown	
x	not applicable	The resource is not printed or manuscript music. All sound recordings will receive this code.
z	other	Format of music for which none of the other defined codes are appropriate. Usually it signifies that the resource is not a score. Music for any single instrument (even if written on two staves, e.g. keyboard music), music for a single voice and compositions that consist only of instructions for performance receive this code. Four-hands piano music presented on facing pages receives this code as well. Sets of parts are also assigned code "z" if they are not accompanied by another format.

Use codes for the following musical presentation statements:

a	English: score, full score, performance score, playing score; French: partition, partition d'orchestre, grande partition; German: Partitur, Orchesterpartitur, Spielpartitur; Italian: partitura, parte con guida; Spanish: Partitura; Hungarian: partitúra, vezérkönyv; Russian: партитура, partitura
b	English: pocket score, study score, miniature score; French: partition de travail, partition de poche, partition miniature, petite partition; German: Studienpartitur, Taschenpartitur, kleine Partitur; Italian: partiturina, partitura tascabile; Spanish: partitura de bolsillo; Hungarian: Zsebpartitúra; Russian: карманная партитура, karmannaja partitura
c	English: vocal score, chorus score; French: partition chant et piano, partition vocale; German: Klavierauszug, Sparte; Italian: Spartito; Spanish partitura vocal
d	English: voice score, choral score; French: partition des chœurs; German: Singpartitur, Chorpartitur; Italian: partitura vocale; Spanish: partitura de coro; Hungarian: kóruspartitúra, karpartitúra; Russian: хоровая партитура, horovaja partitura
e	English: condensed score, [piano / violin, etc.] conductor score; French: partition condensée, [piano / violon, etc.] conducteur; German: Direktion, Direktionsstimme, Klavierpartitur; Italian: partitura condensata, parte di [pianoforte / violino, etc.] conduttore; Spanish: partitura guión, particela de [piano / violín, etc.] director
f	English: graphic score; French: partition graphique; German: Graphische Partitur; Italian: partitura grafica; Spanish: partitura gráfica
g	English: close score, short score; French: partition réduite; Italian: partitura ristretta; Spanish: partitura reducida
h	English: tablature, finger notation; French: tablature; German: Tabulatur; Spanish: Cifra, tablatura; Italian: Intavolatura; Hungarian: tabulatúra; Russian: табулатура, tabulatura
i	English: choir-book; French: livre de choeur; German: Chorbuch; Spanish: libro de coro; Italian: libro corale; Hungarian kóruskönyv
j	English: vocal/chorus score with continuo; French: particella; German: Cembalo-Partitur, Generalbaβpartitur; Spanish: partitura de coro y continuo; Italian: particella
k	English: pseudo-score; French: pseudo-partition; German: Pseudo-Partitur; Spanish: Pseudopartitura; Italian: Pseudopartitura
l	English: solo part; Spanish: particela (parte) solista; Italian: Cartina
n	French: parties en accolade; German: Partitino; Italian: Spartitino
o	English: text and chords; French: texte et accords; Italian: testo e accordi
p	English: table book; Italian: partitura da tavolo

$a/1 Parts Indicator

1-character code indicates the existence of parts for a score.

a	parts exist (instrumental and vocal)	
b	instrumental parts	
c	vocal parts	
u	unknown	
x	not applicable	Including compositions for single instrument or voice.
y	parts not present	

Use code a to indicate the presence of one or more fascicle(s) containing the music destined to a single performer in an ensemble. Music composed for a single instrument or a single voice should be coded "x".

Used for the following musical presentation statements:

English	part(s), part book(s)
French	partie(s), partie(s) séparée(s)
German	Stimme(n), Stimmbuch/-bücher
Spanish	particela(s), parte(s)
Italian	parte/i, parte/i staccata/e
Hungarian	Szólamkönyv

Russian	тетрадь, tetrad’

$b Literary Text Indicator

Alphabetic character codes indicate the type of literary text for a non-music performance. Up to two 1-character codes can be used (left justified); unused positions contain blanks. If more than two codes are appropriate, their order on the following list determines which are recorded. Not repeatable.

a	poetry
b	drama
c	fiction (novels, short stories, etc.)
d	history
e	lectures, speeches
f	instructions (How to ...)
g	sounds
h	autobiography
i	biography
j	essays
k	reporting
l	memoirs
m	rehearsals
n	interviews
o	advertising texts
p	instruction (language)
q	conference proceedings
r	comedy
s	folktales
t	sacred texts
z	other types of literary text

$c Multiple Musical Format

1-character code specifies individual musical formats when 125 $a/0 = m (multiple formats). The subfield contains as many codes as are necessary. Not repeatable.

a	full score
b	score (miniature or study size)
c	vocal score, accompaniment reduced for keyboard
d	voice score, accompaniment has been dropped
e	condensed score, conductor score (piano, violin, etc.)
f	graphic score
g	close score
h	tablature
i	choir-book
j	compressed score, short score
k	pseudo-score
l	solo part
n	score with only homogeneous groups of instruments of the orchestra
o	condensed score with text and chord symbols
p	table book
u	unknown
x	not applicable
z	other
#	not used

Related Fields

208 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: MUSIC FORMAT STATEMENT

Examples

EX 1
125 #a#amacadl
A manuscript including score, chorus score, parts for choir solos and parts.
EX 2
125 ##$azx
A missal for solo voice.
EX 3
125 ##axxba#
A recording of poetry.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2023	Text edit.

126 CODED DATA FIELD: SOUND RECORDINGS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains coded data relating to the physical attributes of sound recordings.

This field was designed prior to the release of the FRBR and IFLA LRM, therefore, all data from this field are relevant for pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM or non-FRBR/IFLA LRM context.

According to the FRBR/IFLA LRM, some data in this field are preferably carried in the linked authority data (see Related Fields) describing the relevant related entity unless the information pertains to the manifestation.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
126	CODED DATA FIELD: SOUND RECORDINGS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES	NR	O
a	Sound Recording Coded Data (General)	NR	O
b	Sound Recording Coded Data (Detail)	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Sound Recording Coded Data (General)

Codes indicate the general aspects of the sound recording.

The subfield is 15-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Form of Release	1	0
Speed	1	1
Kind of Sound	1	2
Groove Width	1	3
Dimensions (Sound Recordings)	1	4
Tape Width	1	5
Tape Configuration	1	6
Accompanying Textual Material	6	7-12
Recording Technique	1	13
Special Reproduction Characteristics	1	14

$b Sound Recording Coded Data (Detail)

Codes indicate the detail aspects of the sound recording.

The subfield is 3-characters in length. Not repeatable.

This subfield is used only for pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM context. Do not use this subfield, if cataloguing code is based on FRBR/IFLA LRM.

Subfield $b fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions

Kind of Disc or Cylinder	1	1
Kind of Material	1	1
Kind of Cutting	1	2

Notes on Field Contents

$a/0 Form of Release

1-character code indicates the form of release.

a	disc
b	tape (open reel)
c	tape (cassette)
d	tape (cartridge)
e	wire recording
f	cylinder
g	roll (player-piano or player organ)
h	film (sound film)
z	other

$a/1 Speed

1-character code indicates the speed.

a	16 2/3 rpm	Discs
b	33 1/3 rpm	Discs
c	45 rpm	Discs
d	78 rpm	Discs
e	8 rpm	Discs
g	1.4 m. per second (compact discs)	Discs
h	1 in. per second (120 rpm)	Cylinders
i	160 rpm	Cylinders
k	1 7/8 in. per second	Tapes
l	15/16 in. per second	Tapes
m	3 3/4 in. per second	Tapes
n	7 1/2 in. per second	Tapes
o	15 in. per second	Tapes
p	30 in. per second	Tapes
q	8/10 in. per second	Tapes
r	4/10 in. per second	Tapes
u	unknown	
x	not applicable	
z	other	E.g. non-standardized speed for microgrooves before 1906.

$a/2 Kind of Sound

1-character code indicates the recording mode of the recording.

Use blank if this data pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entity other than the Manifestation.

a	monoaural	
b	stereophonic	
c	quadraphonic	
u	unknown	
z	other	
#	value position not needed	According to cataloguing rules based on IFLA LRM, this data is not needed at the manifestation level.

$a/3 Groove Width

A one-character code indicates the width of the grooves on discs.

a	coarse/standard	Discs issued at 78 rpm are usually coarse. Cylinders issued at 120 rpm (which have 100 grooves per inch) are usually standard.
b	microgroove/fine	Discs issued at 16 2/3, 33 1/3, and 45 rpm are usually issued as microgroove. Cylinders issued at 160 rpm (which have 200 grooves per inch) are usually issued as fine.
u	unknown	
x	not applicable	This includes compact discs, which do not have grooves.
z	other	

$a/4 Dimensions (Sound Recordings)

1-character code specifies the diameter of an open reel tape or a disc, or the dimensions of a cassette, cartridge or cylinder.

a	3 in.
b	5 in.
c	7 in.
d	10 in.
e	12 in.
f	16 in.
g	14 in.
h	4¾ in. (compact disc)
j	3 7/8 x 2½ in. cassette
o	5¼ x 3 7/8 in. cartridge
s	2¾ x 4 in. cylinder
u	unknown
x	not applicable
z	other

$a/5 Tape Width

1-character code specifies the width of a tape.

a	¼ in.
b	½ in.
c	1 in.
d	1/8 in.
e	2 in.
f	1/3 in. (8 mm.)
u	unknown
x	recording not a tape
z	other

$a/6 Tape Configuration

1-character code indicates the tape configuration.

a	full (1) track
b	half (2) track
c	quarter (4) track
d	eight track
e	twelve track
f	sixteen track
g	twenty-four track
h	six track
u	unknown
x	recording not a tape

z	other

$a/7-12 Accompanying Textual Material

Alphabetic character codes indicate the contents of programme notes and other accompanying text. Up to six one-character codes can be used (left-justified); unused positions contain blanks. If more than six resources are present, the importance of the resources in relationship to the work determines which are included.

a	discography
b	bibliography
c	thematic index
d	libretto or text
e	biography of composer
f	biography of performer or history of ensemble
g	technical or historical information on instruments
h	technical information on music
i	historical information about music
j	other historical information
k	ethnological information
l	biography of arranger or transcriber
r	instructional material
s	score
z	other accompanying textual material

$a/13 Recording Technique

1-character code indicates the recording technique.

a	acoustic
b	electric
c	digital
d	analog
u	unknown
z	other

$a/14 Special Reproduction Characteristics

1-character code indicates the reproduction characteristics.

a	NAB standard
b	CCIR/IEC standard
c	DBX processed
d	digital (compact disc)
e	Dolby-A encoded
f	Dolby-B encoded
g	Dolby-C encoded
h	CX encoded
x	not applicable
u	unknown
z	other

$b/0 Kind of Disc, Cylinder or Tape

1-character code indicates the type of disc, cylinder or tape.

a	instantaneous	Unique, cut on the spot.
b	mass produced	Most commercial discs or tapes.
c	master tape	
d	tape duplication master	

e	disc master (negative)	
f	mother (positive)	
g	stamper (negative)	
h	test pressing	
u	unknown	
x	not applicable	
z	other	

$b/1 Kind of Material

1-character code specifies the kind of material for discs, cylinders or tapes.

u	unknown	
x	not applicable	
z	other	
a	lacquered (e.g. acetate)	Discs
b	metal (e.g. aluminium)	Discs
c	shellac pressing (mass produced)	Discs
d	plastic pressing (mass produced)	Discs
e	metal and plastic (compact discs)	Discs
g	wax (instantaneous)	Cylinders
h	plastic (mass produced)	Cylinders
i	paper backed	Tapes
j	acetate	Tapes
k	pvc	Tapes
l	polyester	Tapes

$b/2 Kind of Cutting

1-character code specifies the kind of cutting. Since all cylinders have hill and dale cutting, use of this position for cylinders is optional.

a	lateral or combined cutting
b	vertical (hill and dale) cutting
u	unknown
x	not applicable

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities format	
147 CODED DATA FIELD: COLOUR AND SOUND CONTENT	In the case of LRM compliant cataloguing, information related to colour and sound content should be entered in field 147 in expression entity records. Only information pertaining to the manifestation level should be entered in field 126.

Examples

EX 1
126 ##$aagbzhxxe#####cd$bbex
A compact disc containing digitally recorded music and accompanied by a biography of the composer.

History

2020	Added code $a/13. Changes to scope of field, subfield $a position 2, subfield $b, and added Related fields.
2023	Text edit.

127 CODED DATA FIELD: DURATION OF SOUND RECORDINGS AND NOTATED MUSIC

Field Definition and Scope

The field contains one or more six-character numbers corresponding to the duration of a manifestation consisting in or containing sound recordings or a portion of a sound recording, or to the estimated duration of a composition as stated on the music score that is being described.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
127	CODED DATA FIELD: DURATION OF SOUND RECORDINGS AND NOTATED MUSIC	NR	O
a	Duration	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Duration

This subfield contains a six-character numeric string representing the duration of a manifestation consisting in or containing sound recordings or a section of a sound recording, or the estimated duration of any musical composition contained in the manifestation. The time is divided into three sub-elements, each two characters long, representing the number of hours, minutes, and seconds. Each sub-element is right justified; unused positions contain blanks or zeros. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The durations of sound recordings and notated music are recorded in coded form in field 127. The durations may also be found in eye-readable form in a general note (EX 3) or a contents note (EX 4).

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities format	
127 CODED DATA FIELD: DURATION OF SOUND RECORDINGS, VISUAL PROJECTIONS, MUSICAL COMPOSITIONS AND PERFORMANCES	This field contains coded data about duration of sound recordings, visual projections, musical compositions and performances, at the Work or Expression levels.
UNIMARC/Bibliographic format	
115 CODED DATA FIELD: VISUAL PROJECTIONS, VIDEO RECORDING AND MOTION PICTURES	

Examples

EX 1
127 ##$a003100$a001839
The duration of a sound recording with two compositions, one lasting 31 minutes, the other lasting 18 minutes and 39 seconds.
EX 2

127 ##$a024600
The duration of a sound recording lasting 2 hours and 46 minutes.
EX 3
127 ##$a001356$a002005
300 ##$aDurations: 13:56; ca. 20:05
A printed music score with two pieces, the first lasting 13 minutes and 56 seconds, the second lasting approximately 20 minutes and 5 seconds. A note is also present in field 300.
EX 4
127 ##$a001635$a000957$a001049
327 1#$aQuadrain II (16:35)$aWater ways (9:57)$aWaves (10:49)
A sound recording with three selections. The durations are also present in a contents note.

History

2012	Align with FRBR and editorial.

128 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY OR MODE

Field Definition and Scope

This field describes the form and the key or mode of a musical work.

It was designed prior to the release of the FRBR and IFLA LRM as well as of the cataloguing rules that conform to them. According to the FRBR/IFLA LRM, some of the information carried in this field pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entities other than the Manifestation. Such data should preferably be carried in linked authority records describing the relevant related entity rather than in the record describing the Manifestation. However, those data can still be carried in bibliographic records describing manifestations under certain conditions, especially when the records are/were created in a pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM or a non-FRBR/IFLA LRM context.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
128	CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY OR MODE	R	O
a	Form of Musical Work	R	O
b	Instruments or Voices for Ensemble	-	Obsolete
c	Instruments or Voices for Soloists	-	Obsolete
d	Key or Mode of Musical Work	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Form of Musical Work

Contains a code indicating the form of a musical work. If more than one form is present the subfield is repeated.

Use the codes maintained and updated by IAML (International Association of Music Libraries, Archives and Music Documentation Centres). The list of codes for form of musical work is available online http://www.iaml.info/en/activities/cataloguing/unimarc/forms .

$b Instruments or Voices for Ensemble [Obsolete]

This subfield has been replaced by field 146.

$c Instruments or Voices for Soloists [Obsolete]

This subfield has been replaced by field 146.

$d Key or Mode of Musical Work

Contains a code indicating the key or church mode of the musical work, if significant. Major keys are indicated with a letter “a”-“g”, minor keys with a letter “a”-“g” followed by “m”; sharps with “x”, flats with “b” following the key code. “Gregorian” church modes are indicated with a number “01”-“13” (EX 4). Not repeatable.

Use the codes maintained and updated by IAML (International Association of Music Libraries, Archives and Music Documentation Centres).

Keys:

Code	Key
a	A major
am	A minor
ab	A flat major
abm	A flat minor
axm	A sharp minor
b	B major
bm	B minor
bb	B flat major
bbm	B flat minor
c	C major
cm	C minor
cb	C flat major
cx	C sharp major
cxm	C sharp minor
d	D major
dm	D minor
db	D flat major
dxm	D sharp minor
e	E major
em	E minor
eb	E flat major
ebm	E flat minor
f	F major
fm	F minor
fx	F sharp major
fxm	F sharp minor
g	G major
gm	G minor
gb	G flat major
gxm	G sharp minor

Modes:

Code	Mode	Mode Name (Greek)	Mode Name (Latin)
01	1.	Protus authentic	Dorian
02	2.	Protus plagal	Hypodorian
03	3.	Deuterus authentic	Phrygian
04	4.	Deuterus Plagal	Hypophrygian
05	5.	Tritus authentic	Lydian
06	6.	Tritus plagal	Hypolydian
07	7.	Tetrardus authentic	Mixolydian
08	8.	Tetrardus plagal	Hypomixolydian
09	9.		Aeolian
10	10.		Hypoaeolian
11	11.		Ionian
12	12.		Hypoionian
13	Tonus Peregrinus		
zz	Other		

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Bibliographic format

146 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE	Field 146 replaces obsolete field 145.
302 NOTES PERTAINING TO CODED INFORMATION	This note may contain details such as use of different instruments by one performer or pertinence of single instruments to different groups within larger ensembles, etc.
500 PREFERRED TITLE ACCESS POINT	Pre-FRBR.
506 PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK	
507 PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION	
576 NAME/ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK	
577 NAME/ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION	
UNIMARC/Authorities format	
128 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY OR MODE	This field describes the form and the key or mode of a musical work.

Examples

EX 1
128 ##$afg#
200 1#$aFour fugues for guitar trio
EX 2
128 ##$avr#
200 1#$aVariations for solo piano, piano trio and piano quartet
EX 3
128 ##$aco#$ddm
200 1#$aConcerto for two flutes & string orchestra in D minor
EX 4
128 ##$ams#$d01
200 1#$aMissa quatuor vocibus primi toni
EX 5
128 ##$asnd$deb
200 1#$aSerenata per oboe e archi ridotta per oboe e piano
500 10$aSerenate$roboe e archi$umi bemolle maggiore$wriduzione

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Align with FRBR and remove list of codes.
2024	Update section Related Fields.

130 CODED DATA FIELD: MICROFORMS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains coded data relating to microforms.

Repeatable when more than one microform is described in a single bibliographic record.

This field was designed prior to the release of the FRBR and IFLA LRM, therefore, all data from this field are relevant for pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM or non-FRBR/IFLA LRM context.

According to the FRBR/IFLA LRM, some data in this field are preferably carried in the linked authority data (see Related Fields) describing the relevant related entity unless the information pertains to the manifestation.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
130	CODED DATA FIELD: MICROFORMS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES	R	O
a	Microform Coded Data – Physical Attributes	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Microform Coded Data – Physical Attributes

Codes indicate the physical attributes of the microform.

The subfield is 11-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Specific Material Designation	1	0
Polarity	1	1
Dimensions	1	2
Reduction Ratio	1	3
Specific Reduction Ratio	3	4-6
Colour	1	7
Emulsion on Film	1	8
Generation	1	9
Base of Film	1	10

Notes on Field Contents

$a/0 Specific Material Designation

a	aperture card
b	microform cartridge
c	microfilm cassette
d	microfilm reel
e	microfiche
f	microfiche cassette

g	micro opaque
h	microfilm slip
u	unspecified
z	other

$a/1 Polarity

a	positive
b	negative
d	mixed polarity
u	unknown

$a/2 Dimensions

a	8 mm (microfilm)
d	16 mm (microfilm)
f	35 mm (microfilm)
g	70 mm (microfilm)
h	105 mm (microfilm)
l	3x5 in. (8x13 cm) (microfiche or micro opaque)
m	4x6 in. (llx15 cm) (microfiche or micro opaque)
o	6x9 in. (16x23 cm) (microfiche or micro opaque)
p	3 1/4 x 7 3/8 in. (9x19 cm) (aperture card)
u	unknown
z	other

$a/3 Reduction Ratio

a	low reduction
b	normal (16x – 30x)
c	high (31x – 60x)
d	very high (61x – 90x)
e	ultra-high (9lx –)
u	unknown
v	varies

$a/4-6 Specific Reduction Ratio

The magnification needed to make the microform legible. Normally stated on the resource. If value given, right justified with zero fill. If single digit missing, replaced by "u". If ratio unknown, filled with blanks.

$a/7 Colour

1-character code indicates the colour characteristics of microforms.

Use blank if this data pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entity other than the Manifestation.

a	one colour	The resource is in a single colour, including black-and-white.
b	multicoloured	The resource is in more than one colour.
u	unknown	
v	mixed	The resource is in a combination of black-and-white and/or colours.
z	other	The resource has colour characteristics not covered by the other defined codes. Includes stained, tinted, toned (e.g., sepia).
#	value position not needed	According to cataloguing rules based on IFLA LRM, this data is not needed at the manifestation level.

$a/8 Emulsion on Film

a	silver halide
b	diazo
c	vesicular

u	unknown
v	mixed emulsion
x	not applicable
z	other

$a/9 Generation

a	first generation (Master)
b	printing master
c	service copy
u	unknown
v	mixed generations

$a/10 Base of Film

a	safety base, undetermined
b	not a safety base (e.g. nitrate)
c	safety base, acetate undetermined
d	safety base, diacetate
e	safety base, polyester
f	safety base, mixed, mixed safety base films spliced together, no nitrate film
g	safety base, triacetate
u	unknown
x	not applicable

Examples

EX 1
130 ##$aebmb024aaca
e - microfiche b - negative polarity m - 4x6 inches b - normal reduction ratio of: 024 24 a - monochrome a - silver halide base c - service copy a - on a safety base

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Authorities format	
147 CODED DATA FIELD: COLOUR AND SOUND CONTENT	In the case of LRM compliant cataloguing, information related to colour and sound content should be entered in field A147 in expression entity records. Only information pertaining to the manifestation level should be entered in field 130.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2017	Changes for colour indicator.
2020	Changes to scope of field, subfield $a position 7 and added Related fields.

131 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – GEODETIC, GRID AND VERTICAL MEASUREMENT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains coded data relating to the geodetic, grid and vertical measurement details of cartographic resources.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
131	CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES: GEODETIC, GRID AND VERTICAL MEASUREMENT	NR	O
a	Spheroid	R	O
b	Horizontal Datum	R	O
c	Grid and Referencing System	R	O
d	Overlapping and Referencing System	R	O
e	Secondary Grid and Referencing System	R	O
f	Vertical Datum	R	O
g	Unit of Measurement of Heighting	R	O
h	Contour Interval	R	O
i	Supplementary Contour Interval	R	O
j	Unit of Measurement of Bathymetry	R	O
k	Bathymetric Interval	R	O
l	Supplementary Bathymetric Interval	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Spheroid

A two-character code indicates the spheroid used to construct the map. Repeatable.

$b Horizontal Datum

A three-character code used to indicate the horizontal datum(s) named on the cartographic resource. Repeatable for each datum.

$c Grid and Referencing System

A two-character code indicating the main grid or referencing system. This code (and those in subfields $d and $e) includes the spheroid of construction of the grid (as opposed to the spheroid of construction of the map given in subfield $a). Repeatable.

$d Overlapping and Referencing System

A two-character code indicating a subsidiary grid or referencing system which extends across the face of the cartographic resource. Repeatable.

$e Secondary Grid and Referencing System

A two-character code indicating a subsidiary grid or referencing system which appears in the form of marginal ticks. Repeatable.

$f Vertical Datum

A two-character code used to indicate the vertical datum(s) named on the cartographic resource. Repeatable for each datum.

$g Unit of Measurement of Heighting

A two-character code indicating the unit of measurement of heighting. Repeatable.

$h Contour Interval

Up to four characters indicating the value of interval of the main contours (i.e. those contours which always appear when applicable) in the unit of measurement given in subfield $g. Up to one decimal place may be recorded, values of more than one decimal place should be rounded up to one. Repeatable for each value when, for example, the value changes with height.

$i Supplementary Contour Interval

Up to four characters indicating the value of the interval of supplementary contours, i.e. contours used between main contours to increase the topographic expression of the area (e.g. in areas of low relief) or contours whose value is not repeated on the surface of the map. The unit of measurement is that given in subfield $g. Up to one decimal place may be recorded, values of more than one decimal place should be rounded up to one. Repeatable.

$j Unit of Measurement of Bathymetry

Repeatable.

$k Bathymetric Interval

Repeatable.

$l Supplementary Bathymetric Interval

The oceanographic equivalent of subfields $g to $i. The rules for these subfields apply to subfields $j to $l. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The codes can be found in Appendix D of the UKMARC format (see also Appendix A).

Related Fields

120 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – GENERAL	
121 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES	These fields are used to code other attributes of cartographic resources.

Examples

EX 1
131 ##auubaqh$cpe
The spheroid used to construct the map is unknown. The horizontal datum is the European Datum. The map uses the Universal Transverse Mercator Grid, International Spheroid.
EX 2
13l ##auubbpmcpdfnkgabh40$i20
The spheroid used to construct the map is unknown. The horizontal datum is the North American Datum 1927. The map uses the Universal Transverse Mercator Grid, unknown spheroid. The vertical datum is the Sea Level Datum 1929, USA. The heighting is in feet. Main contour intervals are at 40 feet, with other intervals at 20 feet.

History

2024	Update section Notes on Field Contents.

135 CODED DATA FIELD: ELECTRONIC RESOURCES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains coded data relating to electronic resources.

Repeatable when more than one type of file/software program is described in the same record.

This field was designed prior to the release of the FRBR and IFLA LRM, therefore, all data from this field are relevant for pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM or non-FRBR/IFLA LRM context.

According to the FRBR/IFLA LRM, some data in this field are preferably carried in the linked authority data (see Related Fields) describing the relevant related entity unless the information pertains to the manifestation.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
135	CODED DATA FIELD: ELECTRONIC RESOURCES	R	O
a	Coded Data for Electronic Resources	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Coded Data for Electronic Resource

Codes indicate the aspects of the electronic resource.

The subfield is 13-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Type of Electronic Resource	1	0
Special Material Designation	1	1
Colour	1	2
Dimensions	1	3
Sound	1	4
Image Bit Depth	3	5-7
Number of File Formats	1	8
Quality Assurance Target(s)	1	9
Antecedent/Source	1	10
Level of Compression	1	11
Reformatting Quality	1	12

Notes on Field Contents

If coding is not attempted for this data element, the field should not be present.

$a/0 Type of Electronic Resource

1-character code indicates the type of data file.

a	numeric	A data file that contains mostly numbers or representation by numbers, such as records containing information on student test scores, information on

		football team statistics, etc. The information may be original surveys or information that has been summarized or statistically manipulated.
b	computer program(s)	A data file that contains an ordered set of instructions directing the computer to perform basic operations and identifying the information and mechanisms required. This category includes videogame and microcomputer software and computer models.
c	representational	A data file that contains pictorial or graphic information that can be manipulated in conjunction with other types of files to produce graphic patterns that can be used to interpret and give meaning to the information.
d	text	A data file that contains mostly alphabetic information (words or sentences) converted into a coded format that can be processed, sorted, and manipulated by machine, and then retrieved in many optional formats. This category includes such information as bibliographic files and files containing literary texts. and (in records created before the introduction of code e) bibliographic files.
e	bibliographic data	Code e indicates that the resource consists of data with bibliographic citations. This includes data from library catalogues or citation databases. The data may be in a structured or unstructured form.
f	font	Code f indicates a resource contains information for a computer to produce fonts.
g	game	Code g indicates that the resource is a game, intended for recreational or educational use. Generally games consist of text and software. Videogames are included here.
h	sound	Code h indicates that the resource consists of data encoding sounds produced by the computer.
i	interactive multimedia	Code i indicates that the resource described by the record supports navigation through and manipulation of many kinds of media (i.e. audio, video, etc.).
j	online system or service	Code j indicates that the described resource is an online system or service and may contain non-bibliographic information. An online system or service supports system-based user interaction. Examples of these are: online library systems; FTP sites; electronic bulletin boards; discussion groups/lists; World Wide Web sites, network information centres.
u	unknown	The type of data file is not known.
v	combination	A data file with different types of content.
z	other	A type of data file for which no specific code has been assigned.

$a/1 Special Material Designation

1-character code indicates the type of data carrier.

a	cartridge magnetic tape	Removable module containing a secondary storage medium such as magnetic tape.
b	computer chip cartridge	Removable module containing a miniaturized electronic circuit, mass-produced on a tiny chip or wafer of silicon, designed to provide additional processing, memory, or storage capacity to a computer. Includes several types of solid-state, memory/storage devices such as non-rewritable ROM-chip cartridges and rewritable flash drives (e.g. USB keys).
c	computer optical disc cartridge	Removable module containing one or more nonmagnetic discs used to store digital information.
d	computer disc, type unspecified	A disc whose type is not specified.
e	computer disc cartridge, type unspecified	A disc cartridge whose type is not specified.
f	computer magnetic cassette tape	Removable module, somewhat like an audio cassette, that contains magnetic tape that can be written on and read from by a tape drive.

h	magnetic tape for main-frame computers	Removable spool containing magnetic tape that can be written on and read from by a tape drive.
j	magnetic disk	Digital information storage medium usually consisting of a thin Mylar disk coated with a magnetic material that permits the recording of data. Magnetic disks come in various sizes. They are also known as floppy disks, stiffy disks, computer diskettes, or floppy diskettes.
k	computer card	A card containing digitally encoded data designed for use with a computer.
m	computer magneto-optical disk	Erasable or semi-erasable storage medium, similar to a CD-ROM disc, capable of storing data at a very high density. The disc is written to and read from using a laser beam used to heat the recording surface to a point at which regions of the surface of the disk become magnetically aligned to store bits of data
o	computer optical disk	Medium that uses a series of laser-burned micron-sized holes (pits) on a special recording surface to store data. Recorded data is read optically. These discs are usually a read-only medium. Commonly found computer optical disc formats include: CD-A, CD-I, CD-R, CD-ROM, CD-ROM-XA, DVD-ROM and Photo CD.
r	online	A special material designation for digital resources that are accessed, processed, executed, etc. remotely.
s	standalone device	Standalone devices consist of storage and reader components as an integrated standalone device. The data storage medium cannot be removed from the playback device with which it is issued. The data carried on the medium can only be read using the integrated special-purpose device.
u	unknown	Special material designation for the digital resource is not specified, e.g., it may be a digital resource that changes its medium over time.
z	other	None of the other codes is appropriate.

$a/2 Colour

1-character alphabetic code indicates the colour characteristics of an electronic resource.

Use blank if this data pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entity other than the Manifestation.

a	one colour	The resource is in a single colour. Does not include black-and-white and greyscale.
b	black-and-white	The resource is in black-and-white only (i.e., only on two levels).
c	multicoloured	The resource is in more than one colour.
g	greyscale	The resource is in a large number of shades of grey.
m	mixed	The resource is in a combination of black-and-white, greyscale, and/or colours.
n	not applicable	The colour characteristics do not apply.
u	unknown	
z	other	The resource has colour characteristics not covered by the other defined codes. Includes stained, tinted, toned (e.g., sepia).
#	value position not needed	According to cataloguing rules based on IFLA LRM, this data is not needed at the manifestation level.

$a/3 Dimensions

1-character alphabetic code used to indicate the dimensions of the medium used to encode the electronic resource. Only the most common dimensions are indicated. In many cases, the dimensions apply to the container in which a magnetic or optical medium is encased.

a	3½ in.
e	12 in.
g	4¾ in. or 12 cm.
i	1 1/8 x 2 3/8 in.
j	3 7/8 x 2 1/2 in.
n	Not applicable
o	5¼ in.
u	Unknown
v	8 in.
z	Other

$a/4 Sound

1-character alphabetic code indicates whether the production of sound is an integral part of an electronic resource.

Use blank if this data pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entity other than the Manifestation.

#	no sound (silent)	
a	sound on medium	
u	unknown	
x	value position not needed	According to cataloguing rules based on IFLA LRM, this data is not needed at the manifestation level.

$a/5-7 Image Bit Depth

3-character numeric code which indicates the exact bit depth of the scanned image(s) that comprise the electronic resource, or a three-character alphabetic code which indicates that the exact bit depth cannot be recorded. Bit depth is determined by the number of bits used to define each pixel representing the image.

The proposed definitions for bit depth require that if the exact bit depth is not known, or if there are multiple images with varying bit depths comprising the electronic resource, either "---" (unknown) or "mmm" (multiple) is used. Only exact bit depth information should be given.

001-999	exact bit depth
mmm	multiple (more than one image type)
nnn	not applicable
---	unknown

$a/8 Number of File Formats

1-character alphabetic code indicates whether the file(s) which comprise(s) the electronic resource are of the same format or type for digitally reformatted materials.

a	one file format
m	multiple file formats
u	unknown

$a/9 Quality Assurance Target(s)

1-character alphabetic code indicates whether quality assurance targets have been included appropriately at the time of reformatting/creation of the electronic resource. Commonly found quality control targets for scanning include the Kodak Q13 or Q14 Color Separation Guide and Gray Scale; Kodak Q60 Color Input Target; AIIM Scanning Test Chart #2; and the RIT Alphanumeric Resolution Test Object. Commonly found quality assurance targets for re-recording/transfer of audio files include reference and azimuth tones.

a	absent

n	not applicable
p	present
u	unknown

$a/10 Antecedent/Source

When the resource is coded "a", "original" refers to a non-reformatted original. This could be a book, a manuscript, a sheet of paper or vellum, etc. When applying this byte to photography, the concept of "original" must take the creator's intention into consideration; because it is often the photographic print which is the finished piece and not the camera negative.

a	file reproduced from original
b	file reproduced from microform
c	file reproduced from electronic resource
d	file reproduced from an intermediate source other than microform
m	mixed
n	not applicable
u	unknown

$a/11 Level of Compression

1-character alphabetic code indicates what level of compression the electronic resource has been subjected to.

a	uncompressed
b	lossless
d	lossy
m	mixed
u	unknown

$a/12 Reformatting Quality

1-character alphabetic code indicates the general physical features and intended use of a reformatted electronic resource, distinguishing between files intended for access to original resources from those intended to preserve (and possibly replace) the original resource.

Reformatting quality information is similar to that conveyed in the *130 Coded Data Field: Microforms – Physical Attributes* subfield $a/9 (Generation) where distinctions are made between master, printing, service, and mixed copy microforms.

a	access	Indicates that the electronic resource is of a quality that will support current, electronic access to the original item, but not sufficient to serve as a preservation copy.
n	not applicable	
p	preservation	Indicates that the electronic resource was created via reformatting to help preserve the original item.
r	replacement	Indicates the electronic resource is of very high quality and, when printed out, viewed on screen or played via a listening device, could serve as a replacement should the original be lost, damaged, or destroyed.
u	unknown	

Examples

EX 1
135 ##$adrbn#---aaaaa
An online ($a/1: r) text ($a/0: d) file, which is black-and-white ($a/2: b). It has no physical dimensions ($a/3: n) and no sound ($a/4: #). Image bit depth is unknown ($a/5-7: ---). It is in one file format ($a/8: a). Quality assurance targets are absent ($a/9: a). The file was reproduced from an original ($a/10: a). It is uncompressed ($a/11: a). It is for access only ($a/12: a).

EX 2
135 ##$acrmn#mmmmucda
An institution is running a scanning project related to the birds of North America. The books scanned in this project have both black-and-white and colour images. Master files of the books are being created, but the institution has also made a decision to create separate "access versions" for easy accessibility via the Internet. To accomplish this, the decision has been made to make the text pages available as bitonal (b/w) images, but because the colouring of the birds is important to capture and make available, the colour plates will be made available as true-colour, compressed images. The 135 field is for an access version derived from an electronic resource of a digitally reformatted original, stored remotely, and accessed over a computer network. The access file is comprised of both 24-bit colour and 8-bit bitonal images (no sound) which have been compressed using JPEG (a lossy compression system). It is not known if this access version contains quality control targets.
EX 3
135 ##$adugn#008apabr
A research library is reformatting a set of high-use, but brittle, early nineteenth-century books as a preservation project. Because the poor physical condition will likely withstand only one preservation action, the bibliographer, in consultation with the preservation staff, has decided that these text-only ($a/0: d) volumes would be best replaced ($a/12: r) via high-quality digitisation ($a/10: a). The institution will create a master file for preservation purposes, which it has committed to storing, refreshing and migrating over time. The original volumes will be discarded after digitisation and quality control has been completed. The image files will be greyscale images ($a/2: g), 8 bpp ($a/7: 8), and saved as TIFF images (a lossless compression scheme ($a/11: b)). Quality control targets (a Kodak Grayscale bar and resolution targets) will be included at the time of scanning ($a/9: p). The 135 field for the master files of the set reflects the digitised version of the original, reformatted (and replaced) during preservation. The electronic resource comprises greyscale TIFF images only (no sound ($a/4: #)) which were scanned at a bit depth of 8 bits per pixel ($a/5-7: 008), including quality control targets and is compressed using lossless compression. Because this file was created to replace the original volumes, the medium on which the file is stored will vary as it is refreshed and migrated to new systems to remain accessible ($a/1: u).
EX 4
135 #$ahrnnannnaaadn
An online MPEG3 file consisting of sound only.
EX 5
135 ##$adoag#001aambr
A digitised version of a journal, reformatted from microform and partly from original (135$a/10: m) for access and preservation; its quality justifies using it as replacement of the original (135$a/12: r). The electronic resource is comprised of bitonal ($a/2: a) TIFF images only (135 $a/8: a) (no sound) ($a/4: #) which were scanned at a bit depth of 1 bit per pixel (135 $a/5-7: 001), not including quality control targets (135 $a/9: a) and is compressed using lossless compression (135$a/11: b). The master file is stored on CD-ROM ($a/1: o; $a/3: g) and may be migrated to new systems to remain accessible.
EX 6
135 ##$adumn#mmmmpabp
A digitised book, reformatted from original (135$a/10: a) for preservation (135$a/12: p). The electronic resource is comprised of greyscale and colour ($a/2: m) images (135 $a/08: m) (no sound) ($a/4: #) which were scanned at multiple bit depths (135 $a/5-7: mmm), including quality control targets (135 $a/9: p) and is compressed using lossless compression (135$a/11: b). The master file is stored on changing servers ($a/1: u; $a/3: n) while being migrated to new systems to remain accessible.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Bibliographic format

183 CODED DATA FIELD: TYPE OF CARRIER	
203 CONTENT FORM AND MEDIA TYPE	
230 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: ELECTRONIC RESOURCE CHARACTERISTICS	
231 DIGITAL FILE CHARACTERISTICS [PROVISIONAL]	
283 CARRIER TYPE	
336 TYPE OF ELECTRONIC RESOURCE NOTE	
337 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS NOTE (ELECTRONIC RESOURCES)	
UNIMARC/Authorities format	
147 CODED DATA FIELD: COLOUR AND SOUND CONTENT	In the case of LRM compliant cataloguing, information related to colour and sound content should be entered in field 147 in expression entity records. Information pertaining to the manifestation level should be entered in field 135.

History

1998	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions
2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions
2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions
2017	Changes for colour indicator
2019	Additions, renamed codes in $a/1. Added section Related Fields.
2020	Changes to scope of note, subfield $a positions 2 and 4 and Related fields.
2023	Text edit.

140 CODED DATA FIELD: ANTIQUARIAN - GENERAL

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains fixed-length coded data relating to the physical form of older monographic publications (antiquarian) and also later materials described in similar bibliographic detail.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
140	CODED DATA FIELD: ANTIQUARIAN – GENERAL	NR	O
Subfield	Subfield name	Repeatability	Occurrence
a	Antiquarian Coded Data – General	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Antiquarian Coded Data – General

Codes indicate the aspects of the antiquarian resource.

The subfield is 28-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Illustration Codes – Book	4	0-3
Illustration Codes – Full Page Plates	4	4-7
Illustration Code – Technique	1	8
Form of Contents Code	8	9-16
Literature Code	2	17-18
Biography Code	1	19
Support Material – Book	1	20
Support Material – Plates	1	21
Watermark Code	1	22
Printer's Device Code	1	23
Publisher's Device Code	1	24
Ornamental Device Code	1	25
Unassigned	2	26-27

Notes on Field Contents

$a/0-3 Illustration Codes – Book

4-character positions available for illustration codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If more than four codes are applicable, select the first four in the order they appear in the list below. Note that blanks are used in preference to "y" in these character positions.

These codes usually relate to terms in the physical description of the resource. If the data element is not used, fill characters should be entered in character positions 0-3; if they are used but fewer than four types of illustrations are present, then remaining positions contain blanks.

a	illustrations (use for types of illustrations which are not covered below, or when types of illustrations are not being specifically coded)
b	illuminations
c	ornamental letter
d	miniature
e	rubric (i.e. heading etc. in special lettering)
f	vignette (i.e. ornament round capital letter etc. or in blank space)
g	frontispiece
h	portrait
i	vedute (i.e. panoramic view of a city etc. with important features identified)
j	maps
k	charts (i.e. maps for navigation)
l	plans
m	music
n	coats of arms
o	genealogical tables
y	no illustrations
z	other
#	value position not needed

$a/4-7 Illustration Codes – Full Page Plates

4-character positions available for illustration codes for full page plates and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If more than four codes are applicable, select the first four in the order they appear in the list below. Note that blanks are used in preference to "y" in these character positions.

These codes usually relate to terms in the physical description of the resource. If the data element is not used, fill characters should be entered in character positions 4-7; if they are used but fewer than four types of illustrations on full page plates are present, then remaining positions contain blanks; if there are no full page plates in the resource and that fact is known, then all positions contain blanks.

a	illustrations
g	frontispiece
h	portraits
i	vedute
j	maps
k	charts (i.e. maps for navigation)
l	plans
m	music
n	coats of arms
o	genealogical tables
y	no illustrations
z	other
#	value position not needed

$a/8 Illustration Code – Technique

1-character code indicating a technique in which the illustration is executed.

a	woodcut
b	lithography
c	etching
d	aquatint
e	engraving
u	unknown
v	mixed
z	other

#	value position not needed

$a/9-16 Form of Contents Code

The four 2-character codes indicating the form of contents codes and they should be entered from left to right, any unused positions being filled with blanks. If more than four codes are applicable, select the first four in the alphabetical order of the codes' first letter as they appear in the list below.

These codes should be used whether the resource contains this form of material or consists completely of this form of material. If the data element is not used, fill characters should be entered in character positions 9-16. If a form not listed is required, code "zz" is used.

aa	religious work (use for Bible stories, catechism, devotional literature, hymn, indulgences, litany, miracle narrative, religious plays, sermons, service books, etc. If specific designation is needed for catechism, devotional literature, sermon and service books use codes "ab", "ac", "ad" and "ae" respectively)
ab	catechism
ac	devotional literature (i.e. books of hours, devotional calendars, novenas, prayer books, psalters, etc.)
ad	sermon, i.e. apocalyptic sermons, children's sermons, occasional sermons, etc.
ae	service books, i.e. liturgical books: antiphonary, breviary, evangelistary, gradual, hymnal, missal, pontifical, ritual, sacramentary, etc.
ba	scientific work, i.e. scientific atlas, herbal, laboratory note, pharmacopoeia, etc.
bb	discussion, dissertation, thesis
ca	social customs, i.e. courtesy books, festival books, fraternity and lodge rituals, etc.
da	legal work, i.e. laws, acts, bills, charters, treaties, regulations, etc.
db	political work
ea	ephemera, i.e. advertisements (booksellers', printers', publishers' advertisements), salescatalogues (auction, booksellers', manufacturers', etc.), broadsides, programs, etc.
fa	reference work (use for academic catalogue, library catalogue, museum catalogue, almanac, bibliography, calendar, directory, index, wordbook, thesaurus, schematisms, etc. If specific designation is needed for library catalogue, bibliography, calendar, index, dictionary and encyclopedia use codes "fb", "fc", "fd", "fe", "ff" and "fg" respectively)
fb	library catalogue
fc	bibliography
fd	calendar
fe	index
ff	dictionary
fg	encyclopedia
ga	historical work, i.e. chronicles, annals, biography, genealogy, family, local, oral and military history, etc.
ha	polemical treatise
ia	discursive work, i.e. addresses, dialogue, interview, letters, questions and answers, etc.
ja	commemorative work, i.e. Festschrift, album, epitaph, eulogy, memorial, etc.
ka	instructional work (use for instructional work in general. If specific designation is needed for manuals and textbooks use codes "kb" and "kc" respectively)
kb	manual, i.e. handbook
kc	textbook, i.e. alphabet, anthology, chrestomathy, primer, reader, grammar, etc.
la	record-keeping work, i.e. certificate, price list, subscribers' list, voting register, etc.
ma	recreations, i.e. colouring book, games, puzzles, etc.
na	version of a work, i.e. adaptation, abridgement, parody, expurgated edition, scenario, etc.
zz	other
##	value position not needed

$a/17-18 Literature Code

2-character code indicates the type of literary text if the work is a a literary text.

aa	poetry
ab	romance, e.g. gesta, pastoral romance
ca	drama
da	libretto
ea	fiction (use for fiction in general. If specific designation is needed for novel, novella, fable, fairy tale, allegory, legend, parable and short story use appropriate codes given below)
eb	novel
ec	novella
ed	fable
ef	fairy tale
eg	allegory
eh	legend
ei	parable
ej	short story
fa	essay, feuilleton
ga	humour, satire
ha	letters
ia	miscellanea
ja	maxim, aphorism, proverb, anecdote
ka	juvenile literature
la	other (use for chronicle, memoir, diary, biography, hagiography, travelogue, erotica, mystic literature, etc. If specific designation is needed for these, use appropriate codes given below)
lb	chronicle
lc	memoir
ld	diary
le	biography
lf	hagiography
lg	travelogue
lh	erotica
li	mystic literature
ma	oratory, speeches
yy	not a literary text
zz	multiple or other

$a/19 Biography Code

1-character code indicates the type of biography if the work is a biographical work.

a	autobiography (use for memoir and confession)
b	individual biography
c	collective biography
d	contains biographical information
y	not biographical
z	multiple or other form

$a/20 Support Material – Book

1-character code indicating a support material on which the work is printed or written.

a	paper, general
b	hand-made paper
c	rice paper
d	wood-pulp paper
e	parchment, vellum
z	other

$a/21 Support Material – Plates

1-character code indicating a support material on which the plates are executed. If there are no plates in the resource and that fact is known, then this position contains blank.

a	paper, general
b	hand-made paper
c	rice paper
d	wood-pulp paper
e	parchment, vellum
z	other
#	value position not needed

$a/22 Watermark Code

1-character code indicating whether the paper contains watermark.

0	paper does not contain watermark
1	paper contains watermark

$a/23 Printer's Device Code

1-character code indicating whether the book contains printer's device.

0	printer's device not present
1	printer's device present

$a/24 Publisher's Device Code

1-character code indicating whether the book contains publisher's device.

0	publisher's device not present
1	publisher's device present

$a/25 Ornamental Device Code

1-character code indicating whether the book contains ornamental device.

0	ornamental device not present
1	ornamental device present

$a/26-27 Unassigned

3-character positions contain blanks.

Related Fields

105 CODED DATA FIELD: TEXTUAL LANGUAGE MATERIAl, MONOGRAPHIC	This field contains coded data relating to monographic language resources not considered antiquarian.

Examples

EX 1
140 ##$abc######azz######aaya#0000##
Coded information for C. Valerius Catullus's Carmina. Venetiis, Andreas de Paltascichis, XVIII kal. Jan. [15. XII] 1487 et 1. II 1488.
EX 2
140 ##$acfhnajihega######lebaa0000##
Coded information for Natale solum magni ecclesiae doctoris sancti Hieronymi in ruderibus Stridonis occultatum... ac brevis Illyricanae chronologiae adjunto erutum atque cum vita ejusdem purpurati Dalmatae per Josephum Bedekovich, Neostadii Austriae, Ex Typographeo Muelleriano, 1752.
EX 3

140 ##$acn##y###ega######layb#1000##
Coded information for Itinerario da Terra Sancta e suas particularidades compostos por frey Pantaliam Daviero. Em Lisboa, 1593.
EX 4
140 ##$an########adagana##yyyb#1000##
Coded information for Capitulações da paz feita entre el Rey nosso senhor & o Serenissimo Rey da Gram Bretanha as quaes se concluryram pelos diputados que nellas se diz, em Madrid a 15 de Novembre de 1630. Em Lisboa, 1633.

History

1996	New field.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2023	Text edit.

141 CODED DATA FIELD: ITEM SPECIFIC ATTRIBUTES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains fixed-length data relating to the specific attributes of the binding and body of a item of a book.

Repeatable if the record contains details of more than one copy.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
141	CODED DATA FIELD: ITEM SPECIFIC ATTRIBUTES	R	O
a	Coded Data – Item Specific Attributes	NR	O
b	Binding Specific Characteristics	NR	O
c	Age	NR	O
d	Binding State of Preservation Code –Specific	NR	O
e	Body of the Book Specific Characteristics	NR	O
f	Body of the Book State of Preservation Code – Specific	NR	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Coded Data – Item Specific Attributes

Codes indicate the attributes of the item.

The subfield is 8-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Binding Material Code – General	3	0-2
Types of Binding Code	1	3
'Bound with' Code	1	4
State of Preservation Code – Binding – General	1	5
State of Preservation Code – Body of the Book – General	2	6-7

$b Binding Specific Characteristics

Codes indicate binding specific characteristics of item of Binding Material Code – General ($a/0-2).

The subfield is 8-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $b fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Primary Binding Material	2	0-1
Secondary Binding Material	2	2-3
Binding Decoration	1	4
Decoration Motifs	1	5

Binding Pieces	1	6
Boards	1	7

$c Age

The century relating to the binding of the copy. Not repeatable.

#	information not available
a	earlier then 10th Century
b	10th-14th Century
c	15th Century
d	16th Century
e	17th Century
f	18th Century
g	19th Century
h	20th Century
i	21st Century
u	unknown
z	other

$d Binding State of Preservation Code – Specific

Codes indicate specific aspects of binding material of State of Preservation Code – Binding – General ($a/5).

The subfield is 3-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $d fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Binding State of Preservation Code – Specific	3	0-2

$e Body of the Book Specific Characteristics

Codes indicate specific aspects of body of the book.

The subfield is 6-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $e fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Hand-made Illustration Code	3	0-2
Marks in Book Code	3	3-5

$f Body of the Book State of Preservation Code – Specific

Codes indicate the specific types of body of the book conditions.

The subfield is 3-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $f fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
0-2 Body of the Book State of Preservation Code – Specific	3	0-2

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

$a/0-2 Binding Material Code – General

3-character positions for codes indicating the main type of binding material used. They should be entered from left to right, and unused positions should be filled with blanks. For more detailed specification use $b Characteristics of binding.

a	parchment, vellum
b	leather
c	wood
d	cloth
e	synthetics
f	cardboard
g	paper
h	unbound
u	unknown
z	other
#	information not required

$a/3 Types of Binding Code

1-character code indicating the type of binding.

a	original binding, i.e. primary
b	non-original, i.e. rebound
c	modern
d	restored, facsimile
e	restored, imitation
f	work bound with another (use for publisher's, distributor's and/or owner's binding)
h	in sheets, unbound
j	facsimile
k	restored original
l	restored non-original
u	unknown
z	other
#	information not available

$a/4 'Bound with' Code

1-character code indicating whether the item is a single item or bound with one or more others.

0	single item
1	bound with one or more others

$a/5 State of Preservation Code – Binding – General

1-character code indicating the state of preservation of the item.

a	excellent
b	good
c	worn (by time, heavy or prolonged use, etc.)
d	damaged (by physical and/or mechanical, chemical or biological causes)
e	broken back
f	missing
g	restored
u	unknown

z	other
#	information not required

$a/6-7 State of Preservation Code – Body of the Book – General

Two 1-character codes indicating the state of preservation of the body of the book of the item. They should be entered from left to right, and unused positions should be filled with blanks.

a	excellent
b	good
c	worn (by time, heavy or prolonged use, etc.)
d	damaged (by physical and/or mechanical, chemical or biological causes)
e	lacking leaf/leaves
g	restored
u	unknown
z	other
#	information not required

$b/0-1 Primary Binding Material

2-character codes indicate the material used to cover the item: the stiff boards, etc., over which the leather, cloth, etc. is applied, are coded in $b/7. The most specific codes available should always be used.

If the item has two significant binding materials, the second one is coded in positions 2-3. For example, a book with a carved ivory covers and morocco leather spine would be coded "biah". If three or more materials are used, code the most prominent or significant in positions 0-1, and use code "tt" (Mixed) in positions 2-3. If there is no secondary binding material, positions 2-3 are filled with two blanks (##).

If the item is unbound, use xx##.

If the code in subfield $a/0-2 is "a" or "b" more specific codes below could be used.		
aa	parchment	Skins/Leathers.
ab	vellum	Skins/Leathers.
ac	calfskin	Skins/Leathers.
ad	sheepskin	Skins/Leathers.
ae	basil, basan, bazan	Skins/Leathers.
af	roan	Skins/Leathers.
ag	goatskin	Skins/Leathers.
ah	morocco	Skins/Leathers.
ai	niger	Skins/Leathers.
aj	chamois	Skins/Leathers.
al	pigskin	Skins/Leathers.
am	alum tawed, white leather, hungarian leather	Skins/Leathers.
an	shagreen	Skins/Leathers.
ao	horse- or ass-skin, etc.	Skins/Leathers.
ap	fish and marine mammals: ray, shark, sealskin, etc.	Skins/Leathers.
aq	snakeskin	Skins/Leathers.
ar	other animal skins	Skins/Leathers.
as	unidentified leathers and animal skins	Skins/Leathers.
bi	ivory	Other animal materials.
bm	mother-of-pearl, nacre	Other animal materials.
bt	tortoiseshell	Other animal materials.
bz	other materials from animal shells, tusks, etc.	Other animal materials.
If the code in subfield $a/0-2 is "f" or "g" more specific codes below could be used.		
ca	cardboard	Paper and by-products.
cb	paper	Paper and by-products.

cc	marbled paper	Paper and by-products.
cd	papier mâché	Paper and by-products.
If the code in subfield $a/0-2 is “c” or “d” more specific codes below could be used.		
da	cloth, book cloth	Other natural materials.
db	buckram	Other natural materials.
dc	calico	Other natural materials.
dd	canvas	Other natural materials.
de	linen	Other natural materials.
df	moiré	Other natural materials.
dg	silk	Other natural materials.
dh	watered silk (moiré effect)	Other natural materials.
dj	satin	Other natural materials.
dl	velvet	Other natural materials.
dm	other fabrics made of natural materials	Other natural materials.
dw	wood	Other natural materials.
If the code in subfield $a/0-2 is “e” more specific codes below could be used.		
ep	plastic coverings	Artificial materials.
es	synthetic fibres	Artificial materials.
If the code in subfield $a/0-2 is “z” more specific codes below could be used. Usually found only in fixtures (clasps, etc.): ignore unless use is very significant.		
fb	brass, bronze	Metals.
fg	gold	Metals.
fs	silver	Metals.
tt	mixed	Used in positions 2-3 if there are more than two significant binding materials.
uu	unknown	
xx	not applicable	The item is unbound. Use ## in positions 2-3.
zz	other binding materials	

$b/2-3 Secondary Binding Material

2-character codes indicate the secondary binding material. The two-character codes specified for character positions 0-1 are used.

$b/4 Binding Decoration

#	information not available
a	gold tooling
b	silver tooling
c	blind tooling
u	unknown
x	not applicable
z	other

$b/5 Decoration Motifs

#	information not available
a	geometric
b	anthropomorphic
c	floral
d	animal
e	heraldic
f	monograms

g	mixed
u	unknown
x	not applicable
z	other

$b/6 Binding Pieces

#	information not available
a	toggles or ties
b	buckles
c	fastenings
d	bosses
e	metal decorative pieces
f	stiffeners
u	unknown
x	not applicable
z	other

$b/7 Boards

#	information not available
a	wood
b	paper
c	pasteboard
u	unknown
x	not applicable
z	other

$d/0-2 Binding State of Preservation Code – Specific

a	chemical damage (use for types of chemical damage which are not covered below, or when types of chemical damage are not being specifically coded)
b	acidification
c	foxing
d	biological damage (use for types of biological damage which are not covered below, or when types of biological damage are not being specifically coded)
e	wormholes
f	rodent damage
g	mould
h	physical and/or mechanical damage (use for types of physical and/or mechanical damage which are not covered below, or when types of physical and/or mechanical damage are not being specifically coded)
i	water stain
j	fire damage
k	deformation
l	torn leaf/leaves
u	unknown
#	information not required

$e/0-2 Hand-made Illustration Code

3-character positions available to distinguish the types of illustrations executed by hand.

a	illustrations (use for types of illustrations which are not covered below, or when types of illustrations are not being specifically coded)
b	hand-coloured illustrations (also use for drawn or printed illustrations coloured by hand)
c	illuminations
d	pencil or pen made ornamental drawing
e	paint-brush made illustrations

u	unknown
#	information not required

$e/3-5 Marks in Book Code

3-character positions available to distinguish the types of marks in the item.

a	annotated copy	Use for types of hand written notes which are not covered below, or when types of hand written notes are not being specifically coded.
b	glosses, marginal notes	
c	manunculae	
d	provenance notes	
e	book plates (i.e. ex libris)	
f	former locations	
g	hand written indications of data	
h	non-ornamental sketches or drawing	
u	unknown	
#	information not required	

$f/0-2 Body of the Book State of Preservation Code – Specific

a	chemical damage	Use for types of chemical damage which are not covered below, or when types of chemical damage are not being specifically coded.
b	acidification	
c	foxing	
d	biological damage	Use for types of biological damage which are not covered below, or when types of biological damage are not being specifically coded.
e	worm holes	
f	rodent damage	
g	mould	
h	physical and/or mechanical damage	Use for types of physical and/or mechanical damage which are not covered below, or when types of physical and/or mechanical damage are not being specifically coded.
i	water-stain	
j	fire damage	
k	deformation	
l	torn leaf/leaves	
u	unknown	
#	information not required	

Related Fields

318 ACTION NOTE	This field is used to record preservation information and treatment. It is generally used for older monographic publications.

Examples

EX 1
141 ##$ab##a0ab#$5CiZaNSB: BZ 364
Coded information for Regole generali di architettura di Sebastiano Serlio. In Venetia, 1544.
EX 2
141 ##$abdfe0aa#$5CiZaNSB: R IV-4º -5b
Coded information for *Die Ehre deß Hertzogthums Crain*... von Johann Weichard Valvasor. Laybach, 1589

EX 3
141 ##$ah##h0fde$5CiZaNSBIIC-8º primj. b
The second copy of *Dictionarium quinque nobilissimarum Europae linguarum*. Venetiis, 1595 in the National and University Library, Zagreb. It is unbound, it is a single item, the binding is missing, and the state of preservation of the body of the book is damaged and incomplete.
EX 4
141 ##$ab##a0bd#$badxxxxdacb5PTBN: ALC. 244
Coded information for [Expositio in Ecclesiasticum / attributed to Hugh of Saint Victor]. – [12--] Original binding of the 13th century, consisting of leather (sheepskin) covering the wooden boards in the form of an envelope, used in the Middle Ages, by the monastic binders. Iron bosses as binding pieces.
EX 5
141 ##$afgbb0cb#$baccc####cgd###$e###ef#$fl##$5BE0036 BER : C.D.16
Coded information for one instance of De dissectione partium humani libri tres, a Carolo Stephano [...] editi. Una cum figuris, et incisionum declarationibus, a Stephano Riveri chirurgo co[m]positis, Parigi, Simon de Colines, 1545.
EX 6
141 ##$aa##a0db#$baa######cddh##$e###deg$f###$5GE0036 BER : C.C.272
Coded information for one instance of La anatomia del corpo umano composta da […]. Giovanni Valverde, nuovamente ristampata […], Venezia, Luca Antonio Giunta, 1586.
EX 7
141 ##$afgba0bb#$baccc####cgd###$e###e##$fb##$5GE0036 BER : B.S.XIX.A.248
Coded information for one instance of L'astronomie enseignée en vingt-deux leçons .... Ouvrage traduit de l'anglais ... par Ph. C.r [Thomas Squire], Parigi, Audin ..., 1823
EX 8
141 ##$aa##a0dde$cd$dbc#$e###d##$fbc#$5TO0741 MOS : A 116
Coded information for one instance of Tutte l'opere d'architettura di Sebastiano Serlio bolognese; doue si trattano in disegno, quelle cose, che sono piu necessarie all'architetto; et hora di nuouo aggiunto, oltre il libro delle porte, gran numero di case priuate nella citta, & in villa, et vn indice, In Venetia, presso Francesco de Franceschi senese, 1584.
EX 9
141 ##$ab##a0cd#$cd$dh##$e###dfh$fbc#$5TO0741 MOS : SV 672
Coded information for one instance of Le diverse et artificiose machine del capitano Agostino Ramelli ... Nellequali si contengono uarij et industiosi mouimenti, degni digrandissima speculatione, per cauarne beneficio infinito in ogni sorte d'operatione; composte in lingua italiana e francese, A Parigi, in casa dell'autore, 1588.

History

1996	New field.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.
2023	Text edit.

145 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE [OBSOLETE]

Field Definition and Scope

This field gives details of the instruments and/or voices, devices and other performers which make up a musical work.

Obsolete. Replaced by 146.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
145	CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE [OBSOLETE]	-	Obsolete
a	Type of Performance Medium	-	-
b	Instrument/Voice, Conductor, Other Performer or Device	-	-
c	Type of Ensemble	-	-
d	Group within Larger Ensemble	-	-
e	Number of Parts	-	-
f	Number of Players	-	-

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Arrangement Indicator
	0	Original composition
	1	Arrangement composition
2		Alternative Medium of Indicator
	#	Not applicable
	1	Alternative medium of performance

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Arrangement Indicator

This indicator shows whether the field describes the original or the arranged medium of performance.

Indicator 2: Alternative Medium of Indicator

This indicator shows whether the field describes a medium of performance that can be used in place of another occurrence of the field.

Subfields Description

$a Type of Performance Medium

A one-character code defines the type of performance medium. Not repeatable.

a	vocal a cappella music	EX 15.
b	instrumental music	EX 1-2, 9-10, 16-19.
c	vocal-instrumental music	EX 3, 5-7, 8, 13, 14.
d	electroacoustic music	
e	electroacoustic-mixed music	EX 4, 8, 11-12.
u	undefined, variable	

$b Instrument/Voice, Conductor, Other Performer or Device

Each repeated $b subfield contains an eight-character code indicating a voice or instrument category and the total number of real parts for that category. Use the abbreviations listed in Code list A/1-9, A/12-13, maintained by the IAML (International Association of Music Libraries, Archives and Documentation Centres) and available online at http://www.iaml.info/en/activities/cataloguing/unimarc/medium. For suffixes use codes from Code List B-C, also maintained by the IAML and available online at the same address. Repeatable.

$c Type of Ensemble

Each repeated $c subfield contains an eight-character code indicating one type of vocal/instrumental ensemble and only the total number of that type of ensemble. Use the abbreviations listed in Code list A/10-11. For suffixes use codes reported in Code list B-C. Repeatable. (EX 2-3, 5-9, 14-15, 19).

Subfields $b and $c fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Instruments or Voices	2 (with leading 0)	0-1
Category of Instrument or Voice	3 (see Code list A)	2-4
Suffix	4 (see Code list B-C)	5-7

$d Group within Larger Ensemble

Each repeated $d subfield contains an eight-character code describing one vocal/instrumental ensemble included in a larger ensemble, the number of voices/instruments and the sequential/progressive number of that ensemble. Use the abbreviations listed in Code list A/10-11. For suffixes use codes reported in Code list B-C. Repeatable. (EX 13-15).

Subfield $d fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
No. of Real Parts of Ensemble	2 (with leading zero)	0-1
Type of Ensemble	3 (see Code list A)	2-4
Suffix	3 (see Code list B-C)	5-7

If the number in positions 0-1 is not determined use “uu”.

$e Number of Parts

Each repeated $e subfield contains a four-character code indicating the total number of real parts indicated in the suffix. For suffixes use codes reported in Code list D. Repeatable. (EX 1-3, 5-16, 21).

$f Number of Players

Each repeated $f subfield contains a four-character code indicating the total number of players for the parts indicated in the suffix. For suffixes use codes reported in Code list D. Repeatable. (EX 4, 9, 11, 13-14, 20).

Subfield $e-f fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
No. of Instruments or Voices	3 (with leading zero)	0-2
Suffix	1 (see Code list D)	3

Notes on Field Contents

The degree of detail of the field may vary according to the local practice, i.e. all instruments playing in the orchestra may or may not be specified (EX 1, 2, 9, 13). The most common examples of non-detailed indication are percussion instruments in ensemble: sometimes only a close analysis of the score allows specification of all instruments; in such cases the indication will more likely be limited to the number of percussion players (EX 13, 14).

Pertinence of instruments to “families” in code lists is specified by the first character of the three-letter code.

The code "a" in subfield $b/7 to indicate solo should be used to differentiate a soloist in opposition with an accompanying ensemble, be it a choir, an orchestra or a chamber ensemble (EX 2-3, 5-7, 13-14, 18-19).

The order of subfields and of repetitions is in principle not relevant, except when $b/7 or $c/7 refers to a preceding occurrence of the same subfield, i.e. has the value of "c" or "d".

Subfield $d may be used to indicate groups within the main ensemble, such as percussion, choirs, etc., in particular when the cataloguing agency needs to define every instrument or voice taking part in that group (EX 13).

Subfield $e indicates the number of real parts defined in position 3.

Subfield $f indicates the number of players for the voices/instrumental family defined in position 3. It is recommended to limit its use to indicate a number of players different from that of real parts, when this distinction is relevant.

Related Fields

128 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY OR MODE	Field 146 replaces obsolete subfields 128 $b and $c.
146 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE	Field 146 replaces obsolete field 145.
302 NOTES PERTAINING TO CODED INFORMATION	This note may contain details such as use of different instruments by one performer or pertinence of single instruments to different groups within larger ensembles, etc.
500 PREFERRED TITLE ACCESS POINT	

Examples

EX 1
145 0#abb01svl###$b01kpf###
200 1#$aSonata for violin and piano in D
In more detail may be defined as follows:
145 0#abb01svl###$b01kpf###$e001s$e001k$e002a
EX 2
145 0#abb01wfl##a$b02svl###$b01sva###$b01svc###$c01ost###$e001w$e004s$e005i
145 1#abb01wfl##a$b01kpf###$e002i
500 1#$aConcertos$rfor flute and strings$wArr.
A flute concerto arranged for flute and piano; note that flute remains coded as solo also in the arranged version of the field, unlike piano that plays the accompaniment.
In a less detailed way may be coded as follows:
145 0#$b01wfl##a$c01ost###
145 1#$b01wfl##a$b01kpf###
EX 3
145 0#acb02vso##a$c01oun###$e002l$e001o
145 1#$b02vso##a$b01kpf###$e002l$e001k
200 1#$aNella Didone Duetto Sei vinto, e pur non sai Del Sig.r Ferdinando Paer Ridotto a due voci e pianoforte
A manuscript of a vocal opera duo arranged for voices and piano. In the first occurrence of field 145 the instruments of the orchestra are not listed because they are not in the cataloguer's hand.
EX 4
145 0#$b02wfl###$b02wob###$b02wcl###$b04wba###$b06bho###$b04btr###$b04btb###$b24svl###$b08sva###$b08svc###$b08sdb###$b01eta###$c03oie###$f072a

Luigi Nono's *Per Bastiana Tai-Yang Cheng, L'Oriente è rosso, pour bande magnétique et trois groupes instrumentaux* (instruments in 3 groups, 72 performers). String instruments play in real parts, each one having a different line. Pertinence of every single instrument to each instrumental group is not defined.
If you define in greater detail the pertinence of each instrument to a group and total instruments of every family, the field will be coded as follows:
145 0#aeb02wfl##1$b02wcl##1$b04btr##1$b08svl##1$b08sva##1$b02wba##2$b06bho##2$b16svl##2$b02wob##3$b02wba##3$b04btb##3$b08svc##3$b08sdb##3$b01eta###$d24oie##1$d24oie##2$d24oie##3$e010w$e014b$e048s$e001e$f072a
EX 5
145 0#acb01vso##a$b01val##a$b01vte##a$b01vbs##a$b01vso###$b01val###$b01vte###$b01vbs###$b02woa###$b02svl###$b01sva###$b01mco###$c01cmi###$c01och###$e004l$e004x$e002w$e003s$e001m$e006y$e014a
Johann Sebastian Bach's cantata *Wohl dem, der sich BWV 139* for 4 solo voices, 4-voice choir, 2 oboe d'amore, 2 violins, viola and continuo. Number of instruments by family, total number of instruments and grand total coded only to detail the example in its highest degree.
EX 6
145 0#acb02vso##a$b02val##a$b02vte##a$b02vbs##a$b01vcs##a$b02vso###$b02val###$b02vte###$b02vbs###$b04wfl###$b02wrea##$b04wob###$b04woa##d$b02woh##d$b04svl###$b02sva###$b02svg###$b02svc###$b02sve###$b01kor###$b01kor###$b01khp##c$b02mco###$c02cmi###$c02ofu###$e009l$e008x$e010w$e012s$e002k$e002m$e026y
Johann Sebastian Bach's *Matthäuspassion BWV 244* according to the Bärenreiter BA5038 score. As total number of parts is coded and oboists play also oboe d'amore and oboe da caccia, the total number of woodwinds in $e is 10 instead of 16. A cembalo can be played instead of one organ.
In less detail, this may be coded as follows:
145 0#$b02vso##a$b02val##a$b02vte##a$b02vbs##a$b01vcs##a$c02cmi###$c02ofu###
EX 7
145 0#acb02vso##a$b01val##a$b01vct##a$b02vte##a$b02vbr##a$b01vcs##a$b01vso###$b01val###$b01vte###$b01vbs###$b01vcv###$b04wfl###$b02wre###$b04wob###$b04woa##d$b02woh##d$b02wba###$b04svl###$b02sva###$b02svg###$b02svc###$b02sdb###$b02kor###$b01qco###$b01qch###$c01cmi###$c01cch###$c01och###$e009l$e005x$e012w$e012s$e002k$e002q$e026y
Johann Sebastian Bach's *Matthäuspassion BWV 244* according to the Archiv Produktion 427648-2 CD recording. Two conductors (choir conductor and orchestral conductor) are recorded. As in EX 6, the number of wind instruments does not match the number of players (oboes, oboe d'amore and oboe da caccia are played by the same 4 players).
EX 8
145 1#aeb01vun##a$b02wsaa##$b02wsat##$b03btr###$b03btb###$b01kunx##$b01kpfx##$b01tgue##$b01tgube#$b01pds###$b01ptb###$b01pag###$b01pcg###$c01cun###$c01obi###$e004w$e006b$e002k$e002t$e004p$e001x$e018y$e019a
Cacao meravigliao, a popular song as arranged for big band by Demo Morselli. According to what is written on the score, electronic keyboards are considered keyboard instruments.
EX 9
145 0#abb02wfl###$b02wob###$b02wcl###$b02wba###$b02bho###$b02btr###$b01bop###$b01pti###$b02svl###$b01sva###$b01svc###$b01sdb###$c01ofu##$e008w$e005b$e005s$e001p$e019y1451#$b01kpfv##$e001k$f002a
Felix Mendelssohn Bartholdy's *Ouverture zu Shakespeare's Sommernachtstraum Op.21* arranged for four hands piano.
With less detail, this may be coded as follows:
145 0#$c01ofu###

145 1#$b01kpfv##
EX 10
145 0#abb01wob###$b01svl###$b01sva###$b01svc###$e001w$e003s$e004i
200 #$aQuartetto per oboe e archi
A quartet for oboe and strings.
EX 11
145 0#aeb01wflbf#$b01eea###$e001w$e001e$f001a
302 ##$amicro
200 1#$aArsis et Thesis, ou La Chanson du souffle$epour flûte basse en Ut sonorisée$fMichael Levinas
A piece for amplified bass flute; electronic device is specified in a special note.
EX 12
145 0#abb02wfl###$e002i
145 01aeb01wfl###$b01eta###$e002i
200 1#$aVoices$epour deux flûtes (ou pour flûte et bande magnétique)$fLaszlo Sary
A piece for two flutes or flute and tape. Each alternative is indexed in a separate instance of the 145 field; indicator 2 specifies the alternative medium.
EX 13
145 0#acb01vwol##$b01wpi###$b01wflb#d$b01wsas##$b01wsab#d$b01kpfz##$b01ptt1#0 $b01pmd##0$b01ptil#0$b01pbd##0$b01ptel#0$b03pcr##0$b01pcy##0$b01pvi##0$b01sdb###$ d02pun##0$e001l$e004w$e001s$e010p$e001k$e016y$f002w$f002p$f001k$f006a
François Rossé's *Cris de cerise*; performers are: Voix grave féminine, flûte (piccolo et basse), saxophone (soprano et basse), piano (avec préparation), percussion (1 tom grave, 1 caisse claire, 1 timbale grave, 1 grosse caisse, 1 temple-block grave, 3 cymbales suspendues, 1 cymbale, 1 vibraphone, 1 archet de contrebasse) [two players], contrebasse. Highest possible coding. Performers playing more than one instrument coded as such; double bass bow is not codified because it is used in place of percussion sticks. Percussions are detailed as a group of two performers and as single instruments pertaining to a subgroup. Instruments and performers are detailed.
The field may be coded with less detail as follows; in this instance percussions are coded in $b instead of $d because single percussion instruments are not detailed:
145 0#$b01vwol##$b01wpi###$b01wflb#d$b01wsas##$b01wsab#d$b01kpfz##$b02pun### $b01sdb###
EX 14
145 0#acb01vso##a$b01vms##a$b01vte##a$b01vbr##a$b01vso##1$b01vso##1$b01vms##c $b01vct##1$b01vte##c$b01vte##1$b01vbr##c$b01vbr##1$b01vbs##1$b01vct##c$b01vso##2$ b01vms##2$b01val##c$b01vte##2$b01vbr##2$b01vbs##2$b01tgu##a$b01svc##a$b03wfl###$ b02wob###$b02wcl###$b01wclb##b$b02wba###$b01wdb###$b04bho###$b03btr###$b03bt b###$b01btu###$b01kpf###$b01tha###$b01pti##3$b01pbd##3$b01pmd##3$b01ptr##3$b01 pboh#3$b01ptt##3$b01pbl##4$b01pcw##4$b01pab##4$b01ptl##4$b01pcth#4$b01pji##4$b01m wh##4$b01pbpp#4$b01pbpg#4$b01phh##4$b01pcrl#4$b02pgol#4$b01pgl##5$b01pxy##5$b01p vi##5$b01pwh##5$b01pgu##5$b01pwo##5$b01pcv##5$b01pmcl#5$c01owi###$d06cve##1$d0 5cmi##2$d01pun##3$d01pun##3$d01pun##4$d01pun##5$e010l$e005x$e002j$e011w$e011b$e001 k$e001t$e025p$e049y$e015v$e051i$f010l$f002j $f003p$f005p$f027y$f048x
Sylvano Bussotti's *The Rara requiem* for four voices, ensemble of six vocal soloists, 5-voice choir (48 singers), solo guitar and cello, wind orchestra, piano, harp and percussions (3 or 5 players). Following the indications of the score, each smaller group in the ensemble is defined; the three percussion players are defined as three separate groups; total number of choir singers and alternative solo voices are specified. Prescribed percussion players may be 3 or 5.

EX 15
145 0#aab01vso##1$b01val##1$b01vte##1$b01vbs##1$b02vte##2$b01vbs##2$b03vcv##3 $c03cun###$d04cmi##1$d03cme##2$d03cch##3$e010x
A piece for three choirs: choir 1 for soprano, alto, tenor, bass; choir 2 for two tenors and bass, choir three for three boys voices. All voices and groups are defined.
EX 16
145 0#abb01wfl###$b01svl##c$b01wob##c$b01mco###$e002i
A piece for flute or violin or oboe and continuo.
EX 17
(converted from former field 128-EX 1)
128 ##$afg#
145 0#abb03tgu###
200 1#$aFour fugues for guitar trio
EX 18
(converted from former field 128-EX 2)
128 ##$avr#
145 0#abb01kpf###
145 0#abb01kpf###$b01svl##a$b01svc##a
145 0#abb01kpf###$b01svl##a$b01sva##a$b01svc##a
200 1#$aVariations for solo piano, piano trio and piano quartet
In field 128, EX2 violin, viola and cello are coded as solo instruments.
EX 19
(converted from former field 128-EX 3)
128 ##$aco#$ddm
145 0#abb02wfl##a$c01ost###
200 1#$aConcerto for two flutes & string orchestra in D minor
In the former field 128 EX 3, the agency considered it unnecessary to state that there is only one orchestra; converting the example, the number 01 in 145 $c has been added by default.
EX 20
145 0#abb01wrea##$b01svl##c$b01mco###$b01svc###$b01kun###$f003i
Jean-Baptiste Loeillet de Gant's Sonaten op. 4, n° 4-6, für Altblockflöte oder Violine und Basso continuo (Heinrichshofen's Verlag). Continuo realized for unspecified keyboard, cello part added, thus total performers coded as 3.
EX 21
145 0#$b01kpf###$b02svl###$b01sva###$b01svc###$b01muib##$b02wfl##b $b02bho##b$e006i$e010i
200 1#$aVariations pour le pianoforte avec accomp.t de deux violons, viola, violoncelle et basse (deux flûtes et cors ad libitum) op.97$fJ.N. Hummel
Subfield $e repeated to match the use or not of ad libitum instruments.

History

2005	New field.
2012	Obsolete field.
2024	Update section Related Fields.

CODE LISTS

Code lists are maintained and updated by IAML (International Association of Music Libraries, Archives and Documentation Centres) and available online at the following address: http://www.iaml.info/en/activities/cataloguing/unimarc/medium.

The lists show a definition term and several other terms using the same code, without distinction between:

- similar instruments, voices or devices having the same code;
- definition in other language(s);
- orthographical variants.

Instruments needing a suffix are shown only when they have a specific name in any language.

Chronological, organological or language specifications are added in brackets if strictly necessary. The pitch of the instruments is specified when necessary (e.g.: A, Bb, F).

A Codes for fields 145 subfields $b-$d, positions 2-4

1. Voices
2. Woodwinds
3. Brass instruments
4.Strings, bowed
5.Strings, plucked
6.Keyboard
7.Percussion
8.Electric / electronic instruments and devices
9.Miscellaneous, other, unspecified instruments
10.Choruses:
11.Orchestras, ensembles
12.Conductors
13.Other performers

1. Voices		
Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, variants
val	alto	alt altus contralto
vbr	baritone	bariton baritono baryton
vbs	bass	bajo bas basse basso bassus
vca	child alto	alto enfant boy alto contralto voce bianca knabenalt
vcl	contratenor altus	contra altus
vcs	child soprano	boy soprano knabensopran soprano enfant soprano voce bianca
vct	countertenor	contra contratenor controtenore haute-contre

vcv	child voice	boy singer boy's voice knabenstimme voce bianca voce di fanciullo voce infantile voix enfantine
vma	man's voice	voce maschile voix d'homme
vms	mezzosoprano	mezzo (En.) mezzo-soprano
vrc	reciting child's voice	voce bianca recitante voix parlée enfant
vre	reciting voice	Narrator récitant recitante sprechrolle storico testo text voce recitante
vrm	reciting man's voice	voce recitante uomo voix parlée homme
vrw	reciting woman's voice	voce recitante donna voix parlée femme
vso	soprano	cantus descant dessus discanto discantus diskant sopran superius tiple treble
vte	tenor	tenore
vun	voice – unspecified	canto chant (Fr.) part parte partie stimme voce voix vox voz
vvg	vagans	
vwo	woman's voice	voce femminile voix de femme
vzz	voice – other	
	high voice	*use suffix: vunh* hohe stimme voce acuta voix haute

	medium voice	*use suffix. vunm* voce media voix moyenne
	low voice	*use suffix: vunl* tiefe stimme voce grave voix grave
	recorded voice	*use suffix: vunk* voce registrata voix enregistrée
	voice – ethnic	use suffix: vuny

2. Woodwinds		
Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, variants
wau	aulos	diaulos doppio aulos tibia
wba	bassoon	bajon basson bassono choristfagott fagot fagott fagotto
wbh	basset-horn	basset-horn bassetthorn cor de basset corno di bassetto
wbn	bassanello	
wbp	bagpipe	biniou (Fr.) bladder pipe blaterpfife bock cornamusa cornemuse dudelsack gaita piva piva a vescica platerpfeife platerspiel sackpfeife vesica vèze zampogna (with bag) zampoña
wch	chalumeau	calimiau chalemiau chalimo chalimou chalumeau mock trumpet salmò salmoè

		schalamaux schalumò shalamo
wcl	clarinet	clarinete clarinette clarinetto klarinette
wcm	ciaramella	calandrone cennamella cornamusina dulzaina oboe degli abruzzi zampogna (without bag)
wcr	cromorne	cornamuto torto cromorno crumhorn krumb horn krummhorn orlo (Sp.) pfiffenhorn piva torta storto sumberhorn tournebout
wdb	double bassoon	bassono grosso contrabajon contrabassoon contrafagote contrebasson controfagotto fagottone kontrafagott
wdp	doppione	
wdu	dulcian	corthol curtaile curtal curtal curthol curtoll dolçaine dolcesuono dolcian dolciana dolciano dolzana dolzian dolzone double curtaile dulciana dulcion dulzian kortholt (En.)
wdv	dvojnice	dvoinice dvoynice
weh	English horn	cor anglais corno inglese

		englisches horn englischhorn taille de hautbois d'amour
wfa	flauto d'amore	flûte d'amour
wfg	flageolet	akkordflöte chord flute ciufolo flageolett flageoletto
wfi	fife	feldpfeife fiffaro fifre pifano piffaro piffero querpfeife
wfl	flute	concert flute cross flute fiauto flauta flauto flauto alemano flauto traverso flöte fluta flûte flûte allemande flûte d'allemagne flûte traversière flutta german flute grosse flöte querflöte schweitzerpfeife schweizerpfeife transverse flute traversa traverse flute traversflöte traversiere traversière traversiero traverso zwerchpfeiff
wga	tabor pipe	chirula flabiol flautilla flaviol flûte à trois trous flutet fluviol galoubet holefloyte holler holre pipe

		schwegel tämerlinpfeife tammarinpfeife tammerinpfeife tämmerlinpfeife txistu
wge	gemshorn	cor de chamois corno di camoscio
whp	pibgorn	hornpipe pibcorn pibgorn
wmo	mouth organ	organo a bocca orgue à bouche
wmu	musette	
wna	ney	nay
woa	oboe d'amore	hautbois d'amour
wob	oboe	french hautboy hautbois haut-bois hautboy hoboe
woh	oboe da caccia	jagd-hautboy wald hautbois
wpi	piccolo	flautín flauto piccolo kleine flöte oktavflöte ottavino petite flûte pickelflöte pikkoloflöte
wpo	pommer	bombard bombarda bombarde bombardo bombardone (before the 18th cent.) bombart bomhart calamello chalemelle chalemie chalmeye chirimia cialamella cialamello pumhart rauschpfeife rausspfeife russ pfeife schalmei schalmey shalme shalmie shalmuse shawm

wpp	panpipes	ciufolo fistola flauta de pan flauto di pan flauto pastorale flauto policalamo flûte de pan flûte pastorelle pandean pipes panflöte panpfeife siringa syrinx
wra	racket	cervelas cervelat cervellato cornaldo cortaldi cortale cortalli faustfagott rackett rackettfagott racquette ragett ragget rankett rogett stockfagott tartöld tartölt wurstfagott
wre	recorder	blockflöte common flute english flute flauste (Fr.) flaute (Fr.) flauto a becco flauto diritto flauto dolce flauto dritto flûte à bec flûte à neuf trous flûte d'angleterre langsflöte schnabelflöte zartflöte
wro	rothophone	
wsa	saxophone	alto-fagotto sassofono sax saxofon saxofono saxophon
wsh	shakuhachi	Shakuhashi

wsr	sarruso-phone	contrabbasso ad ancia contrabbasso da ancia contrebasse-à-anche flarmonicasarrusofono tritonikon universal-kontrabass
wsu	sordun	courtaut kortholtsordone sourdine (before the 17th cent.)
wvu	voce umana	
wun	woodwind – unspecified	holzbläser instruments à vent en bois legni strumentini
wzz	woodwind – other	
	woodwind – ethnic	use suffix: wuny
	bass clarinet	*use suffix: wclb* basse-guerrière basse-orgue clarone
	batyphone	use suffix: wcla bathyphone
	piccolo clarinet	*use suffix: wclh* clarinetto in Lab clarinetto in Mib quartino
	flautino	use suffix: wflh
	bass flute	*use suffix: wflb* albisifono albisiphon flauto albisi flauto basso (C) flautone
	heckelphone	use suffix: wobr
	tenor oboe	*use suffix: wobt* haute-contre de hautbois taille de hautbois
	tenora (Sp.)	use suffix: wpot tiple (Sp.)
	tenoroon	*use suffix: wbah* basson quinte caledonica fagottino fagotti-octavo fagotti-quarto quintfagott tenorfagott

3. Brass instruments		
Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, variants
bah	Alphorn	alpenhorn cor des alpes corno delle alpi stockbückel

bbb	bombardino	flicorno baritono (Bb) saxhorn baryton (Bb, Fr.) saxtromba baryton (Bb, Fr.)
bbd	bombardon	basse impériale (F, Eb) basso in Fa basso in Mib basstromba (Ger.) bombardone (19th-20th cent.) flicorno basso-grave (F, Eb) helicon contrabbasso (F, Eb) kaiserbass (F, Eb) sousaphone basso (Eb)
bbh	bersag horn	Biucolo tromba da fanfara tromba dei bersaglieri
bbu	bugle	bugle baryton (Bb, Fr.) bugle horn bugleret clairon cor buglèr cor bugleret corno segnale signalhorn
bca	carnyx	Karnyx Lituus
bcb	cimbasso	trombone verdi
bch	cow horn	corno di toro stierhorn
bcl	clarion	Clarien clarin (Ger.) clarín (Sp.) clarino (Ger.) clarino (It.)
bco	cornet	cornet à piston corneta (19th-20th cent.) cornetín cornetta cornetta a pistoni cornetto (It., 19th-20th cent.) echo cornet kornett ventilkornett
bct	cornett	cornaboux cornet à bouquin corneta (18th cent. and after) cornettino (17th cent. and after) cornetto (17th cent. and after) cornetto muto zink
bcu	cornu	
bdx	duplex	Bb-C-clairon bombardino-trombone dublophone eufonio-trombone flicorno-cornetta gemelli

		genis-tromba highamphone lyrophone tuba-tromba bassa
beu	euphonium	baritone (Fr.) barítono (Sp.) baroxyton baryton (Ger.) baryton en Sib barytonhorn baryton-tuba (Bb, Ger.) basse à pistons basse en Sib (Fr.) basse impériale (C, Bb) bassflügelhorn bombarda a quattro pistoni bombardino (Sp.) elicon (Bb) eufonio euphonikon euphonion flicorno basso helicon (Bb) hellhorn kaiserbaryton kaiserbass (C, Bb) phonikon tenor tuba tenorbass (Ger.) tenorbasshorn tuba in Sib (19th cent.)
bhh	hunting horn If referred to orchestral horn code bho = horn	cor de chasse (Fr.) corneta de monte (Sp.) corno da caccia (It.) cuerno de caza (Sp.) jagdhorn (Ger.) jägerhorn tromba da caccia (It., 18th cent.) trompa de caza trompe de chasse
bho	horn	ballad horn chromatic horn cor cor – solo cor à piston cor d'harmonie cor simple corno corno a macchina corno da tirarsi corno francese corno naturale french horn heerhorn herhorn hiefhorn

		hifthorn horn huchet inventionshorn jäger trommet konzerthorn okyavhorn primhorn trompa (Sp.) trompe (Fr.) ventilhorn waldhorn wic-horn
bht	herald's trumpet	bousine buisine busen busine buysine buzine chiarina fanfaren-trompete herolds-trompete tromba d'araldo tromba diritta tromba duttile (19th cent.) tromba lunga
bkb	keyed bugle	amorschall bugle à clefs cor à clefs cornetta a chiavi corno a chiavi kent bugle key bugle klappenflügel-horn klappenhorn royal kent bugle taille d'amour trompette à clefs
blu	lur	
bol	oliphant	buccina (medieval) bucina (antique) cor d'olifant olifante
bop	ophicleide	basse à clefs basse d'harmonie basso d'armonia contrebasse d'harmonie figle harmonie-kontrabass oficleide ofleide omniton ophikleide serpentcleide tuba-dupré

bph	post horn	clarion (16. cent. and after) cornet de poste cornetta da postiglione corno di posta posthorn
brh	russian horn	cor russe corno russo
bse	serpent	basse-cor basse-trompette basseuphonium bass-euphonium bass-horn basshorn (Ger.) basson russe basson serpent chromatic bass-horn chromatisches basshorn corno basso corno di basso english bass-horn fagotto russo fagotto serpente hibernicon ofibaritono ophibariton ophibaterion ophimonocleide russian bassoon russisches basshorn russisches fagott schlangenhorn serpan serpent d'église serpent droit serpent militaire serpent-bassoon serpente serpenton serpentone
bsh	shofar	chofar ram's horn s`ofar schofar shofar hajovel
bsx	salpinx	
bta	tuba (antique)	
btb	trombone	bassaune bimbonifono buccin trombone posaune sacabuche sacbuto sackbut sacqueboute saicqueboute saqueboute

		seykebuds shagbolt shagbutt shakbushe slide trombone tromba contralta in Fa trombón trombone a tiro trombone da tracolla trompette saqueboute zugposune
btr	trumpet	chromatic trumpet clarino (Ger., 16th-18th cent.) echo trumpet inventionstrompete stopftrompete tromba tromba a coulisse tromba da tirare tromba dell'aida tromba diritta (19th-20th cent.) trombeta trompeta trompete trompette valved trumpet
btu	tuba	
bvb	valved bugle	armeeposaune bügelhorn bugle à piston cornett (Ger., 19th-20th cent.) fiscorno flicorno fliscorno saxcorno saxhorn saxhorno saxtromba sudrophone
bwt	Wagner tuba	
bun	brass – unspecified	blechbläser brass instruments cuivres ottoni
bzz	brass – other	
	brass – ethnic	use suffix: buny
	contrabass ophicleide	*use suffix: bopc* kontrastbombardon oficleide-monstre
	bass trombone	*use suffix: btbb* quartposaune quintposaune
	contrabass trombone	*use suffix: btbc* doppelposaune oktavposaune

	high trumpet	use suffix: btrh clarintrompete
	bass tuba	*use suffix: btub* basso tuba (Bb) basstuba tuba (19th-20th cent.) tuba in Sib (20th cent.)
	contrabass tuba	use suffix: btuc BBb bass
	alt cornett	*use suffix: bvba* althorn (Ger.) alto en Mib (Fr.) baryton aigu bugle alto (Fr.) clavicor (Eb) clavicorno (Eb) elicon (Eb) genis genis corno helicon (Eb) mellophone tenor cor ténor en Mib (Fr.) tenor horn tenor-tube (Eb, Ger.) tuba alto (Eb, D, Ger.)
	pelittone	*use suffix: bvbc* pellittone sousaphone contrabbasso (Bb) basso in Sib elicon contrabbasso (Bb) helicon contrabbasso (Bb)
	pistonino	*use suffix: bvbn* bugle soprano en Mib (Fr.) cornett piccolo (Eb, D, ger.) cornettino in Mib flicornino petit bugle (Eb) piston pistoncino
	oktav kornett (Bb)	*use suffix: bvbp* petit saxhorn suraigu piccolo cornett (Ab, Bb)
	sopran cornett	*use suffix: bvbs* bugle (Fr.) flicorno (in band scores) flugelhorn flügelhorn
	Bb baritone	use suf*fix: bvbt* baritone (En.) bugle ténor (Bb, Fr.) clavicor (Bb) clavicorno (Bb) emboliclave saxhorn ténor (Bb, Fr.)

		tenorhorn (Ger.) tuba tenore

4. Strings, bowed		
Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, variants
sar	arpeggione	bogengitarre bowed guitar chitarra ad arco guitar violoncello guitare d'amour guitarre-violoncell streichguitarre
sba	Baryton	bardone viola di bardone viola di bordone viola paradon
sbt	Bassett	bassel basset bassete bassettl (Austr.) bassetto bassl basso da camera bierbass halbass kammerbass
sbu	Bumbass	basse à boyau basse de flandre bladder and string bumbasz guimbarde à corde
scr	crwth	chrota chrotta crot crott crotta croud crouth crouthe crowd cruit crwthau rhota rota rote rotta rotte
sdb	double bass	basse des italiens basse-contre contrabajo contrabass contrabbasso contraviolon contrebasse

		kontrabass string bass
sfi	fiddle, viol (family)	fedil fedylle fele ffythele fidella fidula fiedel fiele (En.) phidil vialla videl vidula vièle viella vielle vigel vihuela de arco vithele vitula viula (Provenç.)
sgu	Gusle	
sli	lira da braccio	lira (to the 18th cent.) lira ad arco lira da spalla
sln	lirone	accordo arceviolyra arciviola di lira arciviolata lira arciviolatalira lira (to the 18th cent.) lira ad arco lira da gamba lira doppia lira grande lirone perfetto lyra lyra perfecta lyre lyrone
sny	keyed fiddle	kontrabassharpa lökkelje nyckelfiol nyckelgiga nyckelharpa schlüsselfidel silverbasharpa viella a tasti
sob	octobass	basse gigantesque octobasse
spo	Kit	canino kytte linterculus poche pochette

		pochetto posch sordina sordino sourdine (17th-18th cent.) tanzmeistergeige taschengeige
spv	quinton	pardessus de viole quintone
sre	Rebec	giga gigue rabé (Sp.) rabec rabecq rabel rebebe rebeca rebecca rebeck rebecke rebecq rebecquet rebecum rebekke rebelle rebequin reberbe rebesbe ribeca ribecca ribibe ribible robecq rubeba rubebe rubella rybybe
stm	trumpet marine	tromba marina trombeta marina trompetengeige trompette marine trumscheit violitromba
sva	viola	alto alto viola altopiano bratsche taille (Fr.) tenor (En.) tenor viola tenor violin (En.) tenorgeige viola da brazzo viole (Fr., Ger.) violet violetta

svc	cello	bas de violon bas viol de braccio bass violin basse de violon bass-geige violoncel violoncell violoncelle violoncello violoncino
svd	viola d'amore	arnolo english violet liebesgeige viole d'amour violetta marina
sve	violone	violon (Ger.)
svg	viola da gamba	division viol gamba gambe lyra bastarda lyra viol viol viola bastarda viola de gamba viole de gambe
svl	violin	geige soprano di viola da braccio violine violino violon (Fr.) violono (Fr.)
svp	viola pomposa	pomposa violino pomposo
sun	string – unspecified	archets archi cordes instruments à archet streicher
szz	string – other	
	string – ethnic	use suffix: suny
	basse de viole	use suffix: svgb
	quartegeige	use suffix: svlh

5. Strings, plucked		
Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, Variants
tal	Archlute	angel lute angelica angelika angélique archilaud archiluth arcileuto arciliuto

		basslaute liuto attiorbato
tat	harp-psaltery	ala (medieval) arpa-citara arpaneta arpanetta arpanette flügel (medieval) harfenett harpanetta psaltery-harp spitzharfe
tbb	barbitos	Barbiton lira (antique)
tbi	biwa	
tbj	banjo	Bangio banjar banjer banjo zither banjolin banza cavaquinho ramkie strum-strum zither banjo
tbl	balalaika	balalajka
tbo	bouzouki	buzuk
tch	chitarrone	citarone erzlaute guitarron
tci	cittern	archcittern archicetra archicistre arcicetera arcicetra bandola bandoura bandurria (Sp., Am.) bass cister bijuga cither cedra cetera (16th cent. and after) cetra (16th cent. and after) chitarra inglese chitarra portuguese chitarra tedesca cister (16th cent. and after) cistra cistre citarino cithara cither cithern cithre cithren citrinchen

		citter citterlein cittharn cythar cytharino deutsche guitarre english guitar erzcister guitare allemande guitare angloise guitarra portuguesa mandora (18th cent. and after) mandurria sister sistre terzina zither (to the 18th cent.) zitrinchen zitter zitterlein
tcs	colascione	calchedon calichon colachon colascioncino colasciontino colocion galizona gallichone gallishon
tct	citole	cetera (to the 15th cent.) cetra (to the 15th cent.) cetula cistola citola zitôl (Ger.) zitole
tcz	cobza	
tgu	guitar	akkordgitarre bordelletto charango chitarra chitarra battente chitarra francese chitarra spagnola chitarriglia chitarrino chiterna gitarre gittern guitare guitare capucine guitare en bateau guitarra guitarre guitarrico guitarrillo

		guitarro guittern klange terzguitarre
tha	harp	arpa arpa a nottolini arpa a uncini arpa cromatica arpa doppia harfe harpe lira barberina lyra barberina
thg	hawaiian guitar	chitarra hawaiana guitare hawaïenne hawaiische gitarre steel guitar
tkh	kithara	cithara (antique)
tko	kora	arpa-liuto
tlf	lute (family)	liuto (famiglia) luth (famille)
tlg	lyre-guitar	anakreontische leier apollo guitar lira (19th-20th cent.) lira chitarra lyra (19th-20th cent.) lyra guitar lyre (19th-20th cent.) lyre anacréontique lyre-guitarre
tlu	lute	laúd laut laute lauto leuto liuto luit luth
tma	mandolin	bandolin banjolin liuto romano mandolina mandoline mandolino
tmd	mandore	bandora bandürichen mandoër mandoire mandola mandolino lombardo mandolino milanese mandolle mandora (to the 17th cent.) mandorina mandura mandürichen

		orpharion pandora pandurina penorcon vandola
tps	psaltery (plucked)	gusli (Rus.) kantele nebel psalter psaltérion (Fr.) psalterium saltari saltere salterio sautere sautier sautieron
tpx	phorminx	
tqa	qanum	
tth	theorbo	theorb théorbe theorbo lute tiorba tiorbino tuorba tuorbe
ttn	tanbur	tanburica
tud	‘ud	ud
tuk	ukulele	
tvi	vihuela	biguela cuatro vihuela de mano viola da mano
tzi	zither	accord zither akkordzither alpine zither appalachian dulcimer autoharp banjo harp bell harp bowed zither box zither bûche (Fr.) cetra da tavolo chord zither cithare elegiezither epinette des vosges fairy bells hexenscheit hommel humle hummel langeleik langspil scheitholt

		schwungzither zither (19th-20th cent.) zither harp
tun	plucked – unspecified	pizzicati pincés
tzz	plucked – other	
	plucked – ethnic	use suffix: tuny
	electric bass guitar	*use suffix: tgube* basso elettrico fender bass guitare électrique basse

6. Keyboard		
Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, variants
kab	archicembalo	arcicembalo cembalo enarmonico cembalo omnicordo clavecin parfait accord clavemusicum omnitonum clavicymbalum universale enharmonic harpsichord pentecontachordon proteus sambuca lincea
kac	accordion	accordéon accordio acordeon aeola armonica a manticino concertina fisa fisarmonica handharmonika harmonieflûte harmoniflûte klavier-harmonika konzertina organetto (19th-20th cent.) physharmonika ziehharmonika
kba	bandoneon	bandonéon
kca	carillon (with keyboard)	beiaard campanelli campanette cariglione carillon di campane jeu de timbres klokkenspel timbres
kce	celesta	adiaphone célesta (Fr.) celeste (En.) céleste (Fr.) clavi-lame

kch	chordette	
kcl	clavichord	clavichorde clavichordium clavicorde clavicordio clavicordo cravo klavichord manicorde manicordio manicordion manicordo monacordio monacordo sordino (with keyboard)
kco	claviorgan	clavecin organisé claviorgano epinette organisée organ-harpsichord organo-piano orgelklavier orgelklavizimbel piano-melodium
kcy	clavicytherium	arpa a cembalo arpone cembalo verticale clavecin vertical claviciterio claviciterium clavicyterium klaviziterium
kfp	fortepiano	cembalo a martelli (18th-early 19th cent.) cembalo pianoforte fortepiano hammerflügel hammerklavier piano forte (Fr.)
kgl	glockenspiel (with keyboard)	
khm	harmonium	aeoline aeolodion aeolsklavier aerophon akkordeon american organ amerikanisches organ äolsklavier armonio cabinet organ eoline harmonicorde harmonio lap organ melodeon melofono melophone orchestrion (18th – early 19th cent.)

		organophone organo-violine orgue américain orgue expressif physharmonika (Austr.) piano-chanteur poïkilorgue reed organ séraphine
khp	harpsichord	cembalo cembalo a penna cimbalo clavecin clavecin brisé clavessin clavi simbalum clavicembalo clavicimbalum clavicymbalum flügel (16. cent. and after) gravicembalo kielflügel klavier (to mid-18th cent.) klavizymbel
kmp	melopiano	armonipiano piano trémolophone
kor	organ	ninfale organetto (10th-19th cent.) organino organo organum orgel orglet orgue orgues portativo positivo
kpf	piano	aliquot piano apolliricon apollonion apollonium cabinet piano cottage piano ditanaklasis klavier luthéal lyraflügel pforte pianino piano cottage piano cycloide piano droit piano elliptique piano-console pianoforte piano-forte

		pianoforte piramidale piano-giraffa piano-luthéal square piano upright pianoforte
kps	plucked string keyboard	clavier cordes pincées tastiera a corde pizzicate
kre	regals	regal regale régale regallo
ksi	sirenion	piano clédi-harmonique piano eutophone piano harmonicorde piano-doucine
ksp	sostenente piano	bogenflügel bogenklavier cembalo ad arco cembalo da arco clavecin à archet clavicembalo ad arco geigenwerck geigenwerk harmonichord piano à archet piano quatuor piano-violon sostinente piano streichklavier
kst	spinet	arpicordo bentside spinet cembalo traverso épinette espinetta oktavspinett querflügel spinett spinetta spinettina spinettone
kvg	virginal	double virginal virginale virginalls virginals
kun	keyboard – unspecified	clavier instrument à clavier instrumento da tasto keyboard keyboard instrument klavierinstrument strumento a tastiera strumento da tasto tasteninstrument tastiera
kxx	keyboard – other	
	keyboard – ethnic	use suffix: kuny

	electronic organ	*use suffix: korx* casiotone electone electrone hammond organ organo bontempi organo hammond
	electric piano	*use suffix: kpfe* electone neo-bechstein-flügel piano électrique piano elettrico pianoforte elettrico pianotron

7. Percussion		
Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, variants
pab	aeolian bells	aeolsglocken baguettes de verre campanelle a vento campanelle cinesi a vento chinese wind chimes chinesischer messingpendelrassel cloches de coquille cloches de verre clochette à vent clochette chinoise à vent clochettes éoliennes clochettes suspendues glass chimes glass glocken glass wind chimes glasstäbchen glaswindglocken lastrine a vento di vetro mark-tree metalpendelrassel pearly chimes plaquettes de verre shell chimes shell wind chimes türgelaüt wind chimes wind-chimes wood chimes
pad	arabian drum	arabische trommel darabucca darabuka darabukka darabukke darbouka darbuka darbukat derabukka

		derbouka derbuka doumbek dumbeg-drum tabourka tambour arabe tamburo arabo tarabonka tarabuka tarbourka tunbuk
pag	agogo	agogó agogò ekòn ogàn
pan	anvil	amboss ambosse bigornia enclume incudine yunke yunque
pbb	boobams	bamboostrommel boo-bams
pbd	bass drum	big drum bombo (Sp.) cassa cassa grande catuba einfellige grosse trommel gong bass drum gong drum gran cassa gran tamburo grancassa grancassa gong grand tambour grosse caisse grosse trommel mammoth rollo tambor grande tamburo grande tamburo turco tonnant turkish drum
pbe	tambourin de Béarn	altobasso tambourin à cordes tamburina (Basque) tountouna trombe (Fr., 17th-18th cent.)
pbl	bells	bell chime campana campane campane tubolari chimes

		cloche cloches tubes glocke röhrenglocken röhrenglockenspiel röhrenspiel tubular bells tubular chimes
pbo	bongos	bongo drums bongoes
pbp	metal bells plate	campane a lastra campane a placca cloches à plaque cloches en lame de métal cloches-plaques metalplatten plate bells plattenglocken stahlplatten
pbr	bronte	Bronté
pca	castanets	castagnette castagnettes castagnetti castagnole castañetas castañuelas castanyoles clappern cliquettes kastagnetten nacchere
pcb	cabaca	Afoche afoxe afuche afuche cabaza cabasa cabaza calebasse caqueré casabia kurbisrassel xaqué
pcc	chinese cymbals	cymbales chinoises pang cymbals piatto cinese ping cymbals swish cymbals
pcg	conga	atabaque (Brazilian) congas tambor (Cuban) tambora (Cuban) tumba tumbadora
pch	chains	catene chaînes

		ketten kettenrassel
pci	cimbalom	brettl cymbalum dolcema dolcemela dolcimela doucemelle doulcemelle dowcememere dulce melos dulçema dulcet dulcette dulcimer dulcimor hachbratt hackbrett kymbalon pantaleon psaltari (struck) psalter (struck) psaltérion (Fr., struck) psalterium (struck) psaltery (struck) saltari (struck) saltere (struck) salterio (struck) sautere (struck) sautier (struck) sautieron (struck) timpano (Sp.) tympanon (Fr.)
pco	chocalho	chocallo chocolo ganza metal chocalho metal tube metallgefässrassel shüttenrohr sounding tube tube shaker tube sonore tubo sonoro tubos (Lat. Am.) xocalho
pcr	crash cymbal	aufgehängte becken becken auf ständer becken freihängend bounce cymbals crash ride cymbals cymbale suspendue cymbales frappées hängendes becken piatto piatto sospeso

		ride cymbals rock cymbals snap cymbal splash cymbals suspended cymbals top cymbals zymbal (Ger.)
pct	crotales	antike zimbeln antikes becken antique cymbals cimbali antichi crotali crotali antichi cymbales antiques gioco di crotali kleine tanz-becken zimbeln zimbelspiel
pcu	cuíca	cuica friction drum cuíca
pcv	claves	Baguettes holzstäbe
pcw	cowbell	almglocke campanaccio campanaccio a pedale campanaccio alpestre campanaccio da mucca cencerros cloche à vache cloche de vache cow-bell grelot de vache herdenglocke kuhglocke métal bloc vieh glocke viehschellen
pcy	cymbals	becken becken teller beckenpaar cimbali cinelli clashed cymbals coppia di piatti cymbales (Fr.) cymbales à main cymbales coquées cymbales cosser cymbales frappées cymbals – pair cymbals clashed gewöhnlich becken hand becken hand cymbals piatti piatti a due

		piatti a mano piatti in coppia piatti volanti platillos schellbecken tellern tschinellen two cymbals zwei becken gestossen
pdr	drum	tabur tambor tambour tamburo trommel trumme
pds	drums	bateria batteria batterie equipement de la batterie percusión (Sp.) percussion outfit schlagzeug-garnitur
pfc	finger cymbals	castagnette di ferro castagnettes de fer cimbalini a dita cliquettes métalliques crotales à doigts crotali a dita cymbales à doigts cymbales digitales finger-zimbel iron castanets metal castanets metallkastagnetten piattini
pfd	friction drum	brummtopf caccavella jackdaw lions roar lion's roar löwengebrüll putipù reibentrommel reibtrommel ruggito del leone rummeltopf string drum string-drum tambor de fricción tambour à corde tambour à friction tamburo a corda tamburo a frizione zambomba
pfl	flexatone	Flexaton

pgl	glockenspiel	bell-lyra instrumento d'acciaio lyra glockenspiel metallino militär glockenspiel sistro (18th-19th cent.) stabspiel stahlspiel
pgn	gun	cannone canon explosivaerophone
pgo	gong	gong a suono indeterminato tam tam tam-tam tamtam
pgu	güiro	gracé guayó güira guiro jiruquía reco-reco sapo vis guirra
pha	hammer	hammerschlag maglio marteau martello martellone martelo martillo massue mazza sledge-hammer
phb	handbell	campanella campanella a mano campanella da chiesa campanilla cloches à main clochette clochette à main clochette de messe clochette pour la messe hand bell handglocke messglöche messklingel sanctus bell tischglocke
phh	hi-hat	charleston charleston-cymbals cymbales à pedale cymbales charleston foot cymbals high-hat hi-hat becken hi-hat charleston

		hi-hat cymbals piatti a pedale piatto a pedale
pir	intonarumori	
pje	jembe	djembe
pji	jingles	araine bubbolo carquavel cascabel cencerro esquila girellina grelot grelots jingle bells rolle (Ger.) rollschelle schelle sleigh bells sonagli sonagliera sonaglio sonnaille sonneau sonnette
pli	lithophone	felsenharmonika lithophon litofono steinharmonika steinspiel
plj	lujon	loo-jon
pmb	marimba	marimbaphon marimbaphone
pmc	maracas	alfandoque asô asson dadu guará huada maracá marraga maruga nasisi sonajas
pmd	military drum	basel drum basler trommel caisse caisse claire caisse plate caisse roulante caisse sourde caja cassa chiara cassa rullante drum with strings field drum

		kleine trommel landsknechtsz-trommel militärtrommel parade drum paradetrommel rolling case rolling drum rolltrommel rührtrommel rullante schnarrtrommel side drum snare drum tambour à timbre tambour de Bâle tambour de parade tambour d'empire tambour militaire tambour roulant tambour ténor tambourin de Suisse tamburo con corde tamburo da parata tamburo di Basilea tamburo militare tamburo piccolo tamburo rullante tamburo tenore tenor drum tenortrommel wirbel trommel
pme	metallophone	metallofono métalophone
pnv	nail violin	eisenvioline melkharmonica metallstabsharfe nagelclavier nagelgeige nagelharmonika stockspiel violino di ferro violon de fer
pra	ratchett	bird-scare carraca cog rattle crécelle knallfrosch knarre matraca raganella ratsche rattle tartevelle
prs	rain stick	bâton de pluie
prt	roto-toms	rototoms rototomspiel

psc	sizzle cymbals	cymbale cloutée nietenbecken piatto chiodato piatto con sizzler piatto jazz
pse	sound-effect instrument	objet sonore oggetto sonoro
psl	slit-drum	afrikanische schlitztrommel cassa di legno gestimmte hölzer holzblocktrommel log drum rhythm log schlitztrommel slit drum slit gong slit wood drum talking drum tambour à fente tambour à fessure tambour de bois tambour de bois à fente tambour de tronc d'arbre tamburo a fessura tamburo di legno
psm	sistrum	crepitaculum sistre sistro (antique)
psn	sirene	siren sirena sirène
psp	sandpaper	blocchi di carta vetrata blocs à papier de verre carta vetrata papier de verre sandblöcke sandblocks sandpapier sandpapierblöcke
pss	sound sculpture	sculpture sonore scultura sonora structure Bascet
pst	steel drum	bass pan ping-pong rhythm pan tambour d'acier tamburo d'acciaio tamburo di ferro tamburo di metallo tenor pan trinidad steel drum trinidad-gongtrommel tuned-boom
psw	switch whip	fouet de verges frusta di verghe klapper aus bambus

		pu-ili rute ruthe stab aus bambus twig brush twigs verges
pta	tablas	tabla tabla trommel
ptb	tabor	frame drum hand drum handtrommel rahmentrommel taberett tabolet taboret tamborcillo tambori tamborim tambour provençal tambour sans cadre tambourin tambourin de provence tambourine (Fr.) tambourine without jingles tamburello senza sonagli tamburino tamburo di provenza tamburo provenzale tammarin
ptc	turkish crescent	albero dei sonagli bonnet chinois cappel cinese cappello cinese cappello turco chapeau chinois chinesco chinese pavilion cimbalero (Sp.) crescent halbmond jingling johnny mezzaluna mohamedsfahne padiglione cinese pavillon chinois schellenbaum
pte	temple block	bloc chinois chinese temple block chorean blocks dragon's mouth tempelblock temple bloc
ptg	tuned gong	bossed gong buckelgong button gong

		chinese gong chinesischer gong chromatic gong gestimmtes gong gong (tuned) gong a bulbo gong a calotta gong a mamellone gong accordé gong ageng gong cinese gong filippino gong (hauteur fixe) gong intonato gong javanese gong tailandese gong-chime kempul
pti	timpani	atabal bedon heerpauken kettledrum nacaires pauken timbal timbale timbale chromatique timbales (20th cent.) timbales (Fr.) timbale-trompette timballi timpano timpano a pedale timpno cromatico trompette-timbale tymbales
ptl	triangle	acciarino staffa staffetto stegeryff trepie trepit trespié triangel triangolo triangulo tripet
ptm	thunder machine	bronteron chapa de trueno donnerblech donnermaschine lamiera del tuono lamina metallica lastra del tuono macchina del tuono machine à tonnerre

		metal sheet thunder sheet tôle pour imiter le tonnerre
pto	tarol	tamburo militare piccolo tamburo tarole tarole tarole drum tarole-trommel
ptr	tambourine	basque drum bedon de biscaye pandeiro pandero pantheru penderete piano-basque rahmentrommen schellentrommel tambour de basque tambourine (En.) tamburello tamburello basco tamburello senza pelle tamburin (Ger.) tamburo basco timbrel
ptt	tom-tom	tom tomtom
pvi	vibraphone	steel marimba vibes vibrafono vibraharp vibraphon
pvs	vibra-slap	jawbone kieferknochen mascella d'asino quijada schlagrassel vibraslap
pwh	whip	claquette flagello fouet frusta holzklapper peitsche slap stick slapstick
pwm	wind machine	aeoliphone eolifono macchina del vento machine à vent windmaschine
pwo	woodblocks	bloc chinois bloc de bois cylindrique blocchi blocchi di legno blocs chinois de bois

		blocs de bois chinese blocks chinese woodblocks chinesische blöcke holzblock röhrenholztrommel tone block tone block cylinder wood block cilindrico wood blocks woodblock
pxr	xylorimba	marimba-xylophone xilomarimba xilomarimba xilorimba xylo-marimba
pxy	xylophone	armonica di legno armonica di paglia arpilegno claquebois echelette eschelletes gigelyra hölzernes gelächter holzharmonika holzspiel hülze glechter instrument di legno legnofono orgue de bois patouilles régal de bois silofono sistro d'apulia sticcato straw fiddle strohfiedel tastenxylophon timpano musicale tryphon xilofono xyloharmonika xylophon
pza	zarb	
pun	percussion – unspecified	percussioni perkussion schlagzeug
pzz	percussion – other	
	percussion – ethnic	use suffix: puny
	electronic percussion	*use suffix: punx* drum machine electronic drum percussion électronique percussioni elettroniche rythm machine side man

8. Electric / electronic instruments and devices		
Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, variants
eco	computer	Calcolatore elektronen-rechengerät elektronisches rechengerät ordinateur processeur numérique
ecs	computerized musical station	postazione informatica musicale station informatique musicale
ect	computerized tape	bande réalisée par ordinateur, son fixé nastro realizzato da computer
eds	digital space device	dispositif spatial numérique dispositivo spaziale digitale
eea	electro-acoustic device	dispositif électro-acoustique dispositivo elettroacustico
eli	live electronic	`
ely	lyricon	
ema	ondes Martenot	onde martenot
eme	meta-instrument	méta-instrument metastrumento
emu	multimedial device	dispositif multimédia dispositivo multimediale
eos	oscillator	oscillateur oscillatore
esp	space device	dispositif spatial dispositivo spaziale
esy	synthesizer	minimoog moog odyssey sintetizzatore synclavier synket synthétiseur
eta	tape	bande magnétique magnetofono magnettonband nastro magnetico tonband
eth	theremin	teremin théréminovox
eun	electronic – unspecified	électronique, non spécifié elettronico, non specificato
ezz	electronic – other	
	electric organ	use suffix: kore
	electric piano	use suffix: kpie
	electronic organ	use suffix: korx
	electronic percussion	use suffix: punx
	electronic piano	use suffix: kpix
	hammond organ	use suffix: korx

9. Miscellaneous, other, unspecified instruments

Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, variants
mah	aeolian harp	aéro-clavicorde anémocorde äolsharfe arpa eolia arpa eolica eliocordo harpe éolienne piano éolien windharfe
mbo	barrel organ	Drehorgel dutch organ grinder organ hand organ leierkasten organetto a cilindro organetto a manovella organo di barberia organo tedesco orgue à manivelle orgue de barbarie street organ walzenorgel
mbr	bullroarer	bull-roarer buzzer dischi sibilanti planchette ronflante rhombe rhombus rombo schwirrholz spinning disc tavoletta sibilante thunder stick waldteufel
mbs	bass instrument	bajo bas basse basso bassus
mbw	musical bow	arc musical arco musical arco musicale berimbau birimbao (Lat. Am.) camalpa caramba harpa (Mex.) musikbogen ukeke umcunga
mbx	musical box	ariston boîte à musique scatola musicale

		spieldose tabatière
mck	chekker	archiquier echiquier escacherium escaque eschaqueil d'angleterre eschiquier exaquier scacchiere schachtbrett
mcl	musical clock	flötenharfenuhr flötenuhr harfenuhr horloge musical orologio musicale spieluhr
mco	continuo	bajo continuo bajo fundamental basse chiffrée basse continue basse fondamentale basso cifrato basso continuo basso figurato basso fondamentale basso generale basso numerato bassus continuus bezifferten bass figured bass fondamento fondement fundamental bass generalbass grundbass thorough bass
mgh	glassharmonika	armonica (En.) armonica (It., 18th cent.) armonica a cristalli rotanti cassa armonica clavicylinder cölison copologo euphon euphone glasharmonika glass harmonica glasschord harmonica (En., 18th cent.) harmonica de verres harmonicon musical glasses verrillon xylharmonicon

		xylomelodichord xylosistron
mha	harmonica	armonica (It., 19th-20th cent.) armonica a bocca armónica de boca harmonica à bouche mouth organ mundharmonika panharmonicon
mhg	hurdy-gurdy	armonie (Fr.) bauernleier bettlerleier chifonie chinforgne cinfonia ciphonie clavecin-vielle ghironda klaviergamba leier lira organizzata lyra mendicorum lyra organica lyra pagana lyra rustica lyra tedesca organistro organistrum orgelleier radleier rotata sambuca sinfonia stampella symphonia symphonie vielle à roue vielle organisée viola da orbo viola de ruedas zampugna zanfona zanfonia
mjh	jew's harp	aura birimbao brummeisen guimbarde jaw's harp jew's trump maultrommel rebube scacciapensieri trombula trompe de béard
mla	lamellaphone	lamellophone zanza

mmc	monochord	canon harmonicus monocorde monocordo tastenmonochord
mme	melodica	
mmi	mirliton	bazooka cantophone eunuch flûte à l'oignon flûte eunuque gazooka gazoota kazoo tommy-talker zazah
mml	melodic instrument	instrument mélodique melodieinstrument strumento melodico
mms	musical saw	lame sonore (Fr.) säge mit bassbogen gestrichen scie musicale sega cantante sega musicale singende säge spielsäge
moc	ocarina	vessel flute
mpo	polyphonic instrument	instrument harmonique strumento armonico
mpp	player piano	ampico autopiano duo-art piano duophonola phonola piano mécanique piano pneumatico pianola reproduktionsflügel
mra	rabab	Rebab
msw	swanee whistle	flauto a coulisse flûte à coulisse jazz flûte lotosflöte piston flute slide flute slide whistle stempelflöte swanee flute ziehpfeife
mtf	tuning-fork	alamire corista diapason
mui	instrument – unspecified	instrumento strumento
mwd	wind instrument	aerofono blasinstrument

		strumento a fiato instrument à vent
mwh	whistle	fischietto sifflet
mun	instrument or voice, unspecified	instrument ou voix, non spécifié strumento o voce, non specificato
mzz	other	

10. Choruses		
Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, variants
cch	children's choir	chœur d'enfants choeur d'enfants coro di voci bianche
cme	men's choir	chœur d'hommes choeur d'hommes coro maschile männerchor
cmi	mixed choir	chœur mixte choeur mixte coro misto
cre	reciting choir	chœur parlé choeur parlé coro parlato coro recitante
cve	vocal ensemble	complesso vocale ensemble vocal
cwo	women' s choir	chœur de femmes choeur de femmes coro femminile
cun	choir – unspecified	chœur choeur chor choro coro
czz	choir – other	
	choir – ethnic	use suffix: cuny

11. Orchestras, ensembles		
Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, variants
oba	band	banda harmonie
obi	big band	
obr	brass band	fanfara fanfare
och	chamber orchestra	kammerorchester orchestra da camera orchestre de chambre
oco	combo	
odo	dance orchestra	orchestra da ballo orchestre de danse

ofu	full orchestra	grand orchestre orchestra sinfonica orchestre symphonique
oga	gamelan	
oie	instrumental ensemble	complesso strumentale ensemble instrumental
oja	jazz band	complesso jazz ensemble jazz
ope	percussion orchestra	orchestra di percussioni orchestre de percussions
orb	ragtime band	
osb	steel band	
ost	string orchestra	orchestra d'archi orchestre à cordes streichorchester
owi	wind orchestra	orchestra di fiati orchestre de vents
oun	orchestra – unspecified	orchester orchestre
ozz	orchestra – other	
	orchestra – ethnic	use suffix: ouny

12. Conductors		
Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, variants
qch	choir conductor, chorus master	chef de chœur direttore di coro
qco	conductor	chef d'orchestre direttore direttore d'orchestra
qce	live electronic conductor	direttore di live electronic
qlc	light conductor	direttore delle luci
qzz	conductor – other	

13. Other performers		
Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, variants
zab	acrobat	Acrobata acrobate
zat	actor	attore comédien acteur
zaw	actress	actrice attrice
zac	child actor	acteur enfant attore bambino
zda	dancer	ballerino danseur
zel	light engineer	tecnico delle luci
zmi	mime	mimo
zas	silent actor	attore muto
zes	sound engineer	tecnico del suono
zju	juggler	giocoliere jongleur

zwp	walk-on part	comparsa figurant figurante
zzz	performer – other	interprete, altro interprète, autre

B. Codes for fields 145 $b – $d, positions 5, 6

Code	Definition	*Notes* Other definitions, language terms, variants
0	tenth	decima vox decimo decimus dixième
1	eleventh	onzième undecima vox undicesima voce undicesimo
2	twelfth	dodicesima voce dodicesimo douzième duodecima vox
5	fifth	cinquième quinta vox quinto quintus
6	sixth	sesto sexta vox sextus sixième
7	seventh	septième septima vox septimus settimo
8	eighth	huitième octava vox octavus ottavo
9	ninth	neuvième nona vox nono nonus
a	alto	alt contralto
b	bass	bajo bas basse basso
c	contrabass	contrebasse contrabbasso kontrabass
d	midi	
e	electric	électrique elettrico
f	amplified	amplificato amplifié

g	sub-contrabass	basse grave basso grave octobasse sub-contrabbasso
h	high	acuto aigu hoch klein petit piccolo small
i	six hands	sei mani six mains
j	eight hands	huit mains otto mani
k	recorded	enregistré registrato
l	low	big grand grande grave gross large tief
m	medium	medio mittel moyen
n	sopranino	
o	one hand	una mano une main
p	sopracute	garklein sopracuto suraigu
q	antiquity	antichità antiquité
r	baritone	baritono baryton
s	soprano	Dessus pardessus sopran treble
t	tenor	ténor tenore
u	three hands	drei hände tre mani trois mains
v	four hands	vier hände quatre mains quattro mani
w	two players on one instrument	deux exécutants sur un instrument due esecutori su uno strumento
x	electronic	électronique elettronico
y	ethinc, traditional	ethnique, traditionnel etnico, tradizionale

z	prepared	préparé preparato

C. Codes for fields 145 $b-$d, position 7

Code	Definition
#	not specified – position not required
1-9	internal group identifier
0	internal group indicator (order of group not specified)
a	solo (as opposite to non-solo instruments/voices)
b	ad libitum
c	may take place of the preceding code / alternative
d	used by the same player as the preceding code

D. Codes for fields 145 $e, $f, position 4

Code	Definition
a	total number of performers
b	brass instruments
c	choirs
d	wind instruments
e	electro-acoustic instruments
g	groups within larger ensemble
i	instruments (not specified)
j	solo instruments
k	keyboard instruments
l	solo voices
m	miscellaneous, other instruments
o	orchestras
p	percussion instruments
q	conductors
s	bowed string instruments
t	plucked string instrument
v	voices (not specified)
w	woodwind instruments
x	choral voices
y	ensemble instruments
z	devices, other performers

146 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE

Field Definition and Scope

This field gives details of the instruments and/or voices, devices and other performers which make up a musical work.

It was designed prior to the release of the FRBR and IFLA LRM as well as of the cataloguing rules that conform to them. According to the FRBR/IFLA LRM, some of the information carried in this field pertains to FRBR/IFLA LRM entities other than the Manifestation. Such data should preferably be carried in linked authority records describing the relevant related entity rather than in the record describing the Manifestation. However, those data can still be carried in bibliographic records describing manifestations under certain conditions, especially when the records are/were created in a pre-FRBR/IFLA LRM or a non-FRBR/IFLA LRM context.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
146	CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE	R	O
a	Type of Performance Medium	NR	O
b	Instrument or Voice Soloist	R	O
c	Instrument or Voice Non-soloist, Conductor, Other Performer or Device, not Included in an Ensemble Recorded in Subfield $d	R	MA
d	Vocal or Instrumental Ensemble	R	MA
e	Instrument or Voice Non-soloist, Conductor, Other Performer or Device, Included in an Ensemble Recorded in Preceding Subfield $d	R	O
f	Specific Instrument Related to the Generic one Recorded in Preceding Subfield $c or $e	R	O
h	Number of Parts	R	O
i	Number of Players	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Original or Arrangement Indicator
	#	Not specified
	0	Original
	1	Arrangement
2		Alternative Medium of Performance Indicator
	#	Not applicable
	1	Alternative medium of performance

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Original or Arrangement Indicator

This indicator shows whether the field describes the original or the arranged medium of performance.

Indicator 2: Alternative Medium of Indicator

This indicator shows whether the field describes a medium of performance that can be used in place of another medium recorded in the first occurrence of the field 146. See EX 12, 15, 19.

Subfields Description

$a Type of Performance Medium

1-character code defines the genre of the work based on the type of performance medium. Not repeatable.

a	vocal a cappella music	EX 14.
b	instrumental music	EX 1-2, 9-11, 15-20, 22.
c	vocal and instrumental music	EX 3, 5-8, 13, 21.
d	electroacoustic music	
e	mixed media music	Electroacoustic and other media. See EX 4, 12.
u	undefined, variable	E.g. Renaissance vocal or instrumental music.
z	other	E.g. ordinary objects or natural sounds.

$b Instrument or Voice Soloist

9-character code indicating a voice or instrument category, the number of voices or instruments for that category and other details (EX 2-3, 5-7, 18-20). Repeatable.

The number of soloists in a voice or instrument category is recorded with a two-digit code (character positions 0-1), with leading 0 if necessary. If this number is not determined, use "uu".

For the voice or instrument category (character positions 2-4), use the codes listed in Code list A/1-9, A/13.

For other details (character positions 5-8), use the codes listed in Code list B-C.

Subfield $b fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Instruments or Voices	2	0-1
Category of Instrument or Voice	3	2-4
Other details	4	5-8

$c Instrument or Voice Non-soloist, Conductor, Other Performer or Device, not Included in an Ensemble Recorded in Subfield $d

9-character code indicating an instrument or voice, etc. category, the total number of instruments or voices, etc. for that category and other details (EX 1-4, 10-13, 15-17, 19-20, 22). Mandatory if no subfield $d is entered. Repeatable.

The number of parts in a category is recorded with a two-digit code (character positions 0-1), with leading 0 if necessary. If this number is not determined, use "uu".

For the voice or instrument, etc. category (character positions 2-4), use the codes listed in Code list A/1-9, A/12-13.

For other details (character positions 5-8), use the codes listed in Code list B-C.

Instruments (e.g. continuo) or families of instruments (e.g. percussions) generically recorded in an occurrence of subfield $c may be further specified in one or more immediately following occurrences of subfield $f.

Subfield $c fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Instruments or Voices, etc.	2	0-1
Category of Instrument or Voice, etc.	3	2-4
Other Details	4	5-8

$d Vocal or Instrumental Ensemble

9-character code indicating one category of vocal or instrumental ensemble, the total number of ensembles for that category, the number of real parts of that ensemble and other details (EX 2-9, 14, 18). Mandatory if no subfield $c is entered. Repeatable.

The number of ensembles is recorded with a two-digit code (character positions 0-1), with leading 0 if necessary. If this number is not determined, use "uu".

For the category of ensemble (character positions 2-4), use the codes listed in Code list A/10-11.

The number of real parts (e.g. the number of voices for a choir) is recorded with a two-character code (character positions 5-6), with leading 0 if necessary. If the number is not determined, use "uu".

For other details (character positions 7-8), use the codes listed in Code list B-C.

Instruments or voices, etc. included in ensembles recorded in subfield $d may be specified in one or more immediately following occurrences of subfield $e.

Subfield $d fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Ensembles	2	0-1
Category of Ensemble	3	2-4
Number of Real Parts	2	5-6
Other Details	2	7-8

$e Instrument or Voice Non-soloist, Conductor, Other Performer or Device, Included in an Ensemble Recorded in Preceding Subfield $d

9-character code indicating a voice or instrument, etc. category included in an ensemble recorded in an immediately preceding occurrence of subfield $d, the total number of instruments or voices, etc. for that category and other details (EX 4-9, 14, 21). Repeatable.

The number of parts in a category is recorded with a two-digit code (character positions 0-1), with leading 0 if necessary. If this number is not determined, use "uu".

For the voice or instrument, etc. category (character positions 2-4), use the codes listed in Code list A/1-9, A/12-13.

For other details (character positions 5-8), use the codes listed in Code list B-C.

Instruments (e.g. continuo) or families of instruments (e.g. percussions) generically recorded in an occurrence of subfield $e may be further specified in one or more immediately following occurrences of subfield $f.

Subfield $e fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Instruments or Voices	2	0-1
Category of Instrument or Voice	3	2-4
Other Details	4	5-8

$f Specific Instrument Related to the Generic one Recorded in Preceding Subfield $c or $e

9-character code indicating a specific instrument recorded generically (e.g. electronic keboards) or collectively as a family (e.g. percussions) in an immediately preceding occurrence of subfield $c or $e, the total number of instruments for that category and other details (EX 13, 21, 22, 23). Repeatable.

The number of parts in an instrument category is recorded with a two-digit code (character positions 0-1), with leading 0 if necessary. If this number is not determined, use "uu".

For the instrument category (character positions 2-4), use the codes listed in Code list A/2-9.

For other details (character positions 5-8), use the codes listed in Code list B-C.

Subfield $f fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Instruments	2	0-1
Category of Instrument	3	2-4

Other Details	4	5-8

$h Number of Parts

4-character code indicating the total number of real parts related to the category entered in position 3 (EX 2, 5-9, 14, 20). Repeatable.

The number of parts is recorded with a three-digit code (character positions 0-2), with leading 0 if necessary. Use $h only if this number is determined.

For categories (character position 3), use the codes listed in Code list D.

Subfield $h fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Parts	3 (with leading 0)	0-2
Category	1 (see Code list D)	3

$i Number of Players

4-character code indicating the total number of players related to the category entered in position 3 (EX 1-4, 9-13, 15-17, 19). Repeatable.

The number of players is recorded with a three-digit code (character positions 0-2), with leading 0 if necessary. Use $i only if this number is determined.

For categories (character position 3), use the codes listed in Code list D.

Subfield $i fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Number of Players	3 (with leading 0)	0-2
Category	1 (see Code list D)	3

Notes on Field Contents

The order and occurrence of subfields is mandatory in following cases:

- at least one subfield $c or $d is mandatory if field is present;
- a subfield $b may occur only if at least one subfield $c or $d is entered;
- a subfield $e may occur only if at least one subfield $d is entered;
- a subfield $e may immediately follow only a subfield $d, $e or $f;
- a subfield $f may occur only if at least one subfield $c or $e is entered;
- a subfield $f may immediately follow only a subfield $c, $e or $f.

The degree of detail of the field may vary according to the local practice, e.g. all instruments employed in an orchestra may or may not be specified (EX 2-3, 9, 18). The most common example of non-detailed indication are percussion instruments in ensemble: sometimes only a close analysis of the score makes it possible to specify all instruments; in such cases the indication will more likely be limited to the number of percussion players (EX 13).

Subfield $b should be used in place of subfield $c to differentiate soloist(s) in opposition with accompanying voice(s)/instrument(s), etc. (entered in $c) or ensemble(s) (entered in $d) or their arranged version (EX 2-3, 5-7, 18-20).

If there is no distinction, enter all in $c.

If detailed, instruments/voices, etc. being part of ensembles entered in $d are always coded in $e.

In subfield $d, character positions 5-6 may be used to indicate the number of real parts of the ensemble. If used to code more than one ensemble, positions 5-6 may be used only if all the ensembles have the same parts (e.g. for two choirs for four mixed voices code 02cmi04##); if parts vary, code ## (EX 6).

As an alternative, field $d may be repeated for each ensemble (EX 14).

In case of repeated subfield $d, subfields $e must be entered after each related subfield $d (EX 4-9, 14, 21).

Subfield $f may be used to specify individual instruments from a generic code used in $c or $e, e.g. the specific instruments coded as percussion in $c. Each series of $f must immediately follow the related subfield $c or $e. (EX 13, 21, 22).

It is recommended to use subfield $h to specify the number of real parts only when it differs from that of players entered in $i, or when the number of players cannot be determined (EX 2, 5-9, 14, 20).

In subfields $h and $i, the code "a" in position 3 must be used by default to indicate the total number of parts and players when the musical work is vocal a cappella music or when it is instrumental music (EX 1-2, 9-12, 14-17, 19-20).

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Bibliographic format	
128 CODED DATA FIELD: FORM OF MUSICAL WORK AND KEY OR MODE	Field 146 replaces obsolete subfields 128 $b and $c.
145 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE [OBSOLETE]	Field 146 replaces obsolete field 145.
302 NOTES PERTAINING TO CODED INFORMATION	This note may contain details such as use of different instruments by one performer or pertinence of single instruments to different groups within larger ensembles, etc.
500 PREFERRED TITLE ACCESS POINT	
UNIMARC/Authorities format	
146 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIUM OF PERFORMANCE	This field contains details of the instruments and/or voices, devices, and other performers which make up a representative expression of a musical work or an expression of a musical work.

Examples

EX 1
146 0#abc01svl####$c01kpf####$i002a
200 1#$aSonata for violin and piano in D
In a more detailed way field 146 may be recorded as follows:
146 0#abc01svl####$c01kpf####$i001s$i001k$i002a
EX 2
146 0#abb01wfl####$d01ost####$e02svl####$e01sva####$e01svc####$i001j$h004s $h005a
146 1#abb01wfl####$c01kpf####$i001j$i001k$i002a
500 10$aConcertos$rfor flute and strings$wArr.
A flute concerto arranged for flute and piano; note that flute remains coded as solo also in the arranged version of the field, unlike piano that plays the accompaniment. The resource is an arrangement; the cataloguing agency chose to code also the medium of performance of the original work.
In a less detailed way field 146 may be recorded as follows:
146 0#$b01wfl####$d01ost####
146 1#$b01wfl####$c01kpf####$i002a
EX 3
146 0#acb02vso####$d01oun####$i002l$i001o
146 1#acb02vso####$c01kpf####$i002l$i001k$i003a

200 1#$aNella Didone Duetto Sei vinto, e pur non sai Del Sig.r Ferdinando Paer Ridotto a due voci e pianoforte
A manuscript of a vocal opera duo arranged for voices and piano. The resource is an arrangement; the cataloguing agency chose to code also the medium of performance of the original work. In the first occurrence of field 146 the instruments of the orchestra are not listed because they are not in the cataloguer's hand.
EX 4
146 0#aec01eta####$d03oie####$e02wfl####$e02wob####$e02wcl####$e04wba####$e06bho####$e04btr####$e04btb####$e24svl####$e08sva####$e08svc####$e08sdb####$i072a
Luigi Nono's *Per Bastiana Tai-Yang Cheng, L'Oriente è rosso, pour bande magnétique et trois groupes instrumentaux* (instruments in 3 groups, 72 performers). String instruments play in real parts, each one having a different line. Pertinence of every single instrument to each instrumental group is not defined.
EX 5
146 0#acb01vso####$b01val####$b01vte####$b01vbs####$d01cmi04##$e01vso####$e01val####$e01vte####$e01vbs####$d01och####$e02woa####$e02svl####$e01sva####$e01mco####$h004l$h004x$h002w$h003s$h001m$h006y$h014a
Johann Sebastian Bach's cantata *Wohl dem, der sich auf seinen Gott BWV 139* for 4 solo voices, 4-voice choir, 2 oboe d'amore, 2 violins, viola and continuo. Number of instruments by family, total number of instruments and grand total coded only to detail the example in its highest degree.
EX 6
146 0#acb02vso####$b02val####$b02vte####$b02vbs####$b01vcs####$d02cmi04##$e02vso####$e02val####$e02vte####$e02vbs####$d02och####$e02wrec###$e04wfl####$e04wob####$e04woa###d$e02woh###d$e04svl####$e02sva####$e02svg####$e02svc####$e02sve####$e02kor####$e01khp###c$e02mco####$h009l$h008x$h010w$h012s$h002k$h002m$h026y$h043a
Johann Sebastian Bach's *Matthäuspassion BWV 244* according to the Bärenreiter BA5038 score. As the total number of parts is coded and oboists play also oboe d'amore and oboe da caccia, the total number of woodwinds in $h is 10 instead of 16. A cembalo can be played instead of one organ.
In a less detailed way field 146 may be recorded as follows:
146 0#acb02vso####$b02val####$b02vte####$b02vbs####$b01vcs####$d02cmi04##$d02och####
EX 7
146 ##acb02vso####$b01val####$b01vct####$b02vte####$b02vbr####$b01vcs####$d01cmi04##$e01vso####$e01val####$e01vte####$e01vbs####$d01cch01##$e01vcv####$d01och####$e04wfl####$e02wre####$e04wob####$e04woa###d$e02woh###d$e02wba####$e04svl####$e02sva####$e02svg####$e02svc####$e02sdb####$e02kor####$h009l$h005x$h012w$h012s$h002k$h002q$h026y$h042a
Johann Sebastian Bach's *Matthäuspassion BWV 244* according to the Archiv Produktion 427648-2 CD recording (with the English baroque soloists). The orchestra is a chamber orchestra. As in EX 6, the number of wind instruments does not match the number of players (oboes, oboe d'amore and oboe da caccia are played by the same 4 players).
In a less detailed way field 146 may be recorded as follows:
146 ##acb02vso####$b01val####$b01vct####$b02vte####$b02vbr####$b01vcs####$d01cmi04##$d01cch01##$d01och####
EX 8

146 1#acd01cun####$e01vun####$d01obi####$e02wsac###$e02wsad###$e03btr#### $e03btb####$e01kun#s##$e01kpf#s##$e01tgu#r##$e01tgufr##$e01pds####$e01ptb#### $e01pag####$e01pcg####$h004w$h006b$h002k$h002t$h004p$h001x$h018y$h019a
Cacao meravigliao, a popular song as arranged for big band by Demo Morselli. According to what is written on the score, electronic keyboards are considered keyboard instruments. The number of choral parts is not defined.
EX 9
146 0#abd01ofu####$e02wfl####$e02wob####$e02wcl####$e02wba####$e02bho#### $e02btr####$e01bop####$e01pti####$e02svl####$e01sva####$e01svc####$e01sdb#### $h008w$h005b$h001p$h005s$h019a
146 1#abc01kpf#4##$i002k$i002a
Felix Mendelssohn-Bartholdy's *Ouverture zu Shakespeare's Sommernachtstraum Op. 21*, arranged for piano four hands.
In a less detailed way field 146 may be recorded as follows:
146 0#$d01ofu####
146 1#$c01kpf#4##
EX 10
146 ##abc01wob####$c01svl####$c01sva####$c01svc####$i001w$i003s$i004a
200 1#$aQuartetto per oboe e archi
EX 11
146 0#abc01wflfcv#$i001w$i001a
200 1#$aArsis et Thesis, ou La chanson du souffle $epour flûte basse en Ut sonorisée $fMichael Levinas
302 ##$aMicro
Total number is the total number of performers.
EX 12
146 0#abc02wfl####$i002w$i002a
146 01aec01wfl####$c01eta####$i001w$i001a
200 1#$aVoices $epour deux flûtes (ou flûte et bande magnétique)$fLaszlo Sary
EX 13
146 0#acc01vwol###$c01wpi####$c01wflf##d$c01wsab###$c01wsaf##d$c01kpfm### $c01pun####$f01pttl###$f01pmd####$f01ptil###$f01pbd####$f01ptel###$f03pcr#### $f01pcy####$f01pvi####$c01sdb####$i001v$i002w$i001k$i001p$i001s$i005i$i006a
François Rossé's *Cris de cerise*; performers are: female low voice, flute (piccolo and bass), saxophone (soprano and bass), piano (prepared), percussion (1 low tom, 1 military drum, 1 low timpani, 1 bass drum, 1 low temple block, 3 crash cymbals, 1 cymbal, 1 vibraphone, 1 double bass bow), double bass. Highest possible coding. Double bass bow is not codified because it is used in place of percussion sticks. Instruments and performers are detailed.
In a less detailed way field 146 may be recorded as follows (single percussion instruments are not specified):
146 0#acc01vwol###$c01wpi####$c01wflf##d$c01wsab###$c01wsaf##d$c01kpfm### $c01pun####$c01sdb####$i001v$i002w$i001k$i001p$i001s$i005i$i006a
EX 14
146 0#aad01cmi04##$e01vso####$e01val####$e01vte####$e01vbs#### $d01cme03##$e02vte####$e01vbs####$d01cch03##$e03vcv####$h010a$h003c

A piece for three choirs: choir 1 for four voices (soprano, alto, tenor, bass); choir 2 for three male voices (two tenors and one bass), choir three for three boys voices. All voices and choirs are defined to make it possible to display the parts of each choir.
EX 15
146 0#abc01wfl####$c01mco####$i002a
146 01abc01svl####$c01mco####$i002a
146 01abc01wob####$c01mco####$i002a
A piece for flute or violin or oboe and continuo. In this case field 146 is repeated and indicator 2 used to record the alternative medium of performance.
The same example may be recorded with code "c" in position 8 to indicate the optional use of alternative instruments:
146 0#abc01wfl####$c01svl###c$c01wob###c$c01mco####$i002a
EX 16
Converted from former 128-EX 1.
128 ##$afg#
146 0#abc03tgu####$i003a
200 1#$aFour fugues for guitar trio
Subfield 128 $a (musical form) has been maintained, the other subfields converted.
EX 17
Converted from former 128-EX 2.
128 ##$avr#
146 0#abc01kpf####$i001a
146 0#abc01kpf####$c01svl####$c01svc####$i003a
146 0#abc01kpf####$c01svl####$c01sva####$c01svc####$i004a
200 1#$aVariations for solo piano, piano trio and piano quartet
In the former 128-EX 2, violin, viola and cello were coded as solo instruments. Subfield 128 $a (musical form) has been maintained, the other subfields converted.
EX 18
Converted from former 128-EX 3.
128 ##$aco#$ddm
146 0#abb02wfl####$d01ost####
200 1#$aConcerto for two flutes & string orchestra in D minor
In the former 128 EX 3, the agency considered it unnecessary to state that there is only one orchestra; converting the example, the number 01 in 146 $d has been added by default. Subfields 128 $a (musical form) and $d (key) have been maintained, the other subfields converted.
EX 19
146 0#abc01wrec###$c01mco####
146 01abc01svl####$c01mco####
Jean-Baptiste Loeillet de Gant's Sonaten op. 4, n° 4-6, für Altblockflöte oder Violine und Basso continuo (Heinrichshofen's Verlag).
or
146 0#abc01wrec###$c01svc####$c01kun####$i001w$i001s$i001k$i003a
146 01abc01svl####$c01svc####$c01kun####$i002s$i0001k$i003a
or
146 0#abc01wrec###$c01svl###d$c01mco####$f01svc####$f01kun####$i003a
The third solution indicates alternative instruments in one occurrence of the field and details continuo instruments. Continuo realised for unspecified keyboard, cello part added, thus total performers coded as 3.

EX 20
146 0#abb01kpf####$c02svl####$c01sva####$c01svc####$c01mbs#### $c02wfl###b$c02bho###b$h006a$h010a
200 1#$aVariations pour le pianoforte avec accomp.t de deux violons, viola, violoncelle et basse (deux flûtes et cors ad libitum) op. 97$iJ.N. Hummel
Subfield $h repeated to match the use or not of ad libitum instruments. Piano coded as soloist in $b to match the statement that other instruments have the function of accompaniment.
EX 21
146 0#acb01vso####$b01vms####$b01vte####$b01vbr####$d01cve06##$e01vso#### $e01vso####$e01vms###c$e01vct####$e01vte###c$e01vte####$e01vbr###c$e01vbr####$ e01vbs####$d01cmi05##$e01vso####$e01vms###c$e01val####$e01vte####$e01vbr####$ e01vbs####$b01tgu####$b01svc####$d01owi####$e03wfl####$e02wob####$e02wcl### #$e01wclb###b$e02wba####$e01wdb####$e04bho####$e03btr####$e03btb####$e01btu# ###$c01kpf####$c01tha####$c01pun####$f01pti####$f01pbd####$f01pmd####$f01ptr ####$f01pboh###$f01ptt####$c01pun####$f01pbl####$f01pcw####$f01pab####$f01ptl ####$f01pcth###$f01pji####$f01mwh####$f01pbpp###$f01pbpg###$f01phh####$f01pcr l###$f02pgol###$c01pun####$f01pgl####$f01pxy####$f01pvi####$f01pwh####$f01pgu ####$f01pwo####$f01pcv####$f01pmcl###$h004l$h011x$h015v$h029i$h044a$i004l$i054x$i0 58v$i002j$i011w$i011b$i001k$i001t$i003p$i027y$i029i$i087a
Sylvano Bussotti's *The Rara requiem* for four voices, ensemble of six vocal soloists, 5-voice choir (48 singers), solo guitar and cello, wind orchestra, piano, harp and percussions (3 or 5 players). Following the indications of the score, each smaller group in the ensemble is defined; the total number of choir singers and alternative solo voices are specified. Prescribed percussion players may be three or five, but the example is treated with the detail of three percussion groups, like in the score, defined as three separate groups.
EX 22
146 0#abc02kpf####$c01pun####$f01pvi####$f01pxy####$c01pun####$f01ptr#### $f01pmb####$i002p$i002k$i004a
Bartók Béla, *Sonata for two pianos and two percussions* (Boosey & Hawkes, 1942). Percussion instruments are detailed after each generic code, as specified by the composer.
EX 23
146 0#acb01vso####$b01vte####$d01cmi03##$e01vso####$e01vte####$e01vbs#### $d01och####$e01wob####$e02svl####$e01mco####$f01svc####$f01sve####$f01wba## ##$f01kor####$h002l$h001c$h003x$h001o$h001d$h002s$h001m$h009a
Georg Philipp Händel's anthem *I will magnify thee HWV 250a* for soprano, tenor, 3-voice choir (soprano, tenor, bass), and chamber orchestra (oboe, violins and continuo); continuo is specified as played by cello, violone, bassoon and organ.
Optional (in case of a set of parts or of a sound recording where continuo is not mentioned):
146 01acb01vso####$b01vte####$d01cmi03##$e01vso####$e01vte####$e01vbs#### $d01och####$e01wob####$e02svl####$e01svc####$e01sve####$e01wba####$e01kor## ##$h002l$h001c$h003x$h001o$h002d$h004s$h001k$h007i$h012a
EX 24
146 0#abb02kpf####$d01ofu####$e28svl####$e12sva####$e02sva##v#$e12svc#### $e02svc##v#$e08sdb####$e02sdb##v#$e01kor##s#$e01pci####$e02tha####$e01tgu##r# $e01khp####$e01kce###d$e02pti####$e06pun####$e05qco####$i087a
Brian Ferneyhough's *Firecycle beta*, symphonic torso for two pianos and orchestra with five conductors (1969-1971). Orchestra includes amplified instruments, harpsichord and celesta played by the same performer and six groups of percussions. Each string instrument plays a different [real] part, thus the

number of players is specified. Conductors have been coded and are counted in the total number of performers. Instruments played by each percussionist are not detailed.
EX 25
146 0#abd03ofu####$e04wfl####$e03wpi###d$e01wflc###$e03wob####$e02weh#### $e01wclh###$e02wcl####$e01wclb###$e01wsac###$e01wcl###d$e01wsae###$e03wba#### $e08bho####$e06btr####$e05btb####$e01btbb###$e01btbc###$e01btub###$e12pun#### $e01kgl####$e01kce####$e01kpf####$e01tgue###$e02tha####$e26svl####$e10sva#### $e08svc####$e06sdb####$e03qco####$i019w$i022b$i012p$i003k$i003t$i050s$i112a
Karlheinz Stockhausen's *Gruppen for three orchestras and three conductors*. Conductors have been coded and are counted in the total number of performers.
It is possible to detail each orchestra and each percussion group:
146 0#abd01ofu####$e01wfl####$e01wpi###d$e01wflc###$e01wob####$e01weh#### $e01wcl####$e01wba####$e02bho####$e02btr####$e02btb####$e01btub###$e04pun### #$f01pmb####$f01pgl####$f05pcw####$f01pgo####$f03pcy####$f02psl####$f04pdr## ##$f01pmd####$f01ptr####$e01kgl####$e01tha####$e10svl####$e02sva####$e04svc## ##$e02sdb####$e01qco####$d01ofu####$e02wfl####$e01wpi###d$e01wob####$e01wclh ###$e01wsaa###$e01wcl###d$e01wsae###$e01wba####$e03bho####$e02btr####$e01btb ####$e01btbf###$e04pun####$f01pvi####$f04pbl####$f04pcw####$f01pgo####$f03pcy ####$f02psl####$f04pdr####$f01pmd####$f01ptr####$f01pra####$f02ptl####$e01kpf ####$e01tgue###$e08svl####$e04sva####$e02svc####$e02sdb####$e01qco####$d01ofu ####$e01wfl####$e01wpi###d$e01wob####$e01weh####$e01wcl####$e01wclf###$e01w ba####$e03bho####$e02btr####$e02btb####$e01btbg###$e04pun####$f01pxr####$f04 pcw####$f01pgo####$f03pcy####$f02psl####$f04pdr####$f01pmd####$f01ptr####$e0 1kce####$e01tha####$e08svl####$e04sva####$e02svc####$e02sdb####$e01qco####$i0 12p$i112a
More simply:
146 0# abd03ofu####$e03qco$i112a

History

2012	New field.
2017	Align with FRBR.
2020	Errata / text edit. Update section Related Fields.
2022	Text errata.
2024	Update section Related Fields.

Code lists

Code lists are maintained and updated by IAML (International Association of Music Libraries, Archives and Music Documentation Centres).

The lists show a definition term and several other terms using the same code, without distinction between:

- similar instruments, voices or devices having the same code;
- definition in other language(s);
- orthographical variants.

Chronological, organological or language specifications are added in brackets if strictly necessary. The pitch of the instruments is specified when necessary (e.g.: A, Bb, F).

A: codes for subfields $b-$f, positions 2-4

Pertinence of instruments to "families" in code lists is specified by the first character of the three-letter code.

Instruments needing a code in pos. 5-8 are shown only when they have a specific name in any language.

1. Voices

2. Woodwinds

3. Brass instruments

4. Strings, bowed

5. Strings, plucked

6. Keyboard

7. Percussion

8. Electric / electronic instruments and devices

9. Miscellaneous, other, unspecified instruments

10. Choruses

11. Orchestras, ensembles

12. Conductors

13. Other performers

Code lists updated by IAML are available on IAML website: https://www.iaml.info/unimarc-field-146-medium-performance.

B: codes for subfields $b to $f, positions 5-7

Note: positions 5-6 for $d indicate number of parts in ensemble, with leading zero (## if not spec.).

1. Codes for position 5: tessitura, prepared (not applied to subfield $d)

Code	Definition	Notes on other definitions, language terms, variants
#	not specified - position not required	
a	sopranino	
b	soprano	dessus, pardessus, sopran, treble
c	alto	alt, contralto, haute-contre, quinte
d	tenor	taille, tenor, tenore
e	baritone	baritone, baryton
f	bass	bajo, bas, basse, basso
g	contrabass	contrebasse, contrabbasso, kontrabass
h	sub-contrabass	basse grave, basso grave, octobasse, sub-contrabbasso
i	sopracute	garklein, sopracuto, suraigu
j	high	acuto, aigu, hoch, klein, petit, piccolo, small
k	medium	medio, mittel, moyen
l	low	big, grand, grande, grave, gross, large, tief
m	prepared	prepare, preparato

2. Codes for position 6: number of hands / players; keys of pitched instruments (not applied to subfield $d)

Code	Definition	Notes on other definitions, language terms, variants
#	not specified - position not required	
1	one hand	eine Hand, une main, una mano
2	two players on one instrument	deux exécutants sur un instrument, due esecutori su uno strumento
3	three hands	drei Hände, trois mains, tre mani
4	four hands	vier Hände, quatre mains, quattro mani
6	six hands	sechs Hände, six mains, sei mani

8	eight hands	acht Hände, huit mains, otto mani
a	A	la
b	B flat	B si bemol, si bemolle
c	C	ut, do
d	D	ré
e	E	mi
f	F	fa
g	G	sol
h	B	H, si
i	E flat	Es, mi bemol, mi bemolle
j	A flat	As, la bemol, la bemolle
k	D flat	Des, ré bemol, re bemolle
l	F sharp	Fis, fa diesis, fa dièse
n	instrument played in non standard way	instrument joué de manière non standard, strumenti suonati in modo non standard
s	non standard string number	nombre de cordes non standard, numero di corde non standard

3. Codes for position 7: other

Code	Definition	Notes on other definitions, language terms, variants
#	not specified - position not required	
r	electric	électrique, elettrico
s	electronic	électronique, elettronico
t	midi	
v	amplified	amplifié, amplificato
w	recorded	enregistré, registrato
q	antiquity	antiquité, antichità
y	ethnic, traditional	ethnique, traditionnel; etnico, tradizionale

C: codes for subfields $b to $f, position 8

Code	Definition
#	not specified – position not required
b	ad libitum
c	may take place of the preceding code / alternative
d	used by the same player as the preceding code

D: codes for subfields $h-$i, position 3

Code	Definition
a	performers total
b	brass instruments
c	choirs
d	wind instruments
e	electro-acoustic instruments
i	instruments total
j	solo instruments
k	keyboard instruments
l	solo voices
m	miscellaneous, other instruments
o	orchestras
p	percussion instruments
q	conductors
s	bowed string instruments

t	plucked string instruments
v	voices total
w	woodwind instruments
x	choral voices
y	ensemble instruments
z	devices, other performers

181 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT FORM

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains fixed-length data specifying the content form and content qualification of the resource being described.

The field corresponds to the first element of ISBD Area 0 – Content Form and Media Type Area.

Repeatable.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
181	CODED DATA FIELD – CONTENT FORM	R	O
a	ISBD Content Form Code	NR	O
b	ISBD Content Qualification Code	R	O
c	Other Coding for Content Form	R	O
2	Source	NR	MA
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		ISBD Display Indicator
	0	Not used to generate displays
	1	Used to generate displays
	#	Information not provided, use when the field contains $c.

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: ISBD Display Indicator

The second indicator specifies whether this field is used to generate the ISBD Area 0 for print or other displays of the record.

Subfields Description

$a ISBD Content Form Code

Codes indicate the content form that applies to the resource, according to the provisions of ISBD for this element, and the extent of applicability of a content form to the resource described.

The subfield is 2-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Content Form	1	0
Extent of Applicability	1	1

$b ISBD Content Qualification Code

Codes indicate the content qualification applying to the resource, according to the provisions of ISBD for this element.

The subfield is 6-characters in length. Optional. Repeatable.

Subfield $b fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions

Specification of Type	1	0
Specification of Motion	1	1
Specification of Dimensionality	1	2
Sensory Specification	3	3-5

$c Other Coding for Content Form

A code for a source of codes other than ISBD (for example, codes from *Term and Code List for RDA Content Type*, http://www.loc.gov/standards/valuelist/rdacontent.html, defined for use in MARC 21). Repeatable.

$2 Source

Source of the code used in $c. Mandatory if $c is used. Not repeatable.

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13 Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure).

The link to field 182 – Coded data Field - Media type is used to generate a display for ISBD Area 0 when the resource is of a mixed media.

Notes on Field Contents

If a textual form of the content form designation is desired use field 203, preferably in addition to field 181. In that case, indicator 2 should be set to 0 in field 181.

Codes may not correspond exactly to text display used in field 203. What is displayed by any system will be a local decision.

$a/0 ISBD Content Form Code

1-character position contains a code indicating the Content form of the resource according to the stipulations of ISBD for this element.

a	dataset
b	image
c	movement
d	music
e	object
f	program
g	sounds
h	spoken word
i	text
m	multiple content forms
z	other content form

$a/1 Extent of Applicability

1-character position contains a numeric code indicating the extent of applicability of a Content form to the resource described. Five values are defined:

0	none
1	some
2	substantial
3	predominate
4	full
#	position not used

$b/0 ISBD Content Qualification: Specification of Type

1-character position contains a code indicating what qualification of type applies to the content of the resource according to the stipulations of ISBD.

a	notated
b	performed
c	cartographic
x	not applicable
#	position not used

$b/1 ISBD Content Qualification: Specification of Motion

1-character position contains a code indicating what qualification of motion applies to the image content of a resource, according to the stipulations of ISBD.

a	moving	
b	still	
x	not applicable	Resource is not an image.
#	position not used	

$b/2 ISBD Content Qualification: Specification of Dimensionality

1-character position contains a code indicating what qualification of dimensionality applies to the image content of a resource, according to the stipulations of ISBD for this element.

2	two-dimensional	
3	three-dimensional	
x	not applicable	Resource is not an image.
#	position not used	

$b/3-5 ISBD Content Qualification: Sensory Specification

3-character positions available for sensory specification codes, entered from left to right. Any unused positions are filled with blanks.

These codes indicate what sensory qualification applies to the content of the resource, according to the stipulations of ISBD.

a	aural
b	gustatory
c	olfactory
d	tactile
e	visual
#	position not used

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format	
182 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIA TYPE	This field corresponds to the second element of the ISBD Content Form and Media Type Area. It can be combined with field 181 to generate automatically the ISBD Area 0 for print or other displays of the record.
203 CONTENT FORM AND MEDIA TYPE AREA	This field corresponds to the ISBD Content Form and Media Type Area. If the system cannot display information from coded data field 181 and 182, the information can be given in plain text in field 203.
RECORD LABEL, position 6, Type of record	The types of record defined in UNIMARC give a general indication about the type of content.
UNIMARC/Authorities Format	
145 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT TYPE OF EXPRESSION	

Examples

EX 1
181 #1$6z01$ai4$b#xxe##
181 #0$6z02$ctxt$2rdacontent
182 #1$6z01$an
182 #0$6z02$cn$2rdamedia
183 #1anc2rdacarrier
Coded information specifying the ISBD Content form and Content qualification of a book. The coded data are used to generate the ISBD Area 0 displays, along with field 182. ISBD area 0 should read *Text (visual) : unmediated*. As the record was converted from a MARC 21 file, it contains also the RDA Content type. Source code "rdacontent" refers to *Term and Code List for RDA Content Type* defined for use in MARC21.
EX 2
181 #0$6z01$ai4$b#xxe##
181 #0$6z02$ctxt$2rdacontent
182 #0$6z01$an
182 #0$6z02$cn$2rdamedia
183 #0anc2rdacarrier
203 ##$aText$bvisual$cunmediated
283 ##$avolume$2rdacarrier
Coded information specifying the ISBD Content form and Content qualification of a book. The display of ISBD data is not generated but carried out by a plain text 203 field. As the record was converted from a MARC21 file, it contains also the RDA Content type.
EX 3
181 #1$6z01$ad4$bbxxa##
181 #0$6z02$cprm$2rdacontent
182 #1$6z01$aa
182 #0$6z02$cs$2rdamedia
183 #1asd2rdacarrier
Coded information specifying the ISBD Content form and Content qualification of an audio CD. The coded data are used to generate the ISBD Area 0 displays, along with field 182. ISBD Area 0 should read *Music (performed ; aural) : audio*. As the record was converted from a MARC21 file, it contains also the RDA Content type. Source code "rdacontent" refers to *Term and Code List for RDA Content Type* defined for use in MARC21.
EX 4
181 #0$6z01$ad4$bbxx###
181 #0$6z02$cprm$2rdacontent
182 #0$6z01$aa
182 #0$6z02$cs$2rdamedia
183 #0asd2rdacarrier
203 ##$aMusic$bperformed$caudio
283 ##$aaudio disc$2rdacarrier
Coded information specifying the ISBD Content form and Content qualification of an audio CD. The display of ISBD data is not generated but carried out by a plain text 203 field. As the record was converted from a MARC21 file, it contains also the RDA Content type. Source code "rdacontent" refers to *Term and Code List for RDA Content Type* defined for use in MARC21.
EX 5
181 #1$6z01$ab4$bcb2d##
181 #0$6z02$ccrt$2rdacontent
182 #1$6z01$an

182 #0$6z02$cn$2rdamedia
183 #1anb2rdacarrier
Coded information specifying the ISBD Content form and Content qualification of a tactile map. The coded data are used to generate the ISBD Area 0 displays, along with field 182. ISBD Area 0 should read *Image (cartographic ; still ; 2-dimensional ; tactile) : unmediated.* As the record was converted from a MARC21 file, it contains also the RDA Content type. Source code "rdacontent" refers to *Term and Code List for RDA Content Type* defined for use in MARC21.
EX 6
181 #0$6z01$ab4$bcb2d##
181 #0$6z02$ccrt$2rdacontent
182 #0$6z01$an
182 #0$6z02$cn$2rdamedia
183 #0anb2rdacarrier
203 ##$aImage$bcartographic$bstill$b2-dimensional$btactile$cunmediated
283 ##$asheet$2rdacarrier
Coded information specifying the ISBD Content form and Content qualification of a tactile map. The display of ISBD data is not generated but carried out by a plain text 203 field. As the record was converted from a MARC21 file, it contains also the RDA Content type. Source code "rdacontent" refers to *Term and Code List for RDA Content Type* defined for use in MARC21.
EX 7
181 #0$ad4$baxxe##
182 #0$an
203 ##$aMusic$bnotated$bvisual$cunmediated
Coded information specifying the ISBD Content form and Content qualification of a notated music. The display of ISBD data is not generated but carried out by a plain text 203 field to display *Music (notated : visual) : unmediated.*
EX 8
181 #1$6z01$ai4$b#xxe##
181 #0$6z02$ctxt$2rdacontent
182 #1$6z01$ab
182 #0$6z02$cc$2rdamedia
183 #0acr2rdacarrier
OR
283 ##$aonline resource$2rdacarrier
Coded information specifying the ISBD Content form and Content qualification of a website. The coded data are used to generate the ISBD Area 0 displays, along with field 182. ISBD Area 0 should read Text (visual) : electronic. As the record was converted from a MARC21 file, it contains also the RDA Content type. Source code "rdacontent" refers to "Term and Code List for RDA Content Type" defined for use in MARC21.
EX 9
181 #1$ae2$b#xxe##
181 #1$ab2$b#b2c##
182 #1$an
Coded information specifying the ISBD Content form and Content qualification of a model and graphic (a 3-dimensional model of a coffee bean and 2-dimensional card with a microfragrance-coated image of a coffee bean that can be scratched to produce the smell of coffee). The coded data are used to generate the ISBD Area 0 displays, along with field 182. ISBD Area 0 should read *Object (visual). Image (still ; 2-dimensional ; olfactory) : unmediated.*

History

2016	New field.
2020	Errata / text edit. Update section Related Fields.
2022	Errata / text edit (repeatability).
2023	Text edit.

182 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIA TYPE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains fixed-length data specifying the media type of the resource being described.

Repeatable when more than source of codes is used or when the resource consists of mixed media (e.g., a kit resource).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
182	CODED DATA FIELD - MEDIA TYPE	R	O
a	ISBD Media Type Code	NR	O
c	Other Coding for Media Type	R	O
2	Source	NR	MA
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		ISBD Display Indicator
	0	Not used to generate displays
	1	Used to generate displays
	#	Information not provided, use when the field contains $c

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: ISBD Display Indicator

The second indicator specifies whether this field is used to generate the ISBD Area 0 for print or other displays of the record.

Subfields Description

$a ISBD Media Type Code

Codes indicate the content form that applies to the resource, according to the provisions of ISBD for this element, and the extent of applicability of a content form to the resource described.

The subfield is 1-characters in length. Not repeatable.

Subfield $a fixed-length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
ISBD Media Type Code	1	0

$c Other Coding for Media Type

A code for a source of codes other than ISBD. For example, codes from Term and Code List for RDA Media Type (http://www.loc.gov/standards/valuelist/rdamedia.html), defined for use in MARC21. Repeatable.

$2 Source

Source of the code used in $c. Mandatory if $c is used. Not repeatable.

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13 Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure).

The link to field 181 – Coded data Field – Content Form is used to generate a display for ISBD Area 0 when the resource is of a mixed media.

Notes on Field Contents

If a textual form of the media type designation is desired use field 203, preferably in addition to field 182. In that case, indicator 2 should be set to 0 in field 182.

Codes may not correspond exactly to text display used in field 203. What is displayed by any system will be a local decision.

$a/0 ISBD Media Type Code

1-character position contains a code indicating the media type of the resource according to the stipulations of ISBD for this element.

a	audio
b	electronic
c	microform
d	microscopic
e	projected
f	stereographic
g	video
m	multiple media
n	unmediated
z	other media

Related Fields

181 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT FORM	
203 CONTENT FORM AND MEDIA TYPE	This field corresponds to the ISBD Content Form and Media Type Area. If the system cannot display information from coded data field 181 and 182, the information can be given in plain text in field 203.

Examples

EX 1
181#1$ab4$bcb2d##
182 #1$an
Coded information for specifying the Media type of a tactile map. The coded data are used to generate the ISBD Area 0 displays, along with field 181. The example represents the ISBD Area 0: *Image (cartographic ; still ; 2-dimensional ; tactile) : unmediated.*
EX 2
181 #1$ad4$bbxx###
182 #1$aa
Coded information specifying the ISBD Media type of an audio CD; The coded data are used to generate the ISBD Area 0 displays, along with field 181. The example represents the ISBD Area 0: *Music (performed) : audio*.

History

2016	New field.
2023	Text edit.

183 CODED DATA FIELD: TYPE OF CARRIER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains coded data specifying the type of carrier of the resource being described.

Repeatable when more than one source of codes is used, or when several types of carrier are associated with different types of media within the resource.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
183	CODED DATA FIELD – TYPE OF CARRIER	R	O
a	Type of Carrier Code	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Display Indicator
	0	Not used to generate displays
	1	Used to generate displays
	#	Information not provided

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Display Indicator

Indicates whether the agency providing the record would use the data in this field to automatically generate the type of carrier in textual form.

Subfields Description

$a Type of Carrier Code

A coded value specifying the type of carrier applying to the resource, according to the provisions of the system specified in subfield $2. Repeatable when several types of carrier, associated with the same media type, are present in the resource.

$2 Source

Source of the code used in $a. Not repeatable.

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13 Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure).

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

If a textual form of the type of carrier designation is desired use field 283, preferably in addition to field 183. In that case, indicator 2 should be set to 0 in field 183.

UNIMARC bibliographic 1XX fields provide most of the type of carrier designation coded information but, alternatively, the list of code values used in MARC21for RDA carrier types could be used (see http://www.loc.gov/standards/valuelist/rdacarrier.html). For RDA carrier types use "rdacarrier" in $2.

Related Fields

182 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIA TYPE	This field corresponds to the media type element of the ISBD Area 0. It can be combined with field 181 to generate automatically the ISBD Area 0 for print or other displays of the record.
115 CODED DATA FIELD: VISUAL PROJECTIONS, VIDEO RECORDINGS AND MOTION PICTURES	
116 CODED DATA FIELD: GRAPHICS	
117 CODED DATA FIELD: THREE-DIMENSIONAL ARTEFACTS AND REALIA	
120 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – GENERAL	
121 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES	
124 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – SPECIFIC MATERIAL DESIGNATION ANALYSIS	
126 CODED DATA FIELD: SOUND RECORDINGS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES	
130 CODED DATA FIELD: MICROFORMS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES	
135 CODED DATA FIELD: ELECTRONIC RESOURCES	
140 CODED DATA FIELD: ANTIQUARIAN – GENERAL	
141 CODED DATA FIELD: ITEM SPECIFIC ATTRIBUTES	
283 CARRIER TYPE	This field holds textual data pertaining to the type of carrier type of the resource.

Examples

EX 1a
183 #1anc2rdacarrier
Coded information for specifying the carrier type "volume" (value: nc) according to Term and Code List for RDA Carrier Types (as indicated in subfield $2). Indicator 2 has been set to 1 ("Used to generate displays"). Field 283 is not present.
EX 1b
183 #0anc2rdacarrier
283 ##$cvolume$2rdacarrier
Coded information for specifying the carrier type "volume" (value: nc) according to Term and Code List for RDA Carrier Types (as indicated in subfield $2). Indicator 2 has been set to 0 ("Not used to generate displays"). Field 283 is present.
EX 2
183 #1$8main part$asd$2rdacarrier
183 #1$8liner notes$anb$2rdacarrier

Coded information for specifying the carrier types “audio disc” (value: sd) and “sheet” (value: nb) according to Term and Code List for RDA Carrier Types (as indicated in subfield $2). The carrier type “audio disc” applies to the main part of the resource, whereas “sheet” applies to accompanying textual material (as mentioned in $8). Indicator 2 has been set to 1 (“Used to generate displays”). Field 283 is not present.
EX 3
The resource is comprised of a printed score and a video DVD. The cataloguing agency considers the DVD to be the main part of the resource. Both parts have different media types. There are two options:
EX 3a
181 #1$6z03$ad#$baxxe##
181 #1$6z04$ab#$bba2ae#
181 #1$cntm$2rdacontent
181 #1$ctdi$2rdacontent
182 #1$6z03$an
182 #1$6z04$ag
182 #1$6z01$cn$2rdamedia
182 #1$6z02$cv$2rdamedia
183 #1$6z01$anc$2rdacarrier
183 #1$6z02$avd$2rdacarrier
215 ##$a1 score (72 pages)$d31 cm 215 ##$a1 videodisc$cDVD video, sound$d4 3/4 in
Option 1: The data are carried only in coded form. Fields 182 (Media Type) are present both with ISBD and RDA coded values. Note the use of $6 subfields (linking number 01 and 02) to link the 183 fields to the relevant 182 fields.
EX 3b
181 #0$ad#$baxxe##
181 #0$ab#$bba2ae#
181 #0$cntm$2rdacontent
181 #0$ctdi$2rdacontent
182 #0$an
182 #0$ag
182 #0$6z01$cn$2rdamedia
182 #0$6z02$cv$2rdamedia
183 #0$6z01$anc$2rdacarrier
183 #0$6z02$avd$2rdacarrier
203 ##$6z01$amusic$bnotated$bvisual$cunmediated
203 ##$6z02$aimage$bmoving$btwo-dimensional$baural$bvisual$cvideo
215 ##$a1 score (72 pages)$d31 cm
215 ##$a1 videodisc$cDVD video, sound$d4 3/4 in
283 ##$6z01$avolume$2rdacarrier
283 ##$6z02$avideodisc$2rdacarrier
Option 2: the data are carried both in coded and textual forms. Indicators 2 in 18- fields set to 0.

History

2016	New field.

2-- DESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION BLOCK

Description and Scope of Fields

This block contains those areas covered by the ISBD with the exception of notes and standard numbers. Definitions and further information on the use on the ISBD data elements are found in the ISBD documents. The following fields are defined:

200	TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY
203	CONTENT FORM AND MEDIA TYPE
204	GENERAL MATERIAL DESIGNATION (GMD)[OBSOLETE]
205	EDITION STATEMENT
206	MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – MATHEMATICAL DATA
207	MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: NUMBERING OF CONTINUING RESOURCES
208	MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: MUSIC FORMAT STATEMENT
210	PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.
211	PROJECTED PUBLICATION DATE
214	PRODUCTION, PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, MANUFACTURE STATEMENTS
215	PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION
225	SERIES
230	MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: ELECTRONIC RESOURCE CHARACTERISTICS
231	DIGITAL FILE CHARACTERISTICS [PROVISIONAL]
251	ORGANIZATION AND ARRANGEMENT OF MATERIALS
283	CARRIER TYPE

Notes on Contents of Block

Unless stated otherwise in a particular field, ISBD punctuation is not entered at subfield boundaries or at the end of a field. This rule also applies to parallel data introduced by subfield $d in fields 200, 205, 208 and 225. In all other positions the equals sign and space ("= ") should be entered explicitly whenever it occurs in the description; "= " then replaces any other ISBD punctuation that would normally be generated at a subfield boundary.

In certain fields in the 2-- block, guidance is given as to the ISBD punctuation which is generated from the subfield identifier. This is intended only as a rough guide and the appropriate ISBD is in all cases the authority.

Data elements in this block should not be generated automatically from data elements in other parts of a source record in instances where the source record lacks these elements. For example, if the source record does not have a data element "statement of responsibility as found on the resource", the access point fields (equivalent to UNIMARC 7--) should not be used to generate one since there will be no way of ensuring that data in such a generated subfield would add anything to the descriptive area of the record. Similarly a series statement (field 225) should not be generated automatically from a series access point (field 410). Nevertheless, since the 200 $a subfield is mandatory, a title from the source record must be entered in this subfield whether or not it is in ISBD form.

In cases where the full range of subfields cannot be used (for example, when a record is converted from another format), the accompanying documentation should give details.

205 ##$a3rd ed., 2nd (corrected) impression [should be 3rd ed.$b2nd ...]

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, descriptive cataloguing (character position 18)	If a UNIMARC record does not for whatever reason contain data entered according to the provisions of ISBD, then character position 18 of the RECORD LABEL, descriptive cataloguing form, should contain the code "n" for non-ISBD form, "i" for partial or incomplete form or "x" for ISBD not applicable, depending on the amount of divergence.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Corrections.
2019	Additions.

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the title along with any other title information and statements of responsibility relating to the title including any of the preceding repeated in other languages (parallel titles, parallel statements of responsibility, etc.) generally in the form and sequence in which they appear on the resource being catalogued.

It corresponds to the ISBD Title and Statement of Responsibility Area. For collections the field may contain inclusive dates and/or bulk dates, if these are considered to be part of the title.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
200	TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	NR	M
a	Title Proper	R	M
b	General Material Designation	R	O
c	Title Proper by Another Author	R	O
d	Parallel Title Proper	R	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
f	First Statement of Responsibility	R	O
g	Subsequent Statement of Responsibility	R	O
h	Number of a Part	R	O
i	Name of a Part	R	O
j	Inclusive Dates	NR	O
k	Bulk Dates	NR	O
r	Title Page Information Following the Title Proper (for Older Monographic Publications)	NR	O
v	Volume Designation	NR	O
z	Language of Parallel Title Proper	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Title is not significant
	1	Title is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

This specifies whether the agency preparing the record considers that the title proper as specified in the first $a subfield deserves treatment as an access point. This corresponds to making a title added entry or treating the title as main entry under certain cataloguing codes.

Value 0: Title is not significant

This title does not warrant an added entry.

Value 1: Title is significant

An access point is to be made from this title.

For access points for any title other than the first occurring title proper, see section Related Fields below.

Subfields Description

$a Title Proper

The chief title of the resource, includes alternative title but excludes other title information (e.g. subtitles) and parallel titles. Repeatable for additional titles by the same author (EX 5). Mandatory for every record.

$b General Material Designation

Text of general material designation (EX 3, 11). This subfield contains a term indicating the broad class of material to which the resource belongs given in the language and script of the agency preparing the record.

It corresponds to General Material Designation in the ISBDs prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011). According to ISBD Consolidated Edition, GMD element is not used. However it can still be carried in bibliographic records created prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition. Repeatable.

$c Title Proper by Another Author

The chief title of a work by an author other than the one responsible for the first title when they are both contained in the same resource and when there is no collective title. Repeatable for each additional title proper by another author (EX 12).

$d Parallel Title Proper

The title proper in another language and/or script relating to a title proper appearing in a $a or $c subfield (EX 4, 13, 14). Repeatable for each additional parallel title.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear subordinate to the title proper on the resource (EX 1, 2, 10). Repeatable for each segment of other title information (EX 10) and for parallel other title information (EX 13, 14). It does not include variant titles such as spine title, cover title, and other titles found outside the principal source of information. It may be subordinate to a title appearing in subfield $a, $c or $d.

$f First Statement of Responsibility

The first statement of responsibility for a title appearing in subfield $a, $c or $d, or for a numbered or named part of a resource appearing in subfields $h or $i. Repeatable after each subfield $a, $c, $d, $h or $i which has an accompanying statement of responsibility (EX 12) or for each parallel statement of responsibility (EX 6).

$g Subsequent Statement of Responsibility

A statement of responsibility after the first statement of responsibility and relating to the same title (EX 1, 4, 8, 9). It is repeatable for each additional subsequent statement of responsibility (EX 1, 8, 9) and for each parallel subsequent statement of responsibility (EX 14).

$h Number of a Part

The section or part numbering of a resource used in a title (EX 3, 11). Repeatable for each subsection or lower level division (EX 11) or for a parallel part number.

$i Name of a Part

The section or part name for resources which are identified by a common name and a subsection name (EX 3, 11). Repeatable for each subsection or lower level division (EX 11) or for a parallel part name.

$j Inclusive Dates

The time period, that relates to the creation, assembly, accumulation, and/or maintenance and use of the resources in the unit being described, when required as part of the title. It may be the span of the earliest and the latest dates of the resources in the collection (EX 23), single date, if all the resources of the collection were created during the same year (EX 26), or dates separated with commas, if there is a significant gap in the chronological sequence of the resources of the collection (EX 24). Estimated date may be given, if necessary. Not repeatable.

$k Bulk Dates

Dates pertaining to the majority of the resources in the unit being described if they differ significantly from the inclusive dates (EX 25). Not repeatable.

$r Title Page Information Following the Title Proper (for Older Monographic Publications)

The remaining information present on the title page or its substitute following the title proper. It includes elements such as subtitles, other title information, statements of responsibility, etc., which do not belong to the main title and which are not needed in short displays of the record nor taken into consideration for sorting the titles. (EX 18, 19). Not repeatable.

$v Volume Designation

Used to indicate a particular part of the resource that is related to another resource. This subfield is used only when a 200 field is embedded in a 4-- linking field. It further defines the part of the linked resource that bears the relationship designated by the 4-- tag. For example, the resource may be a volume of a series, in which case the series title and the volume designation are entered in an embedded 200 field (EX 7). Volume designation may be numbers, years, etc. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Parallel Title Proper

Coded identification of the language of a parallel title that appears in a $d subfield. If $d is repeated, this subfield should be repeated, the languages identified reflecting the order of the parallel titles. This subfield and any repetitions should always come at the end of the field, followed by $2, if $2 is present (EX 4, 13, 14, 27, 28). For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2 (see Appendix A).

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2. For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

This subfield is used only when a 200 field is embedded in a 4-- linking field. It further defines the part of the linked item that bears the relationship designated by the 4-- tag. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian) to identify the institution which possesses the item with item specific information. The case may be of the resource bound in an "artificial" collection (EX 17).

Notes on Field Contents

ISBD Information

The data in the field should be entered as specified in ISBD for the Title and Statement of Responsibility Area.

Subfield $b used to contain ISBD element prior to ISBD Consolidated edition. Subfield $r can contain different ISBD data elements and subfields $j, $k, $z are not ISBD data elements.

The correspondence between this field and the ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011) specification is illustrated below. The table illustrates the preceding punctuation which occurs in most situations but not necessarily when parallel data is present. Further information is found in the ISBD.

UNIMARC subfield	Element Name	ISBD (2011) section	Preceding punctuation
$a	Title proper	1.1	New area
$a (repeated)	Title proper by the same author	1.1.5.2	;
$c	Title proper by another author	1.4.5.11.2	.
$d	Parallel title proper	1.2	=
$e	Other title information	1.3	:
$f	First statement of responsibility	1.4	/
$g	Subsequent statement of responsibility	1.4	;
$h	Number of a part	1.1.5.3.1	.
$i	Name of a part	1.1.5.3.1	, if after $h, else .

When ISBD data is not found in the source record, no attempt should be made to create it from other data elements in a record. For example, if the source record does not have a data element "statement of responsibility as found on the resource", data from the access point fields of the source record should not be used to create one.

When the resource has a collective title consisting of the title of separate works contained within it, any conjunction in the title is included in the subfield of the title it precedes (EX 5).

Parallel Data

Parallel data appearing on the resource, i.e. data repeated in other languages or script, is denoted in ISBD by the use of equals sign followed by a space "= " at the start of any block of parallel data. In this field, the subfield identifier $d will generate "= " automatically (EX 4, 13, 14$d). If "= " is required by ISBD rules at the start of any other subfield, it must be entered explicitly. The equals sign and space then replace any other ISBD punctuation that would normally be generated at that subfield boundary (EX 6 $f, EX 14 $g).

A title translated by the cataloguer is recorded in field 541 unless it is the only title supplied by the source record.

Title Access

The data in 200 $a will usually be that used to create an access point for the record under the title, if the title significance indicator (indicator 1) is set to 1. There is no other field in the UNIMARC format from which an added entry under title proper can be created when the record is used in the production of a catalogue.

General Material Designation

The general material designation (GMD) was used in the ISBDs prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011). ISBD Consolidated Edition does not include GMD. However it can still be carried in bibliographic records created prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition.

The general material designation is entered in the language of the agency preparing the record. Lists of general material designations are found in ISBDs. For monographs and continuing resources in the usual print form, the designation "Printed text" may optionally be used. When the resource has a collective title proper and comprises more than one interdependent component belonging to distinct material categories, the field will include a subfield for each general material designation.

When displayed, the general material designation is enclosed in brackets [ ]. These are ISBD prescribed punctuation and are not included in the record.

Related Fields

101 LANGUAGE OF THE RESOURCE	The language of the title proper in the 200 $a subfield may be indicated in $g of field 101. However if there is no language entered in 101 $g, it can be assumed that the language of the title proper is the same as the first language of the text, entered in the first occurrence of $a in the 101 field. The language of any parallel titles is contained in 200 $z.
304 NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	Used for notes on the contents of field 200.
312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES	Used for notes containing the text of and/or comments on related titles.
423 ISSUED WITH	Used for added entries for titles contained in additional 200 $a subfields, for 200 $c subfields and for titles associated with these (EX 12).
5-- RELATED TITLE BLOCK	Used for added entries for parallel titles contained in 200$d (EX 4) and for variant titles such as spine title.
530 KEY-TITLE	When the source format carries a key title, which may or may not be the same as the title proper, it is entered in field 530.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Great Fear of 1789$erural panic in revolutionary France$f[by] Georges LeFebvre$gtranslated from the French by Joan White$gintroduction by George Rudé
The ISBD entry appears as: The Great Fear of 1789 : rural panic in revolutionary France / [by] Georges LeFebvre ; translated from the French by Joan White ; introduction by George Rudé.
“The “ is marked as having no filing value.
EX 2
200 1#$aWhat is modern mathematics?$ea guide to teachers in further education$fYorkshire and Humberside Council for Further Education
The ISBD entry appears as:
What is modern mathematics? : a guide to teachers in further education / Yorkshire and Humberside Council for Further Education.
The question mark “?” of the title proper is retained since it is not ISBD prescribed punctuation.
EX 3
200 0#$aBulletin signalétique$bMicroform$hSection 9$iSciences de l’ingénieur$fCentre national de la recherche scientifique
The ISBD entry appears as: Bulletin signalétique. Section 9, Sciences de l’ingénieur [Microform] / Centre national de la recherche scientifique
Subfield $b bears general material designation “Microform” since the record was created prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition.
EX 4
200 1#$aIndustrial steam locomotives of Germany and Austria$dDampfloks auf Industriebahnen der BRD, DDR, und Österreich$fcompiled by Brian Rumary$gGerman translations by M. Spellen$zger
510 1#$aDampfloks auf Industriebahnen der BRD, DDR, und Österreich$zger
The resource has a parallel title that is coded as German. An added entry is required for the parallel title, so it is repeated in field 510. Code for German is derived from ISO 639-2, so subfield $2 is not used.

EX 5
200 1#$aFlash and filigree$aand, The Magic Christian$fby Terry Southern
The resource contains two individual works by the same author, each with its own title but without any collective title.
EX 6
200 1#$aBibliographica belgica$fCommission belge de bibliographie$f= Belgische Commissie voor bibliografie
The resource has a title in Latin with parallel statements of responsibility in French and Dutch. The $f subfield is repeated and the data is preceded by an equals sign "=" and space.
EX 7
410 #0$12000#$aSeries de histórica general$vv.5$171001$aMexico (City). $bUniversidad Nacional.$bInstituto de Investigaciones Históricas.
This example illustrates the use of field 200 embedded in a linking entry field. A link is made between the resource being catalogued and the series to which it belongs, using field 410. Embedded within the 410 field are the 710 field containing the name of the corporate body primarily responsible for the series and the 200 field containing the name of the series. The resource being catalogued is v.5 of the series, so v.5 is entered in the 200 $v field.
Using standard subfields technique:
410 #0$tSeries de histórica general$aMexico (City). Universidad Nacional. Instituto de Investigaciones Históricas$vv.5
EX 8
200 1#$aThree adventures of Asterix$iAsterix in Switzerland$ftext by Goscinny$gdrawings by Uderzo$gtranslated by Anthea Bell and Derek Hockridge
The resource is one of three unnumbered volumes, with a common title for the set of three and individual titles for each volume. The first statement of responsibility is entered in $f and all others in $g. Note that a statement of responsibility may contain more than one name (second $g). Alternatively, the volume could have been treated as in EX 9.
EX 9
200 1#$aAsterix in Switzerland$ftext by Goscinny$gdrawings by Uderzo$gtranslated by Anthea Bell and Derek Hockridge
461 #1$12001#$aThree adventures of Asterix
The same example as EX 8 but treated differently in the source format of the agency preparing the record.
EX 10
200 1#$aLife wish$ereincarnation$ereality or hoax$fMaurice Rawlings
Example of multiple occurrences of other title information.
EX 11
200 1#$aBritish standard methods of analysis of fat and fatty oils$hPart l$iPhysical methods$hSection 1.12$iDetermination of the dilation of fats$bPrinted text
A standards document with sections and subsections as recorded in a multi-media bibliography. The general material designation is stated since the record was created prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition.
EX 12
200 1#$aPour les valeurs bourgeoises$fpar Georges Hourdin$cContre les valeurs bourgeoises$fpar Gilbert Ganne
423 #0$l2001#$aContre les valeurs bourgeoises$1700#1$aGanne,$bGilbert
Using standard subfields technique:

200 1# $aPour les valeurs bourgeoises$fpar Georges Hourdin$cContre les valeurs bourgeoises$fpar Gilbert Ganne
423 #0 $tContre les valeurs bourgeoises$aGanne, Gilbert
The ISBD entry appears as: Pour les valeurs bourgeoises / par Georges Hourdin. Contre les valeurs bourgeoises / par Gilbert Ganne
The resource contains two works by different authors without common title. Note that subfield $f First Statement of Responsibility is repeated after each title. In order to provide for author/title and title added entries for the second named work, the author and title are entered in field 423.
EX 13
200 1#$aApplications of ecological (biophysical) land classification in Canada$eproceedings of the second meeting$dApplications de la classification écologique (biophysicale) du territoire au Canada$ecompte rendu de la deuxième réunion$fCanada Committee on Ecological (Biophysical) Land Classification, 4-7 April 1978, Victoria, British Columbia$gcompiled and edited by C.D.A. Rubec$zfre
The resource contains “blocked” data for title and other title information, but since the statements of responsibility are not parallel, these are outside the block.
EX 14
200 1#$aPrinting at Gregynog$easpects of a great private press$dArgraffu yng Ngregynog$eagweddau ar wasg breifat fawr$fMichael Hutchins$gtranslated by David Jenkyns$g= y cyfieithiad gan David Jenkyns$zwel
The source format has not blocked the description by language since the first statement of responsibility belongs to each set of language data; therefore the equals sign precedes each new set of elements in the parallel language.
EX 15
200 1#$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠western, nouvelle éd.$cÉvolution et renouveau du western (1962-1968)
The publication is without a collective title and the edition statement for one of the titles thus appears in the title area rather than in an edition area. The source format treated this unusually placed data element like a part of the title proper.
EX 16
200 0#$aVol. 3
461 #0$100183.040221.7$15010#$aWorks$1700#1$a Shakespeare$bWilliam
The record is for a part without a distinctive title from a source format that constructs separate records for each level in a bibliographic hierarchy. The 461 contains the identifier of the record for a 9 volume set of complete works of Shakespeare without distinctively named individual volumes.
EX 17
481 #1$1001930112003$12001#$aTheoria generalis aequationum omnium graduum novis illustrata formulis ac iuxta principia sublimioris calculi finitorum deducta$fautore p. Dominico Martinovics $5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º-1133privez1$1210##$aBudae$d1780
OR
481 #1$0001930112003$tTheoria generalis aequationum omnium graduum novis illustrata formulis ac iuxta principia sublimioris calculi finitorum deducta$fautore p. Dominico Martinovics$cBudae $d1780$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8°-1133privez
EX 18
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠vision publique, d’un horrible & tres-espouvantable demon, sur l’eglise cathedralle de Quimpercoretin en Bretagne$r. Le premier jour de ce mois de fevrier 1620. Lequel demon consomma une pyramide par feu, & y survint un grand tonnerre & foudre du ciel
EX 19

200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠buona figliuola, o sia La cecchina$r, dramma giocoso per musica da rappresentarsi nel teatro di Bastia, il carnevale dell' anno 1775
EX 20
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠Catelogne francoise$r. Ou il est traité des droits que le Roy a sur les comtez de Barcelonne, & de Roussillon; & sur les autres terres de la principauté de Catelogne
EX 21
200 1#$a ≠NSB≠Les ≠NSE≠diversitez galantes$r. Contenant Les soirées des auberges, nouvelle comique. L'apoticaire de qualité, nouvelle galante & veritable. L'avanture de l'hostellerie, ou Les deux rivales. Le mariage de Belfegor, nouvelle facetieuse. L'occasion perduë recouverte, nouvelle comique
This older monographic publication is catalogued with exact transcription of title page, which lists part of the works contained in the publication (other works are present in the publication but do not appear on the title page).
EX 22
200 1#$a≠NSB≠Thomae a Kempis, canonici regularis ord. S. Augustini, ≠NSE≠De Imitatione Christi libri IV$r. Ex recensione Philippi Chifletii, Balernae abbatis, nec non Ecclesiae metropolitanae Vesontinae canonici et vicarii generalis
EX 23
100 ##$a20110206l19201960k##y0rusy0102####ca
200 1#$aВорошилов Климент Ефремович. Партийный и государственный деятель. 1881-1969$j1920-1960
Archive of records of Kliment Voroshilov (1881-1969), resources of the archive are dated 1920-1960.
EX 24
100 ##$a20110206l18##1987k##y0rusy0102####ca
200 1#$aВыпускницы Высших Бестужевских курсов$j1880-е –1983, 1987
Archival collection includes records of graduates of the Higher Bestuzhev Courses. Resources are dated 1880s – 1983 and 1987 (there are no resources for 1984-1986); date of creation of the earliest resource is estimated.
EX 25
100 ##$a20110206l18771996k##y0rusy0102####ca
200 1#$aШаховская Зинаида Алексеевна (Малевская-Малевич, Жак-Круазе). Княгиня, писательница, редактор. 1906 - $j1877-1996$k1923-1996
Archive of records of Zinaida Shakhovskaya (Russian princess; novelist and poet; pseudonym - Jacques Croise). The archive includes resources for 1877-1996, but the majority of resources pertain to the period 1923-1996.
EX 26
100 ##$a20110206j19370707k##y0rusy0102####ca
200 1#$aАвтобиография А.А.Адамова с приложением фотографии$j7 июля 1937
File from the archive of records of Russian emigrants contains autobiography of A.Adamov dated July, 7, 1937.
EX 27
200 1#$aGhid de conversaţie român-găgăuz$dRomınca-gagauzca lafetmäk kiyadı$fDr. Todur Angheli$zgag$2iso639-3
Romanian-Gagauz phrasebook. The resource has a parallel title in Gagauz language. The code for Gagauz is derived from ISO 639-3, thereof the source of code is indicated in subfield $2.
EX 28

200 1#$aМифы, сказки, предания манси (вогулов)$dМаньси махум ялпын мойтыт, нас мойтыт, йис потрыт$ев записях 1889, 1952, 1958 - 1960, 1968, 1978, 1992, 2002 гг.$f[подгот. текстов, пер., вступ. ст., коммент., указ., слов., сост. компакт-диска Е.И. Ромбандеевой]$zvog$2knia
Collection of Mansi myths, folktales and legends. Parallel title is in Mansi language. The code for Mansi is derived from GOST 7.75-97 indicated in subfield $2.

History

1996	New paragraphs/subfield/examples.
2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.
2012	Corrections and additions. 200$j, 200$k (new s/f) for inclusive and bulk dates.
2018	Added text, new subfield $2 and new examples.
2024	Text edit of $h.

203 CONTENT FORM AND MEDIA TYPE

Field Definition and Scope

This field corresponds to ISBD Area 0 Content Form and Media Type Area, whose purpose is to indicate at the very beginning of the description both the fundamental form or forms in which the content of a resource is expressed and the type or types of carrier used to convey that content so as to assist catalogue users in identifying and selecting resources appropriate to their needs.

Repeatable when a resource consists of different media types and contains different content forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
203	CONTENT FORM AND MEDIA TYPE	R	O
a	Content Form	R	M
b	Content Qualification	R	MA
c	Media Type	NR	M

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Content Form

Content form categories reflect the fundamental form or forms in which the content of a resource is expressed. Terms defined for ISBD Content Form element must be used. Mandatory. Repeatable.

$b Content Qualification

A content form category is expanded by one or more content qualification sub-categories that are applicable to the resource being described. Content qualifications specify the type, presence or absence of motion, dimensionality and sensory nature for the resource being described. Terms defined for ISBD Content Qualification sub-element must be used. Mandatory if applicable. Repeatable.

$c Media Type

Media type categories record the type or types of carrier used to convey the content of the resource. Terms defined for ISBD Media Type element must be used. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Note on Field Contents

ISBD Information

The data in the field should be entered as specified in ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011). The correspondence between this field and ISBD specification is illustrated below.

UNIMARC subfield	Element Name	ISBD (2011) section	Preceding punctuation
$a	Content form	0.1	New area
$b	Content qualification	0.1.1	( )
$b	Subsequent content qualification	0.1.1	;
$a	Subsequent content form (contained in same Media type)	0.1	.
$c	Media type	0.2	:
Field repeated	Subsequent content form: media type statement		+

If a resource consists of different media types, field 203 is repeated and each subsequent Content Form : Media Type statement is preceded by a space, plus sign, space (+).

Related Fields

181 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTENT FORM	If ISBD Area 0 elements are not generated from coded data field 181, the information shall be given in plain text in field 203.
182 CODED DATA FIELD: MEDIA TYPE	If ISBD Area 0 elements are not generated from coded data field 182, the information shall be given in plain text in field 203.

Examples

EX 1
181 #0$ab4$bcb2d##
182 #0$an
203 ##$aImage$bcartographic$bstill$b2-dimensional$btactile$cunmediated
Coded information specifying the ISBD Content form and Content qualification of a tactile map. The display of ISBD data is not generated but carried out by a plain text 203 field to display: *Image (cartographic ; still ; 2-dimensional ; tactile) : unmediated.*

History

2016	New field.

204 GENERAL MATERIAL DESIGNATION (GMD) [OBSOLETE]

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains coded information on the GMD. It corresponds to the ISBD General Material Designation.

Data was included at field 200 subfield $b until ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011) was published.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
204	GENERAL MATERIAL DESIGNATION (GMD)[OBSOLETE]	-	Obsolete
a	General Material Designation	-	-

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a General Material Designation

Text of General Material Designation. Not repeatable.

205 EDITION STATEMENT

Field Definition and Scope

The field contains a statement of the edition of the resource along with any additional issue statement and statement of responsibility relating to the edition.

It corresponds to the ISBD Edition Area.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
205	EDITION STATEMENT	R	O
a	Edition Statement	NR	O
b	Issue Statement	R	O
d	Parallel Edition Statement	R	O
f	Statement of Responsibility Relating to Edition	R	O
g	Subsequent Statement of Responsibility	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Edition Statement

A word, phrase or group of characters in a formal statement, identifying the resource as a member of an edition. Not repeatable. Additional edition statements are entered in $b.

$b Issue Statement

This subfield contains an edition statement relating to an issue or an additional edition statement which:

- is formally identified as constituting an edition within an edition, or
- has significant differences in content from other issues of the larger edition to which it belongs (EX 5, 8), or
- is an alternative designation for the edition named in subfield $a (EX 6).

It corresponds to the ISBD Additional Edition Statement. Repeatable for a parallel or additional issue statement.

$d Parallel Edition Statement

The statement of an edition in a language and/or script other than the edition statement in subfield $a (EX 9). Repeatable for each edition statement in other languages.

$f Statement of Responsibility Relating to Edition

The first of any statements of responsibility relating to the edition. May appear following subfields $a (EX 8, 9), $b (EX 7), or $d (EX 9). Repeatable for parallel first statements and first statements relating to additional edition statements.

$g Subsequent Statement of Responsibility

Any subsequent statement of responsibility relating to the edition (EX 7). Follows subfield $f. Repeatable for additional subsequent statements and parallel subsequent statements.

Notes on Field Contents

ISBD Information

The data in the field should be entered, as specified in ISBD, in the terms that appear on the resource. When data is supplied by the cataloguer, it should be enclosed within brackets [ ]. The correspondence between this field and ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011) specification is illustrated below.

UNIMARC subfield	Element name	ISBD (2011) section	Preceding punctuation
$a	Edition statement	2.1	New area
$d	Parallel edition statement	2.2	=
$f	Statement of responsibility relating to edition	2.3, 2.5	/
$g	Subsequent statement of responsibility	2.3, 2.5	;
$b	Issue or additional edition statement	2.4	,

Subfield Content

Statements of responsibility are entered immediately after the edition/issue statement to which they specifically apply. If a statement of responsibility applies to the work as a whole, and not merely to one particular edition or issue, it is entered in subfields 200 $f or $g. A single statement of responsibility may contain more than one name in some cases (EX 8).

When a statement relating to an issue or reprint is present in the resource and there is no edition statement present, the issue statement is entered in subfield $a (EX 4). Many cataloguing codes do not transcribe an edition statement when it refers to a first edition.

Parallel Data

Parallel data appearing on the resource, i.e. data repeated in another language or script, is denoted in ISBD by the use of equals sign followed by a space "= " at the start of any block of parallel data. In this field, the subfield identifier $d will generate "= " automatically (EX 9). If "= " is required by ISBD rules at the start of any other subfield, it must be entered explicitly. The equals sign and space then replace any other punctuation that would normally be generated at that subfield boundary.

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	Statements of responsibility relating to the title as a whole are entered in field 200.
305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY	Used for notes on the contents of field 205.
7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK	Any names in an edition statement for which access points are required are entered in 7-- fields.

Examples

EX 1
205 ##$a16th ed.
EX 2
205 ##$aNew and revised ed.
EX 3
205 ##$aLarge print ed.
EX 4
205 ##$a2nd impression
EX 5
205 ##$a3rd ed.$b2nd (corrected) impression

A title *Ireland* edited by L. Russell Muirhead states "Third edition. Second (corrected) impression". Second (corrected) impression is an issue statement and is entered in $b.
EX 6
205 ##$aEnglish full ed.$b4th international ed.
The English full edition of UDC is also labelled "Fourth international edition". The additional edition statement is entered in $b.
EX 7
205 ##$a2nd ed.$breissued$fwith a foreword by Magnus Magnusson$gextra notes by P. Gardner
The second edition of the resource is reissued with the addition of a foreword by Magnus Magnusson, with extra notes by P. Gardner.
EX 8
205 ##$a4th ed.$frevised by H.G. Le Mesurier and E. McIntosh$breprinted with corrections
The 4th edition of *The pocket Oxford dictionary of accurate English* is revised by H.G. Le Mesurier and E. McIntosh. A reprint is issued with corrections.
EX 9
205 ##$a2nd ed.$fedited by Larry C. Lewis$d2e éd.$frédigée par Larry C. Lewis
A parallel edition statement.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Corrections.

206 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – MATHEMATICAL DATA

Field Definition and Scope

The statements of scale, projections, coordinates and equinox of a cartographic resource.

It is equivalent to the ISBD Material or Type of Resource Specific Area – Mathematical Data.

Mandatory for cartographic resources.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
206	MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – MATHEMATICAL DATA	R	MA
a	Mathematical Data Statement	NR	O
b	Statement of Scale	R	O
c	Statement of Projection	NR	O
d	Statement of Coordinates	NR	O
e	Right Ascension and Declination	NR	O
f	Statement of Equinox	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Formatting Indicator
	#	Unstructured
	0	Structured
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Mathematical Data Statement

The text of the statements of scale, projection, coordinates, equinoxes and epochs including ISBD punctuation. Not repeatable.

$b Statement of Scale

Includes any equivalency statements, vertical scales or vertical exaggeration statements for relief models and other three-dimensional resources. Repeatable.

$c Statement of Projection

Not repeatable.

$d Statement of Coordinates

Not repeatable.

$e Right Ascension and Declination

Used for celestial charts. Not repeatable.

$f Statement of Equinox

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The text of the area may use:

either one subfield $a for the data in unstructured format; in this situation the field is not divided into other subfields and so therefore the specifications for format and punctuation of the data in this field are as contained in the ISBD and all ISBD specified punctuation is carried in the field

or subfields $b, $c, $d, $e, $f as required for the structured data.

The correspondence between this field (structured version) and ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011) specification is illustrated below.

UNIMARC subfield	Element name	ISBD (2011)	Preceding punctuation
$b	Statement of scale	3.1.1	New area
$b	Statement of scale	3.1.1	,
$c	Statement of projection	3.1.2	;
$d	Statement of coordinates	3.1.3.1	( )
$e	Right ascension and declination used for celestial charts	3.1.3.3	( )
$f	Statement of equinox	3.1.3.4	(*;*)

The statement of zone used for celestial charts and the statement of equinox are transcribed into the same pair of parentheses.

Related Fields

120 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – GENERAL	This field contains a code for map projection.
122 CODED DATA FIELD: TIME PERIOD OF RESOURCE CONTENT	This field contains in coded form the date to which the resource applies, it includes the data which is found in the statement of equinox in records relating to celestial charts.
123 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – SCALE AND COORDINATES	
131 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – GEODETIC, GRID AND VERTICAL MEASUREMENT	

Examples

EX 1
Unstructured information
206 ##$aScale 1:6 336 000 (W 170º-W 50º/N 80º -N 40º)
Structured information
206 0#$bScale 1:6 336 000$dW 170º-W 50º/N 80º-N 40º
EX 2
Unstructured information
206 ##$aScale 1:250 000. Vertical scale 1:125 000 ; Universal Transverse Mercator proj. (W 124º- W 122º/N 58º-N57º)
The record was created prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011).
Structured information
206 0#$bScale 1:250 000$bVertical scale 1:125 000$cUniversal Transverse Mercator proj.$dW 124º- W 122º/N 58º-N57º

EX 3
Unstructured information
206 ##$a(RA 16 hr. 30 min. to 19 hr. 30min./Decl. -16º to -49º; eq. 1950, epoch 1948)
Structured information
206 0#$eRA 16 hr. 30 min. to 19 hr. 30min./Decl. -16º to -49º$feq. 1950, epoch 1948
Example of a celestial chart.
EX 4
Unstructured information
206 ##$aScale [ca. 1:770.000]
Includes in field 315, note: Scale given with the calculated value 14.50 cm for the latitude degree.
Structured information
206 0#$bScale [ca. 1:770.000]
Includes in field 315, note: Scale given with the calculated value 14.50 cm for the latitude degree.
EX 5
Unstructured information
206 ##$aScale [ca. 1:500.000]. Vertical scale [ca. 1:100.000]
The record was created prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011).
Structured information
206 0#$bScale [ca. 1:500.000]$bVertical scale [ca. 1:100.000]
EX 6
Unstructured information
206 ##$aScale 1:25.000 ; Gauss-Kruger projection (W 8º 42' 37" W 8º 42' 34" W 8º 31' 03" W 8º 31' 01" / N 41º 55' 01" N 41º 54' 58" N 41º 49' 37" N 41º 49' 34")
Structured information
206 0#$bScale 1:25.000$cGauss-Kruger projection$dW 8º 42' 37" W 8º 42' 34" W 8º 31' 03" W 8º 31' 01" / N 41º 55' 01" N 41º 54' 58" N 41º 49' 37" N 41º 49' 34"
EX 7
Unstructured information
206 ##$aScale not given (RA 16 hr. 30 min. to 19 hr. 30 min. / Decl. -16° to -49° eq. 1950, epoch 1948).
Structured information
206 0#$bScale not given$eRA 16 hr. 30 min. to 19 hr. 30 min. / Decl. -16° to -49°$feq. 1950, epoch 1948
Example of a celestial chart.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Align with ISBD.

207 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: NUMBERING OF CONTINUING RESOURCES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the numbering and/or dates of coverage of the first and last issues of a continuing resource when the numbers and dates are known.

It corresponds to the ISBD Material or Type of Resource Specific Area - Numbering (Serials).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
207	MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: NUMBERING OF CONTINUING RESOURCES	NR	O
a	Numbering: Dates and Volume Designations	R	O
z	Source of Numbering Information	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Formatted Numbering Indicator
	0	Formatted
	1	Not formatted

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Formatted Numbering Indicator

This indicator indicates whether the volume and dates are formatted or structured.

Subfields Description

$a Numbering: Dates and Volume Designations

The numbering and/or dates of coverage as defined in the Field Definition above. Repeatable when a new sequence of numbering is started.

$z Source of Numbering Information

A note on the source of numbering information when it is not taken from the resource itself (EX 6). Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains numbering and/or dates of coverage. Dates of coverage given in this field do not necessarily coincide with the dates of publication in the record.

Recommendations for formatting data in field are contained in ISBD.

Related Fields

210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.	Subfield $d contains the date of publication of the resource which is entered in the prescribed form, whether or not it coincides with any date in field 207.
225 SERIES	When the resource is a member of a series and bears a series number within that series (e.g. v.7 of a monographic series), the number within the series should be entered in field 225.

Examples

EX 1
207 #0$aVol. l, no. l (Jan. 1940)-
A continuing resource which is still being published is numbered from volume 1, number 1 onwards. The issues are dated from January 1940.
EX 2
207 #0$aVol. 1, no. 1 (1 Apr. 1946)-vol.26, no. 195 (10 Oct.1972) = no. l-no. 6943
A daily newspaper was published from April 1, 1946 to October 10, 1972 starting with volume 1 number 1 and ending with volume 26, number 195. In addition, each issue was numbered consecutively from 1 to 6943.
EX 3
207 #0$aApr.1978-July 1983
A continuing resource is published monthly from April 1978 to July 1883 and has no volume or issue numbering
EX 4
207 #0$aVol. l, pt. l (June 1845)-vol. 72, pt. 12 (Dec.1916)$aN.s. vol. l, no. l (Jan. 1917)-
A continuing resource started with volume 1, part 1, in June 1845 and in 1917 after volume 72 part 12 when it changed its format it started renumbering from New series, volume 1, number 1. Each sequence is entered in a separate subfield.
EX 5
207 #0$a1951/1-
A continuing resource first published in 1951 is numbered 1951/1 onwards.
EX 6
207 #l$aBegan in 1963$zBUCOP
An unformatted numbering statement, with source of information.

History

2012	Corrections.

208 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: MUSIC FORMAT STATEMENT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a statement, transcribed from the resource, relating to the particular format of a printed or manuscript music resource.

The field corresponds to the ISBD Material or Type of Resource Specific Area - Music Format Statement (Notated music).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
208	MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: MUSIC FORMAT STATEMENT	NR	O
a	Music Format Statement	NR	O
d	Parallel Music Format Statement	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Music Format Statement

The statement related to the particular format of the resource, taken from the title page (EX 1, 2). Not repeatable.

$d Parallel Music Format Statement

Any additional statements in a different language and/or script, taken from the title page (EX 2). Repeatable for each additional statement.

Notes on Field Contents

Parallel Data

Parallel data appearing on the resource, i.e. data repeated in another language or script, is denoted in ISBD by the use of the equals sign followed by a space = at the start of any block of parallel data. In this field, the subfield identifier $d will generate "= " automatically (EX 2).

Related Field

125 CODED DATA: SOUND RECORDINGS AND MUSICAL SCORES

Examples

EX 1
208 ##$aMiniature score
EX 2
208 ##$aOrchester-Partitur$dFull score

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains information on the publication, distribution and manufacture of the resource including associated dates. It is also used in the case of manuscripts for place and date of writing and name of copyist or scriptorium.

It corresponds to the ISBD Publication, Distribution, etc. Area.

Repeatable for recording a sequence of publication data in addition to or instead of field 306, Notes pertaining to publication, distribution, etc.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
210	PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.	R	O
a	Place of Publication, Distribution, etc.	R	O
b	Address of Publisher, Distributor, etc	R	O
c	Name of Publisher, Distributor, etc.	R	O
d	Date of Publication, Distribution, etc.	R	O
e	Place of Manufacture	R	O
f	Address of Manufacturer	R	O
g	Name of Manufacturer	R	O
h	Date of Manufacture	R	O
r	Printing and/or Publishing Information Transcribed as Found in the Main Source of Information	NR	O
s	Printing and/or Publishing Information Transcribed as Found in the Colophon	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Sequence of Publication Data
	#	Not applicable / Earliest available publisher
	0	Intervening publisher
	1	Current or latest publisher
2		Type of Release
	#	Produced in multiple copies, usually published or publically distributed
	1	Not published or publically distributed

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Sequence of Publication Data

Specifies whether the publisher, distributor, etc, place and date of publication recorded in the field is first/earliest, intervening or current.

Value #: Not applicable / Earliest available publisher

Used when just one publication statement is intended to be recorded, or for the earliest available publisher, when the sequence of publication data is recorded.

For monographic resources that are complete as first issued, value blank is used.

For serials, value blank is used when a serial is first catalogued. Information given as value blank is not changed, unless incorrect or earlier issues of a serials are later available with differing publishing information.

Only one publishing statement may contain the first indicator with value blank in a record.

Value 0: Intervening publisher

When the publisher changes, or when the place of publication changes, additional publication statements relating to the earliest and intervening may be recorded with first indicator value 0.

Value 1: Current or latest publisher

When the publisher changes, or when the place of publication changes, the current publication statement may be added with first indicator value 1.

Data given in a subsequent publishing statement can be changed to reflect the current information when only the earliest and most current data is needed.

Indicator 2: Type of Release

Value 1: Not published or publically distributed

Indicates a non-published work, e.g. manuscript (EX 16, 17, 18, 24, 25).

Subfields Description

$a Place of Publication, Distribution, etc.

The town or other locality where the resource is published or distributed or, in the case of a manuscript, written. If the place is not well-known or is incorrectly or archaically spelled, amplification may be added in brackets according to the provisions of ISBD (EX 2, 3). Repeatable for each place named (EX 7, 12, 13) or for the place of publication in another language (EX 14).

$b Address of Publisher, Distributor, etc.

The full postal address of a publisher, scriptorium or distributor within parentheses or brackets, usually, in the case of publisher, included only when the publisher is not well-known (EX 4). Repeatable.

$c Name of Publisher, Distributor, etc.

The name of the publisher or distributor which may be in a shortened form so long as it is readily recognisable (EX 1). When a statement of function of the distributor is included, it is entered in this subfield in brackets (EX 5, 12). In the case of manuscripts, if known, the name of scriptorium or copyist is mentioned (EX 18). Repeatable (EX 8).

$d Date of Publication, Distribution, etc.

The date or approximate date of publication, the writing of a manuscript, production of an art work, etc., or a copyright date (EX 7) or date of manufacture (EX 11), or the time period that specifies the part of the bibliographic resource to which the field applies (EX 19-23). An open date (EX 6) or spanning date (EX 10) is permitted. Repeatable for a date of distribution when included in addition to a date of publication and separated from it by an intervening subfield (EX 12), otherwise not repeatable.

$e Place of Manufacture

The place of manufacture of the resource, e.g. the place of printing of a book (EX 9) or the place where a composite manuscript has been collected or bound together. If the place is not well-known or is incorrectly named, amplification may be added in brackets according to the provisions of ISBD. In the case of older monographic publications for which the publication and printing information is recorded in separate elements and not according to the order on the source of information, $e is used to record information taken from the colophon, whether it concerns publication or printing or both. Repeatable.

$f Address of Manufacturer

The full postal address of the manufacturer, usually included because the manufacturer is not well known. Repeatable.

$g Name of Manufacturer

The name of the manufacturer (e.g. printer) (EX 3, 9) or the person or institution collecting different units to produce a composite manuscript. May be in a shortened form so long as it is readily recognisable. In the case of older monographic publications for which the publication and printing information is recorded in separate elements and not according to the order on the source of information, $g is used to record information taken from the colophon, whether it concerns the publisher or the printer or both. Repeatable.

$h Date of Manufacture

The date of manufacture of the resource or assembling of a manuscript, when used to supplement the date of publication (EX 13). In the case of older monographic publications for which the publication and printing information is recorded in separate elements and not according to the order on the source of information, $h is used to record information taken from the colophon, whether it concerns the publication or the printing or both. Repeatable.

$r Printing and/or Publishing Information Transcribed as Found in the Main Source of Information

The place and/or date of publishing and/or printing, and/or the name of publisher and/printer, and other information relating to publication and/or printing, transcribed in the form and order as they appear on the title page or its substitute. Mainly used for older monographic publications (antiquarian). Not repeatable.

$s Printing and/or Publishing Information Transcribed as Found in the Colophon

Used for older monographic publications (antiquarian). The place and/or date of the printing and/or publishing, and/or the name of the printer and/or publisher of an older monographic publication, transcribed in the form and order as they appear in the colophon. Punctuation, e.g. parenthesis, can be generated for display of this subfield, if required by the cataloguing rules. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The information in field 210 is similar to the information presented in field 214 Production, Publication, Distribution, Manufacture Statements that corresponds to IFLA LRM and RDA.

Fields 210 and 214 should not be used in the same record.

Field Repeatability

The field is repeatable for resources that change over time so that both earliest, current and, if desired, intervening publishing information could be included in the record.

Repeatable 210 fields give subsequent information only on the activity of different publishers and/or places of publication for the given period of time.

In the case of a change affecting only one publisher, all names of places and publishers must be transcribed in the subsequent repeatable field 210 (EX 19).

Dates in the first field 210 give the complete publication dates for a resource: start and end years (as given in the field 100$a/9-16) regardless of the change of publishers and/or place of publication. Information related to start and end dates of the first publisher should be recorded in the first repeatable 210 with the first indicator value 0 (zero).

See EX 19-23.

Subfield Contents

It is recommended that each record should have either a field 210 or a field 214. Places, names and dates should where possible be as on the resource. Where place and name of publisher are not known, [S.l.] (sine loco) and [s.n.] (sine nomine) or their equivalents in non-roman scripts are entered in subfields $a and $c respectively (EX 9). When more than one publisher/distributor is given, each is preceded by its place in separate repeated subfields (EX 5, 8). The rules for the omission of names of places and publishers depend on the practices of the agency.

Dates

A date is always in subfield $d. If the date of publication is not known a copyright date or an approximate date may be given. Such a date may be indicated as a copyright date (EX 7) or date of manufacture. A copyright date may be entered in addition to the date of publication; both are entered in the same subfield $d. When date of manufacture is entered in addition to the date in subfield $d, it is entered in subfield $h (EX 13). Parentheses are omitted from this subfield, and are generated at output. For manuscripts, or other non-published resources, a date or range of dates (century or portion of century) is permissible.

A spanning date may be entered in any date subfield (EX 10). When an open date is entered (EX 6) it is entered without any following space. If required, such spaces are generated at output.

Parallel Data

Parallel data may be entered in this field, in which case it is entered in a repeated subfield and preceded by an equals sign and space "= " (EX 14).

ISBD Information

ISBD recommend that any full address in $b or $f be entered in brackets if it is supplied by the cataloguer or in parentheses if it is taken from the resource. Since this is not prescribed punctuation, it should be carried if required for a record even when it occurs at a subfield boundary (EX 4). When a distributor is named, a term such as Distributor or its equivalent may be entered in brackets (EX 5, 12). Although these brackets are prescribed punctuation in the ISBD, they are not dropped at subfield boundaries in the UNIMARC record.

For further information on the data content of this field refer to the ISBD. The correspondence between this field and ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011) specification is illustrated below.

UNIMARC Subfield	Element name	ISBD (2011) section	Preceding punctuation
$a	Place of publication, production and/or distribution	4.1	New area
$a	Subsequent place of publication, production and/or distribution	4.1	;
$b	Address of publisher, distributor, etc.	4.2	
$c	Name of publisher, producer and/or distributor	4.2	:
$d	Date of publication, production and/or distribution	4.3	,
$e	Place of printing, manufacture or engraving	4.4	(if present
$e	Subsequent place of printing, manufacture or engraving		;
$f	Address of printer, manufacturer or engraver		
$g	Name of printer, manufacturer or engraver	4.5	:
$h	Date of printing, manufacture or engraving	4.6	,

The entire statement of manufacture is enclosed within parentheses.

Related Fields

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Dates (character positions 9-16)	Dates of publication are entered in field 100 as well as in 210 $d. Both should be entered: in field 100 the real date is entered and in field 210 subfield $d the date present on the resource.
102 COUNTRY OF PUBLICATION OR PRODUCTION	This field contains a code for the country or countries of publication or production and a code for the locality. It is recommended that field 102 be used in addition to field 210.
205 EDITION STATEMENT	A date of printing for a reprint etc. may be included in an edition or issue statement.

214 PRODUCTION, PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, MANUFACTURE STATEMENTS	Field is used for case where content standard makes a distinction between functions. Field 214 is an alternative to field 210.
306 NOTES PERTAINING TO PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.	This field contains a note about publication, distribution, etc. For information on changes of publication distribution, etc., it is optional to use repeatable field 210 as well as field 306.
345 ACQUISITION INFORMATION NOTE	This field contains the full mailing address of a publisher, distributor etc.
620 PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, ETC.	If it is desired to provide an access point for the place of publication, production etc., the place and date of performance, etc., are entered in this field.
7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK	If it is desired to provide an access point for a publisher or manufacturer, the name of the person or body is entered in a 7-- field.

Examples

EX 1
210 ##$a[Cambridge, Mass.]$cHarvard Univ. P.$d1981
The place of publication is not in the chief source of information. The agency abbreviates common words in the publisher's name.
EX 2
210 ##$aBrampton [Cumbria]$cL.Y.T.C.$d[1978 or 1979]
The place in the imprint is not well-known and a county is added. The date is not certain.
EX 3
210 ##$aNottigham [i.e. Nottingham]$c[s.n.]$d1966$gSherwood Printers
The place name is incorrectly or archaically spelled and no publisher is named.
EX 4
210 ##$aLondon$b(52, St. George's Avenue, N7)$cSt George's Church$d[1975]
The address of the publisher has been included by the agency preparing the record. The date is taken from elsewhere than the chief source of information and is enclosed in brackets.
EX 5
210 ##$aColorado Springs$cMyles$aLondon$cHouseman [distributor]$d1980
The statement of the function of the distributor is added.
EX 6
210 ##$aLondon$cMacmillan for the Linnean Society$d1964-@
The date is an open date. In this example the end of field marker "@" is included for clarity.
EX 7
210 ##$aLondon$aBoston$cButterworth$dcop. 1982
A repeated place of publication is needed for one publisher. The date is a copyright date and indicated as such.
EX 8
210 ##$aIpswich$cBoydell P.$aBungay$cWaveney Publications$d1976
The resource has more than one publisher.
EX 9
210 ##$a[S.l.$cs.n.]$d1974$eManchester$gUnity Press

The resource has only the name of the printer. S.l.and s.n. are supplied.
EX 10
210 ##$aLondon, [etc.]$cO.U.P.$d1978-1981
The agency preparing the record enters only the first place of publication. The resource was published in separate volumes over a period of time.
EX 11
210 ##$aBombay$c[s.n.]$d1980 printing
The date of printing is given in lieu of a date of publication and indicated as such.
EX 12
210 ##$aLondon$cEducational Record$d1973$aNew York$cEdcorp [distributor] $d1975
EX 13
210 ##$aGeneva$cWHO$aLondon$cdistributed by H.M.S.O.$d1970$h1973 printing
EX 14
210 ##$aBern$cBundeskanzlei$a= Berne$cChancellerie fédérale$d1974
Both name and place of publisher are in more than one language.
EX 15
210 ##$aA Paris$cChez l'auteur$dAvec Privilège du Roy, 1700
The resource has a privilege date.
EX 16
210 #1$aVenezia$cAntonio Vivaldi$d1716
A manuscript in Vivaldi's hand, written in Venice in 1716.
EX 17
210 #1$aNapoli$cLuigi Marescalchi$d[2nd half of 18th cent.]
The Raccolta di Duettini / Per due Voci di Soprano / Col Basso / Del Sig.r Giuseppe Aprile / In Napoli presso Luigi Marescalchi, manuscript Milan conservatory Mus.tr.ms 1456, of the second half of the 18th century.
EX 18
210 #1$aAlcobaça$cMosteiro de Santa Maria$d1495
A manuscript produced in the scriptorium of the Mosteiro de Santa Maria
EX 19
210 ##$aOxford$cUniversity Press$aAmsterdam$cElsevier$d1970-
210 0#$aOxford$cUniversity Press$aAmsterdam$cElsevier$d1970-1975
210 0#$aLondon$cPergamon$aAmsterdam$cElsevier$d1975-1979
210 0#$aOxford$cPergamon$aAmsterdam$cElsevier$d1980-1990
210 1#$aAmsterdam$cElsevier$d1990-
Repeated publication information on the changes of place of publication, name of publisher and corresponding dates of publication for a continuing resource.
EX 20
210 ##$aKoprivnica$cMuzej grada Koprivnice$d1978-
210 0#$aKoprivnica$cMuzej grada Koprivnice$d1978-1980
210 0#$aKutina$cMuzej Moslavine$d1991-1992
210 1#$aVaraždin$cMuzejsko društvo sjeverozapadne Hrvatske$d1993-

Periodical Muzejski vjesnik is currently being published (from 1993) by Muzejsko društvo sjeverozapadne Hrvatske in Varaždin. The first publisher was Muzej grada Koprivnice in Koprivnica from 1978-1980, while the intervening publisher (in this case the one immediately before the current one is only recorded) was Muzej Moslavine in Kutina from 1991 to 1992.
EX 21
210 ##$aZagreb$cDruštvo ljevača NR Hrvatske$d1954-1986
210 0#$aZagreb$cDruštvo ljevača NR Hrvatske$d1954-1962
210 0#$aZagreb$cDruštvo ljevača SR Hrvatske$d 1963-1977
210 1#$aRijeka$cSavez ljevača SR$d1978-1986
Periodical Ljevarstvo is no longer being published. The first publisher was Društvo ljevača NR Hrvatske in Zagreb from 1954-1962, while the current publisher at the time it ceased to be published was Savez ljevača SR from Rijeka in the period 1978-1986. The intervening publisher (only one) was Društvo ljevača SR Hrvatske in Zagreb from 1963 to 1977.
EX 22
210 ##$aParis$cElsevier$d1989-
210 0#$aParis$cElsevier$d1989-1999
210 1#$aLes Ulis$cEDP Sciences$d2000-
EX 23
210 ##$aParis$cCNRS, Centre de documentation sciences humaines$d1977-
210 0#$aParis$cCNRS, Centre de documentation sciences humaines$d1977-1981
210 0#$aParis$cSociété française d'histoire des sciences et techniques$d1982-1997
210 1#$aFontenay-aux-Roses$cENS éd.$d1998-
EX 24
210 #1$aLisbon$d1980
An original drawing, or a photography, produced in Lisbon in 1980.
EX 25
210 #1$d1 de Junho de 1803
A dated manuscript with day, month and year of writing
EX 26
210 ##$rA Lauzanne, & se trouve, a Paris, chez Chaubert, quai des Augustins, à la Renommée. Et Claude Herissant, imprimeur, rue Notre-Dame, à la Croix d'or. M. DCC. LIX
The place and date of publication and name of the publisher are recorded in the form and order they appear on the title page of the resource (subfield $r), for identification purposes.
EX 27
210 ##$rAn. M. D. LXI Excudebat Henricus Stephanus, illustris viri Huldrici Fuggeri typographus.
The place and date of publication and name of the publisher are recorded in the form and order they appear on the title page of the resource (subfield $r), for identification purposes.
EX 28
210 ##$rParisiis ex officina Simonis Colinaei. 1520
The place and date of publication and name of the publisher are recorded in the form and order they appear on the title page of the resource (subfield $r), for identification purposes. These elements are also recorded in a standardized form in a field 212.
EX 29
210 ##$rHoc opus secu[n]da editio[n]e coimpressum est et emendatius castigatum apud Eustatium Marescal in vico Portarietis.$sImpressa Tholos[a]e per Eustatium Mareschali : sumptibus vero

Guillermi de Clauso : Anthonii Leymon : et Laurentii Cariere. Anno D[omi]ni .M.CCCCC.XXII. Die vero. XIII. decembris
The place and date of publication and name of the publisher and printer are recorded in the form and order they appear on the title page (subfield $r) and on the colophon (subfield $s) of the resource, for identification purposes.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Indicator 2 to indicate type of release.
2012	Data as on item.
2019	Additions in the Notes on Field Contents (harmonization with field 210); addition in the Related fields (field 214).
2021	Text edit and correction: sec. Indicators, Field Repeatability

211 PROJECTED PUBLICATION DATE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the projected date of publication of the resource.

The field is used for CIP (Cataloguing In Publication) entries and similar advance records created from information provided by the publisher.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
211	PROJECTED PUBLICATION DATE	NR	O
a	Date	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Date

The data should be recorded according to ISO 8601-1 in all-numeric form without separators between year, month, and day, i.e. YYYYMMDD. Where day or month and day are unknown, those positions contain blanks. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This is a temporary field, to be deleted when the record is updated.

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, Record Status (character position 5)
210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC., subfield $d

Examples

In the following examples, the Record Label shows only the relevant character position 5, (Record Status).
EX 1
RECORD LABEL -----n----------
210 ##$aLondon$cFaber$d1999 211 ##$a199911##
A new CIP record for a resource scheduled to be published in November 1999.
RECORD LABEL -----p----------
210 ##$aLondon$cFaber$d1999
The 211 field is deleted when the updated record for the resource is issued after publication.
EX 2
RECORD LABEL -----n----------
210 ##$aNew York$cMacmillan$d1999
211 ##$a199912##
A new record for a resource scheduled to be published in December 1999.

RECORD LABEL -----p----------
210 ##$aNew York$cMacmillan$d2000
The updated record for the same resource. Publication was delayed.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions: Prior to Update 3 the recommended form was YYMMDD

214 PRODUCTION, PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, MANUFACTURE STATEMENTS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains statements relating to the publication, production, distribution or manufacture of a manifestation, when the rules applied by the cataloguing agency specify that a distinction must be made between these statements, e.g. rules based on the RDA code.

Repeatable for recording a sequence of publication data in addition to or instead of field 306, Notes pertaining to publication, distribution, etc., and/or for cases where a distinction is made between functions.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
214	PRODUCTION, PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, MANUFACTURE STATEMENTS	R	O
a	Place of Publication, Production, Distribution or Manufacture	R	O
b	Address of Publisher, Producer, Distributor or Manufacturer	R	O
c	Name of Publisher, Producer, Distributor or Manufacturer	R	O
d	Date of Publication, Production, Distribution or Manufacture	NR	O
r	Printing and/or Publishing Information Transcribed as Found in the Main Source of Information	NR	O
s	Printing and/or Publishing Information Transcribed as Found in the Colophon	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Sequence of Publication Data
	#	Not applicable/No information provided/Earliest available
	0	Intervening
	1	Current or latest
2		Type of Statement
	#	blank (not defined)
	0	Publication
	1	Production
	2	Distribution
	3	Manufacture
	4	Copyright or a protection date

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Sequence of Publication Data

Specifies whether the publisher, distributor, etc. or place and date of publication, distribution, etc., recorded in the field is first/earliest, intervening or current.

Value #: Not applicable/No information provided/Earliest available

Value # is used for monographic resources that are complete as first issued and for continuing resources when a continuing resource is first catalogued. Information given as value # is not changed unless incorrect or earlier issues of a continuing resource are later available with differing publishing information.

Value 0: Intervening

Value 0 is used when the place of publication, production, distribution, manufacture (hereinafter: publication, etc.) or name of the publisher, producer, distributor or manufacturer (hereinafter: publisher, etc.) changes. Additional statements between the earliest and latest may also be recorded with a first indicator value 0.

Value 1: Current or latest

Value 1 is used when the place of publication, etc. or the name of publisher, etc. changes and the current statement is recorded.

Indicator 2: Type of Statement

Specifies whether this field 214 carries a statement pertaining to publication, production, distribution or manufacture statements, or whether it carries copyright or a protection date.

Subfields Description

$a Place of Publication, Production, Distribution or Manufacture

The town or other locality where the manifestation is published, distributed, produced or manufactured (EX 1-9). Repeatable.

$b Address of Publisher, Producer, Distributor or Manufacturer

The full postal address of publisher, etc. (EX 2). Repeatable.

$c Name of Publisher, Producer, Distributor or Manufacturer

The name of the publisher, etc. (EX 1-9). Repeatable.

$d Date of Publication, Production, Distribution, Manufacture or Copyright Notice

The date or approximate date of publication, etc. or the time period that specifies the part of the bibliographic resource to which the field applies (EX 1-9). An open date or spanning date is permitted. Subfield $d is also used to record a date of distribution (EX 4, 8), manufacture (EX 2, 3), a copyright date or a date of protection.

The copyright or protection date can be given in lieu of, or in addition to a publication date for the manifestation (EX 4, 6, 8). To be used in a separate field 214 with value "4" in indicator 2. Not repeatable.

$r Printing and/or Publishing Information Transcribed as Found in the Main Source of Information

The place and/or date of publishing and/or printing, and/or the name of the publisher and/or printer, and other information relating to publication and/or printing, transcribed in the form and order as they appear on the title page or its substitute. Mainly used for older monographic resources (antiquarian). Not repeatable.

$s Printing and/or Publishing Information Transcribed as Found in the Colophon

Used for older monographic resources (antiquarian). The place and/or date of the printing and/or publishing, and/or the name of the printer and/or publisher of an older monographic publication, transcribed in the form and order as they appear in the colophon. Punctuation, e.g. parenthesis, can be generated for the display of this subfield if required by the cataloguing rules. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Information in field 214 is similar to information in field 210 Publication, Distribution, etc. Field 214 is useful for cases where the content standard or institutional policies make a distinction between functions.

Fields 210 and 214 should not be used in the same record.

For older monographic resources, subfields $r and $s are used to transcribe the publication and printing information as found on the resource, respectively on the title page or another main source of information and colophon. In this case, indicator 2 has value # - Not applicable.

Field Repeatability

The field is repeatable:

1) For resources that change over time so that both earliest, current and, if desired, intervening publishing information could be included in the record. Resources that change over time include multipart monographs, continuing resources and integrating resources.

   Repeated fields 214 give information on successive places of publication, etc. or the names of publisher, etc. for the given period of time specified in subfield $d.

   All the names of places and publishers that appear on the first issue of a resource must be transcribed in the first field 214. In the case of a change affecting only one publisher, all names of places and publishers must be transcribed in the subsequent repeatable field 214.

   Dates in the first field 214 give the complete publication dates for a resource: start and end years (as given in the field 100$a/9-16) regardless of the change of publishers and/or place of publication. Information related to start and end dates of the first publisher should be recorded in the first repeatable field 214 with the first indicator value 0 (zero). See EX 19-23 under field 210.

2) When the content standard or institutional policies make a distinction between functions, each statement is recorded in a separate field. Indicator 2 specifies the type of statement that is carried in the field.

Subfield Contents

It is recommended that each record should have either a field 214 or a field 210. Transcribe places, names and dates as requested by the content standard. When the place and name of the publisher, etc. are not known, do as requested by the content standard. When more than one publisher/producer/distributor/ manufacturer is given, each is preceded by the associated place in separate repeated subfields. The rules for the omission of names of places and publisher, etc. depend on the practices of the agency.

Parallel Data

Parallel data may be entered in this field, in which case they are entered in a repeated subfield and preceded by an equals sign and space "= " (EX 9).

Related Fields

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Datesc(character positions 9-16)	Dates of publication are entered in field 100 as well as in 214 $d. Both should be entered: in field 100 the real date is entered and in field 214 subfield $d the date present on the resource.
102 COUNTRY OF PUBLICATION OR PRODUCTION	This field contains a code for the country or countries of publication or production and a code for the locality. It is recommended that field 102 be used in addition to field 214.
205 EDITION STATEMENT	Date of printing for a reprint etc. may be included in an edition or issue statement.
210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.	This field contains information on the publication, production, distribution and manufacture of the resource including associated dates. Field 210 is an alternative to field 214.
306 NOTES PERTAINING TO PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.	This field contains a note about publication, distribution, etc. For information on changes of

	publication distribution, etc., it is optional to use repeatable field 214 as well as field 306.
345 ACQUISITION INFORMATION NOTE	This field may contain the full mailing address of a publisher, distributor etc.
620 PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, ETC.	This field may contain an access point for the place of publication, production etc., the place and date of performance etc.
7-2 SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	This field may contain an access point for a publisher, distributer or manufacturer.

Examples

EX 1
214 #0$aParis$cZulma$dDL 2015
A publication statement (indicator 2 set to 0). Date of legal deposit used as the publication date.
EX 2
214 #0$aParis$b4 rue Trousseau, 75011$cÉditions théâtrales$d1990
214 #3$aCondé-sur-Noireau (Calvados)$cCorlet
A publication statement (indicator 2 set to 0) and manufacture statement (indicator 2 set to 3).
EX 3
214 #0$aParis$cL'esprit des péninsules
214 #3$d2005
A publication statement (indicator 2 set to 0) with no publication date. The only available date is that of manufacture, which is recorded in manufacture statement (a separate field 214 with indicator 2 set to 3).
EX 4
214 #0$a[Paris]$cChambre syndicale de l'édition musicale
214 #2$cP. Beuscher$cFortin
214 #4$d2012
A publication statement (indicator 2 set to 0) and a distribution statement (indicator 2 set to 2) with not publication nor distribution date. The only available date is the copyright date, which is recorded in a separate field 214 with indicator 2 set to 4.
EX 5
214 #1$aBesançon$cSociété nationale des chemins de fer français, Mission TGV Rhin-Rhône$d1994
A production statement (indicator 2 set to 1).
EX 6
214 #0$a[Roma]$cIstituto nazionale di studi romani$cFratelli Palombi editori
214 #4$d1994
A publication statement (indicator 2 set to 0). No publication date found in the resource. A copyright date ($d) is used, recorded in a separate field 214 with indicator 2 set to 4.
EX 7
214 #0$a[Lisboa]$cEdições Valentim De Carvalho
214 #4$dP 2016
A publication statement (indicator 2 set to 0) with no publication date. The resource is an audio CD. The protection date is recorded in a copyright statement (subfield $d in a separate field 214 with indicator 2 set to 4). According to the practices of the agency, the protection date is preceded by a "P" in order to differentiate it from the copyright date.
EX 8
214 #0$a[Place of publication not identified]$c[publisher not identified]

214 #2$a[United Kingdom]$cGuild Sound and Vision [distributor]
214 #4$d2017
No publication statement found on the resource (one field 214 with indicator 2 set to 0 carryings "[Place of publication not identified] : [publisher not identified]"). The resource bears a distribution statement (a separate field 214 with indicator 2 set to 2) and copyright date (a third field 214 with indicator 2 set to 4).
EX 9
214 #0$aBruxelles$a= Brussel$cBibliothèque royale de Belgique$c= Koninklijke Bibliotheek van België$d2016
A publication statement (indicator 2 set to 0) with parallel data.
EX 10
214 ##$rParisiis, apud Méquignon juniorem, bibliopolam Facultatis theologiae, via Majorum Augustinianorum, n°9. Lugduni, apud Périsse fratres, bibliopolas, via Mercière, n°33. 1824 $sEx typis Lebel, typographi regis
A recording of publication information transcribed as found on the title page and on the colophon.

History

2019	New field.

215 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains information on the physical characteristics of the resource.

This field corresponds to the ISBD Material Description Area. Subfields $b and $f can only be used by other cataloguing standards.

Repeatable when a separate physical description is needed to each component of a multimedia kit (EX 15).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
215	PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION	R	O
a	Specific Material Designation and Extent	R	O
b	Materials and Technique Display	NR	O
c	Other Physical Details	NR	O
d	Dimensions	R	O
e	Accompanying Material	R	O
f	Weight	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Specific Material Designation and Extent

The name of the specific type of material to which the resource belongs (EX 3, 6, 7-14) and/or an indication of the number of pieces or constituent parts (EX 1, 2, 5). Repeatable (EX 8).

$b Materials and Technique Display

Free-text note about the substances or materials used in the creation of the resource, as well as description of the technique, media, and support used in the creation of the resource. It clarifies the relationship between the materials of which the resource is made and the techniques used to apply them. Not repeatable. (EX 17-19)

$c Other Physical Details

Physical data about the resource other than that contained elsewhere in this field or in the notes fields, e.g. details of illustrative matter, whether the resource has colour or sound, etc. (EX 9-10). Not repeatable.

$d Dimensions

The measurements relevant of the resource being described. Repeatable (EX 8).

$e Accompanying Material

A brief description of any material accompanying the resource being described, which is intended to be used with the resource (EX 4, 8). Repeatable.

$f Weight

The weight of the resource. It is usually expressed in grams.

If an object is fragmented or consists of several separate parts, the weight of each part is entered in the same subfield $f, separated by commas. Not repeatable. (EX 20, 21).

Notes on Field Contents

The treatment of accompanying material will vary according to the cataloguer's view of its importance. Compare EX 4, 8, 15.

Punctuation at subfield boundaries should not be entered in the field; however, within a subfield, any separating punctuation is entered (see especially EX 4). For further information on the data content of this field, refer to the relevant ISBD. The correspondence between this field and ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011) specifications is illustrated below.

UNIMARC subfield	Element Name	ISBD (2011) section	Preceding punctuation
$a	Specific material designation and extent of resource	5.1	New area
$c	Other physical details	5.2	:
$d	Dimensions	5.3	;
$e	Accompanying material	5.4	+

Related Fields

105 CODED DATA FIELD: TEXTUAL LANGUAGE MATERIAL, MONOGRAPHIC, Illustration Codes (character positions 0-3)	These character positions contain illustration codes that correspond to the illustration data in 215 $c.
115 CODED DATA FIELD: VISUAL PROJECTIONS, VIDEO RECORDINGS AND MOTION PICTURES	This field contains coded data on materials and technique relating to visual projections, video recordings and motion pictures.
116 CODED DATA FIELD: GRAPHICS	This field contains coded data on materials and technique relating to non-projected graphics.
117 CODED DATA FIELD: THREE-DIMENSIONAL ARTEFACTS AND REALIA	This field contains coded data on materials relating to three-dimensional artefacts and realia.
123 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – SCALE AND CO-ORDINATES	
126 CODED DATA FIELD: SOUND RECORDINGS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES	
130 CODED DATA FIELD: MICROFORMS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES	
140 CODED DATA FIELD: ANTIQUARIAN – GENERAL	This field contains coded data on materials relating to the physical form of older monographic publications (antiquarian) and also later materials described in similar bibliographic detail.
307 NOTES PERTAINING TO PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION	Any detail concerning physical description which cannot be entered in field 215 may be entered as a note in field 307.

Examples

EX 1
215 ##$a264 p., 24 leaves of plates$cill., 17 facs.$d21 cm$el map
EX 2
215 ##$ax, 32, 73 p., [1] leaf of plates$cmaps$d21 cm
EX 3
215 ##$al folder (6 p.)$cmaps, plans, charts, portraits$d21 x 30 cm
EX 4

215 ##$a3 vol. (49, 37, 18 p.)$cill., col.maps$d22 cm$esound disk (16 min): 33 1/3 rpm., mono., 17.5 cm
EX 5
215 ##$a35 S.$c16 graph. Darst.$d24 cm
EX 6
215 ##$al map$cboth sides, col.$d41 x 84 cm, folded to 22 x 10 cm
EX 7
215 ##$a1 globe$ccol., mounted on metal stand$d31 cm in diam.
EX 8
215 ##$a1 score(vi, 63p.)$d20cm.$al6 parts$d32 cm.$el booklet
The main components are a score and 16 parts. The heights of these resources differ. There is an accompanying booklet.
EX 9
215 ##$a1 film reel (20 min., 570 m)$cnitrate, b&w, si.$dl6 mm
The resource is a silent black and white 16mm. 20 minute film reel on a nitrate base. It is 570 metres long. The catalogue entry would appear as follows: 1 film reel (20 min., 570 m) : nitrate, b&w, si. ; 16 mm
EX 10
215 ##$a1 videocassette (U-matic) (30 min.)$ccol., sd.
The resource is a colour videocassette in U-matic format, with sound, lasting 30 minutes.
EX 11
215 ##$a1 sound reel (100 min.)$c19 cm/s., 4 track, adjacent
The resource is a four-track sound reel with a playing time of 100 minutes at a speed of 19 cm./second. The track configuration is given.
EX 12
215 ##$a1 sound reel (50 min.)$c38 cm/s., 2 track, stereo, Dolby processed
The resource is a two-track stereo sound reel with a playing time of 50 minutes at a speed of 38 cm./second. A Dolby noise reduction system has been used.
EX 13
215 ##$a1 sound disc$c33 1/3 rpm, coarse
The resource is a sound disc with a playing speed of 33 1/3 rpm. The groove width is coarse.
EX 14
215 ##$a1 sound disc$c78 rpm, vertical
The resource is a sound disc with a playing speed of 78 rpm. The groove direction is vertical.
EX 15
215 ##$a3 filmstrips (96 fr.)$ccol.$d35 mm
215 ##$a1 map$ccol.$d25×25 cm folding to 10×18 cm
215 ##$a13 rocks and minerals$din container, 14×9×2 cm
215 ##$a1 wallchart$ccol.$d48×90 folding to 24×15 cm
EX 16
215 ##$a340 p., 4 leaves of plates$cill.$d4to (19 cm.)
The resource is a book from the hand-press era.

EX 17
215 ##$bWatercolor and graphite, with gouache on cream wove paper; verso: graphite$dWings open: height: 19 in. (484 mm.), width: 26 in. (660 mm.), Left wing: height: 19 in. (484 mm.), width: 6 3/8 in. (161 mm.), depth: 1 1/8 in. (28 mm.), Center: height: 18 7/8 in. (480 mm.), width: 12 1/2 in. (318 mm.), depth: 1 3/4 in. (45 mm.), Right wing: height: 19 in. (484 mm.), width: 6 1/4 in. (158 mm.), depth: 1 1/8 in. (28 mm.), Medallions: diameter: 4 1/4 in. (108 mm.), with beading
EX 18
215 ##$bEtching on paper$d194 x 128 mm
EX 19
215 ##$a 2 salt cellars$bLead-glazed white clay decorated with colors and inlaid dark clay$cclay$dAZ037.1: height: 5 3/4 inches (145 mm.), width: 3 3/8 inches (85 mm.); AZ037.2: height: 5 1/2 inches (140 mm.), width: 3 3/4 inches (95 mm.) “Salamander”: height: 5 1/2 inches (140 mm.); “Three Crescents”: height: 5 inches (127 mm.)
A set of two salt-cellars. Dimensions are given for each item of the set as well as for decorative elements (“Salamanders” and “Three Crescents”).
EX 20
215 ##$a1 coin$bSilver$d 19 mm$f2,44 g
A Roman silver denarius with a diameter of 19mm, weighing 2,44 grams.
EX 21
215 ##$aAes rude, 4 pieces$bBronze$f42,63 g, 28,57 g, 19,32 g, 13,95 g
4 pieces of aes rude (unmarked bronze nuggets used as money in Ancient Roma and Italy), with their respective weights.

History

1998	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2016	Corrections and additions.
2023	Text edit. New subfield: $f Weight and examples (20, 21).
2024	Text edit.

225 SERIES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the title of the series or multipart monographic resource, along with any other title information and statements of responsibility relating to the title including any of the preceding repeated in other languages, in the form and sequence in which they appear on the resource being catalogued.

The field corresponds to the ISBD Series and Multipart Monographic Resource Area.

Repeatable when the resource is in more than one series.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
225	SERIES	R	O
a	Title	NR	O
d	Parallel Title	R	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
f	Statement of Responsibility	R	O
g	Subsequent Statement of Responsibility	R	O
h	Number of a Part	R	O
i	Name of a Part	R	O
v	Volume Designation	R	O
x	ISSN of Series	R	O
y	Standard Number of Multipart Monographic Resource	R	O
z	Language of Parallel Title	R	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Form of Series Title Indicator
	#	Not applicable
	0	Not the same as the established form
	1	No established form
	2	Same as the established form
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Form of Series Title Indicator

The access point form of the series should be recorded in a linking entry 410 field. This indicator specifies whether the series statement is the same as the access point form as recorded in field 410.

Value #: Not applicable

Used for multipart monographic resources. (EX 8, 9)

Value 0: Not the same as the established form

The agency preparing the record considers the access point form in 410 differs from the series statement in 225 (EX 1, 6).

Value 1: No established form

No access point form has been established: therefore there is no corresponding title in 410 (EX 2).

Value 2: Same as the established form

The agency preparing the record considers the data in field 225 to be equivalent to the established form.

In all cases it is recommended that any established form of series title be entered in field 410.

Subfields Description

$a Title

The title of the series or multipart monographic resource in the form in which it appears on the resource being recorded. Not repeatable.

$d Parallel Title

The title of the series or multipart monographic resource in another language and/or script relating to the title appearing in subfield $a. Repeatable for each additional parallel series title (EX 3, 7).

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear on the resource subordinate to the title in $a or $d or to the name of a part in $i (EX 4, 9). Repeatable for each segment of other title information and for parallel other title information.

$f Statement of Responsibility

The statement of responsibility for a title appearing in $a or $d (EX 1) or for a numbered or named part appearing in $h or $i (EX 5). Subfield $f may contain the whole text of the statement of responsibility or only the first statement of responsibility. In the latter case, the subsequent statement is entered in $g (EX 8, 9). Repeatable for additional statements of responsibility and for parallel statements of responsibility.

$g Subsequent Statement of Responsibility

The statement of responsibility after the first statement of responsibility relating to the same title (EX 8, 9). Repeatable for additional subsequent statements of responsibility and parallel statements of responsibility.

$h Number of a Part

The section or part number of the series or multipart monographic resource in $a. Repeatable for each subsection or lower level division or for a parallel part number (EX 3).

$i Name of a Part

The section or part name of the subseries when the series entered in $a is divided into subseries. Repeatable for each lower level of subseries or for a parallel subseries name (EX 3, 5).

$v Volume Designation

The number of the resource being recorded within the series or multipart monographic resource entered in field 225, and any term used in the resource to designate it, which may be in abbreviated form (EX 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9. Repeatable (EX 3).

$x ISSN of Series

The ISSN of the series, entered as an 8-digit number with a hyphen between the 4th and 5th digits. The term ISSN is omitted and should be generated on output (EX 1). Repeatable when the series and subseries each has an ISSN.

$y Standard Number of Multipart Monographic Resource

The ISBN, ISMN, or other international standard number relating to a multipart monographic resource.

The standard number should be recorded with its customary label and hyphens between the groups of numbers. (EX 8, 9) Repeatable when more than one valid international standard number is to be recorded.

$z Language of Parallel Title

Coded identification of the language of a parallel title that appears in a $d subfield (EX 3, 7). If $d is repeated, this subfield is repeated, the languages identified reflecting the order of the parallel titles. This subfield and any repetitions of it always come at the end of the field, followed by $2, if $2 is present. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2 (EX 7). For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

ISBD Information

The data in the field should be entered in the form and sequence as on the piece as specified in ISBD for the Series and Multipart Monographic Resource Area. Subfield $z is not an ISBD data element.

The correspondence between this field and ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011) specifications is illustrated below. The text within the ISBD series area is enclosed within parentheses "( )" which are not carried in the UNIMARC record.

UNIMARC subfield	Element name	ISBD (2011) section	Preceding punctuation
$a	Series title	6.1	New area
$d	Parallel series title	6.2	=
$e	Other title information	6.3	:
$f	Statement of responsibility	6.4	/
$g	Subsequent statement of responsibility	6.4	;
$h	Number of a part	6.1	.
$i	Name of a part	6.1	, if after $h, else .
$v	Volume designation	6.6	;
$x	ISSN of series	6.5	,
$y	Standard number of multipart monographic resource	6.5	,

Parallel Data

Parallel data appearing on the resource, i.e. data repeated in another language or script, is denoted in ISBD by the use of equals sign followed by a space "= " at the start of any block of parallel data. In this field, the subfield identifier $d will generate "= " automatically (EX 3). If "= " is required by ISBD rules at the start of any other subfield, it must be entered explicitly. The equals sign and space then replaces any other punctuation that would normally be generated at the subfield boundary.(EX 6).

Subfield Content

This field is used only for the series or multipart monographic resource belonging to the resource whose title is entered in field 200. If the record is for the resource which is a continuing resource, series or multipart monographic resource, field 225 is used only if that continuing resource, series or multipart monographic resource itself belongs to a series. The title of the continuing resource, series or multipart monographic resource being catalogued is entered in field 200 (see field 200, EX 3).

When the source record does not contain the series title in the form as on the piece, no attempt should be made to create it from an established form of the series title. The established form may be entered in field 410 and a note on the series title may be created from it.

When the record of a series has what may be either a subtitle or a subseries title but it is not possible to determine which of the two it is, prefer to code it as subfield $e. Number and name of part are one data element in ISBD and some source formats may not be able to distinguish. In these cases when converting to UNIMARC prefer $i to $h.

If $g is not used, and $f contains both first and subsequent statement of responsibility, ISBD punctuation should be used, i.e. subsequent statement should be preceded by a space, semicolon, space.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)	The ISBN of multipart monographic resource title entered in field 200 is entered in field 010. 225 $y relates only to the ISBN of a resource title in 225 $a or $i.
011 ISSN	The ISSN of a series title entered in field 200 is entered in field 011. 225 $x relates only to the ISSN of a continuing resource title in 225 $a or $i.
013 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSIC NUMBER (ISMN)	The ISMN of multipart notated music resource title entered in field 200 is entered in field 013. 225 $y relates only to the ISMN of a resource title in 225 $a or $i.
410 SERIES	The established form of a series title may be entered in a 200 field embedded in field 410.
411 SUBSERIES	The established form a subseries title may be entered in a 200 field embedded in field 411.
461 SET LEVEL	Field 461 is used when an agency which uses a record structure that emphasises linking separate records for the data from various levels requires a reference to a record describing a continuing resource or multipart monographic resource.
530 KEY TITLE	If the series has a key title, it should not be entered in field 530 as that contains the key title of the work whose title is in 200$a. If the series has a key title, it may be noted in field 308.
7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK	If access is required to the name of any persons or bodies entered in subfield $f, the access form of the name should be entered in a 7-- field or in a 7-- field embedded in a field 410 or 411.

Examples

EX 1
225 0#$aOccasional paper$fBritish Museum$x0412-4815$vno. 33
410 #0$171002$aBritish Museum$12000#$aOccasional papers
EX 2
225 2#$aInternational series in the science of the solid state$vvol. 10
225 1#$aPergamon international library
X-ray diffraction topology is in two series. The second is not used as an access point, so there is no established form equivalent to it (first indicator set to 1).
EX 3
225 2#$aEuropäische Hochschulschriften$hReihe I$iDeutsche Literatur und Germanistik$vBd. 298$dPublications universitaires européennes$hSérie I$iLangue et littérature allemandes$vvol. 298$dEuropean university papers$hSeries I$iGerman language and literature$vvol. 298$zfre$zeng
The resource is vol. 298 of a subseries with parallel information in three languages. The title is the same as the established form. Language codes are derived from ISO 639-2, so subfield $2 is not used.
The ISBD display: (Europäische Hochschulschriften. Reihe I, Deutsche Literatur und Germanistik ; Bd. 298 = Publications universitaires européennes. Série I, Langue et littérature allemandes ; vol. 298 = European university papers. Series I, German language and literature ; vol. 298)
EX 4
225 2#$aExperimental biology and medicine$emonographs on interdisciplinary topics $vvol. 6
EX 5

225 2#$aAbhandlungen der Mathematisch-Naturwissenschaftliche Klasse$fAkademie der Wissenschaften und der Literatur$vJahrg. 1976, Nr. 3
EX 6
225 0#$aWorld films$iFrance today$i= La France aujourd'hui
EX 7
101 1#$afiu$cfin
101 17$avep$cfin$2iso639-3
200 1#$aKalevala$eLapsile i noristole$f[E. Lonnrot и др.$gVepsaks om kandnu N. Zaiceva]
225 0#$aJuminkeon julkaisuja$dJuminkegon paindused$v27$zvep$2iso639-3
The Karelian-Finnish epos "Kalevala" in the Veps language for children. Parallel title of series in 225$d is in Veps language. Code of Veps is derived from ISO 639-3, thereof the source of code is indicated in subfield $2.
EX 8
010 ##$a978-1-107-01308-7
010 ##$a107-01308-9
200 1#$aLate Ming and Qing dynasties (1525 - 1911)$fvol. ed.: Lou Yulie
225 ##$aThe history of Chinese civilization$fgen. ed. Yuan Xingpei [et al.]$gEnglish text ed. by David R. Knechtges$yISBN 978-1-107-01309-4$y1-107-01309-7$vvol. 4
The resource is part of a multipart monographic edition. It is described as a separate single-part resource, title proper of multipart resource is given in field 225. Subfields 225$y contain ISBN-13 and ISBN-10 of the multipart resource. ISBN-13 and ISBN-10 of vol. 4 are recorded in fields 010.
The ISBD display: (The history of Chinese civilization / gen. ed. Yuan Xingpei [et al.] ; English text ed. by David R. Knechtges, ISBN 978-1-107-01309-4, ISBN 1-107-01309-7 ; vol. 4)
EX 9
010 ##$a978-5-9500759-4-0
200 1#$aThe logocentric model of the synthetic lingual personality: the component structure and the system of concepts (as exemplified in Russian rock culture)
225 ##$aThe synthetic lingual personality theory$ein 2 volumes$etranslation from Russian language$fDmitry I. Ivanov$gGuangdong University of Foreign Studies (People's Republic of China)$yISBN 978-5-9500759-2-6$vvol. 2
Volume 2 of multipart monographic edition is described as separate single-part resource. Field 010 contains ISBN of Volume 2, subfield 225$y contains ISBN of multipart resource.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2018	Added text, new subfield $2 and new example.
2019	Text errata.
2020	Update for multipart monographic resources (scope, added $g and $z, notes, examples, related fields)

230 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: ELECTRONIC RESOURCE CHARACTERISTICS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains information on the file characteristics pertaining to the type and extent of a electronic resource.

Repeatable when the file characteristics of more than one electronic resource are described in a single record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
230	MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: ELECTRONIC RESOURCE CHARACTERISTICS	R	O
a	Designation and Extent of File	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Designation and Extent of File

The designation of the file identifies the particular type of file(s) which constitutes the resource and is given in the language of the bibliographic agency. Designation of type of file is mandatory.

The extent of file consists of the number of files that make up the content of the data or the program. Additional measures of extent may be added as appropriate. The specific terms for extent of file are in the language of the bibliographic agency. Extent of file is optional.

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field is equivalent only to the ISBD(ER) Type and Extent of Resource Area and is not used in the records formulated following cataloguing rules based on ISBD Consolidated Edition or RDA.

Each statement of extent is enclosed in parentheses after the designation of the file. The number of files constituting the content of the data or program is given in arabic numerals. The number of records and/or bytes may be given for a data file and the number of statements and/or bytes may be given for a program. When the number of files is given, this further statement of extent is introduced by a colon, space. For a multi-part file, the number of records and/or bytes or the number of statements and/or bytes may be given for each file. The number of records and/or bytes or the number of statements and/or bytes may be approximated (EX 5).

Related Fields

135 CODED DATA FIELDS: ELECTRONIC RESOURCES	This field contains coded data relating to electronic resources.
231 DIGITAL FILE CHARACTERISTICS [PROVISIONAL]	This field contains statements relating to the characteristics of a digital file for the records formulated according to ISBD Consolidated Edition or RDA.

336 TYPE OF ELECTRONIC RESOURCE NOTE	This field contains notes supplementing field 230.

Examples

EX 1
230 ##$aComputer data
EX 2
230 ##$aComputer program (1 file: 1958 statements)
EX 3
230 ##$aComputer data (5 files) and programs (15 files)
EX 4
230 ##$aComputer data (3 files: 800 records, 3150 bytes) and computer data (7 files)
EX 5
230 ##$aComputer program (2 files: ca. 650 statements each)
EX 6
230 ##$aComputer data (2 files: 729 records each) and programs (3 files: 7260, 3450, 2518 bytes)
2518 bytes)

History

1994	New field.
1998	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2017	Obsolete field.
2018	Changed status, added explanation, changed occurrence, added text in Related Fields (231).

231 DIGITAL FILE CHARACTERISTICS [PROVISIONAL]

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains statements relating to the characteristics of a digital file, i.e. technical specifications relating to the digital encoding of text, image, audio, video, and other types of data in a resource, as well as accessibility information.

Digital file characteristics could also be recorded in field 215 (Physical Description) subfield $c (Other Physical Details).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
231	DIGITAL FILE CHARACTERISTICS [PROVISIONAL]	R	O
a	File Type	R	O
b	Encoding Standard	R	O
c	Version of Encoding Standard	R	O
d	Details of Encoding Standard	R	O
e	File Size	R	O
f	Resolution	R	O
g	Regional Encoding	R	O
h	Encoded Bitrate	R	O
i	Accessibility Information	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a File Type

A general type of data content encoded in a computer file (EX 1, 2, 3). Repeatable.

$b Encoding Standard

A schema, standard, etc., used to encode the digital content of a resource (EX 1, 2, 3). Repeatable.

$c Version of Encoding Standard

The version of the standard recorded in $b (EX 2). Repeatable.

$d Details of Encoding Standard

Details of the standard recorded in $b (EX 2). Repeatable.

$e File Size

Number of bytes in a digital file (EX 2). Repeatable.

$f Resolution

The smallest measuring unit used to register data for a computer image, expressed as dots per inch, pixels per line, or lines per millimetre. It indicates the amount of detail found in one pixel of the image (EX 4). Repeatable.

$g Regional Encoding

A code identifying the region of the world for which a digital file has been encoded on a carrier and preventing that carrier from being played on a player sold in a different region. (EX 3). Repeatable.

$h Encoded Bitrate

The quantity of digital data that are conveyed or processed per unit of time, usually expressed using the bits per second unit or one of its multiples. (EX 1). Repeatable.

$i Accessibility Information

A code or term providing information on the accessibility of the content of the digital resource. (EX 9). Repeatable.

$2 Source

A code identifying a controlled list of terms used as a source for the data, if any. Not repeatable.

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13 Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure).

Notes on Field Contents

Multiple values from the same source vocabulary may be recorded in the same field in separate occurrences of subfields. Terms from different source vocabularies are recorded in separate occurrences of the field.

Related Fields

135 CODED DATA FIELD: ELECTRONIC RESOURCES	
215 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION	Especially $a Specific material designation and extent and $c Other physical details.
230 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: ELECTRONIC RESOURCE CHARACTERISTICS	The field is equivalent only to the ISBD(ER) Type and Extent of Resource Area.
336 TYPE OF ELECTRONIC RESOURCE NOTE	
337 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS NOTE (ELECTRONIC RESOURCES)	

Examples

EX 1
231 ##$aAudio file$bmp3$h32 kbps
EX 2
231 ##$aFichier texte$bEPUB$c3.0$d$dformat fixe$e1249 Ko
EX 3
231 ##$aVideo file$bDVD video$gregion 2
EX 4
231 ##$aFile di immagini$bJPEG$f3.6 megapixel
EX 5
231 ##$aImage file$bJPEG$e3 Mo$2
EX 6

231 ##$aImage file$2rdaft
231 ##$aImage file$bQ2195$e3 Mo$2wikidata
The term used in subfield $a is taken from RDA list of terms, whereas the one in $b comes from Wikidata (http://www.wikidata.org). Field 231 is repeated for terms taken from different source vocabularies.
EX 7
231 ##$aText file$bASCII$2RDA
EX 8
231 ##$aProgram file$bFORTRAN$c95
EX 9
231 ##$i20$2onix196
The code used in subfield $i is taken from the ONIX codelist 196 (http://onix-codelists.io/codelist/196). It indicates that the digital file contains synchronised pre-recorded audio that makes the content accessible to visually impaired persons.

History

2017	New field.
2018	Corrections in the Related Fields (230).
2021	New subfield $i, correction Ex 6.

251 ORGANIZATION AND ARRANGEMENT OF MATERIALS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains information about organization and arrangement of materials in the collection as well as position of the unit in the hierarchy of archival description.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
251	ORGANIZATION AND ARRANGEMENT OF MATERIALS	R	O
a	Organization	R	O
b	Arrangement	R	O
c	Level	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Organization

Manner in which the materials being described have been subdivided into smaller units, such as how the record groups are divided into series, and series into subseries. Repeatable.

$b Arrangement

Terms used to describe the pattern of arrangement of materials within a unit, such as alphabetical, chronological, etc. Repeatable.

$c Level

Term used to identify hierarchical position of the described materials in the whole hierarchy of description. Normally, standard archival units are used – fonds, series, file, resource. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, Hierarchical level code (character position 8)	Character position 8 in the RECORD LABEL indicates the hierarchical relationship (if any) between the record and other records in the file without naming particular level explicitly.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$aНиколай II, император. 1868-1918$j1860-1991
251 ##$a2 описи$cФонд
Collection of records of Nikolay II, Emperor of Russia. Arranged in two series.

History

2012	New field.

260 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: NUMISMATIC RESOURCES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains textual data relating to the identification and description of numismatic resources.

It corresponds to the Numismatic Description Schema (NUDS) and the nomisma.org ontology.

Repeatable when more than one part (obverse, reverse, edge, etc.) of the numismatic resource is described.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
260	MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: NUMISMATIC RESOURCES	R	O
a	Denomination	NR	O
b	Weight Standard or Theoretical Weight	NR	O
c	Issue	NR	O
d	Other Appellation	R	O
e	Type Name or Reference	R	O
f	Legend	NR	O
g	Other Inscription	R	O
h	Type Description	NR	O
i	Shape	NR	O
j	Axis	NR	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Description Level
	#	Not specified
	0	Numismatic type
	1	Numismatic item
2		Part of the Numismatic Resource
	#	Not specified /other
	1	Obverse
	2	Reverse
	3	Edge

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Description Level

Used for differentiation of the level of description of the numismatic resource.

Value #: Not specified

Use when it is not possible to define a numismatic type or item due to a lack of material and information, or irregularity of coin production.

Value 0: Numismatic type

A numismatic type is the basic distinguishing design of a series of numismatic items from the same issuer, mint or region, as defined by numismatists through the study of individual coins or, for more recent historical periods, by official documents from the issuing authority.

Value 1: Numismatic item

A numismatic item is not identified by a series as defined by numismatists.

Indicator 2: Part of the Numismatic Resource

Value #: Not specified

Use when the information is applicable to the numismatic resource as a whole.

Subfields Description

$a Denomination

A term indicating the value of a numismatic resource. Not repeatable.

$b Weight Standard or Theoretical Weight

The conventional weight system or theoretical weight according to which a numismatic resource was produced. Not repeatable.

$c Issue

A conventional name or number identifying the issue of a numismatic resource. Not repeatable.

$d Other Appellation

A term commonly used either by contemporaries or by later scholars to identify a specific subset to which a numismatic resource belongs, such as a denomination, a type, a type series, a specific issue or any combination of the above. Repeatable.

$e Type Name or Reference

The commonly used name of a numismatic type, or a reference within a published typology. This can refer to an obverse or reverse type, or a general type encompassing the entire numismatic resource. This subfield can be associated with subfield $u to provide the URI of a type if published online. Repeatable.

$f Legend

The main (or only) inscription that is present on a numismatic resource as part of the production process, usually the circular inscription which surrounds the type. Not repeatable.

$g Other Inscription

Any other inscription that is present on a numismatic resource, either as part of the production process or due to subsequent transformations. Repeatable.

$h Type Description

A general and iconographical description of the type of the numismatic resource. Not repeatable.

$i Shape

The general shape of the numismatic resource being described. Can be a standard shape for numismatic resource, such as round, rectangular or a polygon. Not repeatable.

$j Axis

The relationship between the orientation obverse and reverse of a numismatic resource. Often expressed as hours of the clock or degrees in a circle. Not repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Use when type name or reference, denomination or appellation of the numismatic resource or the part of numismatic description is identified in catalogues, ontologies, databases, etc.

Not repeatable.

Related Fields

117 CODED DATA FIELD: THREE-DIMENSIONAL ARTEFACTS AND REALIA
360 NOTE ON SPECIFIC ELEMENTS OF NUMISMATIC DESCRIPTION

Examples

EX 1
260 0#$aDenier$bparisis$c2e émission $eLafaurie 544a$eDuplessy 561A$iflan circulaire
A description of a type of denarius parisis of Louis XI of France.
EX 2
260 1#$aHémistatère$battique$iflan circulaire$j11h
260 11$hTête d'Athéna coiffée d'un casque corinthien à cimier à droite, un serpent sur le casque.
260 12$fΑΛΕΞΑΝΔΡΟΥ$hVictoire à gauche, une couronne dans la main droite tendue, une stylis dans la main gauche ; dans le champ gauche, un plant de silphion.
A description of an individual gold hemistater of Alexander the Great.

History

2023	New field.
2024	Text errata. Update $u.

283 CARRIER TYPE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains textual data specifying the carrier type of the resource being described.

Repeatable when more than one source is used, or when several carrier types are associated with different media types within the resource.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
283	CARRIER TYPE	R	O
a	Carrier Type Designation	R	M
2	Source	NR	MA
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Carrier Type Designation

The carrier type applying to the resource. Mandatory. Repeatable when several carrier types, associated with the same media type, are present in the resource.

$2 Source

Source of the carrier type designation used in $a. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13 Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure).

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

If a textual form of the carrier type designation is desired use field 283, preferably in addition to field 183. In that case, indicator 2 should be set to 0 in field 183.

UNIMARC bibliographic 1XX fields provide most of the type of carrier designation coded information but, alternatively, the list of code values used in MARC21 for RDA carrier types could be used. (*See* http://www.loc.gov/standards/valuelist/rdacarrier.html.). For RDA carrier types use "rdacarrier" in $2.

Related Fields

183 CODED DATA FIELD: TYPE OF CARRIER	This field contains coded data specifying the carrier type of the resource being described.
203 CONTENT FORM AND MEDIA TYPE	This field holds data pertaining to the content form and media type of the resource, in textual form.

Examples

EX 1
183 #0anc2rdacarrier
283 ##$avolume$2rdacarrier
Data for specifying the carrier type “volume”, both in coded and in textual form. In field 183, the coded value (nc) is taken from *Term and Code List for RDA Carrier Types* (as indicated in subfield $2). Indicator 2 has been set to 0 (“Not used to generate displays”).
EX 2
183 #0$8main part$asd$2rdacarrier
183 #0$8liner notes$anb$2rdacarrier
283 ##$8main part$aaudio disc$2rdacarrier
283 ##$8liner notes$asheet$2rdacarrier
Data for specifying the carrier types “audio disc” and “sheet”, both in coded and in textual form. In fields 183, the coded values (sd and nb) are taken from *Term and Code List for RDA Carrier Types* (as indicated in subfield $2). The carrier type “audio disc” applies to the main part of the resource, whereas “sheet” applies to accompanying textual material (as mentioned in $8). Indicator2 of field 183 has been set to 0 (“Not used to generate displays”).

History

2017	New field.

3-- NOTES BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains notes - free text statements qualifying and amplifying the description and access points and dealing with any aspect of the physical make-up of the resource or its contents. The following fields are defined:

300	GENERAL NOTES
301	NOTES PERTAINING TO IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS
302	NOTES PERTAINING TO CODED INFORMATION
303	GENERAL NOTES PERTAINING TO DESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION
304	NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY
305	NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY
306	NOTES PERTAINING TO PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.
307	NOTES PERTAINING TO PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION
308	NOTES PERTAINING TO SERIES
310	NOTES PERTAINING TO BINDING AND AVAILABILITY
311	NOTES PERTAINING TO LINKING FIELDS
312	NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES
313	NOTES PERTAINING TO SUBJECT ACCESS
314	NOTES PERTAINING TO RESPONSIBILITY
315	NOTES PERTAINING TO MATERIAL (OR TYPE OF PUBLICATION) SPECIFIC INFORMATION
316	NOTE RELATING TO THE ITEM
317	PROVENANCE NOTE
318	ACTION NOTE
320	INTERNAL BIBLIOGRAPHIES/INDEXES NOTE
321	EXTERNAL INDEXES/ABSTRACTS/REFERENCES NOTE
322	CREDITS NOTE (PROJECTED AND VIDEO MATERIAL AND SOUND RECORDINGS)
323	CAST NOTE (PROJECTED AND VIDEO MATERIAL AND SOUND RECORDINGS)
324	ORIGINAL VERSION NOTE
325	REPRODUCTION NOTE
326	FREQUENCY STATEMENT NOTE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)
327	CONTENTS NOTE
328	DISSERTATION (THESIS) NOTE
330	SUMMARY OR ABSTRACT
332	PREFERRED CITATION OF DESCRIBED MATERIALS
333	USERS/INTENDED AUDIENCE NOTE
334	AWARDS NOTE
335	LOCATION OF ORIGINALS/ REPRODUCTIONS
336	TYPE OF ELECTRONIC RESOURCE NOTE
337	SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS NOTE (ELECTRONIC RESOURCES)
338	FUNDING INFORMATION NOTE
345	ACQUISITION INFORMATION NOTE
346	NOTE ON ACCRUALS AND FREQUENCY OF USE
360	NOTE ON SPECIFIC ELEMENTS OF NUMISMATIC DESCRIPTION
371	NOTES ON INFORMATION SERVICE POLICY

Notes on Field Contents

Punctuation

Certain types of notes may follow ISBD rules for content and form, including punctuation. Although this is not prescribed within UNIMARC, it is recommended that ISBD conventions be followed where possible.

General Notes

Field 300 has two uses: it is for general notes that do not belong under any of the more specific categories of notes; and it is for notes that belong to other categories but which were not so categorized by the source format, or were coded in the source format as belonging to a category which is not present in UNIMARC. If a note belongs to more than one category represented by fields 301 to 315, then the tag earlier in numerical order other than 300 should be used as a general rule. Notes relating to fields 320 onwards should be entered in those specific fields and not in earlier fields. If two notes belong to the same category they should be contained in separate occurrences of the required field.

Notes Generated from Linking Fields

From the UNIMARC record, a note may be generated from data in other fields, e.g. 4-- linking fields or 5-- related title fields. If such a note is to be generated, it is not entered in a 3-- field.

History

2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Corrections and additions.
2020	Update.
2023	Update.

300 GENERAL NOTES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note on any aspect of the bibliographic resource or the record relating to it.

It may be used in place of any of the note fields 301 to 315 or, when source formats do not provide the same categorization of notes as UNIMARC, in place of any note which cannot be allocated to a more specific notes field.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
300	GENERAL NOTES	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The data in this field can be in any form. See examples for guidance. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 300.

Related Fields

3-- NOTES BLOCK	See the other notes fields.

Examples

EX 1
300 ##$aSkeleton outline of events contemporary of Lady Margaret Roper (Alexander Alesius) : (1 folded leaf) in pocket
A note on accompanying material.
EX 2
300 ##$aIncludes index
Used when the source format has no equivalent of field 320.
EX 3
300 ##$aContaining details of hunts, including their countries, histories and former Masters of Foxhounds, Harriers, Staghounds, Draghounds, Beagles, Basset Hounds, Otterhounds and Bloodhounds in the United Kingdom and Ireland; hunts of America, the Commonwealth and Europe, results of hound shows, three maps showing boundaries of foxhounds and one of distribution of hare hunts.
EX 4
300 ##$aDrawings executed between 1816 and 1825 are compared with the work of J.M.W. Turner in: George Filbert, his early work / Thomas Johnson. New York : Dow, 1965

A note citing published research based on drawings described in the catalogue record and held by the institution.
EX 5
300 ##$aGift of Leavitt Hunt's daughter, Mrs William E. Patterson, 1947
A provenance note, indicating the donor and former owner of a rare book.

301 NOTES PERTAINING TO IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note on any identification number appearing on the resource or in the record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
301	NOTES PERTAINING TO IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field may be used for notes relating to any identification number when it appears on the resource or when it is known to have been assigned to the resource being recorded. It may be used to note the number itself, if it cannot be recorded in any of the fields 010 to 040 which deal with identification numbers, or it can be used to comment on a particular number. If notes about more than one number are to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 301.

Related Fields

0-- IDENTIFICATION BLOCK	Prefer the use of identification block when data from a note field in a source format can be formatted to be entered in a 0-- field.

Examples

EX 1
301 ##$a”DOE/EIA-0031/2”
A technical report number appearing on the title page of the resource.
EX 2
301 ##$aIncorrectly cited as BL R&D Report 5657
A new series of library and information research reports is published, the first of which is *The on-line public library* (LIR Report 1) by A.J. Convey, A. Pearce and A.J. Wood, previously listed as BL R&D Report 5657.

302 NOTES PERTAINING TO CODED INFORMATION

Field Definition and Scope

A note relating to data elements which are coded in the 1-- fields.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
302	NOTES PERTAINING TO CODED INFORMATION	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The data in this field can be in any form. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 302.

In most cases a more specific note field can be used. In those instances, prefer the more specific field, e.g. use field 307 rather than 302 for notes on types of illustrations present in the resource, even though illustration information is present in coded form in field 105.

Related Fields

1-- CODED INFORMATION BLOCK	Data recorded in the CODED INFORMATION BLOCK in coded form may be recorded in field 302 in free text form with or without elaboration.

303 GENERAL NOTES PERTAINING TO DESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION

Field Definition and Scope

A note relating to the description of the resource.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
303	GENERAL NOTES PERTAINING TO DESCRIPTIVE INFORMATION	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The data in this field can be in any form. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 303.

When another more specific note field relates more closely to the nature of the note to be recorded, prefer the more specific field.

Related Fields

304 NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	
305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY	
306 NOTES PERTAINING TO PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.	
308 NOTES PERTAINING TO SERIES	
310 NOTES PERTAINING TO BINDING AND AVAILABILITY	These fields all provide a more specific place for notes on description and should be used in preference to field 303 where possible.

Examples

EX 1
303 ##$aWith a card listing abbreviations and symbols
An accompanying material note.
EX 2
303 ##$aIncludes advertising matter
An informal contents note.

304 NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

A note relating to the title and/or statement of responsibility as entered in a field 200 of the record.

Mandatory for records of electronic resources, otherwise optional.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
304	NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	R	MA
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains notes on the title or statement(s) of responsibility. It may indicate the source of the title, or extra words in the title which have been omitted from the description. It may also comment or enlarge on the statement of responsibility. For example, if a cataloguing code requires that a statement of responsibility be abbreviated because it consists of more than three names, names that have been omitted from the 200 field may be added in this note field (EX 7). Parallel titles omitted from the title and statement of responsibility may be noted here (EX 5). If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 304.

"For electronic resources: The source of the title proper is given in all cases."- ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011), section 7.1.1.1 (EX 8).

There are no rules for punctuation in this field, but it is recommended that where applicable ISBD punctuation is used (EX 6).

Related Fields

305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY	Field 305 is used for details of earlier or later titles related to the one entered in field 200.
312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES	Field 312 is used for details of related title such as another title found on the resource or a related preferred title.
314 NOTES PERTAINING TO INTELLECTUAL RESPONSIBILITY	Field 314 is used when the note relates to responsibility not recorded in the 200 field.

Examples

EX 1
304 ##$aVol.2 has title: Air Force colours

The resource entitled *US Air Force colours* is in two volumes. Volume 2 is entitled *Air Force colours*.
EX 2
200 1#$aWho did/done it$ea crime reader for students of English$fCarlos A.Yoico, L.A. Morse
304 ##$aThe word "done" in the title is crossed out.
On the title page appear the words "Who did ~~done~~ it".
EX 3
304 ##$aCover title
The title proper is taken from the cover.
EX 4
304 ##$aWritten by F.G. Cockman as if by Horace Mann
A document has on its title page the text: Midland engineman by Horace Mann edited by F.G. Cockman. The document is known to have been written in the words of F.G. Cockman who consulted and rewrote the account of Horace Mann.
EX 5
304 ##$aParallel title: Les séquestrés d'Altona
A practice of the agency preparing the record is to include parallel titles proper as notes rather than entering them in the descriptive area. (Compare field 312, EX 3.)
EX 6
304 ##$aPt. 1 / by George Lee Haskins -- Pt.2 / by Herbert A. Johnson
The record is of volume 2 of *History of the Supreme Court of the United States*. The document is in two parts, each with its own statement of responsibility. This example makes use of ISBD punctuation.
EX 7
200 1#$aPhilosophy and literary criticism$fedited by F.R. Leavis … [et al.]
304 ##$aEdited by F.R. Leavis, A.C. Quine, A. Kenny and R. Quirk
The cataloguing rules do not permit the inclusion of more than one name in the statement of responsibility when there are more than three names of persons responsible on the resource. The names are entered in a note.
EX 8
304 ##$aTitle from home page
ISBD mandatory note giving source of title proper for an electronic resource.
EX 9
200 1#$aPiano concerto op.39$aConcerti da camera nos. 1-3$fAlkan
304 ##$aTitre pris au recto du boîtier
Title on verso of container and on disc: "Complete works for piano and orchestra".

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY

Field Definition and Scope

The field contains a note relating to the edition of the resource or to its bibliographic history.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
305	NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains notes on this edition of the resource or on works related to the resource when there is no corresponding linking entry field. This includes previous titles of monographs and continuing resources. It may include a note taken from the resource itself. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 305.

Although there are no rules on punctuation in this field, it is recommended that any citations made to other works use ISBD punctuation (EX 1, 3) unless they are quotations from the text of the document itself. Any such quotations should be enclosed within quotation marks. (EX 5, 6)

Related Fields

300 GENERAL NOTE	Although field 300 can be used as an alternative to 305, it is recommended that 305 be used for bibliographic history notes when possible.
311 NOTES PERTAINING TO LINKING FIELDS	Field 311 is used for bibliographic history notes related to linking fields.
4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK	Certain bibliographic history notes may be generated from 4-- fields.

Examples

EX 1
305 ##$aV.2. 2nd ed.
The record relates to a monograph in 3 volumes. Volume 2 alone of the resource is in its second edition.
EX 2
305 ##$aPrevious ed.: 1978
The resource was published in 1980. It was previously published in 1978 under the same title.

EX 3
305 ##$aOriginally published: London : Constable, 1957.
EX 4
305 ##$aSupersedes: British history illustrated
The title *British heritage* supersedes *British history illustrated*. In the UNIMARC record there is no equivalent 4-- field, and so field 311 is not used.
EX 5
305 ##$a"A tentative draft for experimental use, not yet approved by the Committee on Administrative Practice" -Pref .
A note is taken from the resource itself; the note is entered in quotation marks and the source is noted.
EX 6
305 ##$a 'Five of the stories were published in the compiler's "T'ai-wan pen-ti tso-chia tuan-p'ien hsiao-shuo hsun", published in 1972' – CIP data
Since the note is taken from the CIP data in the resource, the source is acknowledged.

306 NOTES PERTAINING TO PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note about publication, distribution, etc. of the resource.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
306	NOTES PERTAINING TO PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains data relating to publication and distribution of the resource which is not entered in field 210 Publication, distribution, etc. When more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 306.

Related Fields

210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.	Some cataloguing codes relegate distributor and printer to a note, in which case field 306 may be used (EX 1).
214 PRODUCTION, PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, MANUFACTURE STATEMENTS	
620 PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, ETC.	Access point form of the place of publication, distribution, may be entered in field 620.

Examples

EX 1
306 ##$aThe imprint is false; printed by Ruddiman on the evidence of the ornaments
EX 2
306 ##$aImprint in volume 3: Tring : Lion Press
The imprint in volume 3 of a three-volume work differs from that of the two earlier volumes.
EX 3
210 ##$aLeipzig$cBey Wolffgang Stürmer zu finden.$d[1610]
306 ##$aColophon: Leipzig / Gedruckt durch Valentin Am Ende. Jm Jahr M.DC.X

History

2020	Update section Related Fields.

307 NOTES PERTAINING TO PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note about the physical description of the resource.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
307	NOTES PERTAINING TO PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains data relating to the physical description of the resource which is not entered in field 215 Physical description. When more that one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 307.

Related Fields

215 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION	The physical description is recorded in a formalized form in field 215.

Examples

EX 1
307 ##$aContains slide set in pocket
EX 2
307 ##$aIn slip case
EX 3
307 ##$aText on lining papers
EX 4
307 ##$aSignatures: A-G8, H4
The signatures of an early printed book.
EX 5
307 ##$aPrinted on acid-free paper

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

308 NOTES PERTAINING TO SERIES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note pertaining to a series of which the resource is a part, or a series in which the resource has been issued previously.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
308	NOTES PERTAINING TO SERIES	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains data relating to any series of which the resource being recorded is a part. When more than one note is recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 308.

Related Fields

225 SERIES	The title of the series itself is entered in field 225. Any note on this is entered in 308.
410 SERIES	A note may be created by using the series linking entry field.

Examples

EX 1
308 ##$aPts 1 and 2 in series: African perspective
A record is made for a multi-volume monograph in four parts of which parts 1 and 2 only are in a series.
EX 2
308 ##$aOriginally issued in series: Environmental science series
EX 3
308 ##$aEach issue individually numbered in series

310 NOTES PERTAINING TO BINDING AND AVAILABILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note on any aspect of binding and availability.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
310	NOTES PERTAINING TO BINDING AND AVAILABILITY	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains notes on the binding and availability of the resource. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 310.

Related Fields

010 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD BOOK NUMBER (ISBN)	Within the ISBN field, $b Qualification and $d Terms of Availability and/or Price are available for entering details of binding and terms of availability respectively. It is recommended that this data be entered in these subfields when the record has one or more ISBN, since each ISBN often corresponds to a particular binding or has a particular availability. If there is no ISBN, this information may be entered in field 310.

Examples

EX 1
310 ##$aAlso available in special edition of 50 numbered copies signed by the author
EX 2
310 ##$aAvailable only to subscribers
EX 3
310 ##$aBound in modern vellum
EX 4
310 ##$aClassified
A note on restrictions of access to the resource.

311 NOTES PERTAINING TO LINKING FIELDS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note relating to one of the linking fields.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
311	NOTES PERTAINING TO LINKING FIELDS	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains notes which relate to data found in the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK. Data in the 4-- fields may be used to print a note. If the note that would be printed from them would not adequately indicate the relationship and the resource that is related, a note can be entered in 311 (and the indicator of the corresponding 4-- field(s) set to 0 so that a note will not be automatically generated by those fields). In particular, specific relationships between the resource being catalogued and another resource referred in field 488 can be entered here. If more than one note is to be recorded, then each is entered in a repeated field 311.

Related Fields

300 GENERAL NOTE	Although field 300 can be used instead of 311, it is recommended that 311 be used for notes relating to data in linking fields or notes relating to resource to which a link is made in a linking field.
305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY	This field is used for bibliographic history notes which are not related to linking fields.
327 CONTENTS NOTE	This field is used for contents notes which are not generated by linking fields.
4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK	

Examples

EX 1
311 ##$a'Produced in conjunction with the “Bloodstock breeders’ annual.”.'
488 #0$12001#$aBloodstock breeders’ annual
or
488 #0$tBloodstock breeders’ annual

In the resource *The stallion review* it states "Produced in conjunction with the Bloodstock breeders' annual". The record for *The stallion review* contains a non-specific link (field 488) to the related work *Bloodstock breeders' annual*; thus it is necessary to make a note corresponding to the link since a specific note cannot be generated from field 488. The note is transcribed from the resource in this example.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note relating to a title of the resource, other than the title proper or parallel title proper.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
312	NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains notes relating to any title appearing on the resource, other than the title proper or parallel title proper (see field 304), or to a title by which the work is commonly known. These include cover title, added title-page title, caption title, running title, spine title, for which the actual text of the title may be entered in the field. Titles of related works should not be noted here. If more than one note is to be recorded, then each is entered in a repeated field 312.

Related Fields

304 NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	Field 304 is used for notes relating to the chief title of the resource. It may be used for a note on the parallel title when it is part of the title and statement of responsibility area.
305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY	Field 305 is used for notes on titles of related works, which should not be entered in field 312.
5-- RELATED TITLE BLOCK	This block is used for entering a related title in a form suitable as an access point. If it is required to enter a note on any such title, it should be entered in field 312. Notes on parallel titles may be entered in field 304 or field 312 depending on whether or not they are included in the title and statement of responsibility area.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$aAchieving changes$ea reports$fprepared by the West Virginia Advisory Committee to the U.S. Commission on Civil Rights.
312 ##$aSubtitle on cover: A report on the 1978 West Virginia Statewide Leadership Conference on Civil Rights.
A subtitle appears on the cover but not on the title page.
EX 2

312 ##$aCommonly known as the Guinea catalog.
540 1#$aGuinea catalog
Commonly known title does not actually appear on the resource.
EX 3
312 ##$aSecond title page has title: Transfert de l'information
A parallel title appears outside the chief source of information. (Compare field 304, EX 5.)

313 NOTES PERTAINING TO SUBJECT ACCESS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note relating to subject access to the resource described in the record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
313	NOTES PERTAINING TO SUBJECT ACCESS	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field may include an indication of the provision of subject indexes or classification provided in the resource, as well as other ways in which subject control of the information is available. If more than one note is to be recorded, then each is entered in a repeated field 313.

Related Fields

321 EXTERNAL INDEXES/ABSTRACTS/REFERENCES NOTE	This field may be used to record indexes to a work, some of which may be subject indexes, but if a comprehensive note only on the subject approach available is required, field 313 should be used.

Examples

EX 1
313 ##$aMain sequence classified by D.D.C. Subject indexing according to PRECIS leading to classified sequence.
A record for the British National Bibliography.
EX 2
313 ##$aDocument bears UDC no. 002/050+778.14+001.4
An official standard bears a UDC number describing its subject.

314 NOTES PERTAINING TO RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note relating to the responsibility of the resource.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
314	NOTES PERTAINING TO RESPONSIBILITY	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Notes relating to the responsibility of the resource other than a note on the statement of responsibility (see field 304). This includes notes on persons or corporate bodies (including meetings) which have responsibility for the resource and which may not have been recorded elsewhere in the record. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 314.

Related Fields

304 NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	Any note relating to data in the statement of responsibility should be entered in field 304 rather than in field 314.
338 FUNDING INFORMATION NOTE	For the information about the contract, grant, and project numbers when the work results from a funded project, use field 338.
7-- INTELECTUAL RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK	A note concerning data in fields in this block is entered in field 314. Many cataloguing codes require that any access point for the resource be justified in the notes if it is not present elsewhere in the description of the resource. Field 314 may be used for such notes.

Examples

EX 1
314 ##$a'Sponsored by the Environmental Mutagen Society'
This information is not present in the 200 field.
EX 2
314 ##$aCompiled by Samuel French Ltd.
EX 3
314 ##$aDesigned and compiled by the Publication Relations Unit, Melbourne
EX 4

314 ##$aText by Denise Hooker
EX 5
314 ##$aCompiled by J.W. Jolliffe
EX 6
314 ##$aCommissioned by the Royal Australian College of Surgeons

History

2008	Change of title ("Intelectual" removed).
2017	Added new field (338) in the section Related Fields.

315 NOTES PERTAINING TO MATERIAL (OR TYPE OF PUBLICATION) SPECIFIC INFORMATION

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note relating to material specific information, i.e. data relevant only to one or a group of types of material.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
315	NOTES PERTAINING TO MATERIAL (OR TYPE OF PUBLICATION) SPECIFIC INFORMATION	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Material specific notes (i.e. notes relating to aspects of a type of material, such as scale of maps, numbering of continuing resources) should be entered here. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 315.

Related Fields

206, 207, 208, 230 Material specific area statements	Care must be taken not to enter information in field 315 which may be accommodated elsewhere in the more specific field. For example, statements on scale in cartographic resources and numbering for continuing resources should be entered in fields 206 and 207.

Examples

EX 1
315 ##$aSuspended 1939-1945
A note relating to the numbering of a continuing resource explaining why the numbering and dates do not match.
EX 2
315 ##$aScale of original ca 1:1.300
A note relating to the scale of the original cartographic work.

316 NOTE RELATING TO THE ITEM

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note relating to the item.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
316	NOTE RELATING TO THE ITEM	R	O
a	Text of Note	R	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be used to link to a website. Repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

Mandatory if field is present.

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13 Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure).

The instructions for the use of this subfield form the first part of Section 3.13. $6/0 Linking explanation code will always have the value “b” = Link associated with an item, unless an alternative graphic representation or script is involved.

Notes on Field Contents

In this field characteristics of the item are described, e.g. wanting leaves, copy characteristics, binding, artificial titles, numbered copies of an edition, manuscript notes on title page or margins, bound leaves,

items, etc. For many older publications it will not be readily ascertainable whether the characteristics of a single items are shared by other or all copies. Code of the institution and the copy to which the Note Relating to the Item field applies are recorded in $5.

This field can contain the following characteristics of the item:

- description of resource "Bound with" ("Artificial collections"), if the institution does not use fields 481 / 482 (EX 4, 13)
- item characteristics (EX 1, 5, 6)
- numbered copies of an edition (EX 3, 12)
- missing page(s), gaps and damages (EX 2, 11, 14)
- state of conservation of item
- binding description and dimensions (EX 7, 8, 9, 13, 14)
- artificial title.

Related Fields

141 CODED DATA FIELD: ITEM SPECIFIC ATTRIBUTES	This field contains fixed-length data relating to the item specific attributes of monographic publications.
317 PROVENANCE NOTE	This field contains a note relating to the provenance of the item, e.g. book-plates, author's and/or owner's autographs, seals, etc.
321 EXTERNAL INDEXES/ABSTRACTS/REFERENCES NOTE	This field can also be used to record bibliographical references pertaining to the item (i.e. exhibition catalogues, etc.).
481 ALSO BOUND IN THIS VOLUME	This field contains description of other resources bound in an "artificial" collection, e.g. not found with the first resource as issued. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).
482 BOUND WITH	This field contains a description of the resource that is bound first in an "artificial" collection. It is generally used for older monographic publications.
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	This field applies to the whole resource described in the record and/or reference files related to the described resource such as thumbnails and content pages. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to any other part of the resource described in the record.

Examples

EX 1
316 ##$aLeaves 15-6 bound between h3 and h4$5DLC
EX 2
316 ##$aWanting all after p. 312$5CaOONL
EX 3
316 ##$aNo. 23 of an edition of 75 copies$5Uk
EX 4
316 ##$aWith: The Boston Edenezer. Boston : printed by B Green & J Allen, for Samuel Phillips, 1698 – The cure of sorrow. Boston : printed by B Green, 1709$5MAmHi

EX 5
316 ##$aA la. fl. contem anotacões manuscritas sobre a página de rosto e texto$5Sp
EX 6
316 ##$aMs notes by the author$5DLC
EX 7
316 ##$aGilt-tooled centrepiece binding by Williamson of Eton, ca. 1605$5UkCU
EX 8
316 ##$aEarly 18th century blind-tooled panelled calf binding$5Uk
EX 9
316 ##$aUvezan u marmorirane kartonske korice s kožnatim hrptom $uhttp://www.nsk.hr/judita/primj-a/uvez.html$5CiZaNSK: RIIC-8o-100 primj. A
316 ##$aUvezan u bijelu kožu$uhttp://www.nsk.hr/judita/primj-b/uvez.html$5CiZaNSK: RIIC-8o-100 primj. b
The National and University Library owns two copies with different bindings. The digital images of the covers are linked to the Note Relating to the Item by URLs in $u.
EX 10
316 ##$aC автографом авт. вступ. ст.$5NLR
Autograph by the author of introduction.
EX 11
316 ##$aЭкз. деф.: отсутствуют с. 1-4$5NLR
Wanting pages 1-4.
EX 12
316 ##$aLimited to 1000 copies signed by the author. Knopf copy is no.281.
From the edition of *Lady Chatterley's lover* by D.H. Lawrence, privately printed in Florence in 1928. This copy is in the Alfred/Blanche Knopf Library, Harry Ransom Humanities Research Center, University of Texas, which holds many editions and printings of this work.
EX 13
316 ##$aAnche legato con: Nuovi esperimenti di Gianbattista Beccaria ... per confermare, ed estendere la meccanica del fuoco elettrico; e con: Della elettricità terreste atmosferica a ciel sereno$aLegatura in pelle; dorso ornato; piatti della cop. con cornice dorata; tagli in rosso; (26x20x6 cm)$5IT-TO0741 MOS : SV 327
EX 14
316 ##$aFront. di insieme mancante; libro quinto mancante; p. 121-124 mancanti$aLegatura in pergamena rigida; (24x18x5 cm)$5IT-TO0741 MOS : SV 320
EX 15
316 ##$aCalf binding (late 17th century?) with arms of Edward Byde of Ware Park, Hertfordshire, (d.1712) in gold on both covers$5UK-WlAbNL: WingU124
Binding of a copy of *Nicolai Vptoni De studio militari, libri quatuor. ... Londini, 1654,* in National Library of Wales. Subfield $5 links this field to other item specific fields in the record. See 317 EX 10, 621 EX 3 and 702 EX 5.
EX 16
316 ##$aP. 121-135 déchirées avec mq. de texte$aRel. avec : "Essequie dell'illustre sig. Alessandro abate Pucci... dal M. R. P. M. Arcangelo Giani...", 1601, et "Poesie latine, e toscane nell'essequie del

molto illust. e reverendissimo signor Alessandro abate Pucci...", 1601$aCartonnage plein papier à la colle rose$aEx-libris ms. : "Bibliotheca Colbertina" ; l'ouvrage a peut-être figuré dans la bibliothèque du vivant de Jean-Baptiste Colbert. Ex-libris ms. : Abbaye de Saint-Germain des Prés, à Paris$aEstampille de la bibliothèque du Tribunat, à Paris. Estampille de la Bibliothèque royale (1782-1792 et 1815-1817)$5FR-751131010:YC-1129
The copy presents several characteristics, recorded in repeated $a with the following order : 1) damages with lacking text ; 2) description of the works bound with the item; 3) description of the binding ; 4) ex-libris and 5) stamps.
EX 17
316 ##$aPapillon impr. collé sur le vers 11 ("Mes coups furent par tout plus craints que le Tonnerre :"), couvrant une version antérieure$aRel. dans un recueil de pièces du XVIIe s$aRel veau, filets sur les plats, chiffres de Nicolas Fouquet et de la compagnie de Jésus au dos, indiquant un achat sur la rente offerte par le surintendant au collège des jésuites de Paris$aEx-libris ms. : collège Louis-le-Grand, à Paris$aEstampille de la Bibliothèque du Roi n° 14 sur la première pièce (1735-1782)$5FR-751131011:RES-myc-912 (3)
The copy presents several characteristics, recorded in repeated $a with the following order : 1) change in the previous printed text by addition of an inset; 2) bound in an artificial collection ; 3) description of the binding ; 4) ex-libris and 5) stamps.

History

1996	New field
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions
2008	Text revised. New code value b added to $6. Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.

317 PROVENANCE NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note relating to the provenance of the item.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
317	PROVENANCE NOTE	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
8	Materials Specified	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Type of Provenance Information
	#	Not specified
	0	Archaeological provenance
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Type of Provenance Information

Specifies the particular element of the numismatic resource that is described in this field.

Value 0: Archaeological provenance

Used for ancient artefacts (e.g. numismatic resources, ceramics, etc.) to provide information on where the item was found and the circumstances of its discovery. EX 14, 15.

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be used when an electronic version of the image of a page(s) relevant to the provenance information is available (i.e., a digitized extract of the item described in the record, part of an electronic resource). Repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13 Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure).

The instructions for the use of this subfield form the first part of Section 3.13. $6/0 Linking explanation code will always have the value "b" = Link associated with a item, unless an alternative graphic representation or script is involved.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

It is expected that the record is made for the ideal copy. However, in this note field provenance of the item is described in the form in which it appears in the book, e.g. book-plates, author's and/or owner's autographs, seals, etc. Code of the institution to which the Provenance Note field applies is recorded in $5.

The field may be used to record custodial history of archival resources – information on transfers of ownership, responsibility and/or custody of the unit of description or its part. If the archival history is unknown, this fact may also be recorded in the field.

Related Fields

316 NOTES RELATING TO THE ITEM	This field contains a note relating to characteristics of the item, as for example, wanting leaves, copy characteristics, binding, numbered copies of an edition, etc.
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	This field applies to the whole resource described in the record and/or reference files related to the described resource such as thumbnails and content pages. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to any other part of the resource described in the record.

Examples

EX 1
317 ##$aInscription on inside of front cover: Theodorinis ab Engelsberg$5Uk
EX 2
317 ##$aInscription on the title page in sixteenth century hand, 'Iohannes Wagge me iure tenet'$5DB/S-5-KK.555
EX 3
317 ##$aZapis na nasl. str: 'Poklonio Narodnom muzeumu Aleksander Shue... Zupnik u Stenjevcu'$5CiZaNSK: RII F-8º - 1541a
317 ##$aZapis na nasl. str: 'Colegii Zagrabiensis Soc. Jesu. Inscriptus. 1698'$5CiZaNSK: RII F-8º - 1541b
Notes on the inscription on the title page of two respective items of the same resource.
EX 4
317 ##$aEx libris: 'Nikolai Skerlecz de Lomniza'$5CiZaNSK: L III H13
EX 5

317 ##$aZapis na nasl. str: 'Daruje sveučilištnoj knjižnici Ivan Kukuljević$5CiZaNSK: R II C-8º - 100b
317 ##$aNa vrhu nasl. str. glagoljski zapis$5CiZaNSK: R II C-8º - 100b
702 ##$aKukuljević-Sakcinski$bIvan$4320$5CiZaNSK: R II C-8º - 100b
This copy is donated to the National and University Library, Zagreb by Ivan Kukuljević. On the same item there is a glagolitic inscription written by hand, probably by the donor.
EX 6
317 ##$aNa poleđini predlista zapisi: Francisci de Ragnina ex dono dni Vincentij Volanti; Velimir Gaj 1873$uhttp://www.nsk.hr/piesni/pol-predlist.html$5CiZaNSK: RIIC-8o-75
317 ##$aNa nasl. str. zapis: Ellena di Gozza Sorgo nta Ragnina$uhttp://www.nsk.hr/piesni/naslstr.html$5CiZaNSK: RIIC-8o-75
Digitised pages containing information on the previous owners of the book are linked to the Provenance note by URLs in $u.
EX 7
317 ##$aС экслибрисом Б-ки Голицына$5NLR
Ex libris of the Golitsyn Library.
EX 8
317 #$aFrom the Library of Kenneth Roberts, with his book plate, dated 20 November 1939.$5ViU:PS3535 .O176 Z42 .S8 G7 1939
317 ##$aAuthor's inscription: "For Irving Bacheller I am honoured to inscribe this book. John Steinbeck Tos Gator 1939."$5ViU:PS1054 .B3 Z9 .S74 G7 1939
317 ##$aGift of C.W. Barrett.$5ViU:PS1054 .B3 Z9 .S74 G7 1939
Two copies of *Grapes of wrath* in the Clifton Waller Barrett Library of American Literature, University of Virginia library. The second shows two stages in its provenance.
EX 9
The $6 codes 01-02 below link the related fields.
Provenance notes:
317 ##$6b01$aSignature "Aymon", 17e siècle, au f. a2$5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 233
317 ##$6b02$aEx libris ms. 16e siècle au titre d'Antoine Gérard. Ex-libris ms. 17e siècle au f. a2 du Collège de la Trinité des Jésuites de Lyon$5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 501
Provenance place and date access points:
621 #1$aFrance$f16$5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 233
621 #1$6b01$aFrance$f15$5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 501
621 #1$6b02$aFrance$cRhône$dLyon$eCollège de la Sainte Trinité de la Compagnie de Jésus $f16 $5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 501
Personal and corporate name access points:
702 #1$6b01$aGérard$bAntoine$factif en 15--$4390$5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 501
712 02$6b02$aCollège de la Sainte Trinité de la Compagnie de Jésus$cLyon$4390$5FR-693836101: Rés Inc 501
EX 10
317 ##$aArms of Edward Byde (d.1712) on both covers. Armorial bookplate of Byde, hand-coloured, with MS inscription: "This book was the property of Edward Byde, of Ware-park, co: Herts, Esq: after whose death, it was purchased, (at the sale by auction of a considerable part of his library;) by Thomas, Baron Dimsdale, MD, FRS &c., who on Dec. 27, 1773. presented it to John Zachary." Beneath this, armorial bookplate: "Talygarn" [seat of G. T. Clark]. On facing page, book stamp: TAL-Y-GARN. If the inscription is correct, the auction must have taken place several years after Byde's death in 1712, the year of Dimsdale's birth.$5UK-WlAbNL: WingU124

Provenance for a copy of *Nicolai Vptoni De studio militari, libri quatuor. ... Londini, 1654,* in National Library of Wales. Subfield $5 links this field to other item specific fields in the record. See 316 EX 15, 621 EX 3 and 702 EX 5.
EX 11
200 1#$aЦентральный исполнительный комитет СССР (ЦИК СССР). 1922-1938$j1917-1940 317##$aПервое поступление документов из Президиума ЦИК состоялось 24 апреля 1929 г. Основная часть фонда ЦИК СССР была передана из архива Президиума Верховного Совета СССР 5 апреля 1946 г.
Archives of the Central Executive Committee of the Soviet Union (Центральный исполнительный комитет СССР).
First documents of the archives were transferred from the Central Electoral Committee Presidium on April 24, 1929. Majority of documents of the collection were transferred from the Archive of the Presidium of the Supreme Soviet of the USSR on April 5, 1946.
EX 12
200 1#$aКоллекция материалов штаба А.В.Колчака$j1918-1920
317 ##$aОснову коллекции составили документы, сданные в РЗИА в ноябре 1925г. генералом П.Ф.Рябиковым (бывшим 2-м генералом-квартирмейстером при Верховном Правителе адмирале А.В.Колчаке). В феврале 1926 г. отдельные материалы поступили от И.А.Михайлова и Перемиловского, в марте 1936 г. через генерала Н.Г.Володченко были приобретены документы генерала Н.А.Лохвицкого.
Collection of records of the Headquarters of A. Kolchak; archival history of the collection is entered in the field 317.
EX 13
200 1#$aНиколай II, император. 1868-1918$j1860-1991
317 ##$8Акт отречения от престола великого князя Михаила Александровича$aНаходился на хранении в ЦПА ИМЭЛ при ЦК КПСС до 1966 г
Collection of records of Nikolay II, Emperor of Russia. One of the documents of the collection, *Акт отречения от престола великого князя Михаила Александровича* (*Act of abdication of Grand Duke Michael Alexandrovich*) remained in the custody of the CPA IMEL of CPSU Central committee in 1966. Title of the document to which the information applies is entered in subfield $8.
EX 14
317 ##$aAcheté en 2018 à Mr. Dupont
317 0#$aTrésor du Loiret, découvert en 1970, probablement dans le département du Loiret (France).
Archaeological provenance for a silver denarius from the Trésor du Loiret, a hoard found in 1970, probably in the Loiret county (France). This denarius was bought in 2018 from a private collector.
EX 15
317 0#$aTombe de Childéric, découverte fortuitement lors de travaux de terrassement en 1653 à Tournai
Archaeological provenance of one of the gold and garnet bees from the tomb of Merovingian king Childeric Ier. It happened to be found in 1653 by a worker building a wall.

History

1996	New field.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	New code value b added to $6. Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.
2012	Corrections and additions. $8 (new s/f)materials specified in field.
2023	New value of Indicator 1 and examples (14, 15).
2024	Text edit.

318 ACTION NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to record preservation information and treatment.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
318	ACTION NOTE	R	O
a	Action	NR	O
b	Action Identification	R	O
c	Time of Action	R	O
d	Action Interval	R	O
e	Contingency for Action	R	O
f	Authorisation	R	O
h	Jurisdiction	R	O
i	Method of Action	R	O
j	Site of Action	R	O
k	Action Agent	R	O
l	Status	R	O
n	Extent	R	O
o	Type of Unit	R	O
p	Non-public Note	R	O
r	Public Note	R	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Action

Not repeatable.

$b Action Identification

A code or designation designed to identify a specific action or identify it in conjunction with time of action, e.g. a project code. Repeatable.

$c Time of Action

A code for time of action in ISO format (year, month [if applicable], day [if applicable]). Repeatable.

$d Action Interval

Subfield is used when the time cannot be expressed as a specific date, e.g. at the end of academic term or every five years (EX 7). Repeatable.

$e Contingency for Action

Subfield is used when the time is linked to an unpredictable event, e.g. upon receipt (EX 3,6). Repeatable.

$f Authorisation

Subfield contains the text of or a citation to a rule etc. governing the action (EX 4). Repeatable.

$h Jurisdiction

Subfield contains the name of a person, an institution, or a position or function within an institution, in whom or in which responsibility for an action is vested (EX 7). Repeatable.

$i Method of Action

Subfield refers to the technique by which the action is carried out (EX 6). Repeatable.

$j Site of Action

Subfield describes the location in which the action takes place (EX 8). Repeatable.

$k Action Agent

Subfield contains the person or organisation which performs the action (EX 4, 8). Repeatable.

$l Status

Subfield contains the condition or state of the described materials, sometimes but not always resulting from an action (EX 1,2,4). Repeatable.

$n Extent

Subfield is used when the action affects only part of the item (EX 5). Repeatable.

$o Type of Unit

Subfield is used when the action affects only part of the item (EX 5). Repeatable.

$p Non-public Note

Subfield contains notes pertaining to an action on the resource which is not displayed to the public. Repeatable.

$r Public Note

Subfield contains notes pertaining to an action on the resource which is displayed to the public (EX 8). Repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be used when an electronic version of the image of a page(s) relevant to the preservation or treatment information is available (i.e. a digitized extract of the resource described in the record, part of an electronic resource). Repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

Mandatory.

Notes on Field Contents

It is considered that the record is made for the ideal copy. However, in this note field preservation information and treatment of the item is described. Code of the institution to which the Action Note field applies is recorded in $5.

Related Fields

141 CODED DATA FIELD: ITEM SPECIFIC ATTRIBUTES	This field contains fixed-length coded data relating to the item specific attributes of older monographic publication.
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	This field applies to the whole resource described in the record and/or reference files related to the described resource such as thumbnails and content pages. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to any other part of the resource described in the record.

Examples

EX 1
318 ##$aCondition reviewed$c19911121$ltext stained, binding intact, water damage $5QL/P18
EX 2
318 ##$aRepaired$c1991$loriginal retained, rebacked$5CA/U-1
EX 3
318 ##$aReview condition$ewhen deposit is complete$5CA/U66
EX 4
318 ##$aCondition reviewed$c19911121$lbinding intact$fSCAN$kCCM$5Uk
Condition checked by a member of staff with the initials CCM as part of a review project called SCAN.
EX 5
318 ##$aFumigate$n12$oarchives boxes$c19861010$5LO/N-1
EX 6
318 ##$aDispose of$efive years after closing file$iincinerate$5CaQQCT
EX 7
318 ##$aReview$dEvery five years$hArchives Unit$5CaQQCT
EX 8
318 ##$aExhibit$c19980401-19981231$jVictoria & Albert Museum$kJStC$r
This item is on loan to the Victoria and Albert Museum until the end of the year$5CaQQCT.
EX 9
318 ##$aPregledano$c19941031$lPojedini listovi izjedeni od crva$nRestaurirati $uhttp://www.nsk.hr/judita/primj-a/list28.html$uhttp://www.nsk.hr/judita/primja/list29.html$uhttp://www.nsk.hr/judita/primj-a/list30.html$5CiZaNSK: RIIC-8o-100 primj. A
Three leaves are damaged by worms. In order to document the restoration process the images of damaged leaves are linked to the Action note.

History

1996	New field.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.
2024	Update $u.

320 INTERNAL BIBLIOGRAPHIES/INDEXES NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note indicating that the resource contains a bibliography or index, optionally including the pagination.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
320	INTERNAL BIBLIOGRAPHIES/INDEXES NOTE	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be used when an electronic version of the internal bibliography and/or indexes is available (digitized extract of the resource described in the record, part of an electronic resource).

Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The note may be entered in any form.

Related Fields

105 CODED DATA FIELD: TEXTUAL LANGUAGE MATERIAL, MONOGRAPHIC	
110 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTINUING RESOURCES	These fields contain codes that indicate whether the resource contains bibliographies and indexes and describe the availability of a continuing resource index provided by the publisher.
321 EXTERNAL INDEXES/ABSTRACTS/REFERENCES NOTE	Notes concerning bibliographies and/or indexes available separately from the resource should be entered here.
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	This field applies to the whole resource described in the record and/or reference files related to the described resource such as thumbnails and content pages. It cannot be used to provide electronic access

	to any other part of the resource described in the record.

Examples

EX 1
320 ##$aBibliography: p. 210
EX 2
320 ##$aIncludes bibliographical references
EX 3
320 #$aConsists mostly of bibliographies
EX 4
320 ##$aBibliography: p.299-306. Index
EX 5
320 ##$aIndex published separately every December
A continuing resource with a regular index provided as part of the subscription.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2024	Update $u.

321 EXTERNAL INDEXES/ABSTRACTS/REFERENCES NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note indicating the availability in other documents of indexes and abstracts of the resource described in the record. For rare materials it may contain a brief reference to a bibliography, catalogue etc. where the resource has been cited or described.

Repeatable when more than one source is cited or the same source is cited more than once.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
321	EXTERNAL INDEXES/ABSTRACTS/REFERENCES NOTE	R	O
a	Name of Source	NR	O
b	Dates of Coverage	NR	O
c	Location within Source	NR	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	NR	O
x	International Standard Number	NR	O
5	Institution to which Field Applies	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Type of Coverage
	#	No information provided
	0	Indexing, abstracting coverage
	1	Bibliography, catalogue citation
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Type of Coverage

Specifies the extent of the description that will be found in the cited document.

Value #: No information provided

Indicates that the information in the field is free text or does not require an introductory phrase (EX 1).

Value 0: Indexing, abstracting coverage

Indicates that the information in the field specifies coverage of the resource in an indexing or abstracting service (EX 2, 3). A print/display constant equivalent to "Indexed in:" would be appropriate.

Value 1: Bibliography, catalogue citation

Indicates that the information in the field specifies an external source that cites the resource (EX 4, 5). A print/display constant equivalent to "Reference:" would be appropriate.

Subfields Description

$a Name of Source

Contains the name of the external source where the resource is indexed or cited. This may be the title of the source or the name of an organization or company. The Key Title is used when available. Not repeatable.

$b Dates of Coverage

The dates during which the external source indexed or abstracted the contents of the resource or the date of publication of the external source where relevant (EX 2,5). Not repeatable.

$c Location within Source

The number of page(s) or the internal number of the resource citation within the external source (EX 4,5). Not repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be used when the source is available in an electronic version (EX 3). Not repeatable.

$x International Standard Number

The ISBN, ISSN or other international standard number of the external source document. Preceded by identifier (EX 5) except in the case of ISSN (EX 2, 3). Not repeatable.

$5 Institution to which Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13 Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure).

Notes on Field Contents

Notes in this field may be structured (EX 2, 3, 4, 5) or free text (EX 1).

Related Fields

313 NOTES PERTAINING TO SUBJECT ACCESS	General notes concerned with the subject approach to a document should be entered in field 313.
320 INTERNAL BIBLIOGRAPHIES/INDEXES NOTE	Notes on internal bibliographies and/or indexes should be entered in field 320.
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	This field applies to the whole resource described in the record and/or reference files related to the described resource such as thumbnails and content pages. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to any other part of the resource described in the record.

Examples

EX 1
321 ##$aFor a list of contents see Heyer. Historical sets, collected editions and manuals of music
A set of musical scores described in an external publication.

EX 2
321 0#$aEducation index,$b1966-$x0013-1385
A continuing resource that has been indexed in its entirety by an external indexing service from 1966 to date.
EX 3
321 0#$aApplied science and technology index$x0003-6986
321 0#$aBiography index$x0006-3053
321 0#$aChemical abstracts$x0009-2258$uhttp://www.cas.org/
321 0#$aIndex medicus$x0019-3879
321 0#$aInternational packaging abstracts$x0260-7409
321 0#$aReaders' guide to periodical literature$x0034-0464
A continuing resource that has been indexed by a number of indexing and abstracting services.
EX 4
321 1#$aReuss, E. Bib. Novi. Testamenti Graeci$cp.35
321 1#$aRudolphi, E.C. Froschauer$c336
321 1#$aDarlow & Moule$cII, p.586
A rare book cited in several standard bibliographies.
EX 5
321 1#$aRism A/II$b1996$c450.069.836$xISBN 3-5984-0372-0
The manuscript of Piccinni's Le vicende della sorte (Münster, Stiftsbibliothek, SANT Hs 1580, Nr. 9) as cited in RISM A/II Répertoire international des sources musicales : Série A/2 : manuscripts musicaux après 1600 : catalogue thématique : CD-ROM, 5. ed., . München, 1996, ISBN 3-5984-0372-0, item nr. 450.069.836.
EX 6
200 1#$aVive la protection sociale !$fBertrand Fragonard
330 ##$aCompte-rendu$uhttps://ezproxy.universite.fr/login?url=https://cairn.info/revue-francaise-des-affaires-sociales-2012-4-page-221.htm$5[Identifier for the institution]
The catalogued book was reviewed in an academic journal under controlled access. The cataloguing institution has a specific URL to access this critical summary.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.
2024	Update $u. Added ex. 6.

322 CREDITS NOTE (PROJECTED AND VIDEO MATERIAL AND SOUND RECORDINGS)

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the names of persons or organizations, other than cast, who participated in the artistic or technical production of the resource.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
322	CREDITS NOTE (PROJECTED AND VIDEO MATERIAL AND SOUND RECORDINGS)	NR	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The term "Credits" or its equivalent should not be entered since this can be created automatically when the note is output. When source formats do not make the same distinction between cast notes and credits notes as UNIMARC, this field should be used for both.

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	If persons or organizations which participated in the artistic or technical production of the resource are given in field 200 then a 322 field is not necessary (see note on 7-- block below).
323 CAST NOTE (PROJECTED AND VIDEO MATERIAL AND SOUND RECORDINGS)	This field records details of performers, performing groups etc.
7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK	Many cataloguing codes require that any access point for the resource be justified in the notes if it is not present elsewhere in the description of the resource. Field 322 may be used for such notes.

Examples

EX 1
322 ##$aProducer, Ray Jewell; writer, Don Hall; narrator, Vic Perrin; music, Jack Meakin; editor, Rick Eisman.
EX 2
322 ##$aRobert Gugholz, clarinette. Orchestre de la Suisse romande. Ernest Ansermet, directeur.
The source format has only one notes field for all participants. This field is used instead of the general notes field 300.

323 CAST NOTE (PROJECTED AND VIDEO MATERIAL AND SOUND RECORDINGS)

Field Definition and Scope

This field records the names of featured players, performers, narrators, presenters etc. of projected and video material and the names of participants, performers or performing groups and the medium of performance for sound recordings.

Repeatable for each category of participant, performer, etc. (EX 4).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
323	CAST NOTE (PROJECTED AND VIDEO MATERIAL AND SOUND RECORDINGS)	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

When source formats do not make the same distinction between cast notes and credits notes as UNIMARC, field 322 Credits note should be used for both rather than field 300 General note.

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	If persons or organizations performing are given in field 200 then a 323 field is not necessary (see note on 7-- block below).
322 CREDITS NOTE (PROJECTED AND VIDEO MATERIAL AND SOUND RECORDINGS)	This field records details of persons or organizations other than cast or performers, performing groups etc.
7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK	Many cataloguing codes require that any access point for the resource be justified in the notes if it is not present elsewhere in the description of the resource. Field 323 may be used for such notes.

Examples

EX 1
323 ##$aCast: Mary Pickford, Claire McDowell, Dorothy Bernard, Charles West
EX 2
323 ##$aNarrators: Sian Phillips and Nigel Davenport
EX 3
323 ##$aMarshall Moss, violin; Neil Roberts, harpsichord

EX 4
323 ##$aNarrator: Salome Jens
323 ##$aCast: Daryl Hannah (Ayla), Pamela Reed (Iza), James Remar (Creb)
There are two 323 fields, one for each category of participant. The second note includes the name of the character played by each member of the cast.

324 ORIGINAL VERSION NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note indicating that the resource is a reproduction, e.g., facsimile or microform, by including a bibliographic reference to the original resource(s). The record describes the reproduction.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
324	ORIGINAL VERSION NOTE	NR	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used when the policy of the cataloguing agency is to describe a reproduction as a reproduction in the 2-- block, with details of the original resource from which it has been reproduced being given in the note. The note will usually include a word like facsimile, microform, etc., or its equivalent in other language. It is recommended that any reference to the original should be entered using ISBD punctuation (EX 1). If the source of the reproduction (holding institution, shelfmark) is known, it is strongly recommended that these details be included, especially for older (antiquarian) material.

Related Fields

305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY	Notes indicating the original of a facsimile should be entered in field 324 in preference to field 305.
307 NOTES PERTAINING TO PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION	Notes that the resource contains facsimiles should now be entered in field 307.
325 REPRODUCTION NOTE	Note giving details of the reproduction when the resource is catalogued as if it were the original.
455 REPRODUCTION OF	This field contains a description of an original or a link to a record describing an original.
456 REPRODUCED AS	This field contains a description of a reproduction or a link to a record describing a reproduction.

Examples

EX 1
324 ##$aFacsimile reprint of: 1797 ed. originally published as 'The complaint and the consolation, or, Night thoughts', London : Richard Edwards, 1797
EX 2
324 ##$aMicroform reproduction of: Mithridates, or, Mr. Newmans essay on development its own confutation, London : W.J.Cleaver, 1846.

EX 3
200 1#$a≠NSB≠Les ≠NSE≠écrivains français devant le cinéma$evisualité et problèmes d'écriture dans le roman français contemporain entre 1925 et 1966$fJeanne-Marie Clerc
210 ##$aParis$cBibliothèque Nationale$d1989$eParis$gBibliothèque Nationale, Centre de Sablé
215 ##$a33 microfiches$cargentique$d105 x 148 mm
324 ##$aEd. microfiche: [S.l.] : [s.n.], 1983
A microfiche reproduction (1989) by the Bibliothèque Nationale of the resource previously issued, also in microfiche (1983), place and publisher unknown.
EX 4
200 1#$aWilliam Shakespeare sonnets
210 ##$aLondon$cNoel Douglas$d1926
215 ##$a[84] p.$d23 cm
225 2#$aNoel Douglas replicas
324 ##$aFacsimile of: Shake-speare's sonnets. Neuer before imprinted. – At London : By G. Eld for T.T. and are to be solde by John Wright… , 1609. "Reproduced from the copy in the British Museum".

History

1994	Changes in name and function of field: Before 1994 this field also contained notes that the item contained facsimiles. Such notes should now be contained in field 307 Notes pertaining to physical description.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

325 REPRODUCTION NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note indicating that EITHER the resource is a reproduction of the resource described in the body of the record OR there is an available reproduction of the resource described in the body of the record. The rest of the record describes the original.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
325	REPRODUCTION NOTE	R	O
a	Text of Unstructured Note	NR	O
b	Type of Reproduction	NR	O
c	Place of Reproduction	R	O
d	Agency Responsible for the Reproduction	R	O
e	Date of Publication for the Reproduction	NR	O
f	Physical Description of the Reproduction	NR	O
g	Series Statement for the Reproduction	NR	O
h	Completeness of the Reproduction Code	NR	O
i	Coverage of the Reproduction	NR	O
j	Terms of Access to the Reproduction	R	O
n	Note About Reproduction	R	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	NR	O
v	Date of Consultation	NR	O
x	ISSN of the Reproduction	NR	O
y	ISBN of the Reproduction	R	O
z	Date when the URL in $u was Found to be Invalid	NR	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Original/Reproduction Indicator
	#	The resource is a reproduction; the note describes that reproduction
	1	The resource is an original; the note describes an available reproduction.
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Unstructured note
	1	Structured note

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Structure Indicator

Specifies whether or not the field is structured.

Value #: Unstructured note

All information is recorded in a single occurrence of subfield $a.

Value 1: Structured note

Information is recorded as necessary in subfields other than $a.

Subfields Description

$a Text of Unstructured Note

Used only for the complete text of an unstructured note. Subfield $a should be present if Indicator 2 is blank (#). Optional. Not repeatable.

$b Type of Reproduction

The mode of reproduction (e.g. digitization) or the carrier type of reproduction (e.g. microfilm, microfiche). Not repeatable.

$c Place of Reproduction

Place where the reproduction is published or distributed.

Corresponds to the contents of subfield 210$a of the record that would be established to describe the reproduction. Repeatable.

$d Agency Responsible for the Reproduction

The name of the agency that makes the reproduction available.

Corresponds to the contents of subfield 210$c of the record that would be established to describe the reproduction. Repeatable.

$e Date of Publication for the Reproduction

The date when the reproduction is published or distributed.

Corresponds to the contents of subfield 210$d of the record that would be established to describe the reproduction. Not repeatable.

$f Physical Description of the Reproduction

Extent, other physical details and dimensions of the reproduction.

Corresponds to the contents of field 215 of the record that would be established to describe the reproduction. When more than one subfield contributes to the content, standard punctuation should be applied. Not repeatable.

$g Series Statement for the Reproduction

Descriptive information on the series in which the reproduction has been published.

Corresponds to the contents of field 225 of the record that would be established to describe the reproduction. When more one subfield contributes to the content, standard publication should be applied. Not repeatable.

$h Completeness of the Reproduction Code

This subfield applies to the reproduction of the resource. Not repeatable.

Coded data subfield. The subfield is fixed at 1 character and contains the following data:

Character position 0: Completeness of the reproduction

#	undetermined
0	reproduction is not complete
1	reproduction is complete

$i Coverage of the Reproduction

This subfield applies to the reproduction of the resource.

When the reproduction is not complete, subfield $i is used to indicate the part of the collection which was reproduced at the date when the reproduction was consulted (see subfield $v). Not repeatable.

$j Terms of Access to the Reproduction

Coded data subfield that identifies the issues of the resource that have specific terms of access. Repeatable.

The subfield is fixed at 5 characters and contains the following data:

Character position 0: Terms of access to the reproduction

1	free-to-read	
2	free-to-read, partly	This value is used if a significant part is free. It is not used if the free-to-read parts consists only of secondary content (e.g., abstracts, summaries, presentation).
3	free-to-read, after embargo	
4	fully paid articles or content	
5	free-to-read upon subscription (requires signing up)	

Character position 1: Qualifier type

Used when the character position 0 contains the value 3, in order to specify the parts of the reproduction under embargo. If the position is not used, it contains a blank.

l	latest	
p	previous	
x	not applicable	The character position 0 contains a value other than 3.
#	no attempt to code	

Character positions 2: Unit under embargo

Used when the character position 0 contains the value 3, in order to specify the parts of the reproduction under embargo. If the position is not used, it contains a blank.

m	month(s) time	
w	week(s) time	
y	year(s) time	
i	issue(s) part	
x	not applicable	The character position 0 contains a value other than 3.
#	no attempt to code	

Character position 3-4: Number of units under embargo

Used when the character position 0 contains the value 3, in order to specify the parts of the reproduction under embargo. The two positions should be entered from left to right with a leading zero if necessary. If the character position 0 contains a value other than 3, character position 3-4 are blank.

$n Note About Reproduction

For a note on the completeness use subfield $i. Repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be used to link to a website. Corresponds to the contents of subfield 856$u of the record that would be established to describe the reproduction.

Not repeatable.

$v Date of Consultation

The time at which the reproduction was accessed for describing it in field 325. Information given in subfields $h, $i et $j correspond to the state of the reproduction at that time.

Enter the full date in standard form YYYYMMDD, according to ISO 8601-1 *Representation of dates and times*. Not repeatable.

$x ISSN of the Reproduction

ISSN assigned to the reproduction.

Corresponds to the contents of subfield 011$a of the record that would be established to describe the reproduction. Not repeatable.

$y ISBN of the Reproduction

ISBN assigned to the reproduction. Repeatable when more than one ISBN is attributed to the reproduction (e.g. more than one publisher, multi-part resources, etc.)

Corresponds to the contents of subfield 010$a of the record that would be established to describe the reproduction. Repeatable.

$z Date when the URL in $u was Found to be Invalid

The time at which access to the reproduction was denied, due to a broken or invalid URL in $u.

Enter the full date in standard form YYYYMMDD, according to ISO 8601-1. Not repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used when (a) the policy of the cataloguing agency is to describe a reproduction in the 2--block as if it were the original, the details of the reproduction being given in the note (EX 1-5), or (b) the cataloguing agency uses the note to draw attention to the availability of a reproduction of an original resource described in the record (EX 6). In both cases the 2--block contains the description of the original. The introductory text of the note is used to make clear the distinction between the two uses of the field. It is recommended that any reference to the reproduction should be entered using ISBD punctuation.

Related Fields

305 NOTES PERTAINING TO EDITION AND BIBLIOGRAPHIC HISTORY	Notes indicating the original of a facsimile should be entered in field 324 in preference to field 305.
324 ORIGINAL VERSION NOTE	Note giving details of the original resource(s) of which reproduction is being catalogued in the main body of the record.
335 LOCATION OF ORIGINALS/ REPRODUCTIONS	This field contains information on location and availability of copies of the described materials or information on location and availability of originals if the unit of description consists of copies or includes copies.
455 REPRODUCTION OF	This field contains a description of an original or a link to a record describing an original.
456 REPRODUCED AS	This field contains a description of a reproduction or a link to a record describing a reproduction.

Examples

EX 1
325 ##$aMicrofiche. Cambridge : Chadwyck-Healy Ltd, 1988. 2 fiches ; 11x15 cm. (The Nineteenth Century : general collection ; N.1.1.18)
EX 2
325 ##$aEd. microfilme. Lisboa : Biblioteca Nacional, 1987. 1 bobine (71 imagens) ; 35 mm
EX 3
325 ##$aEd. microfilme. Lisboa : Biblioteca Nacional, 1986-1988. 3 bobines ; 35 mm
EX 4
325 ##$aMicroforme de reproduction. Paris : Bibliothèque Nationale, 1990. 3 microfiches : argentique, 14x
EX 5
200 1#$aOutline of a new system of logic, with a critical examination of Dr. Whately's "Elements of logic"$fby George Bentham
210 ##$aLondon$cHunt and Clarke$b4, York Street, Covent Garden$d1827$gPrinted by Joseph Mallett$f59, Wardour Street, Soho, London
215 ##$axii, 287, [1] p.$d8°
700 #1$aBentham,$bGeorge$f1800-1884
325 ##$aMicrofilm. London : British Library, 1990. 1 reel ; 35 mm
325 ##$aMicrofiche. Cambridge : Chadwyck-Healey Ltd., 1990. 4 fiches ; 11x15 cm. (The Nineteenth Century : General Collection ; N. 1.1.4245)
The microforms described in this field are the resources being described in the notes. The original work is described from information taken from these microform reproductions. Compare EX 6.
EX 6
200 1#$aOutline of a new system of logic, with a critical examination of Dr. Whately's "Elements of logic"$fby George Bentham
210 ##$aLondon$cHunt and Clarke$b4, York Street, Covent Garden$d1827$gPrinted by Joseph Mallett$f59, Wardour Street, Soho, London
215 ##$axii, 287, [1] p.$d8°
700 #1$aBentham,$bGeorge$f1800-1884
325 1#$aMicrofilm. London : British Library, 1990. 1 reel ; 35 mm
325 1#$aMicrofiche. Cambridge : Chadwyck-Healey Ltd., 1990. 4 fiches ; 11x15 cm. (The Nineteenth Century : General Collection ; N. 1.1.4245)
The original work is the resource in hand. Microform copies available are described in the notes. Compare EX 5.
EX 7
Unstructured note:
200 1#$a≠NSB≠L'≠NSE≠Abeille musicale$ejournal artistique et littéraire$frédacteur en chef Gustave Sarazin
210 ##$aParis$b16 boulevard Sébastopol$c[s.n.]$d1870
325 1#$aReproduction numérique Paris: Bibliothèque nationale de France, 2009, ISSN 2418-4942, accessible en ligne http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/cb32680747x/date (consultée 17 décember 2014)
712 02$aBibliothèque nationale de France$4015
Digitized reproduction of a serial. The reproduction is complete and freely accessible.
Structured note:

200 1#$a≠NSB≠L'≠NSE≠Abeille musicale$ejournal artistique et littéraire$frédacteur en chef Gustave Sarazin
210 ##$aParis$b16 boulevard Sébastopol$c[s.n.]$d1870
325 11 $bReproduction numérique$cParis$dBibliothèque nationale de France$e2009$h1 $j1####$x2418-4942$uhttp://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/cb32680747x/date$v20141217
712 02$aBibliothèque nationale de France$4015
Digitized reproduction of a serial. The reproduction is complete and freely accessible.
EX 8
Structured note:
200 1#$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠Botaniste
210 ## $aCaen$cBotaniste$d1888-1975
325 11$bReproduction numérique$cParis$dBibliothèque nationale de France$e2008$h0 $i1888/11 (série 1, fasc. 2 -1936/12) (série 27, fasc. 6)$j1xx##$x2419-6592 $uhttp://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/cb343494147/date$v20141202
712 02$aBibliothèque nationale de France$4015
Digitized reproduction of a serial. The reproduction is not complete: only the first part of the collection which is free of rights has been digitized and published.
EX 9
Structured note:
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠Revue des livres pour enfants $fENSB [École nationale supérieure des bibliothèques], La Joie par les livres$fdir. publ. Geneviève Patte$gréd. Simone Lamblin
207 #0$aN° 52 (décembre 1976)
210 ##$aParis$cLa Joie par les livres$d1976-
215 ##$d23-25 cm
304 ##$aDir. publ. Geneviève Patte puis Nic Diament
325 11$bReproduction numérique$cParis$dBibliothèque nationale de France, Centre national de la littérature pour la jeunesse - La Joie par les Livres$e[2005]- $h1$i1976- $j3ly02$uhttp://lajoieparleslivres.bnf.fr./masc/portal.asp?INSTANCE=joie&PORTAL_ID=JPL_BIBNUM_RLPE.xml$v20150310
326 ##$aSix fois par an
The digitized version of past issues is freely accessible after a two-year embargo period.
EX 10
Structured note:
200 1#$aTraité de la cause de la digestion $r, ou l'on refute le nouveau sistéme de trituration & du broïement. Et où l'on prouve que les alimens sont digerez & convertis en chile, par une veritable fermentation. Par Me Jean Astruc [...]
325 #1$bNumérisation $cMontpellier$dBIU Montpellier $e2020$uhttps://ged.biu-montpellier.fr/florabium/jsp/nodoc.jsp?NODOC=2016_DOC_MONT_MBUM_133$5341725201:565003062
The library owns a print copy of an older monography, for which a digital copy is available on another library's digital repository. The union catalog policy is to establish distinct records for digital copies. As the library doesn't want to import the record for the digitization of another item, but to provide its users a direct link to the content, a local note is added.
EX 11
200 1#$aHormone action$hPart J$iNeuroendocrine peptides$fedited by P. Michael Conn,...
325 #1$bVersion électronique$uhttp://www.sciencedirect.com/science/bookseries/00766879/124$5341725201:565003062

History

1994	New field.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2016	New subfields added.
2017	Change in $a note ("… Indicator 2 is blank (#)."; misprints).
2024	Update $u. Added $5 and examples 10-11.

326 FREQUENCY STATEMENT NOTE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note indicating the frequency with which a continuing resource is issued.

If it is desired to note frequency at different periods during the existence of the continuing resource, the field should be repeated, the directory entries for the repeated fields being ordered with most recent frequency first (EX 2).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
326	FREQUENCY STATEMENT NOTE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)	R	O
a	Frequency	NR	O
b	Dates of Frequency	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Frequency

A statement indicating the frequency with which a continuing resource is issued. Not repeatable.

$b Dates of Frequency

The date span over which the frequency mentioned in subfield $a applies. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

There is no standard form for the data in this field. It may be omitted when the data could be generated from a code in field 110 character position 1, as in EX 1. Agencies preparing records should be consistent in the use of the fields in such circumstances.

Related Fields

110 CODED DATA FIELD: CONTINUING RESOURCES, Frequency of issue (character position 1)	This character position contains a code indicating the frequency of issue of the continuing resource. Being limited to one character position, it cannot record complex situations which may be explained in field 326.

Examples

EX 1
326 ##$aMonthly
A continuing resource published monthly.
EX 2
326 ##$aQuarterly$b1981-
326 ##$aMonthly$b1940-1980
A journal published monthly from 1940 to 1980 and published quarterly since.

327 CONTENTS NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note describing the contents of the resource.

Includes titles of separate works or parts of a resource or the table of contents.

Repeatable if the field is structured (Indicator 2 = 1) to record the table of contents of the described resource.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
327	CONTENTS NOTE	R	O
a	Text of Note	R	O
b	Title of Level 1 Subdivision	R	O
c	Title of Level 2 Subdivision	R	O
d	Title of Level 3 Subdivision	R	O
e	Title of Level 4 Subdivision	R	O
f	Title of Level 5 Subdivision	R	O
g	Title of Level 6 Subdivision	R	O
h	Title of Level 7 Subdivision	R	O
i	Title of Level 8 Subdivision	R	O
p	Sequence of Pages or First Pages of a Subdivision	R	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O
z	Other Information Concerning a Subdivision	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Completeness Indicator
	#	Undetermined
	0	Incomplete contents
	1	Complete contents
	2	Partial contents
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Unstructured note
	1	Structured note

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Completeness Indicator

Specifies the level of completeness of recording the content of the resource.

Value #: Undetermined

Use in the case of a structured field that is repeated.

Value 0: Incomplete contents

Content information is not fully available to be recorded. (EX 5).

Value 1: Complete contents

Content is fully recorded. (EX 1, 2, 3).

Value 2: Partial contents

Only selected content is recorded. (EX 4, 6).

Indicator 2: Structure Indicator

This indicator specifies whether or not the field is structured.

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Repeatable.

$b Title of Level 1 Subdivision

Repeatable.

$c Title of Level 2 Subdivision

Repeatable.

$d Title of Level 3 Subdivision

Repeatable.

$e Title of Level 4 Subdivision

Repeatable.

$f Title of Level 5 Subdivision

Repeatable.

$g Title of Level 6 Subdivision

Repeatable.

$h Title of Level 7 Subdivision

Repeatable.

$i Title of Level 8 Subdivision

Repeatable.

$p Sequence of Pages or First Pages of a Subdivision

Repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be used when an electronic version of the table of contents is available (digitized extract of the resource described in the record, part of an electronic resource). Repeatable.

$z Other Information Concerning a Subdivision

Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The data relating to each component part should be entered in this field in a separate occurrence of subfield $a. The data may be in any form, but it is recommended that ISBD data element definitions and punctuation be used if the title is followed by statement of responsibility (EX 1). If, however, the name of the author is placed before the title, it should be entered in access point form and followed by the title (EX 3). Punctuation may be included at subfield boundaries (EX 2, 3).

When the contents note is *complete* (Indicator 1 = 1), the term "*Contents:* " or its equivalent should not be entered since this can be created automatically as a print constant when the contents note is output (EX 1, 2, 3).

When the contents note is *not complete* (Indicator 1 = 0), the phrase "*Incomplete contents:*" or its equivalent should not be entered since this can be created automatically as a print constant when the contents note is output (EX 5).

When the contents note is *partial* the appropriate introductory text, which may take several different forms, must be entered manually (EX 4, 6). It is important to avoid ambiguous terms which may give the impression that the item is defective and lacks some of its text. If the note does refer to a specific item, rather than to all the copies of an edition, then field 316, Note Relating to the Item, should be used (see example there).

When the contents note is unstructured (Indicator 2 = #), if the full text of the contents note is entered in subfield $a, repeated as necessary (EX 1-3), using punctuation as necessary and no other subfields are used. When the contents note is structured (Indicator 2 = 1), $a is not used but any other subfields are used.

Related Fields

464 PIECE-ANALYTIC LEVEL	Field 464 may also be used to describe an entity at the piece-analytic level, and a note may be created directly from each 464 field.
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	This field applies to the whole resource described in the record and/or reference files related to the described resource such as thumbnails and content pages. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to any other part of the resource described in the record.

Examples

EX 1
327 1#$aThe Venice train / translated by Alastair Hamilton. This translation originally published: London : Hamilton, 1974. Translation of 'Le train de Venise'. Paris : Presses de la Cité, 1965$aMaigret and the millionaires / translated by Jean Stewart. This translation originally published: London : Hamilton, 1974. Translation of 'Maigret voyage'. Paris : Presses de la Cité, 1958$aThe innocents / translated by Eileen Ellenbogen. This translation originally published: London : Hamilton, 1973. Translation of 'Les innocents'. Paris : Presses de la Cité, 1972.
The work is a translation from the French of "The eleventh Simenon omnibus" by George Simenon. Within the contents note, full bibliographic details of the individual resources are given. ISBD conventions are used.
EX 2
327 1#$aThe Venice train;$aMaigret and the millionaires;$aThe innocents.
A contents note for the resource above in a less full form.
EX 3
327 1#$aRosten, Leo. The beggar and the wallet.$aMartinez, A.L. Life with daughter.$aJohnson, James L. Hard travelin'.$aKnight, Joseph. From the insane asylum.$aMcCallum, George P. The last summer
A contents note with the authors preceding the titles and inverted.
EX 4
327 2#$aIncludes the text of The Theft Act 1968 and The Theft Act 1978
A legal work which contains, in addition to the author's commentary, the full texts of two UK statutes.
EX 5
327 0#$av. 2. 987-1328$av. 3. 1328-1589

A multi-volume history of France, of which only v. 2 & 3 have been published or received. The following note could be generated from this field: "Incomplete contents: v. 2. 987-1328. – v. 3. 1328-1589"
EX 6
327 2#$aSelected contents: Country report on retrospective cataloguing : Denmark / Niels Ivan Boserup, Erland Kolding Nielsen. p. 79-84. – Norway : status report on retrospective cataloguing / Hans M. Fagerli. p. 85-86. – Retrospective bibliography : the eighteenth century
EX 7
327 #1$bPreface$p7
327 #1$bManagement and Use of Name Authority Files$c1. Background$p9$c2. Quantitative Results Covering all Name Authority Files$p13$c3. General Analysis of Automated Authority Files$p15$c4. Qualitative Analysis of each Type of Authority Files$p19$c5. A Few Comments$p21
327 #1$bSummaries in IFLA official languages$cEnglish$p27$cFrench$p31$cGerman$p35$cRussian$p39$cSpanish$p43
327 #1$bTables$p47$cTable 1. Method of working on authority file$p47$cTable 2. Quantitative results covering authority lists and files$p48$cTable 3. General analysis of automated authority files$p50$cTable 4. Qualitative analysis of names of persons authority records$p52$cTable 5 Qualitative analysis of corporate name authority records$p56$bTable 6. Qualitative analysis of uniform titles authority records$p58$cTable 7. Analysis of an authority record for name of person$p61$cTable 8. Analysis of an authority record for a corporate body$p62
327 #1$bQuestionnaire$p63
327 #1$bList of experts who replied to the questionnaire$p81
Table of contents of the resource : Management and use of name authority files : personal names, corporate bodies and uniform titles : evaluation and prospects : revised text of a paper presented at the open forum of the Section on Bibliography during the IFLA Paris conference in August 1989 … / by Marcelle Beaudiquez, … and Françoise Bourdon, … – München … : Saur, 1991. – (UBCIM publications. New Series 5)
EX 8
327 #1$bContributors to This Volume$pV
327 #1$bToward the Future of the Descriptive Cataloging Rules$p1$zBrian E. C. Schottlaender
327 #1$bKey Lessons of History: Revisiting the Foundations of AACR$p6$zLynne C. Howarth
327#1$bAACR3? Not!$p19$zMichael Gorman
327#1$bAACR and Authority Control$p30$zBarbara B. Tillett
327#1$bEditions: Brainstorming for AACR2000$p40$zMartha M. Yee
327#1$bWhat's wrong with AACR2: a Serials Perspective$p66$zCrystal Graham
327#1$bArchival Description and New Paradigms of Bibliographic Control and Access in the Networked Digital Environment$p84$zSteven L. Hensen
327#1$bCataloging Uncertainty: Documents, Catalogs, and Digital Disorder$p97 $zDavid M. Levy
327#1$bBibliographic Description and Digital Objects: Towards a New Discipline of Information Description and Management$p107$zClifford Lynch
327#1$bBibliography$p121
327#1$bAcronyms and Initialisms Used$p129
327#1$bIndex$p131
On the table of contents the name of the author of each subdivision is given *after* the mention of the first page of each subdivision, so this name is introduced by subfield $z. Table of contents of the resource : The Future of the descriptive cataloguing rules : papers from the ALCTS preconference, AACR2000 American library association Annual conference, Chicago, June 22, 1995 / ed. by Brian E. C. Schottlaender series editor Edward Swanson. – Chicago London : American Library Association, 1998. – (ALCTS Papers on Library Technical Services and Collections 6)
EX 9

327 #1$bForeword$p1
327 #1$bIntroduction$p3$c0.1 Background$p3$c0.2 Methodology$p6$c0.3 The Problems$ 327 #1$bPart One: […]
327 #1$bPart Two: International Cooperation on which Authority Data ?$p31$c2.1 The functions of an authority file$p35$d2.1.1 The management of name access points $p35$e2.1.1.1 Manual management files$p36$e2.1.1.2 Automated management files$p37$d2.1.2 The identification of names (persons, corporate bodies, works)$p40 $e2.1.2.1 The specific contents of identification files$p41$e2.1.2.2 Manual or automated identification files$p44$c2.2 Characteristics of some authority files$p47 $d2.2.1 Aims defined when the automated authority files were conceived$p47$d2.2.2 The diversity of automated systems used at present$p50$e2.2.2.1 Formats$p50 $e2.2.2.2 Links between authority files and bibliographic files$p51$c2.3 Authority control and international cooperation$p55$d2.3.1 How can name authority control be defined and how useful is it ?$p56$d2.3.2 Problems involved in authority control in an international context$p58$d2.3.3 Authority files and international cooperation$p61 327 #1$bPart Three […]
This is the table of contents of the following resource: International cooperation in the field of authority data : an analytical study with recommendations / by Françoise Bourdon ; transl. from the French by Ruth Webb. – München … : K. G. Saur, 1993. – (UBCIM Publications. New Series 11)
EX 10
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠mauvaise réputation$bEnregistrement sonore$fGeorges Brassens, chant, guit.
327 ##$aDisque 1 : La mauvaise réputation$aLe gorille$aHécatombe$aLe parapluie $aLe petit cheval$aCorne d'aurochs$aLa chasse aux papillons$aLa cane de Jeanne$aIl n'y a pas d'amour heureux$aLe vent$aPauvre Martin$aBallade des dames du temps jadis$aLes amoureux des bancs publics$aBrave Margot$aJ'ai rendez-vous avec vous $aP… de toi$aChanson pour l'Auvergnat$aLa prière$aJe suis un voyou$aAuprès de mon arbre$aJe me suis fait tout petit$aAu bois de mon cœur$aLe pornographe
327 ##$aDisque 2: L'orage$aPénélope$aLes funérailles d'antan$aEmbrasse-les tous$aLa fille à cent sous$aDans l'eau de la claire fontaine$aLa complainte des filles de joie$aLes amours d'antan$aJeanne$aLes copains d'abord$aLes deux oncles $aSaturne$aLe 22 septembre$aLa non-demande en mariage$aSupplique pour être enterré à la plage de Sète$aRien à jeter$aLes passantes$aMourir pour des idées$aLe roi$aLa ballade des gens qui sont nés quelque part$aLa chanson du hérisson
La mauvaise réputation by Georges Brassens is a double audio compact disc. Both 327 fields are "unstructured" (indicator 2: = #).
EX 11
200 1#$a≠NSB≠L'≠NSE≠œuvre du XXe siècle$h2$iVienne-Budapest $cEnregistrement sonore$fSchönberg, Berg, Webern... [et al.], comp. $gSinfonieorchester des Südwestfunks$gdir. Ernest Bour
327 #1$bDisque 1: Arnold Schönberg$c5 Orchesterstücke, op.16$cVariationen für Orchester, op.31$cBegleitmusik zu einer Lichtspielszene, op.34$cThema und Variationen für Orchester, op.43b$zArnold Schönberg
327 #1$bDisque 2: Alban Berg$cDrei Orchesterstücke, op.6$cFünf Orchesterlieder nach Ansichskarten, op. 4$cConcerto "A la mémoire d'un ange" pour violon et orchestre$zAlban Berg
327 #1$bDisque 3: Anton Webern$c6 Stücke für Orchester, op.6$cFünf Stücke für Orchester, op.10$cVier Lieder für Gesang und Orchester, op. 13$cSymphonie für Klarinette, Bassklarinette, zwei Horner, Harfe..., op. 21$cVariationen, op. 30$zAnton Webern
327 #1$bDisque 4: Béla Bartók$cLe prince de bois : grande suite, Sz. 60$cSuite de danses, Sz. 77$cDivertimento pour cordes, Sz.113$zBéla Bartók
Structured contents notes (indicator 2 = 1) for a 4 audio CD set, each CD bearing its own title.

History

2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Corrections.
2023	Correction/text edit (indicators).
2024	Update $u. Correction/text edit (indicators, as U/A).

328 DISSERTATION (THESIS) NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note indicating that the resource is a thesis or dissertation and optionally including the degree for which it was presented, the academic institution awarding the degree, and the year of the degree.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
328	DISSERTATION (THESIS) NOTE	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O
b	Dissertation or Thesis Details and Type of Degree	NR	O
c	Discipline of Degree	NR	O
d	Date of Degree	NR	O
e	Body Granting the Degree	NR	O
t	Title of Other Edition of Dissertation or Thesis	NR	O
z	Text Preceding or Following the Note	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	No information available
	0	Structured
	1	Not structured

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

$b Dissertation or Thesis Details and Type of Degree

Not repeatable.

$c Discipline of Degree

Not repeatable.

$d Date of Degree

Not repeatable.

$e Body Granting the Degree

Not repeatable.

$t Title of Other Edition of Dissertation or Thesis

Not repeatable.

$z Text Preceding or Following the Note

Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

There are no standards for the format of this field outside the practices of individual cataloguing rules.

The text of the note may use: one $a subfield. or; subfields $b, $c, $d, $e and $t as needed. Subfield $z may be used for free text preceding or following the other subfields.

Related Fields

105 CODED DATA FIELD : TEXTUAL LANGUAGE MATERIAL, MONOGRAPHIC	This field contains the values “7”, “m” or “v” in one of the character positions $a/4-7 (form of content codes) when the resource is a dissertation or thesis.
301 NOTES PERTAINING TO IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS	

Examples

EX 1A
Unstructured method
328 #1$aTh. univ. : Géographie : Brest, Université de Bretagne occidentale : 1996
EX 1B
Structured method
328 #0$bTh. univ.$cGéographie$eBrest, Université de Bretagne occidentale$d1996
EX 1C
Structured method with additional information:
328 #0$zVersion abrégée de :$bTh. univ.$cGéographie$eBrest, Université de Bretagne occidentale$d1996$tLes ports de pêche hauturière de Bretagne méridionale : étude géographique de la mutation d’un système halieutique
EX 2A
Unstructured method
328 #1$aTese mestr. Antropologia, Univ. Nova de Lisboa, 1996
EX 2B
Structured method
328 #0$bTese mestr.$cAntropologia$eUniv. Nova de Lisboa$d1996
EX 3A
Unstructured method
328 ##$aThèse de lic. droit Lausanne, 1992 (échange limité)
EX 3B
Structured method
328 #0$bThèse de lic.$cdroit$eLausanne$d1992$z(échange limité)
EX 4A
Unstructured method
328 #1$aThesis (Ph.D.)--University of Ottawa, 1974
EX 4B
Structured method
328 #0$bThesis (Ph.D.)$eUniversity of Ottawa$d1974
EX 5A
Unstructured method
328 #1$aZugl.: Berlin, Techn. Univ., Diss., 1998

EX 5B
Structured method
328 #0$zZugl.:$eBerlin, Techn. Univ.$bDiss.$d1998
EX 6
Unstructured method
328 #1$aThèse: Droit: Aix-Marseille III: 1981
EX 7
328 ##$aRevision of thesis (Ph.D.) -- University of Alabama
The cataloguing code does not distinguish between formatted and unstructured notes.
EX 8A
Unstructured method
328 #1$aOriginally presented as the author's thesis (Ph.D.) -- Harvard University, 1979.
EX 8B
Structured method
328 #0$zOriginally presented as the author's thesis (Ph.D.)$eHarvard University$d1979.

History

2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Change of indicators. Indicator 1 defined.

330 SUMMARY OR ABSTRACT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a summary or abstract of the resource.

It may be repeated when, for example, it is required to record summaries in more than one language.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
330	SUMMARY OR ABSTRACT	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be used to link to an online summary or abstract. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field may contain any kind of summary or abstract, whether informative, indicative, critical or evaluative. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 330.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format	
327 CONTENTS NOTE	The contents note field should be used when references to sections contained within the resource are given rather than a summary or abstract.
UNIMARC/Authorities Format	
378 ABSTRACT OF WORK OR EXPRESSION	A summary or in-deep analysis of a work or expression often provided by the author of the work or another entity with authority.

Examples

EX 1
330 ##$aUses puppet characters to present a lesson on safety. For primary grades.
EX 2
330 ##$aDefines and illustrates trends of various modernistic art styles in American painting. Explains how these styles are accomplished largely by the use of colour and form, disregarding recognizable subject matter.

EX 3
200 1#$aUn ouragan dans la barbe !$bTexte imprimé$fNoelia Diaz Iglesias
330 ##$aHugo est un petit garçon plein de vie, enfant unique à l'imagination débordante, un ouragan. Le moins que l'on puisse dire au début de cette histoire, c'est qu'il n'est pas ravi d'aller passer une semaine chez son papy. Ce grand-père lui fait peur, il ne s'exprime qu'en langue des signes, un langage qu'Hugo ne connaît pas. Et que fait-il dans ce mystérieux atelier qui occupe le sous-sol de sa maison ? Croquée et racontée à hauteur d'enfant avec une belle fantaisie et une grande liberté, une rencontre touchante entre un grand-père et un petit-fils.$5CNLJ
A summary of this book was created by the Centre national de la littérature jeunesse (CNLJ), the French centre for children's literature.

History

2020	Update section Related Fields.
2024	Added $u, and ex 3.

332 PREFERRED CITATION OF DESCRIBED MATERIALS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the citation for the materials described in the record in the form preferred by the custodian or originator.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
332	PREFERRED CITATION OF DESCRIBED MATERIALS	R	O
a	Preferred Citation	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Preferred Citation

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A print/display constant equivalent to Cite as: might be used with this field.

Related Fields

None.

Examples

EX 1
332 ##$aCabinet of American Illustration (Library of Congress Prints and Photographs Division)
The citation for a collection of American illustrations in the form preferred by the Library of Congress, the holding institution.
EX 2
332 ##$aJennings M. Kent and Richard G. Niemi. Youth-parent socialization panel study, 1965-1973. Ann Arbor, Mich. : Inter-University Consortium for Political and Social Research, 1981
The citation for a machine-readable data file in the form preferred by the originators.

333 USERS/INTENDED AUDIENCE NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains information about the users or intended audience of the material described.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
333	USERS/INTENDED AUDIENCE NOTE	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A print/display constant such as "Audience:" might be used with this field.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Bibliographic format	
100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Target Audience Code (character positions 17-19)	These character positions hold codes for certain types of intended audience.
UNIMARC/Authorities format	
333 USERS/INTENDED AUDIENCE NOTE	This field contains information about the users or intended audience of the work or an expression of a work.

Examples

EX 1
333 ##$aFor remedial reading programmes
A note made in the record for a set of flash cards.
EX 2
333 ##$aMPAA rating: R
A note made in the record for a motion picture which has been given a restricted rating.

EX 3
333 ##$aProgram designed for geographers, planners, geologists, meteorologists, and others who have a professional interest in analyzing spatial data
A note made in the record for a machine-readable file.
EX 4
333 ##$a'Catholic paper for the Slovaks in Cleveland, Ohio, and vicinity'
A note, quoted from the resource, in the record for a newspaper.
EX 5
200 1#$a15 minutes par jour pour s'exercer en anglais$e1.000 exercices pour progresser en anglais
333 ##$aDébutant A2 ; Intermédiaire B1$575104300
A library has developed a specialized collection of methods for learning languages and needs to index each of them by a level quotation according to the CEFR (Common European Framework of Reference for Languages) classification. Other libraries in the union catalogue don't have this need.

History

2020	Update section Related Fields.
2024	Added $5, new ex. 5.

334 AWARDS NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains information on awards or prizes associated with the described resource. The field may or may not be divided into separate subfields.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
334	AWARDS NOTE	R	O
a	Text of Awards Note	NR	O
b	Name of Award	NR	O
c	Year of Award	NR	O
d	Country of Award	NR	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Awards Note

This subfield contains a free text note, describing the prize or award. This subfield field may be used instead of subfields $b-$d when the information cannot be separated into specific subfields. Not repeatable.

$b Name of Award

This subfield contains the name of the award. Not repeatable.

$c Year of Award

This subfield contains the year in which the award was made. The year is entered in the form YYYY. Not repeatable.

$d Country of Award

This subfield contain the code for the country which makes the award. For codes use ISO 3166-1 (see Appendix A). Not repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be used to link to a site describing the award. Repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

Not repeatable.

Related Fields

UNIMARC/Bibliographic Format	
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	This field applies to the whole resource described in the record and/or reference files related to the described resource such as thumbnails and content pages. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to any other part of the resource described in the record.
UNIMARC/Authorities Format	
334 AWARDS NOTE	Information on awards or prizes associated with the entity identified in block 2--. (agents, works, ex-pressions).

Examples

EX 1a
Single subfield method
334 ##$aAcademy Award for Best Picture, 1987
EX 1b
Multiple subfield method
334 ##$bAcademy Award for Best Picture$c1987$dUS
EX 2a
Single subfield method
334 ##$aBooker Prize, 1980
EX 2b
Multiple subfield method
334 ##$bBooker Prize$c1980$dGB
EX 3a
Single subfield method
334 ##$aPrix Louis Delluc 1984
EX 3b
Multiple subfield method
334 ##$bPrix Louis Delluc$c1984$dFR
EX 4
Single subfield method
334 ##$aCésar 1984 du meilleur film de l'année
EX 5
200 1#$aJean Doux et le mystère de la disquette molle$fPhilippe Valette
334 ##$aPrix Cezam de la BD 2018, palmarès du personnel de l'Université de Nantes : 5e place$5FR-441092101
The recording of information about preferences expressed at a local level for a regional prize allows the institution to generate lists and patrons to search with accurate criteria.

History

2002	New field.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

2020	Update section Related Fields.
2024	Update $u. Added $5. New ex. 5.

335 LOCATION OF ORIGINALS/REPRODUCTIONS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains information on location and availability of copies of the described materials or information on location and availability of originals if the unit of description consists of copies or includes copies. The information in the field may refer either to the whole unit of description, or to some part of it.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
335	LOCATION OF ORIGINALS/ REPRODUCTIONS	R	O
a	Identification of the Holder	NR	O
b	Address	R	O
c	Country	R	O
g	Control Number	R	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Role of Holding Institution
	0	Holder of originals
	1	Holder of reproductions
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Identification of the Holder

Name of the repository or individual holding the item. Not repeatable.

$b Address

Postal address of the holder. Repeatable.

$c Country

Country code for the location indentified in subfield $a. The codes are to be taken from the two-character codes of ISO 3166-1. Repeatable.

$g Control Number

Any significant control number for the materials described; e.g. call number, inventory number, accession numbers, etc. Repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be used to link to a website. Repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Related Fields

324 ORIGINAL VERSION NOTE	Note giving details of the original resource(s) may be used if detailed information on location of originals is not required.
325 REPRODUCTION NOTE	Note giving details of the reproduction may be used if detailed information on location of reproductions is not required.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$aАкт отречения от престола императора Николая II. Подлинник$j02.03.1917
325 1#$aСм. также в ГА РФ ф. 1779 оп.3 Канцелярия Временного правительства
335 1#$aГА РФ$gGA RF_1779/3$b119992, Москва, ул. Большая Пироговская, 17$cRU
Act of abdication of Grand Duke Michael Alexandrovich. Field 325 contains information on existing reproduction; field 335 – detailed location of the reproduction, name and address of the repository, control number of the unit.

History

2012	New field.
2024	Update $u.

336 TYPE OF ELECTRONIC RESOURCE NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note about the type of electronic resource. In addition to a general descriptor (e.g. text, computer program, numeric), more specific information, such as the form or genre of textual material (e.g. biography, dictionaries, indexes) may be recorded in this field.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
336	TYPE OF ELECTRONIC RESOURCE NOTE	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A print/display constant such as Type of file: might be used with this field.

Related Field

135 CODED DATA FIELD: ELECTRONIC RESOURCES)	
230 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: ELECTRONIC RESOURCE CHARACTERISTICS	The field is equivalent only to the ISBD(ER) Type and Extent of Resource Area.
231 DIGITAL FILE CHARACTERISTICS [PROVISIONAL]	

Examples

EX 1
336 ##$aNumeric (summary statistics)
EX 2
336 ##$aText (Law reports and digests)

History

1998	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2017	Corrections and additions.

337 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS NOTE (ELECTRONIC RESOURCES)

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to record technical information about an electronic resource.

The field is equivalent to the ISBD notes on Systems Requirements (Electronic Resources).

If field 856 is not used (in a record describing an electronic resource), then 337 must be present.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
337	SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS NOTE (ELECTRONIC RESOURCES)	R	MA
a	Text of Note	NR	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be used to point to a page(s)/site(s) holding relevant technical information about an electronic resource. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field includes such as the presence or absence of certain kinds of codes or the physical characteristics of the file (e.g. recording densities, parity, or blocking factors). For software, data such as the software programming language, the number of source program statements, computer requirements (e.g. computer manufacturer and model, operating system, or memory requirements), and peripheral requirements (e.g. number of tape drives, number of disk or drum units, number of terminals, or other peripheral devices, support software or related equipment) can be recorded. For remote access resources, information about the mode of access may be recorded.

Electronic location and access field 856 provides detailed coded information for access, the mode of access note may be brief. It may begin with the words "Mode of access:" (EX 6) though other wording may be used (EX 9).

Related Fields

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	This field applies to the whole resource described in the record and/or reference files related to the described resource such as thumbnails and content pages. It cannot be used to provide

	electronic access to any other part of the resource described in the record.

Examples

EX 1
337 ##$aOperates on IBM 360 and 370 under OS SVS and OSMVS with 9K of internal memory
EX 2
337 ##$aRequires IBM 2740 terminal with special narrow platen and form feeding features
EX 3
337 ##$aDisk characteristics: Disk is single sided, double density, soft sectored
EX 4
337 ##$aSystem requirements: IBM PC, 64K, with color card, 1 disk drive. Color monitor recommended.
EX 5
337 ##$aMode of use: On-line video or teletype terminal or with a small dedicated computer (e.g. PDP 8).
EX 6
337 ##$aMode of access: World Wide Web
EX 7
337 ##$aAccess through computer network
EX 8
337 ##$aElectronic access through Internet
EX 9
337 ##$aZahtjevi sustava: mrežni preglednik; videopreglednik QuickTime$uhttp://www.apple.com/quicktime/
337 ##$aNačin pristupa: World Wide Web$uhttp://www.nsk.hr/qtvr/donji-pocetna.htm
System requirement to view the video session on the website described in the record is video viewer QuickTime. It can be found at the URL entered in subfield $u in the first field 337.

History

1998	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2017	Corrections and additions.
2024	Update $u.

338 FUNDING INFORMATION NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains information about the contract, grant, and project numbers when the work results from a funded project. Information concerning the sponsor or funding agency also may be included.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
338	FUNDING INFORMATION NOTE	R	O
a	Text of Unstructured Note	NR	O
b	Funding Organization	R	O
c	Program	R	O
d	Project Number	NR	O
e	Jurisdiction	R	O
f	Project Name	NR	O
g	Project Acronym	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Unstructured note
	1	Structured note

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Structure Indicator

Specifies whether the field is structured.

Value #: Unstructured note

All information is recorded in a single occurrence of subfield $a.

Value 1: Structured note

Information is recorded as necessary in subfields other than $a.

Subfields Description

$a Text of Unstructured Note

Use only for the complete text of an unstructured note. Subfield $a should be present if Indicator 2 is blank (#). Not repeatable.

$b Funding Organization

Information concerning the sponsors or funding agencies. Repeatable.

$c Program

The name refers to a specific program. Repeatable.

$d Project Number

A unique identifier in the scope of funding organization (e.g., a grant agreement number). Not repeatable.

$e Jurisdiction

The name of government or other formally constituted legal body (e.g., EU for European Union). Repeatable.

$f Project Name

The full form of the project name. Not repeatable.

$g Project Acronym

The project acronym. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

314 NOTES PERTAINING TO RESPONSIBILITY	This field includes notes on persons or corporate bodies (including meetings) which have responsibility for the resource and which may not have been recorded elsewhere in the record.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$aSvet tišine$eškola gestovnog govora$eZaječar od 1. 8. – 30. 10. 2004.$f[organizator] Međuopštinska organizacija gluvih i nagluvih Zaječara
338 ##$aProjekat finasiran iz programa Self Help and Advocacy for Rights and Equal Opportunities South East Europe (Share-SEE)
Unstructured note about the grant for the project *The Silence World*.
EX 2
200 1#$aNew library services at western Balkan universities$efinal report
338 #1$bFinancijer: EC$cTempus$d2009-4930
The structured note refers the funding organization, the program and the grant agreement number.
EX 3
200 1#$aHuman-machine interfacing by decoding surface electromyogram$fDario Farina, Aleš Holobar
338 #1$bFinancer: EC$cFP7$d267888$eEU$fDecoding the Neural Code of Human Movements for a New Generation of Man-machine Interfaces$gDEMOVE
Structured note with the name and acronym of the project.

History

2017	New field.
2020	Update section Related Fields.

345 ACQUISITION INFORMATION NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field may contain the name and address of the publisher, distributor, or other source for acquisition. It may also include the stock number, the physical medium, and the terms of availability for the catalogued item or a different physical format version of the item.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
345	ACQUISITION INFORMATION NOTE	NR	O
a	Source for Acquisition/Subscription Address	R	O
b	Stock Number	R	O
c	Medium	R	O
d	Terms of Availability	R	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Source for Acquisition/Subscription Address

The name and/or address of a source for acquisition, including subscription address, of the resource. Repeatable.

$b Stock Number

The number associated with the item by the supplier to facilitate distribution of the item. If the stock number is the ISBN or ISSN, it need not be repeated in this field. Repeatable.

$c Medium

The medium(s) in which the item is available. Repeatable (EX 3).

$d Terms of Availability

The price of the item in monetary or other units. Repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be used to link to a site from which the document can be acquired (documents published by associations, institutions, etc.). Repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

If the publisher's address in field 210 or 214. is the same as would appear in this field it need not be repeated in this field.

Related Fields

210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC.	This field contains the name, and in some instances the address, of the publisher.
214 PRODUCTION, PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, MANUFACTURE STATEMENTS	
856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	This field applies to the whole resource described in the record and/or reference files related to the described resource such as thumbnails and content pages. It cannot be used to provide electronic access to any other part of the resource described in the record.

Examples

EX 1
345 ##$aU.S. Bureau of the Census$bC CPS 68 003
The source for acquisition and order number of a computer file.
EX 2
345 ##$aFreytag, Berndt und Artaria$bBestell-Nr. 5406
The publisher and order number for a map.
EX 3
345 ##$aNational Technical Information Service$bPB-363547$cpaper copy$d$4.00$cmicrofiche d3.00
The document distribution service, order number, available physical media, and prices for a technical report.
EX 4
210 ##$aWashington, D.C.$b1649 K ST., NW, Washington, 20065$cWider Opportunities for Women$d1979 printing, c1975
345 ##$aWider Opportunities for Women, 1649 K St., NW, Washington, D.C. 20065.
The full name and address of the publisher are given in both the 210 and the 345 field.
EX 5
210 ##$aToronto$cThe Chapter$d1975-1976
345 ##$aMultiple Sclerosis Society, Metropolitan Toronto Chapter, 13a Bloor St. West, Toronto, Ont. M5S lN5, Canada
The full name and address of the publisher, when the information was given in abbreviated form in the 210 field.
EX 6
345 ##$aLa bouquinerie$5751025206:380043467
As the book was out-of-print, a library had to buy its specific item (mentioned in $5) from a second-hand vendor, mentioned in $a.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2020	Update section Related Fields.
2024	Update $u. Added $5, and ex. 6.

346 NOTE ON ACCRUALS AND FREQUENCY OF USE

Field Definition and Scope

Information about the foreseen additions and/or the rate of reference use of the described material.

The note may refer to the library or archive collections.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
346	NOTE ON ACCRUALS AND FREQUENCY OF USE	R	O
a	Accruals	R	O
b	Frequency of Use	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O
8	Materials Specified	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Accruals

A rate at which the described materials are accumulating is expressed as a ratio of volume to a time period.

It may indicate the quantity and frequency of the accruals. Optional. Repeatable. (EX 1, 2, 3)

$b Frequency of Use

A measure of reference activity usually expressed as a ratio of a number of retrievals to time period, or by general terms such as active or inactive this subfiield indicates the measure of reference activity, usually expressed as a ratio of a number of retrievals to time period, or by general terms such as active or inactive. Optional. Repeatable. (EX 2

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Not repeatable. (EX 3)

Related Fields

251 ORGANIZATION AND ARRANGEMENT OF MATERIALS
317 PROVENANCE NOTE

Examples

EX 1
346 ##$aNo further materials are expected for this collection.
EX 2
346 ##$aAverage semi-annual accumulation is 10 cu. ft.$bTotal reference requests for 2010:150
EX 3
346 ##$8Employee records$aA5 cu. ft. annual accumulation

History

2020	New field.

360 NOTE ON SPECIFIC ELEMENTS OF NUMISMATIC DESCRIPTION

Field Definition and Scope

A note relating to the description of the numismatic resource.

This field contains a note on specific elements that are part of the design of a numismatic resource, such as monograms, control marks, dies, punches, etc.

It is also used to record bibliographical reference and/or the URI of any of these elements.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
360	NOTE ON SPECIFIC ELEMENTS OF NUMISMATIC DESCRIPTION	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	MA
b	Citation	R	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Element
	#	Not specified / other
	0	Monogram
	1	Die
	2	Punch
	3	Control mark
2		Part of the Numismatic Resource Described
	#	Unspecified/other
	1	Obverse
	2	Reverse
	3	Edge

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Element

Specifies the particular element of the numismatic resource that is described in this field.

Value 0: Monogram

A symbol made by overlapping or combining letters or other graphemes.

Value 1: Die

An engraved stamp used for impressing a design (images, value, and mottoes) upon a blank piece of metal to make a coin.

Value 2: Punch

Used when referring to the earliest Indian silver coins which are coin-like pieces of metal of a standard weight that are bearing various symbols which were applied with punches.

Value 3: Control mark

A letter, symbol, monogram or an inscription on a numismatic unit intended to distinguish it as part of a group of numismatic resources within an issue or series, for example a mintmark.

Indicator 2: Part of the Numismatic Resource Described

Specify the part of the numismatic resource being described.

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

A text note.

Not repeatable.

$b Citation

A citation for a published work that provides information about or a description of the element in subfield $a. The information provided is sufficient to identify both the work and the location within the work.

Repeatable if the element to which the note applies has several references.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Use when the element in subfield $a is identified in catalogues, ontologies, databases, etc.

Repeatable if the element to which the note applies has several URI.

Related Fields

117 CODED DATA FIELD: THREE-DIMENSIONAL ARTEFACTS AND REALIA
260 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: NUMISMATIC OBJECTS

Examples

EX 1
360 01$aMonogram 1 of Anthemius A, N, T, H, E, M$uhttp://numismatics.org/ocre/symbol/monogram.ric.10.anthemius.1
A coin with a monogram of Anthemius on the obverse.
EX 2
360 12$aCoin R1 (Le Rider)$bR1$bGeorges Le Rider, Le monnayage d'argent et d'or de Philippe II frappé en Macédoine de 359 à 294. Paris: E Bourgey, 1977, Coin R1.
A coin whose reverse was struck using a die referenced as R1 in Le Rider's catalogue of gold and silver coins of Philip II of Macedonia.
EX 3
360 31$aP (Philadelphia)
A dollar coin from 1979 with a "P" mint mark on the obverse, indicating that it was minted in Philadephia.
EX 4
360 21$a3 Kiri stamps
A Japanese Oban from circa 1588 with 3 diamond-shaped stamps on the obverse.

History

2023	New field.
2024	Update $u.

371 NOTES ON INFORMATION SERVICE POLICY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a note on the terms of access, and governing use and reproduction policy.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
371	NOTES ON INFORMATION SERVICE POLICY	R	O
a	Terms Governing Access, Use and Reproduction	NR	MA
b	Jurisdiction	NR	O
c	Authorization	NR	O
d	Authorized Users	NR	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O
8	Materials Specified	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Type of note
	0	Access note
	1	Use and reproduction note
	#	Information not provided
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Terms Governing Access, Use and Reproduction

The text of a legal or official statement of restrictions. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

$b Jurisdiction

The name of a person, an organization, or a position or function within the organization, by whom or which the terms governing access, use and reproduction are imposed and enforced and to whom the restriction may be appealed. Not repeatable.

$c Authorization

A citation to the specific source that is the authority for the restriction. Not repeatable.

$d Authorized Users

The class of users or specific individuals to whom the restrictions in subfield $a do not apply. Not repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

Not repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Access note may contain information on limited distribution. Use and reproduction note includes copyrights, trade restrictions, etc. that restrict the right to reproduce, exhibit, quote, etc. materials after access has been provided. If more than one note is to be recorded, each is entered in a repeated field 371.

Examples

EX 1
371 ##$aReproduction only for non-profit projects
EX 2
371 1#$aReproduction forbidden$cLei do Direito de Autor
EX 3
371 1#$aRestricted reproduction$dresearchers with author´s permission
EX 4
371 0#$8Private letters$aConfidential$bNational Archives
EX 5
371 0#$aUnrestricted online access
EX 6
371 0#$aAccess restricted to subscribers via a username and password or IP address authentication$dsubscribers
EX 7
371 0#$aAccès en ligne réservé aux usagers des établissements français bénéficiaires des licences nationales
371 0#$aAccès après authentification avec les identifiants de l'Université $5940289902
371 0#$aPour les lecteurs n'appartenant pas à l'Université mais inscrits à la bibliothèque, accès sur les postes de l'espace numérique$5940289902
A union catalogue describes an electronic resource for a consortium. Field 371 is used to record the general access conditions (a library must be part of the consortium). Each library may need to record specific access restrictions.

History

2012	New field.
2016	Corrections and additions. Change $a and $b definition.
2024	Added $5, and ex. 7.

4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK

Structure of Linking Entry Fields

This structure applies to all 4-- linking entry fields.

Definition and Scope of Fields

For the conversion reason the technique of embedded fields has been supplemented by a technique using standard subfields. The structure of the agency's records will determine which system of linking entry fields is used.

Where there is a choice of system, the agency should weigh the advantages of the linking entry system, which allows fuller although more complex entries, against the advantages of the standard subfield system, which is easier to implement.

A statement that linking fields are present or absent together with a note of the type of contents in such linking fields, should be given in the documentation to accompany exchange records. For details, see Appendix D.

Within the Linking Entry Fields Section, both methods are described in the order: (A) embedded fields technique then (B) the standard subfields technique. All examples illustrate both methods.

Each linking entry field in a record will contain subfields that identify the resource to which the link is being made. The data in this field should be sufficient to identify the record for the resource being linked to, or, if there is no record, to identify the resource itself.

In the following list the fields are labelled by the type of record to which the link is being made, e.g. 410 SERIES is used in a sub-series record to link to the series of which it is a part.

For certain categories of linking fields (notably 46- Level linking fields) there is a restriction on the type of link which may be made. Details are given in Notes on Field Contents for such fields.

The following fields are defined:

Series, supplements, etc.	
410 SERIES	
411 SUBSERIES	
412 SOURCE OF EXCERPT OR OFFPRINT	413 EXCERPT OR OFFPRINT
421 SUPPLEMENT	422 PARENT OF SUPPLEMENT
423 ISSUED WITH	
424 IS UPDATED BY	425 UPDATES
Preceding entries	Succeeding entries
430 CONTINUES	440 CONTINUED BY
431 CONTINUES IN PART	441 CONTINUED IN PART BY
432 SUPERSEDES	442 SUPERSEDED BY
433 SUPERSEDES IN PART	443 SUPERSEDED IN PART BY
434 ABSORBED	444 ABSORBED BY
435 ABSORBED IN PART	445 ABSORBED IN PART BY
436 FORMED BY MERGER OF ..., ..., AND ...	446 SPLIT INTO .., ..., AND ...
437 SEPARATED FROM	447 MERGED WITH ... AND ... TO FORM ...
Other editions	
451 OTHER EDITION IN THE SAME MEDIUM	
452 OTHER EDITION IN ANOTHER MEDIUM	
453 TRANSLATED AS	454 TRANSLATION OF
455 REPRODUCTION OF	456 REPRODUCED AS

Levels	
461 SET	
462 SUBSET	
463 PIECE	
464 PIECE-ANALYTIC	
Other	
470 ITEM REVIEWED	
481 ALSO BOUND IN THIS VOLUME	482 BOUND WITH
488 OTHER RELATED WORKS	

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
4--	LINKING ENTRY BLOCK	Any number of linking fields may be included in a record.	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	MA
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Author	NR	O
b	General Material Designation	NR	O
c	Place of Publication	R	O
d	Date of Publication	NR	O
e	Edition Statement	NR	O
f	First Statement of Responsibility	R	O
g	Subsequent Statement of Responsibility	R	O
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
l	Parallel Title	R	O
m	International Standard Music Number	R	O
n	Name of Publisher, Distributor, etc.	R	O
o	Other Title Information	R	O
p	Physical Description	NR	O
q	International Standard Identifier for a Work	R	O
r	International Standard Identifier for an Expression	R	O
s	Series Statement	R	O
t	Title	R	MA
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	NR	O
v	Volume Number	NR	O
x	ISSN	R	O
y	International Standard Book Number	R	O
z	CODEN	NR	O
0	Bibliographic Record Identifier	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
5	Institution to which Field Applies	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)

2		Note Indicator
	0	Do not make a note
	1	Make a note

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Note Indicator

The second indicator indicates whether the agency providing the record would use the data in this field to make a note for print or other displays of the record. If a note is not required, this indicator should be set to 0 (EX 1, 4, 6). The kinds of notes envisaged being created using this data are illustrated in the examples (EX 2, 3, 5). When the record is displayed, the specific field tag may be translated into text that describes the exact relationship of the resource to which the link is being made and the resource being catalogued: the exact wording of the text depends on the practices of the agency receiving the record.

(A) Subfields Description: Embedded Fields Technique

$1 Linking Data

Each $1 (one) subfield contains a data field complete with tag, indicators, and subfield codes. Repeatable for each embedded field.

Notes on Field Contents: Embedded Fields Technique

Each linking field is formatted as follows:

Indicator	Subfield Identifier	Subfield Data	Subfield Identifier	Subfield Data		F/T
#0 or #1	$1	Embedded tag, indicators and subfields	$1	Embedded tag, indicators and subfields	...	

F/T = Field Terminator

It is recommended that embedded fields are entered in numerical order of tag within each field. In the case of an embedded 001 field, neither indicators nor subfield identifiers are defined so that the subfield data includes only the tag and the number (EX 1).

If a linking field contains the record identifier of the linked record, this record should be included in the same file for distribution purposes.

Linking fields constructed from a full record should contain the following required data when present:

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER
500 PREFERRED TITLE ACCESS POINT
or (if 500 not present in the record)
200 $a Title Proper
7-- INTELECTUAL RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK (if present) (usually primary)
206 MATERIAL SPECIFIC AREA: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – MATHEMATICAL DATA

The following fields may optionally be included:

010 ISBN
011 ISSN
040 CODEN
101 LANGUAGE OF THE WORK
102 COUNTRY OF PUBLICATION OR MANUFACTURE
123 CODED DATA FIELD: CARTOGRAPHIC RESOURCES – SCALE AND COORDINATES
130 CODED DATA FIELD: MICROFORMS – PHYSICAL ATTRIBUTES
200 $a Title proper [if not already included]

200 $f First Statement of Responsibility
200 $h Number of Section or Part
200 $i Name of Section or Part
200 $v Volume Designation
205 EDITION STATEMENT
210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION ETC.
214 PRODUCTION, PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, MANUFACTURE STATEMENTS
215 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION
225 SERIES
510 PARALLEL TITLE PROPER
530 KEY TITLE
856 $u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

In some cases these optional fields may be needed to identify the resource, e.g. 210 PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC. or 214 PRODUCTION, PUBLICATION, DISTRIBUTION, MANUFACTURE STATEMENTS for 45- OTHER EDITIONS.

It is not recommended that additional fields be included.

Linking fields not constructed from a full record should contain as much of this data as possible, given the practices of the source agency.

At the least they should contain the data listed above, but need not include the record identifier.

(B) Subfields Description: Standard Subfields Technique

$a Author

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary responsibility for the resource to which the link is being made. This may not necessarily be the contents of a 700, 710 or 720 field for that resource if the concept of main entry does not exist in the cataloguing rules. Where more than one subfield contributes to the contents, standard punctuation should be applied (EX 6). Not repeatable.

$b General Material Designation

The contents of the relevant subfield (200$b) of the resource to which the link is being made. See field 456, EX 1. Not repeatable.

It corresponds to General Material Designation in the ISBDs prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011). According to ISBD Consolidated Edition, GMD element is not used. However it can still be carried in bibliographic records created prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition.

$c Place of Publication

The contents of the 210$a subfield(s) of the resource to which the link is being made. Repeatable.

$d Date of Publication

The contents of the 210$d subfield of the resource to which the link is being made. Not repeatable.

$e Edition Statement

The contents of the 205$a subfield of the resource to which the link is being made. Not repeatable.

$f First Statement of Responsibility

The contents of the relevant subfield(s) (200$f) of the resource to which the link is being made. See field 463, EX 2. Repeatable after each subfield $t, $l, $h or $i which has an accompanying statement of responsibility or for each parallel statement of responsibility.

$g Subsequent Statement of Responsibility

The contents of the relevant subfield(s) (200$g) of the resource to which the link is being made. See field 463, EX 2. Repeatable.

$h Number of Section or Part

The contents of the relevant title (200) or preferred title (500) $h subfield of the resource to which the link is being made. Repeatable.

$i Name of Section or Part

The contents of the relevant title (200) or preferred title (500) $i subfield of the resource to which the link is being made. Repeatable.

$l Parallel Title

The contents of the relevant parallel title subfield(s) (200$d, 510$a) of the resource to which the link is being made. See field 423, EX 2. Repeatable.

$m International Standard Music Number

The contents of the 013$a subfield of the resource to which the link is being made. Repeatable.

$n Name of Publisher, Distributor, etc.

The contents of the relevant subfield(s) (210$c, 214c) of the resource to which the link is being made. See field 463, EX 2. Repeatable.

$o Other Title Information

The contents of the relevant subfield(s) (200$e) of the resource to which the link is being made. See field 463, EX 2. Repeatable.

$p Physical Description

The contents of the relevant physical description 215$a subfield of the resource to which the link is being made. Not repeatable.

$q International Standard Identifier for a Work

The ISTC, ISWC, or ISAN, or other international identifier assigned to the work. The first four character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISTC, an ISWC or an ISAN, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$r International Standard Identifier for an Expression

The ISTC, ISWC or other international identifier assigned to an expression of a work. The first four character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISTC or an ISWC, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$s Series Statement

The contents of the relevant subfield(s) (225$a, $h, $i) of the resource to which the link is being made. See field 456, EX 1. Repeatable.

$t Title

The contents of the relevant title (200) or preferred title (500) subfield(s) of the resource to which the link is being made. In the case of a continuing resource, this subfield may hold the contents of the key-title (530) field. Where more than one subfield contributes to the contents, standard punctuation should be applied in the absence of a specific 4XX subfield code (EX 6). Mandatory. Repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

The contents of the 856$u subfield of the record which is the source of the $a or $t in this field (see field 488, EX4). Not repeatable.

$v Volume Number

The element(s) (number, position in the document) which expresses the relationship between the current resource and the resource to which the link is being made. Examples of such elements are 200$h and 225$v. Not repeatable.

$x ISSN

The contents of the 011$a subfield of the resource to which the link is being made. Repeatable.

$y International Standard Book Number

The contents of the 010$a subfield of the resource to which the link is being made. Repeatable.

$z CODEN

The contents of the 040$a subfield of the resource to which the link is being made. Not repeatable.

$0 Bibliographic Record Identifier

The contents of the 001 field of the resource to which the link is being made. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

The contents of the $3 subfield of the field which is the source of the $a or $t in this field. Repeatable.

$5 Institution to which Field Applies

The contents of the $5 subfield of the field which is the source of the $a or $t in this field. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents: Standard Subfields Technique

If there is no record for the resource being linked to, the data in this field should be created as if that resource were being catalogued.

If a linking field contains the record identifier of the linked record, this record should be included in the same file for distribution purposes.

The order of subfields is irrelevant. But it is recommended that the $0 subfield appears first and that the order be consistent within the database.

Related Fields

311 NOTES PERTAINING TO LINKING FIELDS	Field 311 may be used to express any of the linking relationships appearing in this block when a note is required which cannot be generated from a 4-- field. If field 311 is used, the second indicator of the corresponding 4-- field is set to 0.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
461 #0$100177-10346$12001#$aCountries of Europe$vvol. 2
Field components: #0 Indicators for field 461 $1 Subfield identifier 001 Tag of embedded field 77-10346 Data of 001 field $1 Subfield identifier 200 Tag of embedded field 0# Indicators of embedded 200 field $a Subfield identifier for 200 field Title Data of 200 field $v Subfield identifier for 200 field vol. 2 Data of 200 field

Standard subfields technique
461 #0$077-10346$tCountries of Europe$vvol. 2
This example illustrates a link from a volume to a multi-volume monograph that is at the set level. The resource being catalogued vol. 2 is one piece of the set. The record for the set should be present in the same file and will have as its 001 record identifier: 77-10346. The agency creating the record does not make a note relating to the set in the record for the volume being catalogued and has therefore set the second indicator to 0. To produce an access point from this field, it may be necessary to find the record referred to in the embedded 001 field. An access point generated from the record to which this field points would appear as follows: Countries of Europe, vol. 2
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
422 #1$12001#$aWorld of knowledge
Standard subfields technique
422 #1$tWorld of knowledge
A continuing resource *World of knowledge* has an annual supplement entitled *World of knowledge annual*. In the record describing the *World of knowledge annual*, a note is required to indicate this relationship. The source format records this information by linking to the resource *World of knowledge* by means of a bibliographic title entered in UNIMARC Field 422 PARENT OF SUPPLEMENT. The note created from this field might read as follows: Supplement to: World of knowledge
EX 3
Embedded fields technique
430 #1$1001RI976423$1011##$a0199-4797$15301#$aLigand quarterly
Standard subfields technique
430 #1$0RI976423$x0199-4797$tLigand quarterly
A continuing resource with a key-title *Journal of clinical immunoassay* continues *Ligand quarterly* which had ISSN 0199-4797. In the record for *Journal of clinical immunoassay* a link is made to the previous title using key title and ISSN for identification. The record for that continuing resource need not be in the same file. A note generated from this field might read: Continues: Ligand quarterly. ISSN 0199-4797 or when the note is generated by a French language database: Fait suite à: Ligand quarterly. ISSN 0199-4797
EX 4
Embedded fields technique
311 ##$aIncludes alternate issues of Mythprint. ISSN 0146-9347
423 #0$1011##$a0146 9347$12001# $aMythprint
Standard subfields technique
311 ##$aIncludes alternate issues of Mythprint. ISSN 0146-9347
423 #0$x0146-9347$tMythprint
A note which cannot be generated automatically from the linking field 423 is entered in a note field 311. The second indicator is set to 0.The note is <u>not</u> embedded in the 423 field.
EX 5
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aIm Auftrag des Königs$edie gefährlichen Abenteuer des Quentin Durward $fWalter Scott$gmit einem Nachwort von Traude Dienel$g[Bearbeitung einer Übersetzung von Oelkers aus dem Jahre 1831]
454 #1$150010$aQuentin Durward
700 1$aScott,$cSir$bWalter,$f1771-1832
Standard subfields technique

200 1#$aIm Auftrag des Königs$edie gefährlichen Abenteuer des Quentin Durward $fWalter Scott$gmit einem Nachwort von Traude Dienel$g[Bearbeitung einer Übersetzung von Oelkers aus dem Jahre 1831]
454 #1$tQuentin Durward
700 #1$aScott,$cSir$bWalter,$f1771-1832
Im Auftrag des Königs is a translation of Sir Walter Scott's *Quentin Durward.* A record for that work need not be in the same file. As a translation is catalogued under the name of the original author, the agency has not thought it necessary to include the author's name in the 454 field. A note generated from this field might read: Translation of : Quentin Durward
EX 6
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aVariations on a theme of Bartók$efor string quartet$fMalcolm Lipkin
311 ##$aVariations on Bartók's Concertos, viola, orchestra, op.posth. Movement 1
488 #0$1700#1$aBartók,$bBéla,$f1881-1945$150010$aConcertos,$rviola, orchestra,$nop.posth. $hMovement 1
700 #1$aLipkin,$bMalcolm
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aVariations on a theme of Bartók$efor string quartet$fMalcolm Lipkin
311 ##$aVariations on Bartók's Concertos, viola, orchestra, op.posth. Movement 1
488 #0$aBartók, Béla, 1881-1945$tConcertos, viola, orchestra, op.posth. Movement 1
700 #1$aLipkin,$bMalcolm
A note which cannot be generated automatically from the linking field 488 is entered in a note field 311. The second indicator of field 488 is set to 0.
EX 7
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aFlores apparuerunt$bMusique imprimée$fÉtienne Moulinié$g[édition de Jean Duron]
412 #1$12001#$aMeslanges de sujets chrestiens$bMusique imprimée$aet motet "Flores apparuerunt"$fEtienne Moulinié$gédition de Jean Duron$gavec une collaboration musicale de Gérard Geay$get un avant-propos de Denise Launay $1210##$aVersailles$cEd. du Centre de musique baroque$d1996$1215##$a1 partition (CXVIII-421 p.)
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aFlores apparuerunt$bMusique imprimée$fÉtienne Moulinié$g[édition de Jean Duron]
412 #1$tMeslanges de sujets chrestiens$bMusique imprimée$tet motet "Flores apparuerunt"$fEtienne Moulinié$gédition de Jean Duron$gavec une collaboration musicale de Gérard Geay$get un avant-propos de Denise Launay$cVersailles$nEd. du Centre de musique baroque$d1996$p1 partition (CXVIII-421 p.)
Flores apparuerunt is an offprint of a publication that comprises two musical works by the same composer, and lacks a collective title. In field 412, subfield $a (in embedded field 200, EX 7a) and subfield $t (standard subfields technique, EX 7b) are repeated.

History

1998	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Corrections and additions.
2022	Corrections and additions.
2024	Text edit.

410 SERIES

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the resource being catalogued to a series that contains it.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Field 410 contains an upward link to a series when the resource catalogued is either a series or monograph. If an upward link to both a series and its subseries is required, then the 410 may be repeated for citations to each, the higher level preceding the lower. Alternatively when the record structure emphasizes linking separate records in a hierarchy, the series may be linked through a 461 SET field and the subseries through a 462 SUBSET field.

The indicator value for this field indicates whether a note should be generated from the field; it does not contain information concerning the existence or generation of a series statement (field 225).

Related Fields

225 SERIES	Field corresponds to the ISBD Series and Multipart Monographic Resource Area. Field 410 is used for an access point form of the series entry. When the access point form is considered by the agency preparing the record to be identical to the form in field 225, the first indicator of 225 will note this. Nevertheless, the data is still included in field 410 (EX 2).
461 SET	If the 46- hierarchical links are being used then an upward link to a series may be indicated through a 461 field.
462 SUBSET	If the 46- hierarchical links are being used then an upward link to a subseries may be indicated through a 462 field.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
225 0#$aLetters from China
410 #0$12001#$aLetters from China$1700#1$aStrong,$bAnna Louise,$f1885-1970
Standard subfields technique
225 0#$aLetters from China
410 #0$tLetters from China$aStrong, Anna Louise, 1885-1970
The document being catalogued is in a series for which an access point needs to be made. A series statement on the resource and recorded in the 225 field differs from the access point form of name for the series. Field 410 contains that form. No note is to be printed from field 410.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
225 2#$aCambridge Greek and Latin classics
410 #0$12001#$aCambridge Greek and Latin classics
Standard subfields technique
225 2#$aCambridge Greek and Latin classics
410 #0$tCambridge Greek and Latin classics
The document being catalogued is in a series for which an access entry is required by the cataloguing code. The form of entry in field 225 is the same as the established form in field 410.

411 SUBSERIES

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the continuing resource (series) being catalogued to a subseries that is contained in it.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is to be used only in records for continuing resources (series) to indicate a downward link to a subseries that is part of the continuing resource title recorded in field 200.

Related Fields

410 SERIES	The 411 field indicates a downward link from a series to a subseries. If the resource being catalogued is a subseries and an upward link to the series is required, field 410 is used.
462 SUBSET	If the 46- hierarchical links are being used then a subseries may be linked to a series being catalogued through field 462.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
411 #1$12001#$aEngineering series$12250#$hA
Standard subfields technique
411 #1$tEngineering series$hA
The resource being catalogued is the continuing resource *Copper information* which has a subseries entitled *Engineering series* which is labelled *A* within the continuing resource.

412 SOURCE OF EXCERPT OR OFFPRINT

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to identify a linked resource which was the source of an excerpt or offprint.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

An offprint or an excerpt is a unique bibliographic entity, the contents of which had already been published in another unique bibliographic entity.

Related Fields

413 EXCERPT OR OFFPRINT	Field 413 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship indicated by field 412.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
Record label, pos. 6 : a ; pos. 7 : m
200 1#$aRégularisation des eaux du Léman$bTexte imprimé$etrois générations d'aménagement$fJacques Bruschin, Arthur Harmann
210 ##$a Lausanne$cBibliothèque centrale de l'EPFL$cdiff. Payot$d1983
215 ##$a5 p.$cill.$d30 cm
225 1#$aPublication$fÉcole polytechnique fédérale de Lausanne$v216
412 #1$1001<Record identifier>$1011##$a0251-0979$15300#$aIngénieurs et architectes suisses$v(1983-08-18)n°17
Standard subfields technique
Record label, pos. 6 : a ; pos. 7 : m
200 1#$aRégularisation des eaux du Léman$bTexte imprimé$etrois générations d'aménagement$fJacques Bruschin, Arthur Harmann
412 #1$0<*Record identifier*>$tIngénieurs et architectes suisses$x0251-0979$v(198308-18) n°17
The article *Régularisation des eaux du Léman* was first published within issue No. 17 (Aug. 18, 1983) of the periodical *Ingénieurs et architectes suisses*, and further issued separately as an offprint. The record above describes the offprint, which is a monographic resource, as shown on the Record label position 7. The note generated from the 412 data might appear displayed as follows: Is an offprint from: Ingénieurs et architectes suisses, ISSN 0251-0979. - (1983-08-18) n°17

History

2005	New field.

413 EXCERPT OR OFFPRINT

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to identify a linked resource which is an excerpt or offprint.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

An offprint or an excerpt is a unique bibliographic entity, the contents of which have already been published in another unique bibliographic entity.

Related Fields

412 SOURCE OF EXCERPT OR OFFPRINT	Field 412 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship indicated by field 413.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
Record label, position 6 : a ; position 7 : s
011 ##$a0251-0979
200 1#$aIngénieurs et architectes suisses$bTexte imprimé
210 ##$a[Ecublens]$cSociété des éditions des associations techniques universitaires,
SEATU$d1979-1987
530 0#$aIngénieurs et architectes suisses
413 #1$1001<*Record identifier*>$12001#$v(1983-08-18)n°17$aRégularisation des eaux du Léman$etrois générations d'aménagement$fJacques Bruschin, Arthur Harmann$1210##$aLausanne $cBibliothèque centrale de l'EPFL$cdiff. Payot$d1983
Standard subfields technique
Record label, position 6 : a ; position 7 : s
011 ##$a0251-0979
200 1#$aIngénieurs et architectes suisses$bTexte imprimé
210 ##$a[Ecublens]$cSociété des éditions des associations techniques universitaires,
SEATU$d1979-1987
530 0#$aIngénieurs et architectes suisses
413 #1$v(1983-08-18)n°17$0<*Record identifier*>$tRégularisation des eaux du
Léman$otrois générations d'aménagement$fJacques Bruschin, Arthur Harmann
$cLausanne$nBibliothèque centrale de l'EPFL$ndiff. Payot$d1983
The periodical *Ingénieurs et architectes suisses*, described above, has given birth to an offprint: *Régularisation des eaux du Léman*, first published as an article within issue No. 17 (Aug. 18, 1983). See field 412, EX 1. The note generated from the 413 data might appear displayed as follows: Has offprint: Régularisation des eaux du Léman : trois générations d'aménagement / Jacques Bruschin, Arthur Harmann. – Lausanne : Bibliothèque centrale de l'EPFL : diff. Payot, 1983. Excerpt from (1983-08-18)n°17

History

2005	New field.

421 SUPPLEMENT

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the resource being catalogued to another resource that is its supplement.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used in both continuing resource and monograph records to link to a supplement.

Related Fields

422 PARENT OF SUPPLEMENT	Field 422 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship indicated by field 421.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
421 #1$1011##$a0332-561X$15301#$aSymbolae Osloensis. Fasciculi suppletorii
Standard subfields technique
421 #1$x0332-561X$tSymbolae Osloensis. Fasciculi suppletorii
The continuing resource *Symbolae Osloensis* has a continuing resource supplement *Fasciculi suppletorii*.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aQuadro politico di Milano
421 #1$12001#$aCos'è patriottismo?$fAppendice di Mel. G. al Quadro politico di Milano
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aQuadro politico di Milano
421 #1$tCos'è patriottismo?$fAppendice di Mel. G. al Quadro politico di Milano
The monograph Quadro politico di Milano has a monograph supplement Cos'è patriottismo?

422 PARENT OF SUPPLEMENT

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the supplement being catalogued to the parent of that supplement.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Related Fields

421 SUPPLEMENT	Field 421 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship indicated by field 422.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aGirl annual ...
421 #1$15301#$aGirl$b(London)
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aGirl annual ...
422 #1$tGirl (London)
A weekly magazine *Girl* has an associated annual *Girl annual*. The record of *Girl annual* contains a link to the parent of the supplement: *Girl*. The note generated from the 422 data might appear displayed as follows: Supplement to: Girl (London).
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aCos'è patriottismo?$fAppendice di Mel. G. al Quadro politico di Milano
422 #1$12001#$aQuadro politico di Milano
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aCos'è patriottismo?$fAppendice di Mel. G. al Quadro politico di Milano
422 #1$tQuadro politico di Milano
The record for the monograph *Cos'è patriottismo* contains a link to the parent of the supplement *Quadro politico di Milano*. A further example of the use of this field appears as EX 2 of the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

423 ISSUED WITH

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the resource being catalogued to another bibliographic resource that is issued with it.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

When one resource is issued with another, it is not implied that either resource is subsidiary to the other, as is the case with a supplement/parent relationship.

Related Fields

482 BOUND WITH	This field contains a description of the resource that is bound first in an "artificial" collection, i.e. not found with the other resources as issued.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aTransport public
423 #1$1011##$a0249-6143$15300#$aAction transport
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aTransport public
423 #1$x0249-6143$tAction transport
This linking field occurs in the record for *Transport public* since *Transport public* and *Action transport* are issued together.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aFemmes$dWomen$aHombres$dMen$fPaul Verlaine$gtranslated by Alastair Elliot
423 #0$12001#$aHombres$15101#$aMen$1700#1$aVerlaine$bPaul
510 1#$aWomen
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aFemmes$dWomen$aHombres$dMen$fPaul Verlaine$gtranslated by Alastair Elliot
423 #0$aVerlaine, Paul$tHombres$lMen
510 1#$aWomen
A book with two works and no collective title has parallel titles for both works. The parallel title for the first title proper is given in field 510, other titles being given in a 423 ISSUED WITH field. The 423 field does not generate a note because details are given already in the main 200 field.
EX 3
See field 200, EX 12.
A further example of the use of this field appears as EX 4 of the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.
EX 4
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aDevis général des ouvrages dépendans du service du Génie militaire, dans la place d'Alexandrie ... $fCorps impérial du Génie, Direction d'Alexandrie

327 ##$aInclude: Bordereau du prix des ouvrages, dépendans du service du Génie militaire, à exécuter dans la place d'Alexandrie
423 #0$12001#$aBordereau du prix des ouvrages, dépendans du service du Génie militaire, à exécuter dans la place d'Alexandrie
EX 5
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aOpere del conte Algarotti
327 ##$a1. - 1778. - clv, 84 p. : antip. - Include: Il congresso di Citera , edizione accresciuta del Giudicio di amore sopra l'istesso congresso$a2. - 1778. - [16], 310 p.$a3. - 1779. - [6], 390 p.$a4. - 1779. - [4], 439 p.$a5. - 1779. - [10], 336 p.$a6. - 1780. - [8], 292 p.$a7. - 1781. - [8], 292 p.$a8. - 1782. - [8], 271 p.$a9. - 1783. - [6], 340 p.$a10. - 1784. - [4], 427 p.
423 #0$12001#$aIl congresso di Citera$eedizione accresciuta del Giudicio di amore sopra l'istesso congresso
This field is used to link to another work when the title is not mentioned on the title page.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

424 IS UPDATED BY

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the resource being catalogued to another resource that updates its content.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

The relationship expressed by field 424 is typically that between an updating loose-leaf (monograph) and its updates, usually published as a continuing resource. However, the relationship can also express the link between two continuing resources. Field 424 expresses the link from the monograph or a continuing resource to the updating publication.

Related Fields

425 UPDATES	Field 425 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship indicated by field 424.
421 SUPPLEMENT	Field 421 is used to link the resource being catalogued to another resource that is its supplement.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
Record label, position 7 : m (monograph)
001 025986473
200 1#$aCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale$bTexte imprimé
210 ##$aParis$cEditions techniques$d1989-
215 ##$a9 vol. (feuillets mobiles)$d30 cm
300 ##$aMise à jour permanente
424 #1$100100102664X$1011##$a0750-8468$15300#$aCodes et lois. Traités de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application
Record label, position 7 : s (continuing resource)
001 00102664X
011 ##$a0750-8468
200 1#$aCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application$bTexte imprimé
210 ##$aParis$cEditions techniques$d196?-
215 ##$d30 cm
425 #1$1001025986473$12001#$aCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale
Standard subfields technique
Record label, position 7 : m (monograph)
001 025986473
200 1#$aCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale$bTexte imprimé
210 ##$aParis$cEditions techniques$d1989-
215 ##$a9 vol. (feuillets mobiles)$d30 cm
300 ##$aMise à jour permanente
424 #1$000102664X$tCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application$x0750-8468
Record label, pos. 7 : s (continuing resource)
001 00102664X
011 ##$a0750-8468
200 1#$aCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application$bTexte imprimé

215 ##$d30 cm
210 ##$aParis$cEditions techniques$d196?-
425 #1$025986473$tCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale
The loose-leaf publication *Codes et lois. Traités de l'Europe occidentale* is updated by a continuing resource bearing a different title, which is described in a separate record.

History

2005	New field.

425 UPDATES

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the resource being catalogued and that is an update to another resource that is updated by its content.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

The relationship expressed by field 425 is typically that between an updating loose-leaf (monograph) and its updates, usually published as a continuing resource. However, the relationship can also express the link between two continuing resources. Field 425 expresses the link from the updating publication to the one being updated.

Related Fields

424 IS UPDATED BY	Field 424 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship indicated by field 425.
422 PARENT OF SUPPLEMENT	Field 422 is used to link the supplement being catalogued to the parent of that supplement.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
Record label, pos. 7 : s (continuing resource)
001 00102664X
011 ##$a0750-8468
200 1#$aCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application$bTexte imprimé
210 ##$aParis$cEditions techniques$d196?-
215 ##$d30 cm
425 #1$1001025986473$12001#$aCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale
Record label, pos. 7 : m (monograph)
001 025986473
200 1#$aCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale$bTexte imprimé
210 ##$aParis$cEditions techniques$d1989-
215 ##$a9 vol. (feuillets mobiles)$d30 cm
300 ##$aMise à jour permanente
424 #1$100100102664X$1011##$a0750-8468$15300#$aCodes et lois. Traités de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application
Standard subfields technique
Record label, pos. 7 : s (continuing resource)
001 00102664X
011 ##$a0750-8468
200 1#$aCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application$bTexte imprimé
210 ##$aParis$cEditions techniques$d196?-
215 ##$d30 cm
425 #1$025986473$tCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale
Record label, pos. 7 : m (monograph)
001 025986473
200 1#$aCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale$bTexte imprimé

210 ##$aParis$cEditions techniques$d1989-
215 ##$a9 vol. (feuillets mobiles)$d30 cm
300 ##$aMise à jour permanente
424 #1$000102664X$tCodes et lois$iTraités de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application$x0750-8468
The continuing resource *Codes et lois. Traités de l'Europe occidentale et textes d'application* updates a loose-leaf publication (monograph) bearing a different title, which is described in a separate record.

History

2005	New field.

430 CONTINUES

Field Definition and Scope

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a preceding title. Fields 431-437 are used in preference to 430 when it is required to elaborate on the "preceding" relationship.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Where an agency uses this fields, they should be distinguished as follows:

Continues: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Supersedes: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed: a continuing resource was in existence before it absorbed an earlier continuing resource and it continues with its own numbering.

Separated from: the new title was once a part of a still existing title.

Related Fields

44- Succeeding Entry Fields	Fields 440-445 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 430-435.
448 CHANGED BACK TO	This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.
520 FORMER TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)	Used when the practice is to record a continuing resource under its latest title with added entries under earlier titles. Not to be used when 430-437 are used.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$12001#$aLincolnshire chronicle$1205##$aNorth Kesteven ed.
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$tLincolnshire chronicle$eNorth Kesteven ed.
The North Kesteven edition of the *Lincolnshire chronicle* changes its name to *Kesteven chronicle, Fosse Way edition*. From the record for the *Kesteven chronicle*, the following note can be displayed: Continues: Lincolnshire chronicle. North Kesteven ed.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
431 #1$15301#$aTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council
Standard subfields technique
431 #1$tTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council

EX 3
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$15300#$aPopular hi-fi
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$tPopular hi-fi
What hi-fi? supersedes Popular hi-fi.
EX 4
Embedded fields technique
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$15300#$aBus & coach
Standard subfields technique
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$tBus & coach
Motor transport absorbed Bus & coach.
EX 5
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$12001#$aBoekengids
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$tBoekengids
Jeugboekengids was originally a part of *Boekengids* but is now published separately. From the record, the following note can be displayed: Separated from: Boekengids
From the corresponding field 441 in the record for *Boekengids*, the following note can be displayed: Continued in part by: Jeugboekengids
EX 6
Embedded fields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)

210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)- god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god. 6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.
Standard subfields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842 531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955

430 #1$x1330-2809$tKolo (1842)
440 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$x0354-057X$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni I odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
440 #1$x1331-0992$tKolo (1995)
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title. A further example of the use of field 430 occurs as EX 3 in the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK and EX 2 in field 488.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

431 CONTINUES IN PART

Field Definition and Scope

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a preceding title. Fields 431-437 are used in preference to 430 when it is required to elaborate on the "preceding" relationship.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Where an agency uses this fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continues: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Supersedes: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed: a continuing resource was in existence before it absorbed an earlier continuing resource and it continues with its own numbering.

Separated from: the new title was once a part of a still existing title.

Related Fields

44- Succeeding Entry Fields	Fields 440-445 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 430-435.
448 CHANGED BACK TO	This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.
520 FORMER TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)	Used when the practice is to record a continuing resource under its latest title with added entries under earlier titles. Not to be used when 430-437 are used.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$12001#$aLincolnshire chronicle$1205##$aNorth Kesteven ed.
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$tLincolnshire chronicle$eNorth Kesteven ed.
The North Kesteven edition of the *Lincolnshire chronicle* changes its name to *Kesteven chronicle, Fosse Way edition*. From the record for the *Kesteven chronicle*, the following note can be displayed: Continues: Lincolnshire chronicle. North Kesteven ed.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
431 #1$15301#$aTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council
Standard subfields technique
431 #1$tTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council

EX 3
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$15300#$aPopular hi-fi
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$tPopular hi-fi
What hi-fi? supersedes Popular hi-fi.
EX 4
Embedded fields technique
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$15300#$aBus & coach
Standard subfields technique
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$tBus & coach
Motor transport absorbed Bus & coach.
EX 5
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$12001#$aBoekengids
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$tBoekengids
Jeugboekengids was originally a part of *Boekengids* but is now published separately. From the record, the following note can be displayed: Separated from: Boekengids
From the corresponding field 441 in the record for *Boekengids*, the following note can be displayed: Continued in part by: Jeugboekengids
EX 6
Embedded fields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)

210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)- god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god. 6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.
Standard subfields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842 531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955

430 #1$x1330-2809$tKolo (1842)
440 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$x0354-057X$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni I odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
440 #1$x1331-0992$tKolo (1995)
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title. A further example of the use of field 430 occurs as EX 3 in the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK and EX 2 in field 488.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

432 SUPERSEDES

Field Definition and Scope

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a preceding title. Fields 431-437 are used in preference to 430 when it is required to elaborate on the "preceding" relationship.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Where an agency uses this fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continues: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Supersedes: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed: a continuing resource was in existence before it absorbed an earlier continuing resource and it continues with its own numbering.

Separated from: the new title was once a part of a still existing title.

Related Fields

44- Succeeding Entry Fields	Fields 440-445 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 430-435.
448 CHANGED BACK TO	This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.
520 FORMER TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)	Used when the practice is to record a continuing resource under its latest title with added entries under earlier titles. Not to be used when 430-437 are used.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$12001#$aLincolnshire chronicle$1205##$aNorth Kesteven ed.
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$tLincolnshire chronicle$eNorth Kesteven ed.
The North Kesteven edition of the *Lincolnshire chronicle* changes its name to *Kesteven chronicle, Fosse Way edition*. From the record for the *Kesteven chronicle*, the following note can be displayed: Continues: Lincolnshire chronicle. North Kesteven ed.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
431 #1$15301#$aTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council
Standard subfields technique
431 #1$tTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council

EX 3
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$15300#$aPopular hi-fi
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$tPopular hi-fi
What hi-fi? supersedes Popular hi-fi.
EX 4
Embedded fields technique
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$15300#$aBus & coach
Standard subfields technique
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$tBus & coach
Motor transport absorbed Bus & coach.
EX 5
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$12001#$aBoekengids
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$tBoekengids
Jeugboekengids was originally a part of *Boekengids* but is now published separately. From the record, the following note can be displayed: Separated from: Boekengids
From the corresponding field 441 in the record for *Boekengids*, the following note can be displayed: Continued in part by: Jeugboekengids
EX 6
Embedded fields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)

210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)- god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god. 6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.
Standard subfields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842 531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955

430 #1$x1330-2809$tKolo (1842)
440 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$x0354-057X$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni I odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
440 #1$x1331-0992$tKolo (1995)
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title. A further example of the use of field 430 occurs as EX 3 in the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK and EX 2 in field 488.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

433 SUPERSEDES IN PART

Field Definition and Scope

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a preceding title. Fields 431-437 are used in preference to 430 when it is required to elaborate on the "preceding" relationship.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Where an agency uses this fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continues: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Supersedes: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed: a continuing resource was in existence before it absorbed an earlier continuing resource and it continues with its own numbering.

Separated from: the new title was once a part of a still existing title.

Related Fields

44- Succeeding Entry Fields	Fields 440-445 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 430-435.
448 CHANGED BACK TO	This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.
520 FORMER TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)	Used when the practice is to record a continuing resource under its latest title with added entries under earlier titles. Not to be used when 430-437 are used.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$12001#$aLincolnshire chronicle$1205##$aNorth Kesteven ed.
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$tLincolnshire chronicle$eNorth Kesteven ed.
The North Kesteven edition of the *Lincolnshire chronicle* changes its name to *Kesteven chronicle, Fosse Way edition*. From the record for the *Kesteven chronicle*, the following note can be displayed: Continues: Lincolnshire chronicle. North Kesteven ed.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
431 #1$15301#$aTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council
Standard subfields technique
431 #1$tTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council

EX 3
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$15300#$aPopular hi-fi
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$tPopular hi-fi
What hi-fi? supersedes Popular hi-fi.
EX 4
Embedded fields technique
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$15300#$aBus & coach
Standard subfields technique
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$tBus & coach
Motor transport absorbed Bus & coach.
EX 5
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$12001#$aBoekengids
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$tBoekengids
Jeugboekengids was originally a part of *Boekengids* but is now published separately. From the record, the following note can be displayed: Separated from: Boekengids
From the corresponding field 441 in the record for *Boekengids*, the following note can be displayed: Continued in part by: Jeugboekengids
EX 6
Embedded fields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)

210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)- god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god. 6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.
Standard subfields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842 531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955

430 #1$x1330-2809$tKolo (1842)
440 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$x0354-057X$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni I odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
440 #1$x1331-0992$tKolo (1995)
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title. A further example of the use of field 430 occurs as EX 3 in the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK and EX 2 in field 488.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

434 ABSORBED

Field Definition and Scope

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a preceding title. Fields 431-437 are used in preference to 430 when it is required to elaborate on the "preceding" relationship.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Where an agency uses this fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continues: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Supersedes: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed: a continuing resource was in existence before it absorbed an earlier continuing resource and it continues with its own numbering.

Separated from: the new title was once a part of a still existing title.

Related Fields

44- Succeeding Entry Fields	Fields 440-445 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 430-435.
448 CHANGED BACK TO	This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.
520 FORMER TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)	Used when the practice is to record a continuing resource under its latest title with added entries under earlier titles. Not to be used when 430-437 are used.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$12001#$aLincolnshire chronicle$1205##$aNorth Kesteven ed.
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$tLincolnshire chronicle$eNorth Kesteven ed.
The North Kesteven edition of the *Lincolnshire chronicle* changes its name to *Kesteven chronicle, Fosse Way edition*. From the record for the *Kesteven chronicle*, the following note can be displayed: Continues: Lincolnshire chronicle. North Kesteven ed.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
431 #1$15301#$aTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council
Standard subfields technique
431 #1$tTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council

EX 3
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$15300#$aPopular hi-fi
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$tPopular hi-fi
What hi-fi? supersedes Popular hi-fi.
EX 4
Embedded fields technique
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$15300#$aBus & coach
Standard subfields technique
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$tBus & coach
Motor transport absorbed Bus & coach.
EX 5
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$12001#$aBoekengids
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$tBoekengids
Jeugboekengids was originally a part of *Boekengids* but is now published separately. From the record, the following note can be displayed: Separated from: Boekengids
From the corresponding field 441 in the record for *Boekengids*, the following note can be displayed: Continued in part by: Jeugboekengids
EX 6
Embedded fields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)

210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)- god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god. 6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.
Standard subfields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842 531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955

430 #1$x1330-2809$tKolo (1842)
440 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$x0354-057X$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni I odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
440 #1$x1331-0992$tKolo (1995)
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title. A further example of the use of field 430 occurs as EX 3 in the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK and EX 2 in field 488.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

435 ABSORBED IN PART

Field Definition and Scope

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a preceding title. Fields 431-437 are used in preference to 430 when it is required to elaborate on the "preceding" relationship.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Where an agency uses this fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continues: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Supersedes: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed: a continuing resource was in existence before it absorbed an earlier continuing resource and it continues with its own numbering.

Separated from: the new title was once a part of a still existing title.

Related Fields

44- Succeeding Entry Fields	Fields 440-445 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 430-435.
448 CHANGED BACK TO	This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.
520 FORMER TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)	Used when the practice is to record a continuing resource under its latest title with added entries under earlier titles. Not to be used when 430-437 are used.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$12001#$aLincolnshire chronicle$1205##$aNorth Kesteven ed.
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$tLincolnshire chronicle$eNorth Kesteven ed.
The North Kesteven edition of the *Lincolnshire chronicle* changes its name to *Kesteven chronicle, Fosse Way edition*. From the record for the *Kesteven chronicle*, the following note can be displayed: Continues: Lincolnshire chronicle. North Kesteven ed.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
431 #1$15301#$aTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council
Standard subfields technique
431 #1$tTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council

EX 3
Embedded fields technique:
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$15300#$aPopular hi-fi
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$tPopular hi-fi
What hi-fi? supersedes Popular hi-fi.
EX 4
Embedded fields technique:
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$15300#$aBus & coach
Standard subfields technique
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$tBus & coach
Motor transport absorbed Bus & coach.
EX 5
Embedded fields technique:
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$12001#$aBoekengids
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$tBoekengids
Jeugboekengids was originally a part of *Boekengids* but is now published separately. From the record, the following note can be displayed: Separated from: Boekengids
From the corresponding field 441 in the record for *Boekengids*, the following note can be displayed: Continued in part by: Jeugboekengids
EX 6
Embedded fields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Jože Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)

210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)- god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god. 6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.
Standard subfields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842 531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955

430 #1$x1330-2809$tKolo (1842)
440 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$x0354-057X$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni I odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
440 #1$x1331-0992$tKolo (1995)
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title. A further example of the use of field 430 occurs as EX 3 in the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK and EX 2 in field 488.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

437 SEPARATED FROM

Field Definition and Scope

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a preceding title. Fields 431-437 are used in preference to 430 when it is required to elaborate on the "preceding" relationship.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Where an agency uses this fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continues: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Supersedes: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed: a continuing resource was in existence before it absorbed an earlier continuing resource and it continues with its own numbering.

Separated from: the new title was once a part of a still existing title.

Related Fields

44- Succeeding Entry Fields	Fields 440-445 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 430-435.
448 CHANGED BACK TO	This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.
520 FORMER TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)	Used when the practice is to record a continuing resource under its latest title with added entries under earlier titles. Not to be used when 430-437 are used.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$12001#$aLincolnshire chronicle$1205##$aNorth Kesteven ed.
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aKesteven chronicle ...
205 ##$aFosse Way ed.
430 #1$tLincolnshire chronicle$eNorth Kesteven ed.
The North Kesteven edition of the *Lincolnshire chronicle* changes its name to *Kesteven chronicle, Fosse Way edition*. From the record for the *Kesteven chronicle*, the following note can be displayed: Continues: Lincolnshire chronicle. North Kesteven ed.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
431 #1$15301#$aTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council
Standard subfields technique
431 #1$tTransport policies and programmes -- Hertfordshire County Council
530 1#$aPublic transport plan -- Hertfordshire County Council

EX 3
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$15300#$aPopular hi-fi
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aWhat hi-fi?
432 #1$tPopular hi-fi
What hi-fi? supersedes Popular hi-fi.
EX 4
Embedded fields technique
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$15300#$aBus & coach
Standard subfields technique
530 1#$aMotor transport$b(London)
434 #1$tBus & coach
Motor transport absorbed Bus & coach.
EX 5
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$12001#$aBoekengids
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aJeugboekengids
437 #1$tBoekengids
Jeugboekengids was originally a part of *Boekengids* but is now published separately. From the record, the following note can be displayed: Separated from: Boekengids
From the corresponding field 441 in the record for *Boekengids*, the following note can be displayed: Continued in part by: Jeugboekengids
EX 6
Embedded fields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Jože Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)

210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)- god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god. 6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.
Standard subfields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842 531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955

430 #1$x1330-2809$tKolo (1842)
440 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$x0354-057X$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963 531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni I odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
440 #1$x1331-0992$tKolo (1995)
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title. A further example of the use of field 430 occurs as EX 3 in the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK and EX 2 in field 488.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

436 FORMED BY MERGER OF ..., ..., AND ...

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the continuing resource being catalogued to two or more other continuing resources which precede it and which were merged to form it.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Occurrence

Optional. This field must be repeated. It is repeated for each of the previous continuing resources which merged.

Related Fields

434 ABSORBED	When two or more continuing resources are merged, but continue under the name of one of the original continuing resources, field 434 is used in the record of the continuing resource whose name did not change to link to the continuing resource which was merged and whose title no longer continues.
447 MERGED WITH ... AND... TO FORM ...	Field 447 is used in the record of one of the earlier continuing resources which is merged to link to the continuing resource(s) with which it is merged and the new title.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aArchivio e Rassegna italiana di Ottalmologia
436 #1$12001#$aArchivio di Ottalmologia
436 #1$12001#$aRassegna italiana di Ottalmologia
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aArchivio e Rassegna italiana di Ottalmologia
436 #1$tArchivio di Ottalmologia
436 #1$tRassegna italiana di Ottalmologia
Archivio di Ottalmologia and Rassegna italiana di Ottalmologia merged to form Archivio e Rassegna italiana di Ottalmologia.

440 CONTINUED BY

Field Definition and Scope

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to its succeeding title. Fields 441-445 are used in preference to 440 when it is desired to elaborate on the "succeeding" relationship.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Where an agency uses this fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continued by: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Superseded by: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed by: the continuing resource being catalogued ceases to exist but is continued by the continuing resource referred to in field 444 or 445, although this continuing resource continues its previous numbering.

Related Fields

43- Preceding Entry Fields	Fields 430-435 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 440-445.
448 CHANGED BACK TO	This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN International Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique
440 #1$1011##$a0034-1223$15301#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique
440 #1$x0034-1223$t≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale
The continuing resource *La recherche aéronautique* has ceased and has been continued by *La recherche aérospatiale*. "La" is marked as non-filing in both cases. The following note could be generated from the 440 field: Continued by: La recherche aérospatiale
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aNew transport technology
444 #1$15300#$aHoverfoil news
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aNew transport technology
444 #1$tHoverfoil news
On ceasing publication, *New transport technology* was absorbed by *Hoverfoil news*.
EX 3
Embedded fields technique

Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f <urednici Jože Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f <glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971 430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963
531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.

Standard subfields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f <urednici Jože Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$x1330-2809$tKolo (1842)
440 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f <glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$x0354-057X$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963
531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
440 #1$x1331-0992$tKolo (1995)
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.

Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title. A further example of the use of field 440 occurs as EX 2 in field 488.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

441 CONTINUED IN PART BY

Field Definition and Scope

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to its succeeding title. Fields 441-445 are used in preference to 440 when it is desired to elaborate on the "succeeding" relationship.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Where an agency uses this fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continued by: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Superseded by: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed by: the continuing resource being catalogued ceases to exist but is continued by the continuing resource referred to in field 444 or 445, although this continuing resource continues its previous numbering.

Related Fields

43- Preceding Entry Fields	Fields 430-435 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 440-445.
448 CHANGED BACK TO	This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN International Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique
440 #1$1011##$a0034-1223$15301#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique
440 #1$x0034-1223$t≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale
The continuing resource *La recherche aéronautique* has ceased and has been continued by *La recherche aérospatiale*. "La" is marked as non-filing in both cases. The following note could be generated from the 440 field: Continued by: La recherche aérospatiale
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aNew transport technology
444 #1$15300#$aHoverfoil news
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aNew transport technology
444 #1$tHoverfoil news
On ceasing publication, *New transport technology* was absorbed by *Hoverfoil news*.
EX 3
Embedded fields technique

Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f <urednici Jože Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f <glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971 430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963
531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.

Standard subfields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f <urednici Jože Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$x1330-2809$tKolo (1842)
440 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f <glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$x0354-057X$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963
531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
440 #1$x1331-0992$tKolo (1995)
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.

Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.
A further example of the use of field 440 occurs as EX 2 in field 488.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

442 SUPERSEDED BY

Field Definition and Scope

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to its succeeding title. Fields 441-445 are used in preference to 440 when it is desired to elaborate on the "succeeding" relationship.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Where an agency uses this fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continued by: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Superseded by: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed by: the continuing resource being catalogued ceases to exist but is continued by the continuing resource referred to in field 444 or 445, although this continuing resource continues its previous numbering.

Related Fields

43- Preceding Entry Fields	Fields 430-435 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 440-445.
448 CHANGED BACK TO	This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN International Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique
440 #1$1011##$a0034-1223$15301#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique
440 #1$x0034-1223$t≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale
The continuing resource *La recherche aéronautique* has ceased and has been continued by *La recherche aérospatiale*. "La" is marked as non-filing in both cases. The following note could be generated from the 440 field: Continued by: La recherche aérospatiale
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aNew transport technology
444 #1$15300#$aHoverfoil news
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aNew transport technology
444 #1$tHoverfoil news
On ceasing publication, *New transport technology* was absorbed by *Hoverfoil news*.
EX 3
Embedded fields technique

Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f <urednici Jože Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f <glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971 430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963
531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.

Standard subfields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f <urednici Jože Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$x1330-2809$tKolo (1842)
440 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f <glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$x0354-057X$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963
531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
440 #1$x1331-0992$tKolo (1995)
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.

Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.
A further example of the use of field 440 occurs as EX 2 in field 488.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

443 SUPERSEDED IN PART BY

Field Definition and Scope

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to its succeeding title. Fields 441-445 are used in preference to 440 when it is desired to elaborate on the "succeeding" relationship.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Where an agency uses this fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continued by: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Superseded by: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed by: the continuing resource being catalogued ceases to exist but is continued by the continuing resource referred to in field 444 or 445, although this continuing resource continues its previous numbering.

Related Fields

43- Preceding Entry Fields	Fields 430-435 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 440-445.
448 CHANGED BACK TO	This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN International Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique
440 #1$1011##$a0034-1223$15301#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique
440 #1$x0034-1223$t≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale
The continuing resource *La recherche aéronautique* has ceased and has been continued by *La recherche aérospatiale*. "La" is marked as non-filing in both cases. The following note could be generated from the 440 field: Continued by: La recherche aérospatiale
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aNew transport technology
444 #1$15300#$aHoverfoil news
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aNew transport technology
444 #1$tHoverfoil news
On ceasing publication, *New transport technology* was absorbed by *Hoverfoil news*.
EX 3
Embedded fields technique

Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f <urednici Jože Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f <glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971 430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963
531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.

Standard subfields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f <urednici Jože Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$x1330-2809$tKolo (1842)
440 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f <glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$x0354-057X$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963
531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
440 #1$x1331-0992$tKolo (1995)
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.

Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.
A further example of the use of field 440 occurs as EX 2 in field 488.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

444 ABSORBED BY

Field Definition and Scope

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to its succeeding title. Fields 441-445 are used in preference to 440 when it is desired to elaborate on the "succeeding" relationship.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Where an agency uses this fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continued by: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Superseded by: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed by: the continuing resource being catalogued ceases to exist but is continued by the continuing resource referred to in field 444 or 445, although this continuing resource continues its previous numbering.

Related Fields

43- Preceding Entry Fields	Fields 430-435 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 440-445.
448 CHANGED BACK TO	This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN International Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique
440 #1$1011##$a0034-1223$15301#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique
440 #1$x0034-1223$t≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale
The continuing resource *La recherche aéronautique* has ceased and has been continued by *La recherche aérospatiale*. "La" is marked as non-filing in both cases. The following note could be generated from the 440 field: Continued by: La recherche aérospatiale
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aNew transport technology
444 #1$15300#$aHoverfoil news
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aNew transport technology
444 #1$tHoverfoil news
On ceasing publication, *New transport technology* was absorbed by *Hoverfoil news*.
EX 3
Embedded fields technique

Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f <urednici Jože Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f <glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971 430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963
531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.

Standard subfields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f <urednici Jože Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$x1330-2809$tKolo (1842)
440 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f <glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$x0354-057X$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963
531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
440 #1$x1331-0992$tKolo (1995)
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.

Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.
A further example of the use of field 440 occurs as EX 2 in field 488.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

445 ABSORBED IN PART BY

Field Definition and Scope

The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to its succeeding title. Fields 441-445 are used in preference to 440 when it is desired to elaborate on the "succeeding" relationship.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

Where an agency uses this fields they should be distinguished as follows:

Continued by: the new title replaces the earlier title without a change in numbering;

Superseded by: the new title replaces the earlier title and the numbering of the earlier one is not continued;

Absorbed by: the continuing resource being catalogued ceases to exist but is continued by the continuing resource referred to in field 444 or 445, although this continuing resource continues its previous numbering.

Related Fields

43- Preceding Entry Fields	Fields 430-435 are used for the reciprocals of the relationships identified by fields 440-445.
448 CHANGED BACK TO	This field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. The practice recommended by the ISSN International Centre is to use fields 440 CONTINUED BY and 430 CONTINUES.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique
440 #1$1011##$a0034-1223$15301#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aéronautique
440 #1$x0034-1223$t≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠recherche aérospatiale
The continuing resource *La recherche aéronautique* has ceased and has been continued by *La recherche aérospatiale*. "La" is marked as non-filing in both cases. The following note could be generated from the 440 field: Continued by: La recherche aérospatiale
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aNew transport technology
444 #1$15300#$aHoverfoil news
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aNew transport technology
444 #1$tHoverfoil news
On ceasing publication, *New transport technology* was absorbed by *Hoverfoil news*.
EX 3
Embedded fields technique

Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971 430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963
531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.

Standard subfields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Jože Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$x1330-2809$tKolo (1842)
440 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$x1330-2817$tHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$x0354-057X$tKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963
531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$x0023-2920$tKolo (1963)
440 #1$x1331-0992$tKolo (1995)
530 0#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.

Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title. A further example of the use of field 440 occurs as EX 2 in field 488.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

446 SPLIT INTO .., ..., AND ...

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the continuing resource being catalogued to two or more other continuing resources which continued it and which split from it.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Occurrence

Optional. This field must be repeated for each of the new continuing resources.

Related Fields

434 ABSORBED	When a continuing resource splits into two or more continuing resources, but the title of the original is kept by one of the later continuing resources, field 434 is used in the record of the continuing resource whose title did not change in order to link to the continuing resource which was merged and whose title no longer continues.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
530 1#$aGazette – East Central State of Nigeria
446 #1$15301#$aOfficial gazette – Anambra State of Nigeria
446 #1$15301#$aOfficial gazette – Imo State of Nigeria
Standard subfields technique
530 1#$aGazette – East Central State of Nigeria
446 #1$tOfficial gazette – Anambra State of Nigeria
446 #1$tOfficial gazette – Imo State of Nigeria
In the record for the Gazette – East Central State of Nigeria, a note on the following lines may occur: Split into: Official gazette – Anambra State of Nigeria and Official gazette – Imo State of Nigeria

447 MERGED WITH ... AND ... TO FORM ...

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the continuing resource being catalogued to other continuing resources with which it merged and to the resource which was the product of the merger.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Occurrence

Optional. This field must be repeated. The final occurrence of the field relates to the product of the merger; all other occurrences relate to resources with which the resource being catalogued is merged.

Related Fields

434 ABSORBED	When the continuing resource being catalogued is merged with one or more others to form a new continuing resource which bears the same title as the continuing resource being catalogued, the record of the resource being catalogued will contain a 434 field referring to each of the titles which is absorbed and field 447 will not be used.
444 ABSORBED BY	When the continuing resource being catalogued is merged with one or more others to form a new continuing resource which bears the same title as one of the other continuing resources, the record of the resource being catalogued will contain a 444 field referring to the title which continues, and field 447 will not be used.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
530 1#$aPulpit preaching
447 #1$15301#$aPulpit digest
447 #1$15301#$aNew pulpit digest$1011##$a0145-7969
Standard subfields technique
530 1#$aPulpit preaching
447 #1$tPulpit digest
447 #1$tNew pulpit digest$x0145-7969
A continuing resource *Pulpit preaching* merged with *Pulpit digest* to form *New pulpit digest*. The records have been linked using the key title.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
500 11$aAbstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals.$iGeology and geography series.
447 #1$150011$aAbstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals.$iMetallurgy.
447 #1$150011$aAbstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals.$iMining series.
447 #1$150011$aCommunist Chinese scientific abstracts.
Standard subfields technique
500 11$aAbstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals.$iGeology and geography series.
447 #1$tAbstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals. Metallurgy.
447 #1$tAbstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals. Mining series.

447 #1$tCommunist Chinese scientific abstracts.
The continuing resource Abstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals. Geology and geography series merged with Abstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals. Metallurgy and Abstracts pertaining to Communist China in Soviet abstracts journals. Mining series to form Communist Chinese scientific abstracts. The records have been linked using the preferred titles.

448 CHANGED BACK TO

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the continuing resource being catalogued to a continuing resource which both preceded it and succeeded it. This occurs when a continuing resource changes its name and then reverts back to its earlier name. This field occurs in the record of the intervening title.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

When a title reverts back to an earlier title, the practice recommended by the ISSN Centre is to use fields 430 CONTINUES (EX 6) and 440 CONTINUED BY (EX 2).

Related Fields

430 CONTINUES	The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to a preceding title.
440 CONTINUED BY	The field is used to link a continuing resource being catalogued to its succeeding title.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aJack and Jill with Harold Hare
448 #1$12001#$aJack and Jill
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aJack and Jill with Harold Hare
448 #1$tJack and Jill
Jack and Jill changed its name to *Jack and Jill with Harold Hare*, before reverting to its earlier title *Jack and Jill*. This field occur in the record of *Jack and Jill with Harold Hare*.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
Record 1
001 981026020
011 ##$a1330-2809
100 ##$a19981026b18421853y0scry0191 ba
200 0#$aKolo$ečlanci za literaturu, umetnost i narodni život$furednik Mirko Bogović
207 #0$aKnj.1(1842)-knj.9(1853)
210 ##$aZagreb$d1842-1853$eU Zagrebu$gTiskom K. P. narodne tiskarnice dra. Lj. Gaja
440 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
530 1#$aKolo$j1842
531 ##$aKolo$b1842
Record 2
001 920227116
011 ##$a1330-2817
100 ##$a19920227b19051955y0scry0191 ba
200 1#$aHrvatsko kolo$eknjiževno-naučni zbornik$f<urednici Joža Horvat, Jakša Ravlić, Grigor Vitez>
207 #0$aKnj.1(1905)-knj.26(1946)$agod.1(1948)-god.7(1955)

210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1905-1955
430 #1$1001981026020$1011##$a1330-2809$15300#$aKolo$j1842
440 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
530 0#$aHrvatsko kolo
531 ##$aHrvat. Kolo
Record 3
001 981023082
011 ##$a0023-2920
100 ##$a19981023b19631971y0scry0191 ba
200 #$aKolo$ečasopis za kulturu i umjetnost$f<glavni i odgovorni urednik Igor Zidić>
207 #0$aN.s., god.1=121(1963)-god.6=126,br.6(1968)$anovi tečaj, god.6=126,br.7(1968)-god.9=129(1971) 210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1963-1971
430 #1$1001920227116$1011##$a1330-2817$15300#$aHrvatsko kolo
440 #1$1001920227072$1011##$a0354-057X$15300#$aKolo Matice hrvatske
530 1#$aKolo$j1963
531 ##$aKolo$b1963
Record 4
001 920227072
011 ##$a0354-057X
100 ##$a19920227b19911994y0scry0191 ba
200 #$aKolo Matice hrvatske$ečasopis za kulturu, umjetnost i društvena pitanja$fIgor Zidić glavni i odgovorni urednik
207 #0$aObnovljeni tečaj, god.1=149(srpanj/prosinac 1991)-god.4=152(1994)
210 ##$aZagreb$cMatica hrvatska$d1991-1994
430 #1$1001981023082$1011##$a0023-2920$15300#$aKolo$j1963
440 #1$1001920227091$1011##$a1331-0992$15300#$aKolo$j1995
530 #$aKolo Matice hrvatske
531 ##$aKolo Matice hrvat.
Recommended usage of 430 and 440 fields instead of using the 448 field. The journal *Kolo* changed back to this title twice during its publishing history. Each time the title changes a new record is created and the records are linked by fields 430 and 440. Each title is differentiated by adding the qualifier in the key title.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

451 OTHER EDITION IN THE SAME MEDIUM

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the resource being catalogued to another edition, state or version of that resource that is in the same medium, such as another printed edition produced in a different language, or to link a print to another impression derived from the same plate.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

This field may be used to link to other editions of continuing resources (EX 1) or monographs (EX 2).

Related Fields

452 OTHER EDITION IN ANOTHER MEDIUM	Field 452 also expresses links to other editions or versions of the resource being catalogued; however, these other editions are in a different medium. For example the resource being catalogued is a printed book and the other edition is in microform.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aCamera
451 #0$1011##$a0373-9740$15301#$aCamera$b(Édition française)
451 #0$1011##$a0366-7073$15301#$aCamera$b(English edition)
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aCamera
451 #0$x0373-9740$tCamera (Édition française)
451 #0$x0366-7073$tCamera (English edition)
A continuing resource *Camera* is published in three language editions. In the record of the German edition, a link is made to the English and French editions by means of repeated 451 fields which include the ISSN and key title of each.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aPrefaces to the experience of literature...
305 ##$aOriginally published: New York : Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1979
451 #0$1001BLN6956090$12001#$aPrefaces to the experience of literature$1210##$aNew York$cHarcourt Brace Jovanovich$d1979
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aPrefaces to the experience of literature...
305 ##$aOriginally published: New York : Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1979
451 #0$0BLN6956090$tPrefaces to the experience of literature$cNew York$nHarcourt Brace Jovanovich $d1979
The agency preparing the record makes links to the records of earlier editions of resources if they already exists on the database, although it also enters bibliographic history notes in the record. Thus there is no need to generate a note from the 451 field. BLN6956090 is the record identifier of the earlier edition.
EX 3

Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aDescriptio Vrbis Romae novissima A.D. MDCX$fJoannes Maius delineavit A.D. 1599
210 ##$a[S.l.]$c[s.n.]$d1610
300 ##$aRist. Dell'ed.: Roma : Lorenzo della Vaccharia, 1600
311 ##$a2.stato con le modifiche alle chiese di S.Pietro e S. Sebastiano
451 #0$1700#1$aMaggi$bGiovanni$f 1566-1618$12001#$aDescriptio Vrbis Romae novissima A.D. MDCX$1210##$a[Roma]$d1600
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aDescriptio Vrbis Romae novissima A.D. MDCX$fJoannes Maius delineavit A.D. 1599
210 ##$a[S.l.]$c[s.n.]$d1610
300 ##$aRist. Dell'ed.: Roma : Lorenzo della Vaccharia, 1600
311 ##$a2.stato con le modifiche alle chiese di S.Pietro e S. Sebastiano
451 #0$aMaggi, Giovanni, 1566-1618$tDescriptio Vrbis Romae novissima A.D. MDCX$c[Roma]$d1600
This example illustrates the use of 451 to link two different impressions of prints made from the same plate. The record describes a print published in 1610 linked to a record describing a print made in 1600. The 311 note explains the relationship.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

452 OTHER EDITION IN ANOTHER MEDIUM

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the resource being catalogued to another edition or version of that resource in a different medium, such as an edition of a printed book in microform.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Related Fields

451 OTHER EDITION IN THE SAME MEDIUM	Field 451 also expresses links to other editions or versions of the resource being catalogued; however, these other editions are in the same medium as the catalogued resource.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
500 11$aSIGCAPH newsletter
452 #0$150011$aSIGCAPH newsletter$bBraille text
Standard subfields technique
500 11$aSIGCAPH newsletter
452 #0$tSIGCAPH newsletter (Braille text)
A continuing resource issued in both print and Braille editions, both of which have been catalogued in a separate record.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
500 11$aWater pollution research journal of Canada
452 #0$150011$aWater pollution research journal of Canada$n(Microfiche ed.)
452 #0$150011$aWater pollution research journal of Canada$n(Microfilm ed.)
Standard subfields technique
500 11$aWater pollution research journal of Canada
452 #0tWater pollution research journal of Canada (Microfiche ed.)
452 #0$tWater pollution research journal of Canada (Microfilm ed.)
A continuing resource issued in print, microfiche, and microfilm editions, each of which has been catalogued in a separate record. The records have been linked using the preferred title.
EX 3
Embedded subfields technique
200 11$aInterface
452 #0$150011$aInterface$n(Electronic edition)$1
856 4#$uhttp://www.bl.uk/services/bsds/nbs/interface/wface01.html
Standard subfields technique
200 11$aInterface
452 #0$tInterface (Electronic edition)$uhttp://www.bl.uk/services/bsds/nbs/interface/wface01.html
A continuing resource for which on-line and print versions exist.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

453 TRANSLATED AS

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the resource being catalogued to a translation of the resource.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Related Fields

454 TRANSLATION OF	Field 454 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship identified by field 453. It would be used in the record for the translation to link to the original.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aPodniataia tselina ...
453 #1$1001B78-17841$12001#$aHarvest on the Don$1700#1$aSholokov$bMikhail
700 #1$aSholokov$bMikhail
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aPodniataia tselina ...
453 #1$0B78-17841$tHarvest on the Don$aSholokov, Mikhail
700 #1$aSholokov$bMikhail
In the record of the resource in Russian, a 453 field is present from which can be generated a “translated as” note.

454 TRANSLATION OF

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the resource being catalogued, which is a translation, to its original.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Related Fields

453 TRANSLATED AS	Field 453 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship identified by field 454. It would be used in the record for the original to link to the translation.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aAutomatic inspection systems for industry ...
454 #1$12001#$aIntelligente Messsysteme zur Automatisierung technischer Prozesse$1210##$aDortmund$cDOK$d1981$1700#1$ aBretschi$bJurgen
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aAutomatic inspection systems for industry ...
454 #1$tIntelligente Messsysteme zur Automatisierung technischer Prozesse$cDortmund$nDOK$d1981$aBretschi, Jurgen
Automatic inspection systems for industry is a translation of *Intelligente Messsysteme zur Automatisierung technischer Prozesse*. The original is not in the database and field 454 therefore contains sufficient data to create a full citation.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

455 REPRODUCTION OF

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a description of an original or a link to a record describing an original.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Related Fields

324 ORIGINAL VERSION NOTE	Note giving details of the original when the resource is catalogued as a reproduction.
452 OTHER EDITION IN ANOTHER MEDIUM	Field 452 is generally used for multiple simultaneous editions.
456 REPRODUCED AS	Field 456 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship identified by field 455.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
455 #1$100183-010711
Standard subfields technique
455 #1$083-010711
The original was catalogued in a record with Record Identifier 83-010711. The database can access all other fields of this record so no further details need be given. This is, however, not sufficient for exchange purposes.

456 REPRODUCED AS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a description of a reproduction or a link to a record describing a reproduction.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for each form of reproduction.

Related Fields

325 REPRODUCTION NOTE	Note giving details of the reproduction. May be used instead of 456 when 4-- fields are not applied.
452 OTHER EDITION IN ANOTHER MEDIUM	Field 452 is generally used for multiple simultaneous editions.
455 REPRODUCTION OF	Field 455 is used for the reciprocal of the relationship identified by field 456.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
456 #1$10011033666$1130##$adafa###aaca$12001#$aThéorie des peines et des recompenses $bMicroform$e1811$1210##$aCambridge$cChadwyck-Healey Ltd$d1988$1215##$a1 reel$d35 mm$12252#$aThe Nineteenth Century$iGeneralCollection$vN.1.1.18$1700#1$aBentham$bJeremy $f1748-1832
Standard subfields technique
456 #1$01033666$tThéorie des peines et des récompenses$bMicroform$o1811$cCambridge $nChadwyck-Healey Ltd$d1988$sThe Nineteenth Century. General Collection$vN.1.1.18$aBentham, Jeremy, 1748-1832
The information in the linking field gives data peculiar to the reproduction and the 4-- field mandatory data (500 and 700). A note will be automatically generated.

History

1994	New field.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

461 SET

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to identify hierarchically linked resources at the set level. The resource to which the link is made is at the set level, and the record containing this field is at the subset, piece or piece-analytic level.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used only when the record structure emphasizes hierarchical linking between data from various levels and when it is intended to identify, describe or indicate a resource at the set level.

A set is a group of physically separate resources identified by a common title; it includes series, continuing resources, made-up collections and multi-volume monographs.

A link from a piece or subset to a set is always an upward link.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aBuses in the East Midlands...
461 #1$12001#$aFleetbooks$vno.7
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aBuses in the East Midlands...
461 #1$tFleetbooks$vno.7
A monograph *Buses of the East Midlands* is part of a monograph series. Within the record of the monograph there is a field linking to the series entitled *Fleetbooks* which is represented by its title. This resource is number 7 in the series. Note the use of subfield $v in the embedded 200 field: although it is embedded in a reference to the monographic series, it is specific to the monograph. A further example of the use of this field appears as EX 1 of the 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Definition changed.
2012	Changes to text.

462 SUBSET

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to identify hierarchical links to resources at the subset level. The record to which the link is made is at the subset level, and the record containing this field is at the piece, subset, or set level.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used only when the record structure emphasizes hierarchical linking between data from various levels and when it is intended to identify, describe or indicate a resource at the subset level.

A subset is a group of physically separate resources identified by a common title, representing a section of a larger set.

Field 462 should generally be used in a record for a piece or a subset to link upward to a higher level subset. The only downward 462 link that should be used is one from a set to a subset. The set will be the highest level in the hierarchy, so the link can be downward.

A local indicator can be defined if it is desired to differentiate hyperlinked from non-hyperlinked text.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
462 #1$100101431811$1011##$a0143-1811$11010#$aeng$1102##aGB12001#$aGuide to wordprocessing systems$1210##$aLondon$cComputer Guides$d1979-
Standard subfields technique
462 #1$001431811$x0143-1811$tGuide to wordprocessing systems$cLondon $nComputer Guides$d1979-
A downwards link is made from a continuing resource to one of its subcontinuing resources. As the record exists and is linked both on the source database and in the exchange tape, the identifier (01431811) and optional details are given.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
462 #1$1011##$a0267-6079$15301#$aIrish literary studies
530 1#$aIAS AIL-Japan series
Standard subfields technique
462 #1$x0267-6079$tIrish literary studies
530 1#$aIAS AIL-Japan series
An upwards link is made from a subseries dealing with Anglo-Irish literature in Japan to a series on Anglo-Irish literature.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Changes to text.

463 PIECE

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to identify hierarchical links to resources at the piece level. The record to which the link is made is at the piece level, and the record containing this field is at the piece-analytic, subset, or set level.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used only when the record structure emphasizes hierarchical linking between data from various levels and when it is intended to identify, describe or indicate a resource at the piece level.

A piece is a single physically separate bibliographic resource.

Field 463 should generally be used in a record for a piece-analytic to link upward to the piece that contains the piece-analytic. A set (at the highest hierarchical level) may contain a downward link to a piece using a 463 field.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
463 #1$12001#$aNature$vvol. 60, no. 28
Standard subfields technique
463 #1$tNature$vvol. 60, no. 28
An upward link is made from the record of a contribution to the issue of the continuing resource in which it is published. The issue is at the piece level.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
463 #1$a≠NSB≠L'≠NSE≠histoire des légumes$bTexte imprimé$fMichel Chauvet$gavec la collab. de Albert Bry, Pierre Moncourtois et Georges Trébuchet
463 #1$12001#$vP.9-15$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠diversité des plantes légumières$eactes du symposium organisé à Angers du 17 au 19 octobre 1985$fpar l'Association pour l'inventaire et la conservation des plantes cultivées dans les pays de la Loire$gl'Association des conservatoires français d'espèces végétales$gle Bureau des ressources génétiques$1210##$aParis$cJATBA, Journal d'agriculture traditionnelle de botanique appliquée$d1986$1215##$a230 p.
Standard subfields technique
463 #1$a≠NSB≠L'≠NSE≠histoire des légumes$bTexte imprimé$fMichel Chauvet$gavec la collab. de Albert Bry, Pierre Moncourtois et Georges Trébuchet
463 #1$t≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠diversité des plantes légumières$oactes du symposium organisé à Angers du 17 au 19 octobre 1985$fpar l'Association des conservatories français d'espèces végétales$gle Bureau des ressources génétiques$cParis$nJATBA, Journal d'agriculture traditionnelle de botanique appliqué$d1986$p320 p.$vP.9-15
An upward link is made from the record of a contribution to the monographic resource in which it is published. The monographic resource is at the piece level.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Changes to text.

464 PIECE-ANALYTIC

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to identify hierarchical links to resources at the piece-analytic level. The record to which the link is made is at the piece-analytic level, and the record containing this field is at the piece level.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used only when the record structure emphasizes hierarchical linking between data from various levels and when it is intended to identify, describe or indicate a resource at the piece-analytic level.

A piece-analytic is a bibliographic resource that is part of and not physically separate from its host resource.

Since a link to a piece-analytic is inherently a downward link, it should not be used unless the piece is at the highest level. Instead upward links to the piece should be made (using field 463) in the record for the piece-analytic.

Related Fields

327 CONTENTS NOTE	When field 464 is repeated to describe or record each resource at the piece-analytic level, and when the second indicator is set to 1 in order to generate a note from each field, it is not required to make a field 327 containing the same data.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
464 #1$1001B781001$12001#$aPeople serving people$fby Judy A. Poseley$1700#1$aPoseley$bJudy A
464 #1$1001B781002$12001#$aVoices of Minnesota politicians
Standard subfields technique
464 #1$0B781001$aPoseley, Judy A.$tPeople serving people$fby Judy A. Poseley
464 #1$0B781002$tVoices of Minnesota politicians
A link is made from a multi-media resource entitled *Minnesota politics and government* to two of the contributions. These are held on the same exchange tape and so the record identifiers are given.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Changes to text.

470 RESOURCE REVIEWED

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the resource being catalogued (a review) to the record for the resource reviewed.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used in piece-analytic records to link to the resource being reviewed.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aISBD(PM)$ethe pros and cons of the new edition$fby Tony Reed
470 ##$10013598109857$12001#$aISBD(PM)$1205##$a2nd rev. ed.
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aISBD(PM)$ethe pros and cons of the new edition$fby Tony Reed
470 ##03598109857tISBD(PM)$e2nd rev. ed.
A link from a review of the ISBD for printed music to the entry for the resource itself.

History

1994	New field.
2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

481 ALSO BOUND IN THIS VOLUME

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains description of other resources bound in an "artificial" collection, e.g. not found with the first resource as issued. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains a link from the first resource in an "artificial" collection to each resource after the first in that collection.

The field can contain Record Identifier of the record containing full description of the other resource bound in the "artificial" collection, and/or data of that resource.

Related Fields

316 NOTE RELATING TO THE ITEM	This field contains a note relating to the item for older monographic publications, e.g. wanting leaves, copy characteristics, binding, numbered copies of an edition, manuscript notes on title page or margins, bound leaves, items, etc.
482 BOUND WITH	This field contains a description of the resource that is bound first in an "artificial" collection. It is generally used for older monographic publications.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
481 #1$100129121993001$12001#$aTheoria generalis aequationum omnium graduum novis illustrata formalis ac iuxta principia sublimioris calculi finitorum deducta$fautore p. Dominico Martinovics$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º – 1133 privez1$1210##$aBudae$d1780
Standard subfields technique
481 #1$029121993001$tTheoria generalis aequationum omnium graduum novis illustrata formalis ac iuxta principia sublimioris calculi finitorum deducta$fautore p. Dominico Martinovics$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º 1133 privez1$cBudae$d1780
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
481 #1$100127121993002$12001#$aCommentatio de titulo hereditarii Austriae imperatoris... a nobili Hungaro$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º-1597 privez1$1210##$aPestini$d1810
481 #1$100127121993003$12001#$aQuis nunc aggressor est? Au Austria, au Gallia?$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º-1597 privez2$1210##$a[S.1.]$d1805
481 #1$100127121993004$12001#$aInstitutio grammatophylacii publici pro instituto diplomatico-historico inclyti regni Hungariae...$fGeorg. Kovachich,Senquiciensis$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º-1597 privez 3$1210##$aPestini$cTypis M. Trattner$d[s.a.]
Standard subfields technique
481 #1$027121993002$tCommentatio de titulo hereditarii Austriae imperatoris... a nobili Hungaro$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º-1597 privez1$cPestini$d1810
481 #1$027121993003$tQuis nunc aggressor est? Au Austria, au Gallia?$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º-1597 privez2$c[S.1.]$d1805

481 #1$027121993004$tInstitutio grammatophylacii publici pro instituto diplomaticohistorico inclyti regni Hungariae...$fGeorg. Kovachich, Senquiciensis$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º-1597 privez 3$cPestini$nTypis M. Trattner$d[s.a.]
Three resources bound to Marcellus Daniel's *Assertiones ex universa theologia* in the "artificial" collection. The indicator value "1" in the 481 fields indicates that notes should be generated from these fields. See also examples 1 to 3 of the 482 field.

History

1996	New field.
2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.

482 BOUND WITH

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a description of the resource that is bound first in an "artificial" collection, i.e. not found with the other resources as issued. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable if the copies of the resource described in the record are bound in more than one artificial collection.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains a link from each resource after the first in an "artificial" collection to the first resource in that collection.

The field can contain Record Identifier of the record containing full description of the first resource bound in the "artificial" collection, and/or data of that resource.

Related Fields

316 NOTE RELATING TO THE ITEM	This field contains a note relating to the item for older monographic publications, e.g. wanting leaves, copy characteristics, binding, numbered copies of an edition, manuscript notes on title page or margins, bound leaves, items, etc.
481 ALSO BOUND IN THIS VOLUME	This field contains description of other resources bound in an "artificial" collection. It is generally used for older monographic publications.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aCommentatio de titulo hereditarii Austriae imperatoris... a nobili Hungaro
210 ##$aPestini$c[s.n.]$d1810
482 #1$100127121993001$12001#$aAssertiones ex universa theologia, quas...$fmense Junio publice propugnandas suscepit Marcellus Daniel...$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º -1597$1210##$a[S.1.$cs.n.$ds.a.]
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aCommentatio de titulo hereditarii Austriae imperatoris... a nobili Hungaro
210 ##$aPestini$c[S.l.$ns.n.$d1810]
482 #1$027121993001$tAssertiones ex universa theologia, quas... / mense Junio publice propugnandas suscepit Marcellus Daniel...$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º -1597 $c[S.1.$ns.n.$ds.a.]
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aQuis nunc aggressor est? Au Austria, au Gallia?
210 ##$a[S.1.]$c[s.n.]$d1805
482 #1$100127121993001$12001#$aAssertiones ex universa theologia, quas...$fmense Junio publice propugnandas suscepit Marcellus Daniel...$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º -1597$1210##$a[S.1.$cs.n.$ds.a.]
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aQuis nunc aggressor est? Au Austria, au Gallia?

210 ##$a[S.1.]$c[s.n.]$d1805
482 #1$00127121993001$tAssertiones ex universa theologia, quas... / mense Junio publice propugnandas suscepit Marcellus Daniel...**$**5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º -1597$c[S.1.$ds.a.]
EX 3
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aInstitutio grammatophylacii publici pro instituto diplomatico-historico inclyti regni Hungariae...$fGeorg. Kovachich, Senquiciensis
210 ##$aPestini$cTypis M. Trattner$d[s.a.]
482 #1$100127121993001$12001#$aAssertiones ex universa theologia, quas...$fmense Junio publice propugnandas suscepit Marcellus Daniel...$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º -1597$1210##$a[S.1.$cs.n.$ds.a.]
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aInstitutio grammatophylacii publici pro instituto diplomatico-historico inclyti regni Hungariae...$fGeorg. Kovachich, Senquiciensis
210 ##$aPestini$cTypis M. Trattner$d[s.a.]
482 #1$027121993001$tAssertiones ex universa theologia, quas...$fmense Junio publice propugnandas suscepit Marcellus Daniel...$5CiZaNSB: R IIF-8º -1597$c[S.1.$ns.n.$ds.a.]

History

1996	New field.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.

488 OTHER RELATED WORK

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to link the resource being catalogued to another resource when the specific relationship is not provided for in the other 4-- fields or cannot be determined from the source format.

The specifications below are in addition to those given at the block under 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK.

Notes on Field Contents

It is unlikely that field 488 would be used to generate a note since the nature of the relationship is unspecified.

Related Fields

311 NOTES PERTAINING TO LINKING FIELDS	Since field 488 is unlikely to be used to generate a note, any note on the relationship of the resource being catalogued to that referred to in field 488 is entered in field 311.

Examples

EX 1
Embedded fields technique
311 ##$aFacsimile reprint of: 1st ed. Garden City, N.Y. : Doubleday, Doran, 1933
488 #0$12001#$aFast one$1700#1$aCain$bPaul
Standard subfields technique
311 ##$aFacsimile reprint of: 1st ed. Garden City, N.Y. : Doubleday, Doran, 1933
488 #0$tFast one$aCain, Paul
A facsimile reprint entitled *Fast one: a novel* has a note. Additionally, a link is made in the record of the reprint to the earlier work to create an author/title added entry for the original title *Fast one*. The earlier record is not in the database and the title and author are themselves entered in the field.
EX 2
Embedded fields technique
488 #0$150010$aBible$iO.T$iPsalms
Standard subfields technique
488 #0$tBible$iO.T$iPsalms
A preferred title access point from a source format which does not specify relationships to the same extent as UNIMARC.
EX 3
Embedded fields technique
311 ##$aDrawings executed between 1816 and 1825 are compared with the work of J.M.W. Turner in: George Filbert, his early work / Thomas Johnson. New York: Dow, 1965
488 #0$12001#$aGeorge Filbert, his early work$1210##$aNew York$cDow$d1965$1700#1$aJohnson$bThomas
Standard subfields technique
311 ##$aDrawings executed between 1816 and 1825 are compared with the work of J.M.W. Turner in: George Filbert, his early work / Thomas Johnson. New York: Dow, 1965
488 #0$tGeorge Filbert, his early work$cNew York$nDow$d1965$aJohnson, Thomas

A reference to published research based on drawings described in the catalogue record and held by the institution.
EX 4
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$aUNIMARC manual bibliographic format
311 ##$aConcise version: UNIMARC concise bibliographic format. URLs: http://www.ifla.org/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm and http://ifla.inist.fr/VI/3/p19961/concise.htm
488 #0$12001#$aUNIMARC concise bibliographic format$18564#$uhttp://www.ifla.org/VI/3/p1996-/concise.htm$18564#$uhttp://ifla.inist.fr/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$aUNIMARC manual bibliographic format
311 ##$aConcise version: UNIMARC concise bibliographic format. URLs: http://www.ifla.org/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm and http://ifla.inist.fr/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm
488 #0$tUNIMARC concise bibliographic format$uhttp://www.ifla.org/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm$uhttp://ifla.inist.fr/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.htm
EX 5
Embedded fields technique
200 1#$a[Martyrium S. Christinae$fin Ecclesia Monialium ejusdem Sanctae $eDomenico M. a Canuti Inu et Pin.$gDomenico Bonauera Scul.
210 ##$aBologna$c[s.n.]$d[dopo il 1674]
215 ##$a1 stampa$cacqf.$d481 x 342 mm
311 ##$aAnother treatment of the subject
488 #0$12001#$a[Martyrium S. Christinae]
Standard subfields technique
200 1#$a[Martyrium S. Christinae$fin Ecclesia Monialium ejusdem Sanctae $eDomenico M. a Canuti Inu et Pin.$gDomenico Bonauera Scul.
210 ##$aBologna$c[s.n.]$d[dopo il 1674]
215 ##$a1 stampa$cacqf.$d481 x 342 mm
311 ##$aAnother treatment of the subject
488 #0$t[Martyrium S. Christinae]
An example of 488 used to link the print being catalogued to another print produced by the same artist, with the same subject, but at a different date in his career.

History

2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

5-- RELATED TITLE BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains titles other than the title proper related to the resource being catalogued and generally appearing on the resource. At present the following fields are defined:

Preferred Access Points	
500	PREFERRED TITLE ACCESS POINT
501	COLLECTIVE PREFERRED TITLE
503	CONVENTIONAL PREFERRED TITLE
506	PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK
507	PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION
576	NAME/ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK
577	NAME/ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION
Variant titles	
510	PARALLEL TITLE PROPER
511	HALF TITLE
512	COVER TITLE
513	ADDED TITLE-PAGE TITLE
514	CAPTION TITLE
515	RUNNING TITLE
516	SPINE TITLE
517	OTHER VARIANT TITLES
518	TITLE IN STANDARD MODERN SPELLING
Other related titles	
520	FORMER TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)
530	KEY TITLE
531	ABBREVIATED KEY TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)
532	EXPANDED TITLE
540	ADDITIONAL TITLE SUPPLIED BY CATALOGUER
541	TRANSLATED TITLE SUPPLIED BY CATALOGUER
545	SECTION TITLE
560	ARTIFICIAL TITLE

Indicators

Many of the related title fields have a first indicator that distinguishes significant titles. This indicator specifies whether the cataloguing agency has determined that the title should be used to create an independent title access point (or added entry). If an independent title access point should be generated from a field in the 5-- block, indicator position 1 takes the value 1. If an access point is not desirable, the value of indicator position 1 is 0. This indicator does not refer to the desirability of creating author/title access points or notes from the data in the field. Either of these two uses of the data is an option of the agency receiving the record whether the first indicator value is 0 or 1.

Subfields

For the use of subfields refer to each individual field.

Notes on Field Contents

Access Points and Notes

The titles in the 5-- block are used to generate title and author/title access points in addition to the title in field 200 $a. Note that the title in the first occurrence of 200 $a can be coded as an access point through the indicator position 1 of field 200 and this form of title is thus not repeated in the 5-- block.

The contents of a related title field may be used for access points and to generate notes. For the latter use, a print constant may be generated based on the field tag.

Linking Entries

Titles in the 5-- block are not links to other records but are alternative titles associated with the resource being catalogued. However, a 5-- field may be embedded in a 4-- field in addition to or instead of the title proper (200) of the bibliographic entity to which a link is being made. See EX 3 in the introduction to 4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK for an embedded key title.

Punctuation

Punctuation is entered in the fields in the 5-- block according to the practice of the cataloguing agency.

Non-sorting Characters

Any non-sorting characters at the beginning of the title may be dropped as part of the creation of the exchange tape. Alternatively the Bibliographic Control Set (ISO 6630) characters 08/08 and 08/09 may be used. As pointed out in paragraph 4.6 of the preparatory material, ≠NSB≠ and ≠NSE≠ indicate the use of these characters in the examples.

Parallel Variant Title

Parallel variant titles are recorded by repeating the appropriate variant title field. Subfield $z may be used in any field 510-541 to indicate the language of the title in that field.

Other Variant Titles

Field 517 may be used for titles which should be entered in fields 510-516 but which because of the lack of specificity in the source format cannot be allocated to the correct field.

Resources Where There is More than One Title Proper

Where there is more than one title proper, i.e. the document consists of several works and has no common title, subsequent dependent titles (e.g. parallel titles proper) should be entered in the 423 fields holding the 200$a to which they relate. For an example see 423 ISSUED WITH (EX 2).

Related Fields

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES	A note concerning to a variant title may also appear directly in a note in the 312 (or 300) field.
423 ISSUED WITH	Used for titles contained in additional 200$a subfields, in 200$c subfields and for titles associated with these.

History

2012	Corrections.
2024	Errata (name of fields 500, 501, 503).

500 PREFERRED TITLE ACCESS POINT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the particular title selected by the bibliographic agency by which a work that has appeared under varying titles is to be identified for cataloguing purposes. The title may have added to it elements to make it unique. The access point may be the primary (main) entry or there may be a personal or corporate name primary entry.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
500	PREFERRED TITLE ACCESS POINT	R	O
a	Preferred Title	NR	O
b	General Material Designation	R	O
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
g	Form Subdivision for Title	R	O
k	Date of Publication	NR	O
l	Form Subheading	R	O
m	Language (when Part of a Access Point)	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	R	O
q	Version (or Date of Version)	NR	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
v	Volume Designation	NR	O
w	Additional Elements (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Access point is not significant
	1	Access point is significant
2		Primary Entry Indicator
	0	Title is not primary entry
	1	Title is primary entry

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the data should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made from this title or not.

Value 0: Access point is not significant

It is not intended that an independent title access point be made under this preferred title (EX 1).

Value 1: Access point is significant

An added access point should be made under this title (EX 2), or this title is the primary (main) entry (EX 3).

An agency may determine that the data is significant for the purpose of creating an independent title access point and this will be reflected in the first indicator; however, in all cases in which the access point is the primary (main) entry (Indicator 2 = 1) it must be considered significant for independent title access.

The first indicator does not refer to the desirability of creating author/preferred title access points using the data in this field. Such access is determined according to the conventions of the record user.

Indicator 2: Primary Entry Indicator

Specifies whether the preferred title is primary (main) entry, i.e. there is no author (7--) primary entry and the cataloguing agency has entered the record under a preferred title. Use value 0 for cataloguing codes which do not recognise the concept of primary entry.

Value 0: Title is not primary entry

The preferred title is not the primary entry, though an added access point may be made for it as specified in Indicator 1 (EX 1, 2).

Value 1: Title is primary entry

The primary entry for the resource is the preferred title (EX 3).

Subfields Description

$a Preferred Title

The title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part. This subfield should be present whenever field 500 is used. Not repeatable.

$b General Material Designation

Text of general material designation. Repeatable.

It corresponds to General Material Designation in the ISBDs prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011). According to ISBD Consolidated Edition, GMD element is not used. However it can still be carried in bibliographic records created prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition.

$h Number of Section or Part

The number of a part when the resource to which the preferred title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the preferred title (EX 2). Repeatable for a subdivided part (EX 18).

$i Name of Section or Part

The name of a part when the resource to which the preferred title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the preferred title (EX 3,4,15,16). Repeatable for a subdivided part (EX 3, 19).

$g Form Subdivision for Title

The description of this subfield can be found above the description of $x. Repeatable.

$k Date of Publication

The date of publication of the resource when it is added to the preferred title (EX 3). Not repeatable. The date of publication should still be entered in field 210 or 214.

$l Form Subheading

Standard phrase added to a access point to further specify the preferred title (EX 7, 9). Repeatable (EX 11).

$m Language (when Part of a Access Point)

The language of the resource, when required as part of the access point (EX 2, 3, 5, 7, 24). Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, both languages should be entered in a single subfield $m (EX 5).

$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield (EX 8). Repeatable (EX 6, 9).

$q Version (or Date of Version)

An identification of the version of the work represented by the item; this may be the name or the original date of the version (EX 3). Not repeatable.

$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

The instrumentation, etc., of the item (EX 13, 14, 17). Repeatable.

$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number (EX 13 – 15). Repeatable.

$u Key (for Music)

The musical key used as part of the preferred title (EX 13). Not repeatable.

$v Volume Designation

Used to indicate a particular part of the resource that is related to another item. This subfield is used only when the field is embedded in a 4-- linking field (EX 10). It further defines the part of the linked item that bears the relationship designated by the 4-- tag. Not repeatable.

$w Additional Elements (for Music)

Additional elements can be arrangement statements (EX 17), language (EX 25) highlights (excerpts) statements. They are related to the edition in hand and not to the work and are to be distinguished from the qualifications. They do not belong to the access point. In this case the language is entered in $w and not $m. Not repeatable.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a title when used as a subject access point to specify further the topic that the subject access point represents. This subfield is used only when the 500 field is embedded in a 604 field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to the title when used as a subject access point to specify a place in relation to it that the subject access point represents. This subfield is used only when the 500 field is embedded in a 604 field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to the title when used as a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to it that the subject access point represents. This subfield is used only when the 500 field is embedded in a 604 field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. This subfield is used only when the 500 field is embedded in a 604 field. For examples see field 604. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The preferred title should be entered according to the rules of the inputting agency. The use made of these access points varies considerably between one agency and the next even when the same cataloguing rules are used. Those preferred titles which are main entries, i.e. those used primarily for anonymous classics, are an essential part of the record and must be exchanged, since they may be the only access point. Other preferred titles which never appear as a main entry are less significant, but it is recommended nonetheless that they be included in the exchange record.

Each cataloguing code has its own preferences for the form of access points, depending usually on tradition and language of cataloguing. Although no international standards exist, the following document published by the IFLA International Office for UBC is a step in that direction.

Anonymous classics : a list of uniform headings for European literatures. London : IFLA/UBC, 1978. ISBN: 0-903043-15-7. Updated at: http://www.ifla.org/VII/s13/pubs/AnonymousClassics2004.pdf

Some cataloguing codes prescribe access points for treaties, laws, protocols, etc. These should also be placed in UNIMARC in field 500, and be regarded as preferred titles. Any places or dates of treaties should be entered in $n Miscellaneous Information (EX 6, 9).

Related Fields

501 COLLECTIVE PREFERRED TITLE	The collective preferred title is used solely to group together works by a prolific author, such as collected works.
503 CONVENTIONAL PREFERRED TITLE	Conventional preferred title always occur as primary entries for works without authors with primary responsibility under cataloguing rules which specify forms of access points for conferences, exhibitions, festschriften, etc., when these are not regarded as corporate authors.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Grimani breviary
500 00$aBrevarium
710 02$aCatholic Church
Certain kinds of preferred title serve only to order entries within one access point. An added entry is not made for these preferred title. For example some codes require that all Breviaries are ordered within the access point for the church under a preferred title, such as Brevarium. In the 200 field, "The" is marked as non-filing.
EX 2
200 1#$aIliad, Book XXIV$fHomer$gedited by C.W. Macleod
500 10$aIliad.$hBook 24.$mEnglish
700 #0$aHomer
The title of the item is Book XXIV of Homer's Iliad. The work is entered under Homer according to the cataloguing rules used. An preferred title is created to ensure that all copies of Book 24 are located together in the catalogue, both under the access point for Homer and under the added entries for title.
EX 3
500 11$aBible.$iNew Testament.$iLuke.$mEnglish.$qRevised Standard Version.$k1972
The item is one book of the Bible, Luke, in the Revised Standard Version. The Bible is a main entry heading. Because there are so many different editions and imprints of the Bible, it is usual to add the date of publication to the preferred title for each in order to help order the items in a meaningful way.
EX 4
500 10$aCanterbury tales.$iKnight's tale
700 #1$aChaucer,$bGeoffrey,$fd.1400

A translation into modern English of Chaucer's *Knight's tale* entered under the title Canterbury tales. Knight's tale.
EX 5
500 10$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠malade imaginaire.$mEnglish & French
700 #0$aMolière,$fl622-1673
An edition of Molière's *Le malade imaginaire* in the form of a parallel text, an English translation beside the French original. In this example, "Le" is marked as non-filing.
EX 6
500 00$aTreaties, etc.$nPrussia,$nl713
710 01$aFrance
711 01$aPrussia$c(Kingdom)
The Treaty of Utrecht may be entered according to certain cataloguing codes under France, with a preferred title *Treaties, etc. Prussia*, *1713*.
EX 7
200 #1$aLondoner Skizzen von Boz
500 10$aSketches by Boz.$mGerman.$lSelections
700 #l$aDickens,$bCharles,$fl812-1870
Selected portions of Charles Dickens' *Sketches by Boz* translated into German and entitled *Londoner Skizzen von Boz*.
EX 8
500 11$aGenesis$n(Anglo-Saxon poem)
The preferred title for the Anglo-Saxon poem *Genesis* has to be qualified to distinguish it from Genesis as a book of the Bible.
EX 9
500 10$aTreaties,etc.$nPoland,$n1948 Mar. 2.$lProtocols, etc.,$n195l Mar. 6
710 01$aUnited Kingdom
The preferred title for a treaty which, according to the cataloguing rules used, requires a form subheading for "Protocols, etc."
EX 10
410 #0$150010$aRecent research in the music of the classical era,$vv. 17-18 $1011##$a0147-00 86
The field 500 is embedded in a 4-- Linking Entry field because the item being catalogued is in a series. The agency regards all series added entries as having the character of preferred titles. For other uses of field 500 in a 4-- Linking Entry see other examples in 4-- Linking Entry Block.
EX 11
200 1#$aTraduction en vers du cantique de Moïse, suivie d'autres sujets en vers$bTexte imprimé$fpar Maurice L.L.
50011$aBible$iA.T.$iPsaumes$mfrançais$lExtrait$lAdaptation$k1861
EX 12
500 10$aConcertos$roboes(2), string orchestra$sop.9, no.3$uF major
The piece has both an opus number and a number within the opus. Both appear in one $s subfield.
EX 13
500 10$aConcertos,$rviolin, orchestra$s(1938)
The numeric designation of the work is a date.
EX 14

500 10$aAlbum für die Jugend.$sOp. 68, Nr. 2.$iSoldatenmarsch
The work has both number and a title.
EX 15
500 10$aAida$iCeleste Aida
The part has a title only.
EX 16
500 10$aConcertos$rbassoon, string orchestra$warr
The piece is an arrangement.
EX 17
500 10$aPièces de violes.$h4e livre.$h23e partie.$h80.$iArabesque
EX 18
500 10$aOpus musicum.$iCantiones sacrae.$iO vos omnes
EX 19
200 1#$aJeruzalemska Biblija$eStari i Novi zavjet s uvodima i bilješkama iz La Bible de Jerusalem $furedili Adalbert Rebić, Jerko Fućak, Bonaventura Duda
300 ##$aPrijevod djela: La Bible de Jerusalem; jedinstveni stv. nasl.: Biblia : Vetus et Novum testamentum
500 10$3910305127$aBiblia$mhrv. prijevod
Preferred Title for the Bible in Croatian translation. Subfield $3 contains the Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the preferred title.
EX 20
200 1#$aRolando giesmė$f[iš senosios prancūzų kalbos vertė Valdas Petrauskas] $cNibelungų giesmė$f[iš viduriniosios vokiečių aukštaičių kalbos vertė Vladas Nausėdas]
304 ##$aVersta iš: La chanson de Roland, 1927
304 ##$aVersta iš: Das Nibelungenlied, 1959
500 10$3LNB:V*12948;=BK$aChanson de Roland$mvertimas į lietuvių k.
500 10$3LNB:bm7;=Bm$aNibelungenlied$mvertimas į lietuvių k.
The item is a Lithuanian translation of two works of Anonymous classics. In repeatable 500 fields the subfield$3 contains the Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the preferred title.
EX 21
200 1#$aSterne der Eiszeit$eRoman$fRenata Šerelytė$gDeutsch von Akvilė Galvosaitė 304 ##$aVersta iš: Ledynmečio žvaigždės, 1999
500 10$3LNB:jT9;=Bd$aLedynmečio žvaigždės$mvertimas į vokiečių k.
The item is a translation of the Lithuanian work into German language.
EX 22
200 1#$aKathechismas, arba Moksłas kiekwienam krikszczionii priwalvs$fparaszitas per d. Iakvba Ledesma theologa Societatis Iesv$gjżgulditas iż liężuvio łąnkiszko ing lietuwiszka per kuniga Mikałoiu Daugsza, kánonika Zemaicziu
304 ##$aVersta iš: Nauka chrzescianska, abo katechizmik dla dziatek. W Krakowie, [apie 1590]
304 ##$aOrig. antr.: Doctrina cristiana á manera de diálogo entre el mestre y el dexeble
500 10$3LNB:noG;=B0$aDoctrina cristiana á manera de diálogo entre el mestre y el dexeble
The item is a translation into the Lithuanian language from the Polish language. In turn the Polish translation is made from Spanish.
EX 23
500 10$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠grand macabre$msuédois

500 10$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠grand macabre$mfrançais
G. Ligeti has planned a version of his opera in the language of each country in which it would be created; The language is here a qualification belonging to the access point (there will be two authority records).
EX 24
500 10$aOtello$witalien-anglais
The language is here an additional element. It is relative to the edition in hand and does not belong to the access point.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Field name and text corrections.
2022	Errata/text edit.
2023	Errata/text edit: renamed $j to $g and its label (Form Subdivision for Title).
2024	Errata (name of fields 500, 501, 503), text edit.

501 COLLECTIVE PREFERRED TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

The field contains a term or terms which are used to bring together works by a prolific author.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
501	COLLECTIVE PREFERRED TITLE	R	O
a	Collective Preferred Title	NR	O
b	General Material Designation	R	O
e	Collective Preferred Subtitle	NR	O
g	Form Subdivision for Title	R	O
k	Date of Publication, etc.	NR	O
m	Language (when Part of Access Point)	NR	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
w	Arranged Statement (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Type of Collective Title Indicator
	0	Complete collected works
	1	Selected works, i.e. a collection of individual items by an author, but not the entirety of his work
	2	The terms used here may not correspond exactly to the terms used in an individual cataloguing code but an approximation should be made.
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Type of Collective Title Indicator

This indicator divides collective titles into three categories.

Subfields Description

$a Collective Preferred Title

The main term used to bring together works of one kind. Not repeatable.

$b General Material Designation

Text of general material designation. Repeatable.

It corresponds to General Material Designation in the ISBDs prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition (2011). According to ISBD Consolidated Edition, GMD element is not used. However it can still be carried in bibliographic records created prior to ISBD Consolidated Edition.

$e Collective Preferred Subtitle

A subsequent term or terms used to subdivide the collective preferred title (EX 1, 4). Not repeatable.

$g Form Subdivision for Title

The description of this subfield can be found above the description of $x.

$k Date of Publication, etc.

The date of the item when added to a collective preferred title to further subdivide a collection (EX 2). Not repeatable.

$m Language (when Part of Access Point)

The language of the item when required as part of the access point in order to group together items in the same language (EX 2). Not repeatable.

$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

The instrumentation, etc., of the item (EX 3). Repeatable.

$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

$u Key (for Music)

The musical key used as part of the preferred title. Not repeatable.

$w Arranged Statement (for Music)

The statement that a musical work is an arrangement (EX 4). Not repeatable.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. This subfield is used only when the 501 field is embedded in a 604 field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a title when used as a subject access point to specify further the topic that the subject access point represents. This subfield is used only when the 501 field is embedded in a 604 field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a title when used as a subject access point to specify a place in relation to it that the subject access point represents. This subfield is used only when the 501 field is embedded in a 604 field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to the title when used as a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to it that the subject access point represents. This subfield is used only when the 501 field is embedded in a 604 field. For examples see field 604. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. This subfield is used only when the 501 field is embedded in a 604 field. For examples see field 604. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

This subfield is used only when the 501 field is embedded in the field 604 field. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The use of collective preferred titles is very much tailored to a particular collection and its needs. Nevertheless they should be exchanged if available. They should be constructed according to the cataloguing code and practices of the agency preparing the record.

Related Fields

500 PREFERRED TITLE ACCESS POINT	Field 500 is used for distinctive titles which are given in order to group together all entries for a particular work. Field 501 on the other hand is used to group together similar types of works or collections.

Examples

EX 1
501 2#$aPlays$eSelections
The resource entitled *Plays of Oscar Wilde* is entered under the collective preferred title *Plays. Selections.*
EX 2
501 0#$aWorks.$mRussian.$k1975
In a particular collection which has a substantial number of items by Shakespeare all the complete works are collected together, divided by language, and further ordered by date of publication. The resource which is the complete works in Russian published in 1975 will have the above access point (the cataloguing code uses the access point "Works" for complete works).
EX 3
501 2#$aSonatas$rpiano
EX 4
200 1#$aThree fugues for guitar trio
501 2#$aKeyboard music$eSelections$warr.
The collective preferred title for three keyboard fugues by Bach, arranged for guitar trio.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Field name and text corrections.
2023	Errata/text edit: renamed $j to $g and its label (Form Subdivision for Title).
2024	Errata (name of fields 500, 501, 503 and $m), text edit.

503 CONVENTIONAL PREFERRED TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a preferred conventional access point used in some cataloguing codes to bring together works of a similar form or type, as defined in paragraph 11.6 of the Statement of Principles adopted at the International Conference on Cataloguing Principles, Paris, October 1961.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
503	CONVENTIONAL PREFERRED TITLE	R	O
a	Form Heading Proper	NR	O
b	Form Subheading	NR	O
d	Month and Day	R	O
e	Personal Name – Entry Element of Person	NR	O
f	Personal Name – Part of Name other than Entry Element – Forename	NR	O
g	Personal Names – Dates	NR	O
h	Personal Name Qualifier	NR	O
i	Title of Part	NR	O
j	Year	R	O
k	Numeration (Arabic)	NR	O
l	Numeration (Roman)	NR	O
m	Locality	NR	O
n	Institution in Locality	NR	O
o	Place in Locality	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Access point is not significant
	1	Access point is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the data should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made from this title or not.

Value 0: Access point is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under this preferred title.

Value 1: Access point is significant

An access point should be made under this preferred title.

Subfields Description

$a Form Heading Proper

The form heading as prescribed by the cataloguing code. Not repeatable.

$b Form Subheading

A subdivision of the form heading proper as prescribed by the code used. Not repeatable.

$d Month and Day

The month and day of the year entered in $j (EX 4). Fixed length, 4 character. Repeatable (EX 7).

$e Personal Name – Entry Element of Person

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point for the name of the surname or family name of a person associated with the form heading (EX 2). It can be a surname or family name, or a given name in the case of a person entered under a given name, e.g. kings, popes, saints (EX 1). Not repeatable.

$f Personal Name – Part of Name other than Entry Element – Forename

The remainder of a person's name when $e is used or a given name in the case of a person entered under a given name, e.g. kings, popes, saints (EX 1)contains a surname or family name. It contains forenames and other given names(EX 13). Not repeatable.

$g Personal Names – Dates

The dates attached to the personal name together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates (EX 13). Not repeatable.

$h Personal Name Qualifier

Any addition to a name in $e and/or $f which does not form an integral part of the name itself, including title, epithets or indications of office (EX 1). All such titles are entered together in one subfield, separated by appropriate punctuation. Not repeatable.

$i Title of Part

A title of a work named in the conventional preferred title (EX 5). Not repeatable.

$j Year

A year which is used to subdivide the form access point (EX 4). Repeatable (EX 3,6,7).

$k Numeration (Arabic)

Any number entered in Arabic form in the conventional preferred title (EX 1). Not repeatable.

$l Numeration (Roman)

Any number entered in roman form in the conventional preferred title. Not repeatable.

$m Locality

A place named in the conventional preferred title (EX 1). Not repeatable.

$n Institution in Locality

An institution named in the conventional preferred title (EX 1). Not repeatable.

$o Place in Locality

A public place (as a park, an avenue, etc.) named in the conventional preferred title (EX 11). Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used for access points which are constructed to bring together works of a particular type which are not regarded by the cataloguing rules as having an author. These works are entered under type and divided by subject. The field is not used in any item which is regarded as having a corporate author by the cataloguing code under which it is being catalogued. Thus it is not used for laws and treaties entered under the name of a territorial authority.

Related Fields

500 PREFERRED TITLE ACCESS POINT	Preferred titles are related to conventional preferred title, but the entry element of a preferred title is always based on a title of a work, whereas the form heading proper is a term rather than a title.
501 COLLECTIVE PREFERRED TITLE	Collective preferred titles are used to group together works by a prolific author.

Examples

EX 1
503 1#$aExposition$eNapoléon$kler$hempereur des Français$mParis$nGrand-Palais
A conventional preferred title for an exhibition.
EX 2
503 1#$aMélanges$eMenéndez-Pidal
A conventional preferred title for a festschrift.
EX 3
503 0#$aLoi$bRecueil$jl892$j1967
A conventional preferred title for a collection of laws.
EX 4
503 0#$aVertrag$j1973$d1005
A form heading for a treaty.
EX 5
1#$aFestschrift$eMiéville,$fHenri$iHommage à Henri Miéville
EX 6
200 1#$aGallé$bTexte imprimé$e[exposition] Paris, Musée du Luxembourg, 29 novembre 1985 – 2 février 1986$f[organisée par la Réunion des musées nationaux]
503 1#$aExposition$mParis$nMusée du Luxembourg$j1985$j1986
A conventional preferred title for an exhibition.
EX 7
200 1#$aImportante bibliothèque d'un manoir breton$bTexte imprimé$elivres anciens du 16e siècle à 1920 …$evente Brest, Hôtel des ventes, 3-4 mai 1991, commissaires priseurs, Mes Yves Thierry, Hubert Martin et Philippe Lannon
503 1#$aVente$bLivres$j1991$d0503$j1991$d0504$mBrest
A conventional preferred title for an auction catalogue.
EX 8
200 1#$aCulture et médias$bTexte imprimé$erecueil de textes$fConseil de l'Europe
300 ##$aLa couv. porte en plus : "Conventions du Conseil de l'Europe"
503 10$aTraités$lRecueil
710 02$311868456$aConseil de l'Europe$4070
A conventional preferred title for a collection of treaties that is not the primary entry.
EX 9
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠part du jeu et du rêve$bTexte imprimé$eÓscar Domínguez et le surréalisme, 1906-1957$eexposition, au Musée Cantini de Marseille, du 25 juin au 2 octobre 2005$f[catalogue sous la direction de Véronique Serrano et Claude Miglietti]
503 11$aExposition$mMarseille$nMusée Cantini$j2005
702 #1$312529137$aSerrano$bVéronique$4340
702 #1$315007988$aMiglietti$bClaude$4340

711 02$311877338$aMusée Cantini$cMarseille$4070
A conventional preferred title for an exhibition that is the primary entry.
EX 10
200 1#$aOlivier Mosset$bTexte imprimé$etravaux, 1966-2003$e[exposition, Lausanne, Musée cantonal des beaux-arts, 22 mai-24 août 2003, Saint-Gall, Kunstverein St. Gallen Kunstmuseum, 23 mai-10 août 2003, SITE de Santa Fe, 13 décembre 2003-7 mars 2004]$f[catalogue coordonné par Yves Aupetitallot et Roland Wäspe]$zfre
503 11$aExposition$mLausanne$nMusée cantonal des beaux-arts$j2003
503 10$aExposition$mSaint-Gall$nKunstverein$j2003
503 10$aExposition$mSanta Fe (N.M.)$nSITE$j2003$j2004
Three conventional preferred titles for an exhibition : the first one is the primary entry, the others are additional entries.
EX 11
200 1#$a≠NSB≠Les ≠NSE≠champs de la sculpture$bTexte imprimé$ele catalogue $e[exposition, Paris, Avenue des Champs-Élysées, 11 avril-9 juin 1996]$f[organisée par la Direction des Affaires culturelles de la Ville de Paris et l'Association Parismusées]
503 11$aExposition$mParis$oAvenue des Champs-Élysées$j1996
A conventional preferred title for an exhibition that took place on the Avenue des Champs-Élysées in Paris, and not in an institution.
EX 12
200 1#$aImages de la France libérée$bTexte imprimé$e1944-1945$ela République restaurée$ecatalogue de l'exposition... [Paris], sur les grilles du Jardin du Luxembourg, du 3 juin au 31 août 2004$forganisée par le Sénat ; [la Mission pour la commémoration du soixantième anniversaire de la Libération ; l'Établissement de communication et de production audiovisuelle de la défense ; et al.]
503 11$aExposition$mParis$oJardin du Luxembourg$j2004
EX 13
200 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠monnaie de sa pièce...$dTexte imprimé$ehommages à Colin Martin$féd. par Paul-Louis Pelet et Jean-Français Poudret, avec la collab. de Nadia Pollini
503 11$aMélanges$eMartin$fColin$g1906-....
A conventional preferred title for a festschrift. The person in honour of whom the document is donated has homonyms.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	New subfield $o Place in Locality.
2012	Field name and text corrections.
2024	Errata (name of fields 500, 501, 503), text edit.

506 PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the preferred title identifying an anonymous work that is embodied in the manifestation described in the record. Field 506 may link to the record describing that work.

When there is a name associated with the title of the work, field 576 should be used instead of 506.

This field has been designed for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model, and is found in a record describing a manifestation. In such catalogues, fields 506, 507, 576 and 577 are used in place of field 500.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
506	PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK	R	O
a	Title		MA
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
c	Form of Work	NR	O
d	Date of Work	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
3	Authority Record Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Primary Entry Indicator
	0	Title is not primary entry or value is not specified
	1	Title is primary entry
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Primary Entry Indicator

Specifies whether the preferred title is primary (main) entry for the record. If indicator 1 is set to 1, no other field containing a primary entry may appear in the record, i.e. there is no 7X0 (700, 710 or 720) field and no other title entry field (5--) with primary entry indicator set to 1. Use value 0 for cataloguing codes which do not recognise the concept of primary entry.

Value 0: Title is not primary entry or value is not specified

The preferred title is not the primary entry.

Value 1: Title is primary entry

The primary entry for the item is the preferred title.

Subfields Description

$a Title

The title by which the work is known, without any qualifications or mention of any part. Mandatory.

$h Number of Section or Part

The number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

$i Name of Section or Part

The name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

$c Form of Work

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs. Not repeatable.

$d Date of Work

The date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

$e Place of Origin of Work

The place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. Not repeatable. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield $e.

$f Original Language of the Work

The original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work. Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield $f.

$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body. Repeatable.

$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

The instrumentation, etc., of the work. Repeatable.

$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

$u Key (for Music)

The musical key used as part of the title. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

The identifier for the authority record for the work as identified by the name/title authorized access point identifying the work. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format field 231 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE (WORK). Not repeatable.

Related Fields

507 PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION
576 NAME/ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK
577 NAME/ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION

Examples

EX 1
506 1#$3<AR_ID for the work>$aLlibre vermell de Montserrat
EX 2
506 1#$3FRBNF139698392$aProphéties de la Sibylle érythréenne$fcatalan
Subfield $3 holds the Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number for the work. This piece of music – also known as Cant de la Sibil·la, Canto de la Sibila, etc.– has several musical versions that can be individuated thanks to the language of the poem.
EX 3
506 1#$3<AR_ID for the work>$aBible$iCorinthians$h1st
EX 4
506 1#$3<AR_ID for the work>$aLiturgie des heures $kCommunauté Saint-Martin
EX 5
506 1#$3<AR_ID for the work>$aMahābhārata$iVanaparva $iNalopākhyāna

History

2012	New field.
2024	Errata (ind. 1.), text edit.

507 PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the preferred title identifying a specific expression of an anonymous work that is embodied in the manifestation described in the record. Field 507 may link to the record describing that expression.

When there is a name associated with the title of the expression, field 577 should be used instead of 507.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model, and is found in a record describing a manifestation. In such catalogues, fields 506, 507, 576 and 577 supersede field 500.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
507	PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION	R	O
a	Title [Work]		MA
h	Number of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
c	Form of Work [Work]	NR	O
d	Date of Work [Work]	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work [Work]	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work [Work]	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]	R	O
u	Key (for Music) [Work]	NR	O
l	Form of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
m	Language of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
n	Content Type [Expression]	NR	O
o	Date of Expression [Expression]	NR	O
v	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]	R	O
w	Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]	R	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Primary Entry Indicator
	0	Title is not primary entry or value is not specified
	1	Title is primary entry
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Primary Entry Indicator

Specifies whether the preferred title is primary (main) entry for the record. If indicator 1 is set to 1, no other field containing a primary entry may appear in the record, i.e. there is no 7X0 (700, 710 or 720) field and no other title entry field (5--) with primary entry indicator set to 1. Use value 0 for cataloguing codes which do not recognise the concept of primary entry.

Value 0: Title is not primary entry or value is not specified

The preferred title is not the primary entry.

Value 1: Title is primary entry

The primary entry for the item is the preferred title.

Subfields Description

$a Title [Work]

The title by which the work is known, without any qualifications or mention of any part. Mandatory.

$h Number of Section or Part [Work]

The number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

$i Name of Section or Part [Work]

The name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

$c Form of Work [Work]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs. Not repeatable.

$d Date of Work [Work]

The date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

$e Place of Origin of Work [Work]

The place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. Not repeatable. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield $e.

$f Original Language of the Work [Work]

The original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work. Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield $f.

$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body. Repeatable.

$r Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]

The instrumentation, etc., of the work. Repeatable.

$s Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]

A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

$u Key (for Music) [Work]

The musical key used as part of the title. Not repeatable.

$l Form of the Expression [Expression]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which an expression belongs. Not repeatable. (EX 3)

$m Language of the Expression [Expression]

The language of the expression. Not repeatable. If the expression is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield $m.

$n Content Type [Expression]

Categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communication in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived. The content type is expressed through a standard phrase. Not repeatable.

$o Date of Expression [Expression]

The original date of the expression of the work when required as a means to identify the expression. The original date of the expression is the earliest date associated with an expression. The date of the earliest manifestation embodying the expression may be treated as the date of expression. Not repeatable. (EX 3).

$v Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]

The instrumentation, etc., of the expression. Repeatable.

$w Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]

Any characteristic other than content type, language of expression, date of expression, or form of expression that serves to differentiate an expression from another expression of the same work. It can be a version statement, the name of the person or corporate body responsible for the expression. Repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

The identifier for the authority record for the expression as identified by the title authorized access point identifying the expression. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format field 232. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The title by which an expression of a work is identified is an extension of the title that identifies the work. In the list of subfields above those pertaining to the related work are marked with the wording "[Work]". The subfields pertaining solely to the expression are marked with "[Expression]".

Related Fields

506 PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK
576 NAME/ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK
577 NAME/ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION

Examples

EX 1
507 1#$3<AR_ID for the expression>$aBible$iCorinthians$h1st$mGreek$o1934
Subfields $3, $a and $i refer to the work, while $m identifies the language of the expression, and $o the date associated with the expression.
EX 2
507 1#$3<AR_ID for the expression>$aLiturgie des heures$kCommunauté Saint-Martin$nmusique notée$mlatin-français
EX 3
507 1#$3<AR_ID for the expression>$aMahābhārata$iVanaparva $iNalopākhyāna$msanskrit-allemand$o1885

History

2012	New field.
2024	Errata (ind. 1): Removed status “Provisional”. Text edit.

510 PARALLEL TITLE PROPER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a parallel title (i.e., title proper in a different language or script) for which it is desired to create either a note or an access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
510	PARALLEL TITLE PROPER	R	O
a	Parallel Title	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
h	Number of Part	R	O
i	Name of Part	R	O
j	Volume or Dates Associated with Title	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	NR	O
z	Language of Title	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Parallel title is not significant
	1	Parallel title is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

Value 0: Parallel title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under this parallel title.

Value 1: Parallel title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Subfields Description

$a Parallel Title

The chief title of the item in a language and/or script relating to the title proper in 200 $a and excluding any other title information in that language. Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear subordinate to the parallel title in $a and are required as part of the access point or note. Repeatable.

$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title, and relate to the parallel title in $a. Repeatable.

$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title and are in the same language as the parallel title in $a. Repeatable.

$j Volume or Dates Associated with Title

The part of a multivolume resource or continuing resource to which the parallel title pertains. Not repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Text intended primarily for display in a note, e.g. "varies slightly", "paperback edition". It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Title

Identifies the language of the parallel title. Its presence will enable recipients of the record to omit added entries for parallel titles in languages which are not felt to be useful in their databases. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2 (EX 3, 4). For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field should be used for a parallel title for which a note is to be created or which is required as an added entry. If indicator l is set to l, the data should be entered in a form suitable as an access point. This may involve removing initial articles and changes to prefixes or suffixes depending on the language of the parallel title. If it is desired to enter the parallel title as part of the statement of responsibility, this should be done in field 200 $d, and in 200 $e, if there is parallel other title information. If it is desired to create a note, the print constant "Parallel title" or its equivalent in another language may be generated.

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, subfield $d, Parallel Title Proper	When the parallel title is recorded in the descriptive area of the record along with chief title proper, other title information and statements of responsibility in the form and sequence as in the item, then it is entered in field 200. Data in field 510 cannot be combined with the title proper in field 200 $a to recreate the data in the required order of ISBD.
304 NOTES PERTAINING TO TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	A note on the parallel title, or a note incorporating the text of the parallel title where it is not already recorded in field 200, may be entered in field 304.
541 TRANSLATED TITLE SUPPLIED BY THE CATALOGUER	Parallel titles are defined as titles in other languages found in the item. If the title is not found in the item but is translated by the cataloguer or taken by the cataloguer from another source, it should be entered in field 541.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$aResúmenes sobre población en América Latina$fPrograma de información sobre Población en America Latina$d= Latin American population abstracts$fLatin American Population Information Program$zeng
510 1#$aLatin American population abstracts$zeng
The continuing resource *Resúmenes sobre población en America Latina* has a parallel title *Latin American population abstracts*. Both are entered in field 200 to provide the description of the document; but to provide for an added entry of the title proper in English, the English title is repeated in field 510.

EX 2
200 1#$aInformation transfer
510 1#$aTransfert de l'information$zfre
An access point will be generated from subfield 510 $a and the following note may also be made from the field: Parallel title: Transfert de l'information.
EX 3
200 1#$aСравнительный словарь пермских языков$dПерм кылъёслэн чошатон кылсузьетсы$dПерм кывъяслон откодялом кывчукор$dПермской кыввэзлон сравнительной кывчукор$fСыктывк. гос. ун-т$gР.Ш. Насибуллин [и др.]$zmul
510 1#$aПерм кылъёслэн чошатон кылсузьетсы$zudm$2iso639-3
510 1#$aПерм кывъяслон откодялом кывчукор$zkpv$2iso639-3
510 1#$aПермской кыввэзлон сравнительной кывчукор$zkoi$2iso639-3
Comparative dictionary of the Perm languages has parallel titles in Udmurt, Komi and Komi-Permyak languages. Access points will be generated from fields 510. Language codes are derived from ISO 639-3, thereof the source of code is indicated in subfield $2.
EX 4
200 1#$aМифы, сказки, предания манси (вогулов)$dМаньси махум ялпын мойтыт, нас мойтыт, йис потрыт$ев записях 1889, 1952, 1958 - 1960, 1968, 1978, 1992, 2002 гг.$f[подгот. текстов, пер., вступ. ст., коммент., указ., слов., сост. компакт-диска Е.И. Ромбандеевой]$zfiu
510 1#$aМаньси махум ялпын мойтыт, нас мойтыт, йис потрыт$zmns$2iso639-3
Collection of Mansi myths, folktales, and legends. The language of the parallel title in field 200 is coded with collective code for Finno-Ugrian languages from ISO 639-2. To provide additional access point, parallel title is repeated in field 510 and language is coded with specific code for the Mansi language from ISO 639-3. Thereof the source of code is indicated in subfield $2.

History

2018	Added text, new subfield $2 and new examples.

511 HALF TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a variant title appearing on the half-title page when it differs sufficiently from the title proper recorded in field 200 to warrant recording as a note or access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
511	HALF TITLE	R	O
a	Half Title	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
h	Number of Part	R	O
i	Name of Part	R	O
j	Volume or Dates Associated with Title	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	NR	O
z	Language of Title	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Significance of Title
	0	Title is not significant
	1	Title is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Half Title

The variant title appearing on the half-title page. Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear subordinate to the half title in $a and are required as part of the access point or note. Repeatable.

$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title, and relate to the half title in $a. Repeatable.

$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title and are in the same language as the half title in $a. Repeatable.

$j Volume or Dates Associated with Title

The part of a multivolume resource or continuing resource to which the half title pertains. Not repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Text intended primarily for display in a note, e.g. “varies slightly”, “paperback edition”. It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Title

Identifies the language of the half title. Its presence will enable recipients of the record to omit added entries for half titles in languages which are not felt to be useful in their databases. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2. For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the half title differs significantly from the title proper. The half-title page is usually a leaf preceding the title page and the half-title is usually an abridged form of the title.

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only subfield 511a will usually occur.

Related Fields

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES	A note containing the text of the half title may alternatively be entered in field 312.
513 ADDED TITLE-PAGE TITLE	This field contains a title appearing on the title page complementary to the one chosen for the main entry of the resource. The added title page may precede or follow the main title page with which it is issued and may be more general, as a series title page, or, a title page in another language either at the beginning or at the end of the resource. It cannot be confused with half title.
517 OTHER VARIANT TITLES	This field contains any other variant title not defined in fields 510-516 or 518, e.g. binder's title, slip case title, box title, partial title, subordinate title, etc. When a source format does not specifically identify titles normally entered in fields 510-516 or 518, they may be entered here.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$aDecisionum supremorum tribunalium regni Neapolitani
312 ##$aTitolo dell'occh.: Supremorum tribunalium regni Neapolitani decisiones et praxis iudiciaria
511 1#$aSupremorum tribunalium regni Neapolitani decisiones et praxis iudiciaria
EX 2
200 1#$aAlessandro Filipepi detto Sandro Botticelli pittore in Firenze
312 ##$aTitolo dell'occhietto: Sandro Botticelli
511 1# $aSandro Botticelli

History

2008	New field.
2012	Corrections and additions.

512 COVER TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the title appearing on the cover of the item when it differs sufficiently from the title proper in field 200 to warrant recording as a note or as an access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
512	COVER TITLE	R	O
a	Cover Title	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
h	Number of Part	R	O
i	Name of Part	R	O
j	Volume or Dates Associated with Title	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	NR	O
z	Language of Title	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Cover title is not significant
	1	Cover title is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

Value 0: Cover title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the cover title.

Value 1: Cover title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Subfields Description

$a Cover Title

The title as on the cover of the item without any other title information or statement of responsibility. Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear on the cover subordinate to the cover title in $a. Repeatable.

$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title, and relate to the cover title in $a. Repeatable.

$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title and are in the same language as the cover title in $a. Repeatable.

$j Volume or Dates Associated with Title

The part of a multivolume resource or continuing resource to which the cover title pertains. Not repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Text intended primarily for display in a note, e.g. "varies slightly", "paperback edition". It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Title

Identifies the language of the cover title. Its presence will enable recipients of the record to omit added entries for cover titles in languages which are not felt to be useful in their databases. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2. For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the cover title differs significantly from the title proper.

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the subfield 512a and 512e will usually occur.

Related Fields

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES	A note containing the text of the cover title may alternatively be entered in field 312.

Examples

EX 1
512 1#$aWoods and trees of the Amazon basin
The title from the title page of a book is *Woods of the Amazon basin*. The title on the cover is *Woods and trees of the Amazon basin*, which is required as an access point.
EX 2
512 1#$aCity of Coventry archaeology and development$n(paperback version)
Coventry archaeology and redevelopment is published in hardback and in paperback and the record includes data on both. The cover title on the paperback version only is *City of Coventry archaeology and development*. The following display is made by the cataloguing agency from the 512 data: Cover title: City of Coventry archaeology and development (paperback version)
EX 3
512 1#$aChemical age yearbook$n(varies slightly)$j1957-
From 1957 to date the continuing resource has had a cover title *Chemical age yearbook* although it varies slightly.

513 ADDED TITLE-PAGE TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a title appearing on an added title-page, when it warrants recording as a note or access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
513	ADDED TITLE-PAGE TITLE	R	O
a	Added Title-Page Title	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
h	Number of Part	R	O
i	Name of Part	R	O
j	Volume or Dates Associated with Title	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	NR	O
z	Language of Title	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Added title-page title is not significant
	1	Added title-page is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

Value 0: Added title-page title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the added title-page title.

Value 1: Added title-page title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Subfields Description

$a Added Title-Page Title

The title as on the added title-page of the item without any other title information or statement of responsibility. Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear on the added title-page subordinate to the title in $a. Repeatable.

$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title and relate to the added title-page title in $a. Repeatable.

$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title. Repeatable.

$j Volume or Dates Associated with Title

The part of a multivolume resource or continuing resource to which the added title-page title pertains. Not repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Text intended primarily for display in a note, e.g. “varies slightly”, “paperback edition”. It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Title

Identifies the language of the cover title. Its presence will enable recipients of the record to omit added entries for added title-page titles in languages which are not felt to be useful in their databases. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2. For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field will be used only when the added title-page title differs significantly from the title proper.

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur: 513a, 513e, 513h and 513i.

Related Fields

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES	A note containing the text of the added title-page title may alternatively be entered in field 312.
511 HALF TITLE	This field contains the half title.

Examples

EX 1
513 1#$a≠NSB≠Das ≠NSE≠heutige Bibliothekarsamt in Deutschland$zger
A document has two title pages of equal status, one in German and one in English. Since the title page in English is taken as the chief source of information, an added entry is made for the German title as an added title-page title. The “Das “ is marked as having no filing significance. Alternatively the word may be omitted completely.

514 CAPTION TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the title given at the beginning of the first page of the text when it differs sufficiently from the title proper in field 200 to warrant recording as a note or as an access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
514	CAPTION TITLE	R	O
a	Caption Title	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
h	Number of Part	R	O
i	Name of Part	R	O
j	Volume or Dates Associated with Title	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	NR	O
z	Language of Title	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Caption title is not significant
	1	Caption title is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

Value 0: Caption title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the caption title.

Value 1: Caption title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Subfields Description

$a Caption Title

The title as given at the beginning of the first page of the text excluding any other title information or statement of responsibility. Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that are subordinate to the caption title. Repeatable.

$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title and relate to the caption title in $a. Repeatable.

$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title. Repeatable.

$j Volume or Dates Associated with Title

The part of a multivolume resource or continuing resource to which the caption title pertains. Not repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Text intended primarily for display in a note, e.g. "varies slightly", "paperback edition". It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Title

Identifies the language of the caption title. Its presence will enable recipients of the record to omit added entries for caption titles in languages which are not felt to be useful in their databases. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2. For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the caption title differs significantly from the title proper.

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur: 514a and 514e.

Related Fields

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES	A note containing the text of the caption title may alternatively be entered in field 312.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$aPacific
514 0#$aPacific and its wonders
The title *Pacific* is printed at the head of the first page of a continuing resource and followed by the text "and its wonders" to form the caption title *Pacific and its wonders*.

515 RUNNING TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

The field contains the title appearing at the head or foot of the page of the resource when it differs sufficiently from the title proper in field 200 to warrant recording as a note or as an access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
515	RUNNING TITLE	R	O
a	Running Title	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
h	Number of Part	R	O
i	Name of Part	R	O
j	Volume or Dates Associated with Title	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	NR	O
z	Language of Title	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Running title is not significant
	1	Running title is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

Value 0: Running title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the running title.

Value 1: Running title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Subfields Description

$a Running Title

The title as taken from the head or foot of the page of the item. Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that are subordinate to the running title. Repeatable.

$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title and relate to the running title in $a. Repeatable.

$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title. Repeatable.

$j Volume or Dates Associated with Title

The part of a multivolume resource or continuing resource to which the running title pertains. Not repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Text intended primarily for display in a note, e.g. "varies slightly", "paperback edition". It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Title

Identifies the language of the running title. Its presence will enable recipients of the record to omit added entries for running titles in languages which are not felt to be useful in their databases. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2. For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the running title differs significantly from the title proper.

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only subfield 515a will usually occur.

Related Fields

312 NOTES RELATED TITLES	A note containing the text of the running title may alternatively be entered in field 312.

Examples

EX 1
515 0#$aCAD/CAM
The title proper is *Computer aided design and computer aided manufacture*. The running title is entered only in order to generate a note and so has first indicator 0.

516 SPINE TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the title given on the spine of the item when it differs sufficiently from the title proper in field 200 to warrant recording as a note or as an access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
516	SPINE TITLE	R	O
a	Spine Title	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
h	Number of Part	R	O
i	Name of Part	R	O
j	Volume or Dates Associated with Title	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	NR	O
z	Language of Title	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Spine title is not significant
	1	Spine title is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

Value 0: Spine title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the spine title.

Value 1: Spine title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Subfields Description

$a Spine Title

The title as on the spine of the item without any other title information or statement of responsibility. Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear on the spine subordinate to the spine title in $a. Repeatable.

$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title and relate to the spine title in $a. Repeatable.

$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title. Repeatable.

$j Volume or Dates Associated with Title

The part of a multivolume resource or continuing resource to which the spine title pertains. Not repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Text intended primarily for display in a note, e.g. “varies slightly”, “paperback edition”. It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Title

Identifies the language of the spine title. Its presence will enable recipients of the record to omit added entries for spine titles in languages which are not felt to be useful in their databases. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2. For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the spine title differs significantly from the title proper.

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur: 516a and 516e.

Related Fields

312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES	A note containing the text of the spine title may alternatively be entered in field 312.

Examples

EX 1
516 1#$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠complete guide to selecting plays
The book entitled *The guide to selecting plays for performance* has a spine title *The complete guide to selecting plays*. A note and added entry are to be made for this. “The ” is marked as having no filing significance. Alternatively the word may be omitted completely.

517 OTHER VARIANT TITLES

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains any other variant title not defined in fields 510-516 or 518, e.g. binder's title, slip case title, box title, partial title, subordinate title, etc.

When a source format does not specifically identify titles normally entered in fields 510-516 or 518, they may be entered here.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
517	OTHER VARIANT TITLE	R	O
a	Variant Title	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
h	Number of Part	R	O
i	Name of Part	R	O
j	Volume or Dates Associated with Title	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	NR	O
z	Language of Title	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Variant title is not significant
	1	Variant title is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

Value 0: Variant title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the variant title.

Value 1: Variant title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Subfields Description

$a Variant Title

The variant title without any other title information or statement of responsibility. Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear on the item subordinate to the variant title in $a. Repeatable.

$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title and relate to the variant title in $a. Repeatable.

$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title. Repeatable.

$j Volume or Dates Associated with Title

The part of a multivolume resource or continuing resource to which the variant title pertains. Not repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Text intended primarily for display in a note, e.g. "varies slightly", "paperback edition". It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Title

Identifies the language of the variant title. Its presence will enable recipients of the record to omit added entries for variant titles in languages which are not felt to be useful in their databases. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2. For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

If a note identifying the nature of this title is required it is entered in note field 312. Field 517 is not used to generate a note.

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur. 517a and 517e.

Related Fields

510-516 Specific type of variant title	Prefer the use of the specific fields when the source provides sufficient information to identify the specific kinds of titles accommodated in those fields.
312 NOTES PERTAINING TO RELATED TITLES	A note identifying the nature of the variant title may be entered in field 312.

Examples

EX 1
312 ##$aBinder's title: Scotland
517 1#$aScotland
An access point can be generated from field 517 and a note from field 312.
EX 2
312 ##$aTitle on case: Gregorian chants from Hungary
517 1#$aGregorian chants from Hungary
The title proper on the title page of a cased item is *Magyar Gregorianum*. The title on the case is *Gregorian chants from Hungary*.
EX 3
200 1#$aComputing engineering index
312 ##$aAlso known as: COMPENDEX
517 1#$aCOMPENDEX
An index also known under an acronym.

History

1996	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

518 TITLE IN STANDARD MODERN SPELLING

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the title or individual words from the title, or any variant title of the item repeated in standard modern spelling when that used in the item is sufficiently archaic to warrant recording as a note or as an access point.

It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
518	TITLE IN STANDARD MODERN SPELLING	R	O
a	Title Proper, Variant Title or Preferred Title in Standard Modern Spelling	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
h	Number of Part	R	O
i	Name of Part	R	O
j	Volume or Dates Associated with Title	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	NR	O
z	Language of Title	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Title in standard modern spelling is not significant
	1	Title in standard modern spelling is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

Value 0: Title in standard modern spelling is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the title in standard modern spelling.

Use this value also if the field contains only selected words included for the purpose of enhancing online retrieval, but not the whole title (EX 3).

Value 1: Title in standard modern spelling is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Subfields Description

$a Title Proper, Variant Title or Preferred Title in Standard Modern Spelling

The title proper, variant title or preferred title or individual words from the title of the item repeated in standard modern spelling without any other title information or statement of responsibility. Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear on the item subordinate to the title in standard modern spelling in $a. Repeatable.

$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title and relate to the title in standard modern spelling in $a. Repeatable.

$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title. Repeatable.

$j Volume or Dates Associated with Title

The part of a multivolume resource or continuing resource to which the title in standard modern spelling pertains. Not repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Text intended primarily for display in a note, e.g. “varies slightly”, “paperback edition”. It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Title

Identifies the language of the title in standard modern spelling. Its presence will enable recipients of the record to omit added entries for title in standard modern spelling in languages which are not felt to be useful in their databases. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2. For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the title(s) of the item is(are) in sufficiently archaic spelling to warrant recording as a note or as an access point.

If the contents of the 518 field would be identical to the contents of subfield 500$a, do not create a 518 field.

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only subfield 518a will usually occur.

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	This field contains the title proper written in archaic spelling.
500 PREFERRED TITLE ACCESS POINT	This field contains the particular title, selected by the bibliographic agency, by which a work that has appeared under varying titles is to be identified for cataloguing purposes.
510-517 Variant titles	

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$aIzvarsita gliubav i napochom nemila i nesrichna smart Pirema i Tisbe
518 1#$aIzvarsita ljubav i napokom nemila i nesriæna smart
EX 2
200 1#$aPistule, i Evanyelya
518 1#$aPistule i evandelja

EX 3
200 1#$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Description of the Countrey of Aphrique ...
518 1#$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠description of the country of Africa ...
EX 4
200 1#$aUmbständliche Beurtheyling der Frage, ob das Erd-Beben zu Lissabonn der Ausdruck des Zornes Gottes sey
518 0#$aUmständliche Beurteilung Erdbeben Lissabon sei Individual words from the Title Proper repeated in standard modern spelling
EX 5
200 1#$a≠NSB≠Il ≠NSE≠Cavaliero della Croce Rossa, o la Leggenda della Sanità :$epoema i dodici canti ;$fdall'inglese di Edmundo Spenser recato in verso italiano, detto ottava rima, da T.J. Mathias.
500 10$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠shepheardes calender$mItalian
518 1#$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠shepherd's calendar
The original title in its archaic spelling has been used for the preferred title; the modern form of the preferred title is therefore entered in 518.
EX 6
200 1#$aDeffense des droits du roy catholique Charles II
518 1#$aDéfense des droits du roi catholique Charles II
EX 7
200 1#$a≠NSB≠Les ≠NSE≠avantures extravagantes du courtizan grotesque
518 1#$a≠NSB≠Les ≠NSE≠aventures extravagantes du courtisan grotesque

History

1996	New field.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

520 FORMER TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains an earlier title of a continuing resource catalogued under a later title.

It is used when the continuing resource under its different titles is considered to be one bibliographic entity so that only one record is maintained in the data base with the title proper reflecting the current title. The earlier titles are, in this case, treated as alternative titles for one entity.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
520	FORMER TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)	R	O
a	Former Title Proper	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
h	Number of Part	NR	O
i	Name of Part	NR	O
j	Volumes or Dates of Former Title	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	NR	O
x	ISSN of Former Title	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Former title is not significant
	1	Former title is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

Value 0: Former title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the former title.

Value 1: Former title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Subfields Description

$a Former Title Proper

The title proper of the former title of the continuing resource. Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear subordinate to the title proper of the former title in $a. Repeatable.

$h Number of Part

The number of a part of the continuing resource when the continuing resource is subdivided. Not repeatable.

$i Name of Part

The name of a part of the continuing resource when the continuing resource is subdivided. Not repeatable.

$j Volumes or Dates of Former Title

The numbering of the span of volumes, etc., of the former title or in the absence of that, its spanning dates. Both may be entered (EX 1). Not repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

This subfield is used for text intended primarily for display in a note. It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display as a note. Not repeatable.

$x ISSN of Former Title

The ISSN assigned to the former title. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is repeated for each former title for which an added entry is made. Subfields $a, $e, $h and $i correspond to the same subfields in field 200. However, $a (Former title proper) may be replaced by the key title of the former title if preferred. Subfield $j is intended for producing notes relating to the title. The ISSN of each former title should be included when available.

Related Fields

43- Preceding entry fields	These linking fields are used for the earlier titles of a continuing resource when the cataloguing agency considers each span of the continuing resource under a different title to be a separate bibliographic entity and catalogues each title in a separate record.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$aClaimants unite ...
520 1#$aClaimants newspaper.$jIssue nos. 1 (summer 1974)-5 (autumn 1975)
520 1#$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠claimant, and Claimants newspaper.$jIssue no. 6 (1976)
The continuing resource *Claimants newspaper* is continued after its fifth issue by *The Claimant and Claimant's newspaper* of which only one copy is produced, issue no. 6. This in turn becomes *Claimants unite*, numbered issue no. 7 onwards. The record created for *Claimants unite* contains entries for each of the former titles.

530 KEY TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the key title – the unique name for a continuing resource established by the ISSN Network.

While there should logically be only one key title per record, differences in practice between the agency preparing the record and the ISSN network may result in one continuing resource record with two (or more) key titles.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
530	KEY TITLE	R	O
a	Key Title	NR	O
b	Qualifier	NR	O
j	Volume or Dates Associated with Key Title	NR	O
v	Volume Designation	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Proper Indicator
	0	Key title is the same as the title proper
	1	Key title differs from the title proper
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicator 1: Title Proper Indicator

The indicator specifies whether or not the key title as it appears when printed out is the same as the title proper in 200 $a. Thus it is unlikely that any key title field using subfield $b will have indicator 0 (EX 2, 3, 4).

Subfields Description

$a Key Title

The key title without the addition of any qualification. Not repeatable.

$b Qualifier

Any qualification included in the key title in order to distinguish it from other continuing resources with the same title (EX 2, 4). Following ISSN practice, the qualification is enclosed in parentheses. Not repeatable.

$j Volume or Dates Associated with Key Title

This subfield is used when the record contains more than one key title which has been assigned to different volumes or date-spans of the life of the periodical. The data distinguishes the periods over which the relevant key title applies. Not repeatable.

$v Volume Designation

This subfield is used to indicate a particular part of the resource (volume, issue and pages if appropriate) that is related to another item. This subfield is used only when the field is embedded in a 4-- linking field. It further defines the part of the linked item that bears the relationship designated by the 4-- tag. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Data in subfields $a and $b is entered according to the provisions contained in the *ISSN Manual*. The key title is established by the ISSN centre responsible for the registration of the continuing resource and is derived from the title information appearing in the publication at the time of registration. The key title can be the same as the title proper; or, in order to achieve uniqueness, it can be constructed by the addition of identifying and/or qualifying elements such as name of issuing body, place of publication, edition statement, etc. Since only an ISSN centre can establish a key title, any agency other than a centre preparing a record should enter a key title only when it is found on the document or when it has been checked with its ISSN centre. Any other title is by definition not a key title.

Related Fields

011 ISSN	According to ISSN rules the key title is inseparably linked to its ISSN and both should be entered in the record when available.
200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	The title on the item is entered in field 200. If no key title is available, the title on the item must be entered in field 200.

Examples

EX 1
530 0#$aScientific American
Display form: Scientific American.
EX 2
530 1#$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠Ciencia y la tecnica$b(Barcelona. 1936)
Display form: La Ciencia y la tecnica (Barcelona. 1936). This files as “Ciencia y la tecnica...”. Indicator 1 is set to 1 since the key title differs from the title proper.
EX 3
530 1#$a Annual activities report$b(Institute for National Measurement Standards)
Display form: Annual activities report (Institute for National Measurement Standards). Indicator 1 is set to 1 since the key title differs from the title proper.
EX 4
530 1#$aBulletin$b(Canadian Mediterranean Institute. 1983)
Display form: Bulletin (Canadian Mediterranean Institute. 1983). Indicator 1 is set to 1 since the key title differs from the title proper.

History

1994	New subfields/values: Addition of new subfield $v Volume Designation.
2008	Revisions to take into account ISSN practices.

531 ABBREVIATED KEY TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains an abbreviated form of the key title established by the ISSN Network.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
531	ABBREVIATED KEY TITLE (CONTINUING RESOURCES)	R	O
a	Abbreviated Title	NR	O
b	Qualifier	NR	O
v	Volume Designation	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Abbreviated Title

The abbreviated key title without the addition of any qualifying information. Not repeatable.

$b Qualifier

Any qualifying information added to the key title to make it distinctive from an otherwise identical key title. This may or may not be abbreviated. Following ISSN practice, the qualification is enclosed in parentheses. Not repeatable.

$v Volume Designation

This subfield is used to indicate a particular part of the resource (volume, issue and pages if appropriate) that is related to another item. This subfield is used only when the field is embedded in a 4-- linking field. It further defines the part of the linked item that bears the relationship designated by the 4-- tag. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Only key titles abbreviated according to ISSN provisions are entered in this field. The abbreviated form of the key title is constructed according to the *ISSN Manual* and based on ISO 4.

Related Fields

530 KEY TITLE

Examples

EX 1
531 ##$aMedicina. Supl.$b(B.Aires)
EX 2
531 ##$aRockfeller Brothers Fund annu. rep.
EX 3

531 ##$aAnnu.Act. Rep.$b(Inst. Natl. Meas. Stand.)
EX 4
531 ##$aJ. phys.$b(Paris)
531 ##$aJ. phys.$b(Lond.)
This is a case of two journals which have different key titles but which abbreviate to the same abbreviated title. The qualifier is added to the abbreviated key title, but is not required for the key title itself. Key titles: Journal de physique Journal of physics

History

1994	New subfields/values: Addition of new subfield $v Volume Designation.
2008	Revisions to take into account ISSN practices.

532 EXPANDED TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a title in expanded form which is required as an added entry or as a note because the title proper or key title contains an initialism, abbreviation, numeral or symbol which causes filing problems, may not be capable of being reproduced correctly on output, or will add to the content of the record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
532	EXPANDED TITLE	R	O
a	Expanded Title	NR	O
z	Language of Title	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Expanded title is not significant
	1	Expanded title is significant
2		Type of Expansion Indicator
	0	Initialism
	1	Numeral
	2	Abbreviation
	3	Other, non-roman symbol, etc.

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

Value 0: Expanded title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under the expanded title.

Value 1: Expanded title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Indicator 2: Type of Expansion Indicator

Specifies the reason for the need to expand the title. If a combination of conditions applies, use the higher value in preference since these indicate the more complicated conditions. Use value 3 if the particular condition is not known.

Value 0: Initialism

The expansion involves replacing an initialism or acronym by the words it represents (EX 3).

Value 1: Numeral

The expansion involves writing the numeral out in full (EX 6).

Value 2: Abbreviation

The expansion involves writing abbreviated words in full (EX 1, 2).

Value 3: Other, non-roman symbol, etc.

Any other expansion such as replacement of a symbol by text (EX 4, 5), e.g., "&" replaced by "and" or "et".

Subfields Description

$a Expanded Title

The complete text of the expanded title. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Title

This subfield identifies the language of the expanded title. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2 (EX 5). Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2 (EX 7, 8). For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Any expanded title may be entered in this field. It may be an expression of the title proper or in the case of continuing resources the key title. Under certain circumstances ISSN requires that a key title with abbreviations be expanded; this may be entered in field 532 (EX 2, 3, 4, 5, 6).

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, subfieled $a, Title Proper
530 KEY TITLE

Examples

EX 1
532 12$aSaint Mirren Football Club centenary brochure
The title proper of a document entered in field 200 is *St. Mirren F.C. centenary brochure*. The abbreviations in the title are expanded in field 532 to create a more useful access point.
EX 2
532 12$aTechnical bulletin – South Dakota University Agricultural Experiment Station
The title proper is TB – South Dakota University. Agricultural Experiment Station. The abbreviation for this type of document is expanded in field 532.
EX 3
532 10$aInstitute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers transactions on aerospace and electronic systems.
The title proper is IEEE transactions on aerospace and electronic systems. The acronym of the association is expanded in field 532.
EX 4
532 13$aThirty-seven design and environment projects
The title *37 design & environment projects* begins with a number and contains &. The variant title is entered with second indicator value 3 denoting expansion of symbols, etc. rather than the value 2.
EX 5
532 13$aUn plus un$zfre
The title is *1+1*. It is French and the numerals and symbols are expanded in French.
EX 6

532 11$aFive ways
The title is *5 ways*.
EX 7
532 10$aСоветскай Социалистическай Республикасал Союзачи Конституцияни проектавани докладалахани$zgld$2iso639-3
The title is “СССР Союзачи Конституцияни проектавани докладалахани”. Code for the Nanai language in field 532 is derived from ISO 639-3, thereof the source of code is indicated in subfield $2.
EX 8
532 11$aВāт тāл$zmns$2iso639-3
The title is “30 тāл” in the Mansi language. Fields 532 contain expanded title, code for the Mansi language is derived from ISO 639-3. Source of code is indicated in subfield $2.

History

2018	Added text, new subfield $2 and new examples.
2020	Errata / text edit (ex 2-3).

540 ADDITIONAL TITLE SUPPLIED BY CATALOGUER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains catch titles and popular titles not appearing on the item and which are not considered preferred titles. It may also be used for a title access point derived from the title proper.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
540	ADDITIONAL TITLE SUPPLIED BY CATALOGUER	R	O
a	Additional Title	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
h	Number of Part	NR	O
i	Name of Part	NR	O
j	Volume or Dates Associated with Title	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	NR	O
z	Language of Title	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Additional title is not significant
	1	Additional title is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

Value 0: Additional title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under this title.

Value 1: Additional title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Subfields Description

$a Additional Title

The text of the additional title as supplied by the cataloguer. Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear subordinate to the supplied title in $a. Repeatable.

$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title, and relate to the additional title in $a. Not repeatable.

$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title. Not repeatable.

$j Volume or Dates Associated with Title

The part of a multivolume resource or continuing resource to which the additional title pertains. Not repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Text intended primarily for display in a note, e.g. "varies slightly", "paperback edition". It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Title

Identifies the language of the additional title. Its presence will enable recipients of the record to omit added entries for additional titles in languages which are not felt to be useful in their databases. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2. For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains a title that does not appear on the resource, it is supplied by the cataloguer for use as an added entry. It may be a title by which the work is popularly known, though not a preferred title. In some agencies, such titles are handled as references in an authority system, rather than as access points in the bibliographic record.

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the following will usually occur: 540a, 540e, 540h and 540i.

Related Fields

500 PREFERRED ACCESS POINT	Field 500 is used for standard preferred titles which are usually prescribed by the cataloguing code. These should not be entered in field 540.
541 TRANSLATED TITLE SUPPLIED BY CATALOGUER	Field 541 should be used for the translation of a title on the document when it is supplied by the cataloguer.

Examples

EX 1
540 1#$aParis principles
The document Statement of principles adopted at the International Conference on Cataloguing Principles, Paris, October 1961 is commonly referred to as the Paris principles.
EX 2
200 1#$aSérie orange 1:50 000$h2123$iSelles-sur-Cher$bDocument cartographique$fInstitut géographique national
540 1#$aSérie orange$ecarte topographique de la France à 1:50 000$h2123$iSellessur-Cher
The *Série orange* is the topographical map of France to the scale of 1:50000. The general title of the series has undergone a slight change in the course of its publication, from *Série orange: carte topographique de la France à 1:50000* to *Série orange 1:50000*. In order to keep title indexes coherent, an additional title has been created, using the former title of the set.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

541 TRANSLATED TITLE SUPPLIED BY CATALOGUER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the translation of one of the titles appearing on the item, supplied by the cataloguer.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
541	TRANSLATED TITLE SUPPLIED BY CATALOGUER	R	O
a	Translated Title	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	NR	O
h	Number of a Part	NR	O
i	Name of Part	NR	O
z	Language of Translated Title	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Translated title is not significant
	1	Translated title is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

Value 0: Translated title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under this title.

Value 1: Translated title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Subfields Description

$a Translated Title

The title proper without any other title information, in translation (EX 3). Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information in translation appearing subordinate to the translated title (EX 2). Not repeatable.

$h Number of a Part

The section or part numbering for items identified by a common name and a subsection name, with or without accompanying caption translated. Not repeatable.

$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a common name and a subsection name. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Translated Title

Coded identification of the language of a translated title. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2 (EX 4). For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used only for titles which are translated by the cataloguer or where the translation is taken from any source other than the item for the cataloguing code being used. Translated titles prescribed by a cataloguing code would usually be treated as preferred titles and entered in field 500. The subfields should follow the treatment of subfields in field 200.

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY	The title upon which the translated title is based should always be present in field 200. In addition, a translated title actually on the resource itself will be entered in 200 $d, parallel title, or in a note field if it is not in the chief source of information.
500 PREFERRED ACCESS POINT	Field 500 contains any translated titles which are regarded as preferred titles by the cataloguing code.
510 PARALLEL TITLE PROPER	A title in another language on the resource is entered in field 510 if it requires an access point.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$a≠NSB≠Der ≠NSE≠Spiegel
541 1#$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Mirror$zeng
The title page reads *Der Spiegel.*
EX 2
200 1#$a≠NSB≠Die ≠NSE≠Zentralafrikanische Zoll- und Wirtschaftsunion$eIntegrationswirkungen bei Ländern im Frühstadium der industriellen Entwicklung$fR.J. Langhammer
541 1#$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Central African Customs and Economic Union$eintegration effects in countries in the early stage of industrial development$zeng
The title page reads Die Zentralafrikanische Zoll- und Wirtschafts-union: Integrationswirkungen bei Ländern im Frühstadium der industriellen Entwicklung.
EX 3
200 1#$a≠NSB≠De ≠NSE≠rol van de universiteit bij de ontwikkeling van een Land
541 1#$aRole of universities in national development$zeng
An agency translates all titles into English which are in another language, dropping any initial non-filing characters, e.g. “The”. The title page reads *De rol van de universiteit bij de ontwikkeling van een Land.*
EX 4
100 ##$a/22-24 fiu
101 0#$aeng
200 1#$aAlice’s Adventures in Wonderland
541 1#$a<Title in Mansi>$zmns$2iso639-3
An agency translates title into local Mansi language. The code for Mansi is derived from ISO 639-3, thereof the source of code is indicated in subfield 541$2.

History

2018	Added text, new subfield $2 and new example.

545 SECTION TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the title of a general section in which a piece-analytic being catalogued is contained.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
545	SECTION TITLE	R	O
a	Section Title	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
h	Number of Part	NR	O
i	Name of Part	NR	O
j	Volume or Dates Associated with Title	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	NR	O
z	Language of Title	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Section title is not significant
	1	Section title is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Title Significance Indicator

Specifies whether the parallel title should be treated as an independent title access point, i.e. whether an access point (or added entry) should be made for it.

Value 0: Section title is not significant

It is not intended that an access point be made under this title.

Value 1: Section title is significant

An access point should be made under this title.

Subfields Description

$a Section Title

Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear subordinate to the supplied title in $a. Repeatable.

$h Number of Part

The section or part numbering for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title, and relate to the section title in $a. Not repeatable.

$i Name of Part

The section or part name for items which are identified by a main title and a subsection title. Not repeatable.

$j Volume or Dates Associated with Title

The part of a multivolume resource or continuing resource to which the section title pertains. Not repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Text intended primarily for display in a note, e.g. “varies slightly”, “paperback edition”. It will be placed in relation to the other subfields in the position where the cataloguing agency intends that it will display. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Title

Identifies the language of the section title. Its presence will enable recipients of the record to omit added entries for section titles in languages which are not felt to be useful in their databases. For codes use ISO 639-2 or other standard language code schema specified in subfield $2. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the language code schema from which the code in $z is derived, when the code is not from ISO 639-2. For a list of the language codes schemas, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Any subfield available under field 510 may be used. It is anticipated that only the 545a will usually occur.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Science of eating well
545 0#$aNutrition Letter

History

1994	New field.

560 ARTIFICIAL TITLE

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to record a title given to the resource after publication, such as a binder's title given at rebinding.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
560	ARTIFICIAL TITLE	R	O
a	Artificial title	NR	O
e	Other Title Information	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Title Significance Indicator
	0	Title is not significant
	1	Title is significant
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Artificial title

Not repeatable.

$e Other Title Information

Subtitles and other title information that appear on the resource subordinate to the title in subfield $a. Repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will be used only when the item has on the cover and/or back an artificial title that differs from the title proper.

Related Fields

316 NOTES RELATING TO THE ITEM	This field contains a note relating to characteristics of the item and may be used for recording an artificial title.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$aSalomon Gessners sämmtliche schriften

316 ##$aTit. della cop.: Scrittura$5TO0741 MOS: R 105
560 0#$aScrittura$5TO0741 MOS: R 105
Scrittura is the title of the item title present on the back of the resource *Salomon Gessners sämmtliche schriften.*
EX 2
200 1#$aTeorie formole e metodi raccolti per la misura dell'acqua che si estragge per via di sfori e bocchelli o fluisce entro a' canali come regolari, con applicazioni anche all'uso pratico del Piemonte
316 ##$aAnche legato con : Mémoire sur la cause des ricochets que font les pierres et les boulets de canon, lancés obliquement sur la surface de l'eau / par Georges Bidone; e con: Ricerche sulla figura del pelo d'acqua negli alvei d'uniforme larghezza, fatte nella Scuola degli ingegneri pontificj d'acque e strade, l'anno 1823; e con: Ricerche geometriche ed idrometriche fatte nella Scuola degli'ingegneri pontificj d'acque e strade, l'anno 1821; e con: Expériences sur les roues hydrauliques à aubes planes, et sur les roues hydrauliques à augets; e con: Du mouvement des ondes et des travaux hydrauliques maritimes / par A.R. Emy$aTit. della cop.: Opuscoli idraulici varii $5IT/TO0741 MOS: SV 659
560 1#$aOpuscoli idraulici varii$5IT/TO0741 MOS: SV 659
Opuscoli idraulici varii is an artificial title.

History

2008	New field. Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.
2012	Corrections and additions.

576 NAME/ACCESS POINT– IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name/preferred title entry identifying a work that is embodied in the manifestation described in the record. Field 506 may link to the record describing that work.

When there is no name associated with the title of the expression, field 506 should be used instead of 576.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model, and is found in a record describing a manifestation. In such catalogues, fields 506, 507, 576 and 577 supersede field 500.

Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
576	NAME/ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	MA
t	Title	NR	MA
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
c	Form of Work	NR	O
d	Date of Work	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Primary Entry Indicator
	0	Title is not primary entry or value is not specified
	1	Title is primary entry
2		Structure Indicator
	#	Not applicable (embedded fields technique) or No information available (standard subfields technique)
	0	Unstructured title (standard subfields technique)
	1	Structured title (standard subfields technique)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Primary Entry Indicator

Specifies whether the preferred title is primary (main) entry for the record. If indicator 1 is set to 1, no other field containing a primary entry may appear in the record, i.e. there is no 7 0 (700, 710 or 720) field

and no other title entry field (5--) with primary entry indicator set to 1. Use value 0 for cataloguing codes which do not recognise the concept of primary entry.

Value 0: Title is not primary entry or value is not specified

The preferred title is not the primary entry.

Value 1: Title is primary entry

The primary entry for the resource is the preferred title.

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

$1 Linking Data

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable for each embedded field.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

$a Name

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the work registered in subfield $t. When subfield $a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency to separate the elements. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

$t Title

The title by which the work is known.

When the title of the work is unstructured (indicator 2 = # or 0) subfield $t is a composite of more than one standard subfield and the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency is used to separate the elements.

When the title of the work is structured (indicator 2 =1) subfield $t is the title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part.

Mandatory. Not repeatable.

$h Number of Section or Part

The number of a part when the resource to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

$i Name of Section or Part

The name of a part when the resource to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

$c Form of Work

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs. Not repeatable.

$d Date of Work

The date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

$e Place of Origin of Work

The place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. Not repeatable. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield $e.

$f Original Language of the Work

The original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work. Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield $f.

$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body. Repeatable.

$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

The instrumentation, etc., of the work. Repeatable.

$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

$u Key (for Music)

The musical key used as part of the title. Not repeatable.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use $x instead. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents. Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

The identifier for the authority record for the expression as identified by the name/title authorized access point identifying the expression. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format field 242. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 7-- field appropriate to the element: 700, 710, or 220 for the name; and a 506 for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 576, with each preceded by subfield identifier $1.

A more detailed description of embedded fields can be found under the 4-- field block.

Related Fields

506 PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK
507 PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION
577 NAME/ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION

Examples

EX 1a
Embedded fields technique
576 1#$1001<AR_ID for the work>$4070$1700#1$aAzzarone$bPietro$1506## $aStoria della letteratura italiana
EX 1b
Standard subfields technique
57611$3<AR_ID for the work>$aAzzarone, Pietro4070tStoria della letteratura italiana
EX 2a
Embedded fields technique
576 1#$1001<AR_ID for the work>$1700#1$3$aGenette$bGérard$f1930-....$4070$1506##$aFigures$h2
EX 2b
Standard subfields technique
576 11$3<AR_ID for the work>$aGenette, Gérard (1930-....)4070tFigures$h2
EX 3a
Embedded fields technique
576 1#$1001<AR_ID for the work>$1700#1$aPlutarque$f0046?-0120?$4070 $15061#$aVies parallèles $iDémosthène-Cicéron
EX 3b
Standard subfields technique
576 11$3<AR_ID for the work>$aPlutarque (0046?-0120?)4070tVies parallèles $iDémosthène-Cicéron
EX 4a
Embedded fields technique
576 1#$1001<AR_ID for the work>$1700#1$aManzoni$bAlessandro$f1785-1873 $4070$15061#$a≠NSB≠Il ≠NSE≠conte di Carmagnola
EX 4b
Standard subfields technique
576 11$3<AR_ID for the work>$aManzoni, Alessandro (1785-1873)4070tIl conte di Carmagnola
EX 5a
Embedded fields technique
576 1#$1001<AR_ID for the work>$1700#1$aChopin$bFrédéric$f1810-1849$4230 $15061#$aBallades$rPiano$sCT 5$uFa mineur
EX 5b
Standard subfields technique, structured title
576 11$3<AR_ID for the work>$aChopin, Frédéric (1810-1849)4230tBallades $rPiano$sCT 5$uFa mineur
EX 5c
Standard subfields technique, unstructured title
576 10$3<AR_ID for the work>$aChopin, Frédéric (1810-1849)4230tBallades. Piano. CT 5. Fa mineur
EX 6a

Embedded fields technique
576 1#$1001<AR_ID for the work>$1700#1$aBizet$bGeorges$f1838-1875$4230 $15061#$aCarmen$hActe 2, n° 17$i≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠fleur que tu m'avais jetée
EX 6b
Standard subfields technique, structured title
576 11$3<AR_ID for the work>$aBizet, Georges (1838-1875)4230tCarmen$hActe 2, n° 17$i≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠fleur que tu m'avais jetée
EX 6c
Standard subfields technique, unstructured title
576 10$3<AR_ID for the work>$aBizet, Georges (1838-1875)4230tCarmen. Acte 2, n° 17, La fleur que tu m'avais jetée

History

2012	New field.
2024	Text edit.

577 NAME/ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name / preferred title identifying a specific expression of a work that is embodied in the manifestation described in the record. Field 577 may link to the record describing that expression.

When there is no name associated with the title of the expression, field 507 should be used instead of 577.

This field is intended for catalogues that comply with the FRBR/IFLA LRM model, and is found in a record describing a manifestation. In such catalogues, fields 506, 507, 576 and 577 supersede field 500.

Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
577	NAME/ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name [Work]	NR	MA
t	Title [Work]		MA
h	Number of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part [Work]	R	O
c	Form of Work [Work]	NR	O
d	Date of Work [Work]	NR	O
e	Place of Origin of Work [Work]	NR	O
f	Original Language of the Work [Work]	NR	O
k	Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]	R	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]	NR	O
u	Key (for Music) [Work]	NR	O
l	Form of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
m	Language of the Expression [Expression]	NR	O
n	Content Type [Expression]	NR	O
o	Date of Expression [Expression]	NR	O
v	Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]	R	O
w	Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Primary Entry Indicator
	0	Title is not primary entry
	1	Title is primary entry

2		Structure Indicator
	#	Not applicable (embedded fields technique) or No information available (standard subfields technique)
	0	Unstructured title (standard subfields technique)
	1	Structured title (standard subfields technique)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Primary Entry Indicator or value is not specified

Specifies whether the preferred title is primary (main) entry for the record. If indicator 1 is set to 1, no other field containing a primary entry may appear in the record, i.e. there is no 7 0 (700, 710 or 720) field and no other title entry field (5--) with primary entry indicator set to 1. Use value 0 for cataloguing codes which do not recognise the concept of primary entry.

Value 0: Title is not primary entry

The preferred title is not the primary entry.

Value 1: Title is primary entry

The primary entry for the resource is the preferred title.

Subfields Description

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

$1 Linking Data

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable for each embedded field.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

In the list of subfields below, those pertaining to the related work are marked with the wording "[Work]". They can be copied from the record describing the related work. The subfields pertaining to the expression are marked with "[Expression]".

$a Name [Work]

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the work registered in subfield $t. When subfield $a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency to separate the elements. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

$t Title [Work]

The title by which the work is known.

When the title of the work is unstructured (indicator 2 = # or 0) subfield $t is a composite of more than one standard subfield and the punctuation prescribed by the cataloguing rules used by the bibliographic agency is used to separate the elements.

When the title of the work is structured (indicator 2 =1) subfield $t is the title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part.

This subfield should be present whenever field 241 is used. Mandatory.

$h Number of Section or Part [Work]

The number of a part when the resource to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

$i Name of Section or Part [Work]

The name of a part when the resource to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

$c Form of Work [Work]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which a work belongs. Not repeatable.

$d Date of Work [Work]

The date of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The date of the work is the earliest date associated with a work. Date of work may be the date the work was created or the date the work was first published or released. Not repeatable.

$e Place of Origin of Work [Work]

The place of origin of the work, when required as part of the title in order to differentiate a work from another work. The place of origin of the work is the country or other territorial jurisdiction from which a work originated. Not repeatable. If more than one place need to be recorded, all of them should be entered in a single subfield $e.

$f Original Language of the Work [Work]

The original language of the work, when required as part of the title of the work. Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield $f.

$k Other Distinguishing Characteristics of a Work [Work]

Any characteristic other than form of work, date of work, or place of origin of the work that serves to differentiate a work from another work with the same title or from the name of a person, family, or corporate body. Repeatable.

$r Medium of Performance (for Music) [Work]

The instrumentation, etc., of the work. Repeatable.

$s Numeric Designation (for Music) [Work]

A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

$u Key (for Music) [Work]

The musical key used as part of the title. Not repeatable.

$l Form of the Expression [Expression]

Standard phrase indicating class or genre to which an expression belongs. Not repeatable. (EX 3)

$m Language of the Expression [Expression]

The language of the expression. Not repeatable. If the expression is in more than one language, all languages should be entered in a single subfield $m.

$n Content Type [Expression]

Categorization reflecting the fundamental form of communication in which the content is expressed and the human sense through which it is intended to be perceived. The content type is expressed through a standard phrase. Not repeatable.

$o Date of Expression [Expression]

The original date of the expression of the work when required as a means to identify the expression. The original date of the expression is the earliest date associated with an expression. The date of the earliest manifestation embodying the expression may be treated as the date of expression. Not repeatable. (EX 6)

$v Medium of Performance (for Music) [Expression]

The instrumentation, etc., of the expression. Repeatable.

$w Other Characteristics of Expression [Expression]

Any characteristic other than content type, language of expression, date of expression, or form of expression that serves to differentiate an expression from another expression of the same work. It can be a version statement, the name of the person or corporate body responsible for the expression. Repeatable. (EX 4, 6)

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use $x instead. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents. Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

The identifier for the authority record for the expression as identified by the name/title authorized access point identifying the expression. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format field 242. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 7-- field appropriate to the element: 700, 710, or 220 for the name; and a 507 for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 577, with each preceded by subfield identifier $1.

A more detailed description of embedded fields can be found under the 4-- field block.

Related Fields

506 PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK
507 PREFERRED ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF AN EXPRESSION
576 NAME/ACCESS POINT – IDENTIFICATION OF A WORK

Examples

EX 1a
Embedded fields technique
577 1#$1001<AR_ID for the expression>$1700#1$aAzzarone$bPietro$1507## $aStoria della letteratura italiana$mitalien
EX 1b
Standard subfields technique
577 11$3<AR_ID for the expression>$aAzzarone, Pietro$tStoria della letteratura italiana $mitalien
EX 2a
Embedded fields technique

577 1#$1001<AR_ID for the expression>$1700#1$3$aGenette$bGérard$f1930-.... $1507##$aFigures$h2$mfrançais
EX 2b
Standard subfields technique
577 11$3<AR_ID for the expression>$aGenette, Gérard (1930-....)$tFigures$h2 $mfrançais
EX 3a
Embedded fields technique
577 1#$1001<AR_ID for the expression>$1700#1$aPlutarque$f0046?-0120? $15071#$aVies parallèles$iDémosthène-Cicéron$mfrançais$lExtraits
EX 3b
Standard subfields technique
577 11$3<AR_ID for the expression>$aPlutarque (0046?-0120?)$tVies parallèles $iDémosthène-Cicéron$mfrançais$lExtraits
EX 4a
Embedded fields technique
577 1#$1001<AR_ID for the expression>$1700#1$aManzoni$bAlessandro$f1785-1873$15071#$a≠NSB≠Il ≠NSE≠conte di Carmagnola$mfrançais$wClavareau
EX 4b
Standard subfields technique
577 11$3<AR_ID for the expression>$aManzoni, Alessandro (1785-1873)$tIl conte di Carmagnola$mfrançais$wClavareau
EX 5a
Embedded fields technique
577 1#$1001<AR_ID for the expression>$1700#1$aChopin$bFrédéric$f1810-1849 $15071#$aBallades$rPiano$sCT 5$uFa mineur$nMusique notée
EX 5b
Standard subfields technique, structured title
577 11$3<AR_ID for the expression>$aChopin, Frédéric (1810-1849)$tBallades $rPiano$sCT 5$uFa mineur$nMusique notée
EX 5c
Standard subfields technique, unstructured title
577 10$3<AR_ID for the expression>$aChopin, Frédéric (1810-1849)$tBallades. Piano. CT 5. Fa mineur. Musique notée
EX 6a
Embedded fields technique
577 1#$1001<AR_ID for the expression>$1700#1$aBizet$bGeorges$f1838-1875 $15071#$aCarmen$hActe 2, n° 17$i≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠fleur que tu m'avais jetée$nMusique interprétée $o1995$wAlagna$wArmstrong$wLondon Philharmonic
EX 6b
Standard subfields technique, structured title
577 11$3<AR_ID for the expression>$aBizet, Georges (1838-1875)$tCarmen$hActe 2, n° 17$i≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠fleur que tu m'avais jetée$nMusique interprétée$o1995$wAlagna$wArmstrong $wLondon Philharmonic

EX 6c
Standard subfields technique, unstructured title
577 10$3<AR_ID for the expression>$aBizet, Georges (1838-1875)$tCarmen. Acte 2, n° 17, La fleur que tu m'avais jetée. Musique interprétée (1995 ; Alagna ; Armstrong ; London Philharmonic)

History

2012	New field.
2024	Removed status "Provisional". Text edit.

6-- SUBJECT ANALYSIS AND BIBLIOGRAPHICAL HISTORY BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains subject data constructed according to various systems, both verbal and notational. It also contains data relating to the physical characteristics of the resource and the mode of presentation of the matter in it (608), access points for the publication, performance, etc. of the resource (620) and later history of the item (621). The following fields are defined:

Subject access points	
600	PERSONAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT
601	CORPORATE BODY NAME USED AS SUBJECT
602	FAMILY NAME USED AS SUBJECT
604	NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT
605	TITLE USED AS SUBJECT
606	TOPICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT
607	GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT
608	FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS ACCESS POINT
610	UNCONTROLLED SUBJECT TERMS
615	SUBJECT CATEGORY [PROVISIONAL]
616	TRADEMARK USED AS SUBJECT
617	HIERARCHICAL GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT
Bibliographical history and other subject access points	
620	PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, ETC.
621	PLACE AND DATE OF PROVENANCE
623	CHARACTER
626	TECHNICAL DETAILS ACCESS (ELECTRONIC RESOURCES) [OBSOLETE]
631	OCCUPATION
632	FUNCTION
Subject analysis	
660	GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE
661	TIME PERIOD CODE
670	PRECIS
Classification	
675	UNIVERSAL DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (UDC)
676	DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION
680	LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CLASSIFICATION
686	OTHER CLASS NUMBERS

Occurrence

Fields in the 6-- block are all optional. It is recommended that all subject data in a source record suitable for international exchange be entered in the UNIMARC record.

Notes on Field Contents

Punctuation should be entered as in the source format.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Corrections.
2024	Text edit.

600 PERSONAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a person who is one of the subjects of the resource, in access point form, with the optional addition of extra subject information.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
600	PERSONAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	O
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Name Other than Dates	R	O
d	Roman Numerals	NR	O
f	Dates	NR	O
g	Expansion of Initials of Forename	NR	O
p	Affiliation/Address	NR	O
t	Title	-	Obsolete
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Form of Name Indicator
	0	Name entered under forename or in direct order
	1	Name entered under surname (family name, patronymic etc.)

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

This indicator specifies whether the name is entered under the first occurring name (forename) or a name in direct order or whether it is entered under a surname, family name, patronymic or equivalent, usually with inversion.

Value 0: Name entered under forename or in direct order

See EX 3, 4.

Value 1: Name entered under surname (family name, patronymic etc.)

See EX 1, 2, 5.

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists. This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

The remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name (EX 1, 2, 5). It contains forenames and other given names. The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

$c Additions to Name Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office. Repeatable for second and subsequent occurrences of such additions.

$d Roman Numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics. If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included (EX 4). The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

$f Dates

The dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates. Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should also be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form (EX 5). All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in $f. Not repeatable.

$g Expansion of Initials of Forename

The full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield $b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required. Not repeatable.

$p Affiliation/Address

This subfield contains the institutional affiliation of the individual at the time the work was prepared. Not repeatable.

$t Title [Obsolete]

For author/title subject access points, use field 604.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 2). Agencies not using this subdivision should use $x instead. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents (EX 3, 5). Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a person which the subject access point represents (EX 5). Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a person whom the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system or thesaurus from which the subject access point is derived. It is recommended that subfield $2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of subject sources, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one Authority Record Identifier or Standard Numberto indicate each part of a access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is intended for recording access points for personal names used as subjects. These access points are structured in the same form as the access point s for persons responsible for the content of the resource. Subfields $a, $b, $c, $d and $f follow the same form as in field 700 and further explanation of the scope and content of these subfields can be found there.

Unlike field 700, this field can contain more than the name of the person and additions to the name. Terms may be added to a subject access point to further specify it with respect to form, topic, place or time. These and the order of all the subfields follow the rules of the subject access point system or thesaurus used by the agency preparing the record.

Related Fields

601 CORPORATE BODY NAME USED AS SUBJECT	When a corporate body rather than a person is the subject, field 601 is used.
602 FAMILY NAME USED AS SUBJECT	When a family rather than a person is the subject, field 602 is used.
604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT	When the subject is an author/title, field 604 is used.

Examples

EX 1
600 #1$aBurroughs$bEdgar Rice$21c
EX 2
600 #1$aShakespeare$bWilliam$f564-1616$jQuotations$2lc
EX 3
600 #0$aJesus Christ$xNativity$21c
600 #0$aJesus Christ$xTrial$21c
The record for *Son of God : birth and trial of Jesus* containing two subject access points.
EX 4
600 #0$aGustavus$dII Adolphus,$cKing of Sweden$21c
EX 5
600 #1$aEinstein$bAlbert$f1879-1955$xHomes and haunts$yGermany$yBerlin$2lc

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2024	Text edit. Deleted duplicated subfield $j.

601 CORPORATE BODY NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a corporate body which is one of the subjects of the resource, in access point form, with the optional addition of extra subject information.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
601	CORPORATE BODY NAME USED AS SUBJECT	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision (or Name if Entered Under Place)	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
d	Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of a Meeting	NR	O
l	Location of Meeting	NR	O
f	Date of Meeting	NR	O
g	Inverted Element	NR	O
h	Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element	NR	O
t	Title	-	Obsolete
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Meeting Indicator
	0	Corporate name
	1	Meeting
2		Form of Name Indicator
	0	Name in inverted order
	1	Name entered under place or jurisdiction
	2	Name entered under name in direct order

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Meeting Indicator

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, then the name is regarded as that of a corporate body (EX 10).

Value 1: Name entered under forename or in direct order

If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

The second indicator denotes the form of the corporate name.

Value 0: Name in inverted order

An inverted form may be used when the first word of a corporate name or meeting begins with an initial or forename relating to a personal name.

Value 1: Name entered under place or jurisdiction

Used for corporate names relating to governments or other agencies of jurisdiction that are entered under the name of the place. According to certain cataloguing codes other kinds of institutions which are associated with a place are also entered under that place, e.g., universities, learned societies, art galleries (EX 9).

Value 2: Name entered under name in direct order

Used for all other kinds of corporate names. (EX 1-8, 10).

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists; i.e. the part of the name up to the first filing boundary. This subfield is not repeatable but must be present if the field is present.

$b Subdivision (or Name if Entered Under Place)

The name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy; or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place (EX 9). This subfield excludes additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see $c, $g, $h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference. Repeatable (EX 4, 5, 7, 8).

$d Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of a Meeting

The number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series. Not repeatable. (EX 10)

$e Location of Meeting

The place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (EX 10)

$f Date of Meeting

The date of a meeting when it is required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (EX 10)

$g Inverted Element

Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable.

$h Part of Name other than Entry Element and Inverted Element

In a access point with an inverted element, the part of the name following the inversion. Not repeatable.

$t Title [Obsolete]

For author/title subject access points, use field 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 2, 3). Agencies not using this subdivision should use $x instead. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents (EX 2, 5, 6, 8). Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents. Repeatable. (EX 6)

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents. Repeatable (EX 9).

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. It is recommended that subfield $2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of subject sources, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is intended for recording access points for corporate names used as subjects. These access points are structured in the same form as corporate body name access points for bodies responsible for the contents of the resource. Subfields $a, $b, $c, $d, $e, $f, $g and $h follow the same form as in field 710, and further explanation of the scope and content of these subfields can be found there.

Unlike field 710, this field can contain more than the name of the corporate body and additions to the name. Terms may be added to a subject access point to further specify it with respect to form, topic, place or time.

Political jurisdictions subdivided by names of subordinate bodies are entered in this field (EX 9). If the name of a political jurisdiction appears alone or is subdivided only by subject terms, it is entered in field 607.

Related Fields

600 PERSONAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	When a person rather than a corporate body is the subject, field 600 is used.
602 FAMILY NAME USED AS SUBJECT	When a family rather than a corporate body is the subject, field 602 is used.
604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT	When the subject is an author/title, field 604 is used.
607 GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	Political jurisdictions represented by geographical names are entered in field 607 if they appear alone or subdivided only by subject terms.

Examples

EX 1
601 02$aHardy Heating Co Ltd$21c
A subject access point assigned to the record for Hardy Developments Ltd : test and cases in management accounting.
EX 2

601 02$aChurch of England.$xClergy.$jBiography$21c
A subject access point assigned to the record for *Charles Lowder and the ritualistic movement* (punctuation is retained in the example).
EX 3
601 02$aStrategic Arms Limitation Talks$jJuvenile literature$21c
A subject access point assigned to the record for a book for children entitled *The nuclear arms race*.
EX 4
601 02$aBeagle Expeditions$c1831-1836$21c
A subject access point assigned to the record for The adventures of Charles Darwin : a story of the Beagle voyage.
EX 5
601 02$aEgba$cAfrican tribe$xHistory$21c
A subject access point assigned to the record for Lugard and the Abeokuta uprising : the demise of Egba independence.
EX 6
601 02$aCatholic Church$yScotland$xGovernment$21c
A subject access point assigned to the record for Scotia pontificia: papal letters to Scotland before the Pontificate of Innocent III.
EX 7
601 02$aSpray$cShip$21c
A subject access point assigned to the record for *In the wake of the Spray* (the qualifier "Ship" has been added since the name Spray is not distinctive).
EX 8
601 02$aTemplars$cOrder of chivalry$xHistory$21c
A subject access point assigned to the record for *The Knights Templar*.
EX 9
601 01$aGreat Britain$bManpower Services Commission$z1981-1985$21c
A subject access point assigned to the record for MSC corporate plan 1981, 1982, 1983, 1984, 1985.
EX 10
601 02$aUnited Nations$bConference on the Law of the Sea$d3rd$f1973-1975$eNew York, etc.$21c
A subject access point assigned to the record for documents on the third *UN Conference on the Law of the Sea*.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2023	Deleted duplicated subfield $j.
2024	Text edit.

602 FAMILY NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a family which is one of the subjects of the resource, in access point form, with the optional addition of extra subject information.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
602	FAMILY NAME USED AS SUBJECT	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	O
c	Type of Family	NR	O
d	Places Associated with the Family	R	O
f	Dates	NR	O
t	Title	-	Obsolete
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The name of the family in access point form. Not repeatable.

$c Type of Family

A categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family. Includes categorizations such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc. Not repeatable.

$d Places Associated with the Family

Information pertaining to places where the family resides or resided or had some connection. Repeatable.

$f Dates

The dates of a family when they are required as part of the access point. Not repeatable (EX 2).

$t Title [Obsolete]

For author/title subject access points, use field 604.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 2). Agencies not using this subdivision should use $x instead. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a family which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a family which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. It is recommended that subfield $2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of subject sources, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is intended for recording access point for family names used as subjects. These access points are structured in the same form as name access points for a family responsible for the content of the resource (field 720). Subfield $a includes the name of the family. Qualifying data are recorded in $c, $d and $f.

This field can contain more than the name of the family in subfield $a. In addition, terms may be added to the subject access point to further specify it with respect to form, topic, place or time. These follow the rules of the subject access point system used.

Related Fields

600 PERSONAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	When a person rather than a family name is the subject, field 600 is used.
601 CORPORATE BODY USED AS SUBJECT	When a corporate body rather than a family is the subject, field 601 is used.
604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT	When the subject is an author/title, field 604 is used.

Examples

EX 1
602 ##$aSwinnerton$cFamily$jPeriodicals$21c
A subject access point assigned to a document entitled Swinnerton family history : heraldic and genealogical studies of the Swinnerton family.
EX 2
602 ##$aArchaemenid dynasty$f559-330 B.C.
EX 3
602 ##312128766aChoiseul$cfamille de$311932940$xPatrimoine$2rameau
In the database, Rameau a pre-coordinated subject source is used, so the $3 is repeated and one Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number is given for each part of the access point.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	New subfield $j.
2023	Deleted duplicated subfield $j.
2024	Text edit.

604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains an author and title of a work which is one of the subjects of the resource.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
604	NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT	R	O
Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique			
1	Linking Data	R	O
Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique			
a	Name	NR	M
t	Title	NR	M
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

(A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

$1 Linking Data

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable for each embedded field.

(B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

$a Name

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary responsibility for the resource registered in subfield $t. When subfield $a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use punctuation to separate the elements. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

$t Title

The title by which the work is known. When subfield $t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use $x instead. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents. Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the collective preferred name/title which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the collective preferred name/title that the access point represents. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. It is recommended that subfield $2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of subject sources, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Repeatable (EX 6).

Notes on Field Contents

This field is used to record the name of a work used as a subject, when it is represented by a name/title access point. When using the embedded fields technique, the title of the work is recorded in an embedded 500 Preferred Title Access Point field. The subject source ($2), Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number ($3) and any subject subdivisions ($j, $x, $y, $z) required should also be carried in the embedded 500 field. The name of the author is carried in an embedded 7-- Responsibility field.

The field is structured like the 4-- Linking Entry fields, Embedded fields technique or Standard subfields technique. When using the standard subfields technique, the title of the work, the name of the author and any subject subdivisions are recorded in different subfields.

Related Fields

4-- LINKING ENTRY BLOCK	
600 PERSONAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	When a personal name, corporate body, family or title alone is the subject, the 6-- fields are used.
601 CORPORATE BODY NAME USED AS SUBJECT	
602 FAMILY NAME USED AS SUBJECT	
605 TITLE USED AS SUBJECT	

Examples

EX 1a
Embedded field technique
604 ##$1700#1$aBeethoven,$bLudwig van,$f1770-1827.150000aSymphonies, $sno. 5, op. 67,$uC minor$2lc
EX 1b
Standard subfields technique
604 ##$aBeethoven, Ludwig van, 1770-1827.$tSymphonies, no. 5, op. 67, C minor$2lc
EX 2a
Embedded field technique
604 ##$1700#0$aOvid$f43B.C. -17 or 18.$4070$150001$aMetamorphoses$hLiber 2$2lc
EX 2b
Standard subfields technique
604 ##$aOvid, 43B.C.-17 or 18.$tMetamorphoses. Liber 2$2lc
EX 3a

Embedded field technique
604 ##171001aUnited States.150010aConstitution.$h1st Amendment.$21c
EX 3b
Standard subfields technique
604 ##$aUnited States.$tConstitution. 1st Amendment.$21c
EX 4a
Embedded field technique
604 ##$1700#1$aCervantes Saavedra$bMiguel de$f1547-1616$150001$aDon Quixote$jIllustrations $21c
EX 4b
Standard subfields technique
604 ##$aCervantes Saavedra, Miguel de, 1547-1616$tDon Quixote$xIllustrations$21c
EX 5a
Embedded field technique
604 ##$1700#1$aAquin$bHubert$f1925-1977$150010$aTrou de mémoire$2rameau
EX 5b
Standard subfields technique
604 ##3456123789aAquin, Hubert (1925-1977)$tTrou de mémoire$2rameau
EX 6a
Embedded field technique
604 ##$1700#1$aProust$bMarcel$f1871-1922$150001$aÀ la recherche du temps perdu$xPersonnages $xDictionnaires$2rameau
EX 6b
Standard subfields technique
604 ##311940457aProust, Marcel (1871-1922)$tÀ la recherche du temps perdu$312045551 $xPersonnages$311931877$xDictionnaires$2rameau
The agency does not use subfield $j for form subdivision.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Changes made to illustrate alternative linking techniques.
2018	New subfield $2.
2024	Text edit.

605 TITLE USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a title which is one of the subjects of the resource being recorded. This title may be the title of a work in any form of medium, e.g. stage plays, radio programmes, etc.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
605	TITLE USED AS SUBJECT	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	O
h	Number of Section or Part	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
k	Date of Publication	NR	O
l	Form Subheading	NR	O
m	Language (when Part of Access Point)	NR	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	R	O
q	Version (or Date of Version)	NR	O
r	Medium of Performance (for Music)	R	O
s	Numeric Designation (for Music)	R	O
u	Key (for Music)	NR	O
w	Arranged Statement (for Music)	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The short title or title proper. Not repeatable.

$h Number of Section or Part

The number of a part when the resource to which the title or preferred title refers is only a part of the work named in subfield $a. Repeatable for a subdivided part.

$i Name of Section or Part

The name of a part when the resource to which the title or preferred title refers is only a part of the work named in subfield $a (EX 3). Repeatable for a subdivided part. (EX 3)

$k Date of Publication

The date of publication of the resource as subject when it is necessary to add it to the preferred title to distinguish the resource. Not repeatable.

$l Form Subheading

A standard phrase added to a access point to further specify the preferred title. Not repeatable.

$m Language (when Part of Access Point)

The language of the resource when required as part of the access point because it differs from that usually associated with the work named in the access point or when the work does not have a main language. If the work is in more than one language, both languages should be entered in a single $m. Not repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield. This includes a general material designation added to a title (EX 4, 5). Repeatable.

$q Version (or Date of Version)

An identification of the version of the work represented by the resource; this may be the original date of the version. Not repeatable. (EX 6)

$r Medium of Performance (for Music)

The instrumentation, etc., of the resource. Repeatable.

$s Numeric Designation (for Music)

A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

$u Key (for Music)

The musical key used as part of the preferred title. Not repeatable.

$w Arranged Statement (for Music)

The statement that a musical work is an arrangement. Not repeatable.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 3, 6, 7). Agencies not using this subdivision should use $x instead. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to the title to specify the aspect that the subject access point represents (EX 2). Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a title to specify a place in relation to it that the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a title to specify the period in time in relation to it that the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. It is recommended that subfield $2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of subject sources, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contain a preferred title, since most other titles assigned as subjects will be treated using 604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT. Any anonymous work which is the subject of the resource being recorded will be entered here. Further information and examples on the contents of subfields for preferred titles are found at field 500. A title proper which is to be entered in this field should be entered in subfield $a including in that subfield any other title information as necessary.

Related Fields

604 NAME AND TITLE USED AS SUBJECT	When the subject is an author/title, field 604 is used.

Examples

EX 1
605 ##$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠reporter$21c
The Library of Congress subject heading assigned to the record for *Concerned about the planet : 'The reporter' magazine and American liberation, 1949-1968* by Martin K Doudna.
EX 2
605 ##$aBible$xAbstracting and indexing$21c
A subject access point assigned to a book about abstracting and indexing the Bible. For the resource which is an index see EX 7.
EX 3
605 ##$aBible$iN.T.$iJohn XIII-XVII$jCommentaries$21c
A subject access point assigned to Love revealed : meditations on chapters 13-17 of the Gospel by John by George Bowen.
EX 4
605 ##$a≠NSB≠The ≠NSE≠Archers$n(Radio program)$21c
A subject access point assigned to a book entitled *Forever Ambridge : thirty years of the Archers*, dealing with the history of a serialized radio programme.
EX 5
605 ##$aEmpire strikes back$n(Motion picture)$21c
A subject access point assigned to the record of *Once upon a galaxy : a journal of the making of 'The Empire Strikes back'*. The cataloguing agency omits leading articles (c.f. EX 4).
EX 6
605 ##$aAnglo-American cataloguing rules$q2nd ed.$jCongresses$21c
The subject access point refers specifically to a particular edition of the work. The record in which the subject access point occurs is for *Seminar on AACR 2 : proceedings of a seminar organised by the Cataloguing and Indexing Group of the Library Association.*
EX 7
605 ##$aVariety$jIndexes$21c
EX 8a
605 ##3028201159aLettres portugaises3028922603jTraductions allemandes$302779038X$xHistoire et critique$2rameau
EX 8b
(for agencies not using $j for form subdivisions)
605 ##3028201159aLettres portugaises3028922603xTraductions allemandes$302779038X$xHistoire et critique$2rameau

In the database, a pre-coordinated subject source (Rameau) is used, so the $3 is repeated and one $3 is given for each part of the access point.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2023	Deleted duplicated subfield $j.
2024	Text edit.

606 TOPICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a common noun or noun phrase used as a subject access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
606	TOPICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Level of the Subject Resource
	0	No level specified
	1	Primary term
	2	Secondary term
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Level of the Subject Resource

The first indicator is used to distinguish primary and secondary descriptors. A term is considered primary (value "1") if it covers the main focus or subject of the material. A term covering a less important aspect is considered secondary (value "2"). Value "0" is used when no decision has been made as to whether the term is primary or secondary.

Until 1994 the only value of the first indicator was blank (undefined).

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The term in the form prescribed by the system of subject access points used. Not repeatable.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 7,8). Agencies not using this subdivision should use $x instead. Repeatable (EX 8).

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to specify the aspect that the subject access point represents (EX 2, 3). Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to specify a place in relation to the topic that the subject access point represents (EX 2, 4). Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to specify the period of time in relation to the topic that the subject access point represents (EX 5). Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. It is recommended that subfield $2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of subject sources, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

Repeatable (EX 9) when it is necessary for more than one Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains data entered according to the provisions of the system of subject access points used.

Depending on the cataloguing agency's practices, only topical names (with authorized access point in field 250 of the UNIMARC/Authorites format) may be entered in this field, or both topical names and genre/form entities (with authorized access point in field 280 of the UNIMARC/Authories format) when used as subject access points (EX 6, 10).

Related Fields

607 GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	Field 607 is used instead of 606 when the subject access point is a geographical name.
608 FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS ACCESS POINT	Field 608 is used as an indication of the form, genre and/or physical characteristics of the resource being described.

Examples

EX 1
606 ##$aPulmonary artery$xCatheterization$xHandbooks, manuals, etc$2lc
606 ##$aHemodynamic monitoring$xHandbooks, manuals, etc$2lc
606 ##$aHeart Catheterization$xinstrumentation$xhandbooks$2mesh
606 ##$aHeart Catheterization$xinstrumentation$xnurses' instruction$2mesh
606 ##$aMonitoring, Physiologic$xhandbooks$2mesh
606 ##$aMonitoring, Physiologic$xnurses' instruction$2mesh
Both Library of Congress and Medical subject access points have been assigned to the record for *Memory bank for hemodynamic monitoring : the pulmonary artery catheter*. The record predates the use of $j for form subdivisions.
EX 2
606 0#$aScaffolding$xSafety measures$2lc
606 0#$aConstruction equipment$yGreat Britain$2lc
Subject access points assigned to the record for *Safety in construction work, scaffolding* by the Health and Safety Executive.
EX 3
606 0#$aNuclear energy$xHistory$2lc
Dash (-) that precedes a subject subdivision in an extended subject access point may be system generated as a display constant associated with the content of subfield $j, $x, $y, and $z.
EX 4

606 0#$aTrees$yUnited States$2lc
EX 5
606 0#$aArts, Modern$z20th century$2lc
EX 6
606 1#$aBiology$xPeriodicals$2lc
The resource is about periodicals on biology.
EX 7
606 1#$aBiology$jPeriodicals$2lc
The resource is a periodical on biology.
EX 8
606 0#$aVocal music$jBibliography$jUnion lists$2lc
EX 9
606 1#$3frBN002790930$aLittérature populaire française$3frBN002123838$z19e siècle$3frBN002118937$xThèmes, motifs$3frBN002264415$xRecueil d'articles $2rameau
In the database, a pre-coordinated subject source (rameau) is used, so the $3 is repeated and one Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number is given for each part of the access point.
EX 10
606 ## $3FRBNF120486518$aRoman épistolaire français$3FRBNF119760324$z18e siècle$2rameau
The resource is about French epistolary novels in the 18th century. The cataloguing agency may use either a genre/form entity (with tag A280) as a subject access point, entered in field B606; or a topical name (with tag A250) with the same access point, depending on institutional policies.
EX 11
200 1#$aVidéo games $el'aventure du jeu vidéo$f[Laure Casalini]
606 ##$3FRBNF133189029 $aJeux vidéo$3FRBNF120424089 $xOuvrages pour la jeunesse$2rameau
The resource is a book for young people, dealing with all aspects of video games (history, universes, fabrication, artistic trends…) and published on the occasion of an educational exhibition about video games. According to the institutional policy of the cataloguing agency, the entity to which the link is made is a genre/form entity (with tag A280). Other bibliographic records in the database may have a link to this entity in tag 608, when the resource described is the video game (see also field 608, example 8).

History

1994	Changes to indicator values: Indicator 1 defined.
2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions
2019	Note of the Field extended for the use of genre/form entities. New examples (3, 10, 11). Text errata.
2024	Text edit.

607 GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a geographical name used as a subject access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
607	GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The geographical name in the form prescribed by the system of authority access points used. Not repeatable.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 5, 6). Agencies not using this subdivision should use $x instead. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to the geographical name to specify the aspect that the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to the geographical name to further specify a place that the subject access point represents (EX 5). Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to the geographical name to specify the period in time in relation to the name that the subject access point represents (EX 1, 2, 4). Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. It is recommended that subfield $2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of subject sources, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

Repeatable (EX 7) when it is necessary for more than one Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

Notes on Field Contents

This field will contain data entered according to the provisions of the system of subject access points used. Political jurisdictions represented by geographical names are entered in this field if they appear alone or subdivided only by subject subdivisions (EX 2, 4). Political jurisdictions subdivided by names of subordinate bodies are entered in field 601.

Related Fields

601 CORPORATE BODY NAME USED AS SUBJECT	Political jurisdictions subdivided by names of subordinate bodies used as subjects are entered in field 601.
660 GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE	An indication of the region covered by the work is entered in coded form in field 660.

Examples

EX 1
607 ##$aEurope$xHistory$z476-1492$21c
607 ##$aEurope, Western$xHistory$21c
Geographical subject access points assigned to the record for Froissart's *Chronicles*.
EX 2
607 ##$aGreat Britain$xPolitics and government$z1660-1714$21c
A geographical subject access point assigned to the record for Macaulay's *History of England*.
EX 3
607 ##$aExmouth, Eng.$xSocial life and customs$21c
A geographical subject access point assigned to the record for *Mrs Beer's house*, by Patricia Beer.
EX 4
607 ##$aRome$xPolitics and government$z510-30 B.C.$21c
A geographical subject access point assigned to the record for A short guide to electioneering : Quintus Cicero's "Commentariolum petitionis".
EX 5
607 ##$aUnited States$xBoundaries$yCanada$jPeriodicals$21c
EX 6
607 ##$aEurope$jRoad maps$2lc
EX 7
607 ##$3frBN001714126$aHaute-Savoie$yFrance$3frBN0015344243$xmoeurs et coutumes$3frBN002124673$z1870-1914$2rameau
In the database, a pre-coordinated subject source (Rameau) is used, so the $3 is repeated and one Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number is given for each part of the access point.

History

1996	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2024	Text edit.

608 FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS ACCESS POINT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a term or terms indicating the form, genre and/or physical characteristics of the resource being described.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
608	FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS ACCESS POINT	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The term in the form prescribed by the system of form access points used. Not repeatable.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 6). Agencies not using this subdivision should use $x instead. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to the form of the access point to specify the aspect that the access point represents. Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to the form of the access point to specify a place in relation to the topic that the access point represents. Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to the form of the access point to specify the period of time in relation to the topic that the access point represents. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. It is recommended that subfield $2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of subject sources, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains data entered according to the provisions of the system of form access points used.

Related Fields

606 TOPICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	Field 606 contains a topical name used as subject.

Examples

EX 1
608 ##$aEmblem books$yGermany$zl7th century$2rbgenr
A form access point constructed according to Genre terms : thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloging.
EX 2
608 ##$aDictionaries$xFrench$zl8th century$2rbgenr
The resource is a French dictionary published in 1770.
EX 3
608 ##$aBritish marble papers (Paper)$yGermany$zl7th century$2rbpap
The term indicating physical characteristics of the resource constructed according to *Paper terms : a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloging.*
EX 4
608 ##$aVellum bindings (Binding)$yItaly$zl6th century$2rbbin
EX 5
608 ##$aArmorial bindings (Provenance)$2rbprov$5UkCU
The term indicating physical characteristics of the item in Cambridge University Library.
EX 6
608 ##$aChildren's stories$jPictorial works$2lc
EX 7
608 ##$aDetective and mystery stories$2gsafd
EX 8
200 1#$aMartine à la montagne$fconçu et réalisé par White Birds
608 ##$3FRBNF133189029$aJeux vidéo

The resource is a video game.

History

1996	New field.
2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.
2019	Example 8 added.
2024	Text edit.

610 UNCONTROLLED SUBJECT TERMS

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to record subject terms that are not derived from controlled subject access point lists.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
610	UNCONTROLLED SUBJECT TERMS	R	O
a	Subject Term	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Level of the Subject Term
	0	No level specified
	1	Primary term
	2	Secondary term
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Level of the Subject Term

The first indicator is used to distinguish primary and secondary descriptors. A term is considered primary (value "1") if it covers the main focus or subject of the material. A term covering a less important aspect is considered secondary (value "2"). Value "0" is used when no decision has been made as to whether the term is primary or secondary.

Subfields Description

$a Subject Term

Repeatable when more than one term is assigned for the resource.

Notes on Field Contents

Terms belonging to structured subject system should be coded in other fields 6XX with the appropriate $2 Source.

Related Fields

6XX subject access point fields

Examples

EX 1
610 1#$afuel cells$amolten carbonate$apower
EX 2
610 1#$amicrographics$aCOM$adata capture$acomputer-assisted retrieval
EX 3
610 2#$aKing, Donald W.$aWilliams, James G.$aNetworks, Topology$aPublic corporation
EX 4
610 1#$aCorporation for Open Systems$aOSI

History

2024	Text edit.

615 SUBJECT CATEGORY [PROVISIONAL]

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a higher level subject category in coded and/or textual form.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
615	SUBJECT CATEGORY [PROVISIONAL]	R	O
a	Subject Category Entry Element Text	NR	O
x	Subject Category Subdivision Text	R	O
n	Subject Category Code	R	O
m	Subject Category Subdivision Code	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Subject Category Entry Element Text

The term in the form prescribed by the system of subject categories used (EX 3, 4). Not repeatable.

$x Subject Category Subdivision Text

The term added to the subject category to specify a particular aspect of the subject category in the $a subfield. Repeatable.

$n Subject Category Code

A coded representation of a subject category (EX 1, 2). Repeatable.

$m Subject Category Subdivision Code

A coded representation of a subject category subdivision (EX 2). Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. It is recommended that subfield $2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of subject sources, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the category. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field may contain data entered according to the provisions of the system of subject categories used. It may contain the category in textual form, coded form, or both forms.

Examples

EX 1
615 ##$nK800$2agris

EX 2
615 ##$nZ1$m.542.248.797$2mesh
The MeSH notational equivalent of the subject access point for Slovakia. The textual medical subject access points are held in fields 600-607.
EX 3
615 ##$aFuture$2liv

History

1994	New field.
2024	Text edit.

616 TRADEMARK USED AS SUBJECT [PROVISIONAL]

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a trademark which is one of the subjects of the resource, in access point form, with the optional addition of extra subject information.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
616	SUBJECT CATEGORY [PROVISIONAL]	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	O
f	Dates	NR	O
c	Qualification	R	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The trademark name in access point form. Not repeatable

$f Dates

The dates between which a particular trademark was in use, when they are required as part of the access point, for example, as qualifiers. Not repeatable.

$c Qualification

Any addition to the name of the trademark added by the cataloguer, other than dates (EX 3, 4). Repeatable.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use $x instead. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the access point represents. Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system from which the subject access point is derived. It is recommended that subfield $2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of subject sources, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A trademark or mark is a distinctive word, phrase, logo, design, or any other device that can be represented graphically, used by a business or company to identify its products or services and distiguish them from the products and services made, sold or provided by others. Some examples are: *Levis* (trademark of Levi Strauss & Co.); *Pentium* (trademark of Intel Corporation), *Decca* (trademark of Decca Record Company).

Under the common term trademark other specific categories of marks such as service marks, trade dress, collective marks, etc., can be found.

The trade name of a business can function as a mark as well. For instance Sony Music Entertainment Inc. uses its trade name Sony Music as a trademark on its line of sound recordings.

As far as sound recordings are concerned, the trademark, commonly known as the "label", together with the label number uniquely identifies each commercial recording. (see field 071 Publisher's Number (Sound Recordings and Music)).

Related Fields

071 PUBLISHER'S NUMBER	This field contains a publisher's number not governed by an international standard. These are generally used for sound recordings, publications of music, video recordings and electronic resources.

Examples

EX 1
616 ##$aKitekat$2rameau
EX 2
616 ##$aErato$cmarque phonographique$xhistoire$2rameau
EX 3
616 ##$aDanone$cmarque$2rameau
EX 4
616 ##$aMelodiâ$cmarque russe$2rameau
EX 5
616 ##3031102476aLa Vache qui rit$cmarque déposée$2rameau

History

2002	New field.
2024	Text edit.

617 HIERARCHICAL GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a structured access point for places relating to the subject of the resource.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
617	HIERARCHICAL GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	R	O
a	Country (Nation State)		O
b	State or Province, etc.	NR	O
c	Intermediate Political Jurisdiction	R	O
d	City, etc.	NR	O
e	Venue	R	O
f	Date	R	O
g	Season	NR	O
h	Occasion	NR	O
i	Final Date	NR	O
k	Subsection of City, etc.	R	O
m	Other Geographical Regions or Features	R	O
n	Extraterrestrial Areas	R	O
o	Geographical Areas such as World, Hemisphere, Continent: Larger Area than Country	R	O
2	Source	NR	MA
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Country (Nation State)

Country. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

$b State or Province, etc.

First-order political jurisdiction below a country. Not repeatable

$c Intermediate Political Jurisdiction

Second-order or lower political jurisdiction, but not including cities, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

$d City, etc.

The name of a city, town, commune, village or other distinct populated area not defined as a subsection of a larger one (see $k). Not repeatable.

$e Venue

Named buildings, urban spaces, vehicles, etc. Repeatable.

$f Date

Repeatable if more performance dates have to be recorded. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601, and may include time and period formats.

$g Season

Not repeatable

$h Occasion

Not repeatable

$i Final Date

Not repeatable

$k Subsection of City, etc.

Smaller unit within a populated place, e.g. boroughs, neighbourhoods, streets.

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

$m Other Geographical Regions or Features

Terrestrial non-jurisdictional geographic entities, e.g. oceans, islands, mountains, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

$n Extraterrestrial Areas

Any extraterrestrial entity or space, and the geographic features of such entities. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

$o Geographical Areas such as World, Hemisphere, Continent: Larger Area than Country

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest. This subfield will normally appear first in any field where it is used.

$2 Source

The source of the terms used for subfields $a – $d and $k – $n when taken from a published gazetteer or thesaurus, etc. The codes in *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* are recommended. If no code is available, an abbreviation of the full title of the source may be used. Mandatory if applicable. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The content of this field may be in hierarchical form, e.g., Country, Province, County, City; or it may be in non-hierarchical form, e.g., City alone, depending both on institutional practice and the fulness of the provenance information available.

Subfields $a, $c, $k, $m, $n and $o are repeatable when the terms are taken from a thesaurus or gazetteer which uses multiple levels, for example $oAmericas$oNorth America$aCanada. When used, $e will normally be the last-cited alphabetic subfield.

For subfield $2 Source, if no approved code for the thesaurus, etc., exists, abbreviate its name using ISO 4.

Related Fields

607 GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	This field contains data entered according to the provisions of the system of subject access points used, including topical, geographical and chronological subdivisions.

Examples

EX 1
617 ##$aEurope
617 ##$aEurope$aWestern Europe
EX 2
617 ##$aGreat Britain
EX 3
617 ##$aUnited Kingdom$bEngland$cDevon$dExmouth
EX 4
617 ##$dRome (Ancient)
EX 5
617 ##$aUnited States
617 ##$aCanada
EX 6
617 ##$aEurope
EX 7
617 ##$dBaghdad
EX 8
617 ##$aAsia$mHimalaya$mCentral Nepal Himalaya$mKhumbu Range$mMakalu$2pemracs
From: Peakbagger.com Mountain Range Classification System
EX 9
617 ##$bNorth Carolina$cSwain$mGreat Smoky Mountains National Park$2gnis
From: U.S. Geological Survey Geographic Names Information System.

History

2008	New field.
2024	Text edit.

620 PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, ETC.

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains, in access point form, a place of publication, production, etc. or a place and date of performance, or recording. The field may include the name of a country, state or province, county and/or city.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
620	PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, ETC.	R	O
a	Country (Nation State)	NR	O
b	State or Province, etc.	NR	O
c	Intermediate Political Jurisdiction	R	O
d	City, etc.	NR	O
e	Venue	R	O
f	Date	R	O
g	Season	NR	O
h	Occasion	NR	O
i	Final Date	NR	O
k	Subsection of City, etc.	R	O
m	Other Geographical Regions or Features	R	O
n	Extraterrestrial Areas	R	O
o	Geographical Areas such as World, Hemisphere, Continent: Larger Area than Country	R	O
2	Source	NR	MA
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Type of Data
	#	Publication or production
	0	Not specified
	1	Performance
	2	First performance
	3	Recording
	4	Live recording
	5	Remastering
2		Presence of Data on Source
	#	Not applicable / unknown
	0	Data not present on source
	1	Data present on source
	2	Data present on source but false or fictitious

Subfields Description

$a Country (Nation State)

Not repeatable.

$b State or Province, etc.

First-order political jurisdiction below a country. Not repeatable.

$c Intermediate Political Jurisdiction

Second-order or lower political jurisdiction, but not including cities, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

$d City, etc.

The name of a city, town, commune, village or other distinct populated area not defined as a subsection of a larger one (see $k). Not repeatable.

$e Venue

Named buildings, urban spaces, vehicles, etc. Repeatable. (EX 4-6, EX 8, 9, 14).

$f Date

Repeatable if more performance dates have to be recorded. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601, and may include time and period formats. (EX 4-9).

$g Season

Not repeatable (EX 4).

$h Occasion

Not repeatable (EX 6, 8, 9).

$i Final Date

Not repeatable (EX 9).

$k Subsection of City, etc.

Smaller unit within a populated place, e.g. boroughs, neighbourhoods, streets. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest. (EX 11-13)

$m Other Geographical Regions or Features

Terrestrial non-jurisdictional geographic entities, e.g. oceans, islands, mountains, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

$n Extraterrestrial Areas

Any extraterrestrial entity or space, and the geographic features of such entities. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

$o Geographical Areas such as World, Hemisphere, Continent: Larger Area than Country

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest. This subfield will normally appear first in any field where it is used (EX 10).

$2 Source

The source of the terms used for subfields $a – $d and $k – $n when taken from a published gazetteer or thesaurus, etc. The codes in *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* are recommended. If no code is available, an abbreviation of the full title of the source may be used. Mandatory if applicable. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

621 PLACE AND DATE OF PROVENANCE	Item specific field containing, in access point form, information relating to the history of a specific item subsequent to its publication or production, etc.

Notes on Field Contents

The content of this field may be in hierarchical form, e.g. country, state, and city; or it may be in non-hierarchical form, e.g. city alone, depending on institutional practice.

Subfields $a, $c, $k, $m, $n and $o are repeatable when the terms are taken from a thesaurus or gazetteer which uses multiple levels, for example $aAmericas$aNorth America$aCanada.

Subfields $k – $n when used will normally *precede* subfields $e – $i.

Subfields $m Other Geographic Features and $n Extraterrestrial Areas will find little use in the context of publication and performance, but are included here for completeness and compatibility with other fields. A performance given on a cruise liner, for example, might be coded $m<Ocean>$e<Ship> $f<date>

Subfield $o will normally appear before subfield $a.

Examples

EX 1
620 ##$398-8685$aUnited States$bAlabama$dMontgomery
The resource published in the city of Montgomery, Alabama. The field is in hierarchical form. There is a record for Montgomery in the authorities file, with field 001 containing 98-8685.
EX 2
620 ##$dRoma
The resource published in Rome. The field is in non-hierarchical form.
EX 3
620 ##$aUnited States$bVirginia$cPrince William County$dHaymarket
The resource published in Haymarket, Virginia. The field is in hierarchical form. County is also recorded.
EX 4
620 11$aItaly$dMilano$eTeatro Ducale$f1794$gAutunno
A libretto of an opera performed in Milan, Teatro Ducale, in the autumn of 1794. Place and date are indicated on the source.
EX 5
620 41$dSydney$eSydney Opera House$eConcert hall$f19990510
A live recording of a concert performed at the Concert hall of Sydney Opera House on 10 May 1999. Data are present on the source.
EX 6
620 41$aItaly$bPuglia$cLecce$dSerrano$ePiazza del Duomo$f1970$hFesta dell'Assunta
Video recording of a play performed in the Cathedral Place at Serrano for the Assumption Feast. The field is in hierarchical form. Recording data are indicated on the source.
EX 7
620 51$aGreat Britain$dLondon$f2002
The resource remastered in London, Great Britain. Data are present on the source.
EX 8
200 10$aS.N.D.B. / Sinf.a del Sepolcro / 1705
321 1#$aSeifertO$cp. 582, 896-897
321 1#$aEverett, Paul, Opening "Il Sepolcro": Ziani, Vivaldi and a question of stylistic authenticity, in: Vivaldi vero e falso, problemi di attribuzione, a c. di A. Fanna e M. Talbot, Firenze, Olschki, 1992, pp. 69-89

321 1#$aMusikalische Werke der Kaiser Ferdinand 3., Leopold 1. und Joseph 1., hrsg. von Guido Adler, Prag, Artaria, 1892-93, v. 2-3, n. 91
620 20aATdVienna$eHofburg Kapelle$f17050410$hVenerdì Santo
A manuscript score of the sepolcro *Le due passioni* of M. A. Ziani first performed in Vienna, Hofburg Kapelle, on 10 April 1705 for the Good Friday. Place, full date and occasion are not indicated on the source but in catalogues and bibliographies entered in repeated field 321.
EX 9
620 41aITbBasilicata$cMatera$dScalzano ionico$ePiazza del comune$f20031127$i20031128$hinquinamento atomico
A video recording of a political demonstration which took place in Piazza del Comune in the city of Scalzano Ionico, on 27-28 November 2003, against atomic pollution. The field is in hierarchical form. Data are present on the source.
EX 10
620 ##$oWorld$oEurope$aUnited Kingdom$bEngland$cGreater London$dLondon$kCity of Westminster$kWestminster$2tgn
Complete hierarchy from *Getty Thesaurus of Geographic Names* for the resource published in Westminster.
EX 11
620 ##$aUnited Kingdom$bEngland$kWestminster
EX 12
620 ##$dLondon$kWestminster
Two shorter forms for EX 10.
EX 13
620 ##$nMoon$nApennines
The Moon is entered in $n as are any geographical subdivisions.
EX 14
620 ##$eChallenger II
A spaceship.
EX 15
620 #2$dLondres
620 #0$dAgen
Access to the places of publication for an older monographic publication whose title page reads “A Londres. M. DCC. LXXXII.” but which is proved to have been produced and released in Agen by the widow of the printer Jean Nouvel.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Extensive revisions including change of name.
2012	Indicator 2 new value to qualify place of publication.
2024	Text edit.

621 PLACE AND DATE OF PROVENANCE

Field Definition and Scope

This item specific field contains a structured access point for places and dates relating to the provenance of the item.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
621	PLACE AND DATE OF PROVENANCE	R	O
a	Country (Nation State) or Larger Entity Country	NR	O
b	State or Province, etc.	NR	O
c	Intermediate Political Jurisdiction	R	O
e	Building, Vehicle, etc.	R	O
f	Date 1	NR	O
g	Season	NR	O
h	Occasion	NR	O
i	Date 2	NR	O
k	Subsection of City, etc.	R	O
m	Other Geographic Regions or Features	R	O
n	Extraterrestrial Area	R	O
o	Geographical Areas such as World, Hemisphere, Continent: Larger Area than Country	R	O
2	Source	NR	MA
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Type of Data
	#	Publication or production
	0	Not specified
	1	Performance
	2	First performance
	3	Recording
	4	Live recording
	5	Remastering
	0	Not specified
2		Presence of Data on Source
	#	Not applicable / unknown
	0	Data not present on source
	1	Data present on source
	2	Data present on source but false or fictitious

Subfields Description

$a Country (Nation State) or Larger Entity Country

Optional. Not repeatable.

$b State or Province, etc.

First-order political jurisdiction below a country. Not repeatable.

$c Intermediate Political Jurisdiction

Second-order or lower political jurisdiction, but not including cities, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

$d City, etc.

The name of a city, town, commune, village or other distinct populated area not defined as a subsection of a larger one (see $k). Not repeatable.

$e Building, Vehicle, etc.

Specific locations: named houses, ships, urban spaces, etc. Repeatable when the location forms part of another, e.g. $eEly Cathedral$eChapter House.

$f Date 1

Provenance date given either in association with a place or separately. Not repeatable.

The sole date, or the opening date of a span. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601 (basic, i.e. condensed form, without hyphens). Exceptionally, if a month, or month and day are given, but no specific year, replace each missing year digit with "u" (EX 2).

$g Season

Natural seasons (Spring, summer... Monsoon... etc.) also broad cultural seasons (Harvest, etc). Seasons associated with religious festivals and rites (Christmas, etc.) and other human activities should be coded as occasions ($h). Not repeatable.

$h Occasion

An occasion associated with religious festivals and rites and other human activities (e.g., The Feast of the Assumption, Diwali, Christmas, Horsefair, etc.). Not repeatable.

$i Date 2

The closing date of a span. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601 (basic, i.e. condensed form, without hyphens). Exceptionally, if a month, or month and day are given, but no specific year, replace each missing year digit with "u". Not repeatable.

$k Subsection of City, etc.

Smaller unit within a populated place, e.g. boroughs, neighbourhoods, streets. Repeatable for hierarchies where multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

$m Other Geographic Regions or Features

Terrestrial non-jurisdictional geographic entities, e.g. islands, mountains, etc.

Repeatable for hierarchies where multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

$n Extraterrestrial Area

Any extraterrestrial entity or space, and the geographical features of such entities.

Repeatable for hierarchies where multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

$o Geographical Areas such as World, Hemisphere, Continent: Larger area than Country

Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest. This subfield will normally appear first in any field where it is used.

$2 Source

The source of the terms used for subfields $a – $h when taken from a published gazetteer or thesaurus, etc. The codes from *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* are recommended. If no code is included, a clearly recognisable abbreviation of the full name of the source may be used. Mandatory if applicable. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

$5 Institution to Which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13 Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure).

The linking explanation code ($6/0) will always have the value "b" = Link associated with an item, unless an alternative graphic representation or script is involved.

Notes on Field Contents

The content of this field may be in hierarchical form, e.g., country, province, county, city; or it may be in non-hierarchical form, e.g., city or house alone, depending both on institutional practice and the fulness of the provenance information available.

The field is by definition item specific and must always contain subfield $5. Interfield linking data $6 should be used where possible to link the field to a field for an access point (702, 712, 722) for former owners, donors, etc. and to field 317 Provenance Note.

Subfields $a, $c, $k, $m and $n are repeatable when the terms are taken from a thesaurus or gazetteer which uses multiple levels, for example $aAmericas$aNorth America$aCanada.

The date subfields $f – $i will follow after any of the place subfields, including $k – $n, if present.

Subfields $m Other Geographic Features and $n Extraterrestrial Areas will be rarely used in the context of provenance, but are included here for completeness and compatibility with other fields. The resource autographed on a cruise liner, for example, might be coded $m<Ocean>$e<Ship>$f<date>.

Related Fields

317 PROVENANCE NOTE	This field contains a note relating to the provenance of the item. It corresponds to the ISBD Notes Relating to the Item element in the Note Area.
620 PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, ETC.	This field contains access points for place of publication, production, etc., or place and date of performance or recording. It is not item specific: the information is valid for all copies of an edition or issue of the resource.
702 PERSONAL NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	These fields may contain access points for former owners, donors, auctioneers, etc. When used in conjuction with fields 317 and 621 they must contain $4 Relator code and $5 Institution to which the field applies and preferably $6 Interfield Linking Data, especially if there is more than one provenance note for a specific item.
712 CORPORATE BODY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	
722 FAMILY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	

Examples

EX 1

Provenance notes
317 ##$6b01$aSignature “Aymon”, 17e siècle, au f. a2$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 233
317 ##$6b02$aEx libris ms. 16e siècle au titre d’Antoine Gérard. Ex-libris ms. 17e siècle au f. a2 du Collège de la Trinité des Jésuites de Lyon$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 501
Provenance place and date access points
621 ##$6b01$aFrance$f16$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 233
621 ##$6b02$aFrance$f15$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 501
621 ##$6b02$aFrance$cRhône$dLyon$eCollège de la Sainte Trinité de la Compagnie de Jésus$f16$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 501
Personal and corporate name access points
702 #1$6b02$aGérard$bAntoine$factif en 15--$4390$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 501
712 02$6b02$aCollège de la Sainte Trinité de la Compagnie de Jésus$cLyon$4390$5FR-FrLy: Rés Inc 501
EX 2
317 ##$aInscription on fly-leaf: To Louisa, from E.W., with love, 25th March.
621 ##$fuuuu0325
Inscription shows a date without a year. There is no indication of place.
EX 3
Provenance notes
317 ##$aArms of Edward Byde (d.1712) on both covers. Armorial bookplate of Byde, hand-coloured, with MS inscription: “This book was the property of Edward Byde, of Ware-park, co: Herts, Esq: after whose death, it was purchased, (at the sale by auction of a considerable part of his library;) by Thomas, Baron Dimsdale, MD, FRS &c., who on Dec. 27, 1773. presented it to John Zachary.” Beneath this, armorial bookplate: “Talygarn” [seat of G. T. Clark]. On facing page, book stamp: TAL-Y-GARN. If the inscription is correct, the auction must have taken place several years after Byde’s death in 1712, the year of Dimsdale’s birth.$5UK-WlAbNL: WingU124
Provenance place and date access points
621 ##$6b01$aGreat Britain$bEngland$cHertfordshire$dWare$eWare Park$5UK-WlAbNL: WingU124
621 ##$6b02$aGreat Britain$f177312275UK-WlAbNL: WingU124
621 ##$6b03$aGreat Britain$bWales$cGlamorgan$dPont-y-clun$eTal-y-garn$5UKWlAbNL: WingU124
Personal name – secondary responsibility
702 #1$6b01$aByde$bEdward$dd. 1712$4390$5UK-WlAbNL: WingU124
702 #1$6b02$aDimsdale$bThomas$cBaron$f1712-1800$4390$4320$5UK-WlAbNL:WingU124
702 #1$6b02$aZachary$bJohn$4390$5UK-WlAbNL: WingU124
702 #1$6b03$aClark$bGeorge Thomas$f1808-1898$4390$5UK-WlAbNL: WingU124
Coded fields for provenance data and associated secondary responsibility fields for a copy of *Nicolai Vptoni De studio militari, libri quatuor. ... Londini, 1654,* in National Library of Wales. Subfield $5 links all the item specific fields. Closely related data in the 621 and 702 fields are linked by $6 subfields.

History

2008	New field.
2008	Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.
2024	Text edit.

623 CHARACTER

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a structured access point for the name and other details relating to a fictitious character as well as information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to the name(s) of the associated performer(s).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
623	CHARACTER	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Name of the Character	R	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

The remainder of the name. Not repeatable. (EX 8)

$c Additions to Name of the Character

Any additions to name of character which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets, indications of office or relationship with another character. Repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13 Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure).

Data required to link the field with a 7XX field containing the name of the performer for the character (EX 2, 3, 4, 7) and/or to other occurrences of field 623 (which may be needed if the same character changes name during the work). More instances of $6 may occur when a character is performed by more than one performer (EX 10).

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains the preferred form of a character name listed in a performance-related resource (notably audio or video recordings, movies, opera scores, plots and librettos), linked, if relevant at work or expression level, with associated performer(s).

Related Fields

323 CAST NOTE (PROJECTED AND VIDEO MATERIAL AND SOUND RECORDINGS)	This field may contain the list of characters and cast in free textual form.
606 TOPICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	This field contain the character names when the names are used as subjects.
7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK	This field contains the name of the performer associated with the character.

Examples

EX 1
623 ##$aSerpina
623 ##$aUberto
623 ##$aVespone$cServo di Uberto
Characters for Giovanni Battista Pergolesi's intermezzo *La serva padrona*.
EX 2
623 ##$6z01702$aVologeso$cRe de' Parti$cSposo di Berenice
623 ##$6z02702$aBerenice$cRegina d'Armenia$cSposa di Vologeso
623 ##$6z03702$aLucio Vero$cImperatore$cSposo di Lucilla$cAmante di Berenice
702 #1$6z01623$aLusi$bFilippo$4590
702 #1$6z02623$aRicciarelli$bGiuseppe$4590
702 #1$6z03623$aGiorgi$bFilippo$4590
Part of the cast and character indicated in the libretto of *Il Vologeso dramma per musica da rappresentarsi nel carnovale dell'anno 1748 nel teatro di Torre Argentina*. Relationships between characters are interlinked through $6 subfields.
EX 3
623 ##$6z01702$aPagano
623 ##$6z02702$aGriselda
623 ##$6z03702$aOronte
702 #1$6z01623$aDérivis$bProsper$f1808-1880$4590$4vbs
702 #1$6z02623$aFrezzolini$bErminia$4590$4vso
702 #1$6z03623$aGuasco$bCarlo$4590$4vte
Cast and characters indicated in the manuscript score I Lombardi alla prima Crociata | Preludio e Terzetto Finale Terzo | Qual voluttà trascorrere | Eseguito | Dalla Sig.a Frezzolini Poggi e dai Signori Guasco e Derivis | Musica Del Mae.o Giuseppe Verdi. Voice ranges are indicated in the resource, and specified as relator codes in $4 subfields.
EX 4
323 ##$aCast: Daryl Hannah (Ayla), Pamela Reed (Iza), James Remar (Creb)
623 ##$6z01702$aAyla
623 ##$6z02702$aIza
623 ##$6z03702$aCreb
702 #1$6z01623$aHannah$bDaryl$4005
702 #1$6z02623$aReed$bPamela$4005
702 #1$6z03623$aRemar$bJames$4005
Main characters and cast in Michael Chapman's film *The clan of the cave bear*.
EX 5
623 ##$aLulu
623 ##$aGräfin Geschwitz
623 ##$aEine Theatergarderobiere

623 ##$aEin Gymnasiast
623 ##$aDer Medizinalrat
623 ##$aDer Maler
623 ##$aDr. Schön$cChefredakteur
623 ##$aAlva$cSchriftsteller$cDr. Schöns Sohn
623 ##$aEin Tierbändiger
623 ##$aRodrigo$cein Athlet
623 ##$aSchigolch$cein Greis
623 ##$aDer Prinz$cein Afrikareisender
623 ##$aDer Theaterdirektor
Characters (with proper name or generic term) in Alban Berg's *Lulu*.
EX 6
623 ##$aRivière$cdirettore di una Compagnia di Navigazione Aerea
623 ##$aRobineau$cL'ispettore
623 ##$aPellerin$cIl pilota
623 ##$aIl radiotelegrafista
623 ##$aLeroux$cIl vecchio caposquadra
623 ##$aQuattro impiegati
623 ##$aFabien$cLa signora
623 ##$aUna voce interna
623 ##$aOperai
623 ##$aMaestranze
Characters (with proper name, generic or collective terms) in Luigi Dallapiccola's *Volo di notte*.
EX 7
623 ##$6z01702$aCalypso
623 ##$6z02702$aPrima ancella
623 ##$6z03702$aNausicaa
623 ##$6z04702$aSeconda ancella
623 ##$6z05702$aDemodoco
623 ##$6z06702$aTiresia
623 ##$6z07702$aPenelope
702 #1$6z01623$6z07623$aBernard$bAnnabelle$4590$4vso
702 #1$6z02623$aMikes$bGitta$4590$4val
702 #1$6z03623$aGayer$bCatherine$4590$4vso
702 #1$6z04623$aWisniewska$bHelga$4590$4vso
702 #1$6z05623$6z06623$aMelchert$bHelmut$4590$4vte
Part of the characters and cast for the first performance of Luigi Dallapiccola's *Ulisse*, as defined in the vocal score. Some of the characters are interpreted by the same performers. Voice ranges are coded as relator codes in fields 702.
EX 8
623 ##$aChiaramantesi$bGabriello
623 ##$aChiaramantesi$bNeri
623 ##$aMalespini$bGiannetto
Part of the characters for Sem Benelli's *La cena delle beffe*; names entered under surname.
EX 9
623 ##$aMarquise de Merteuil
623 ##$aPrésidente de Tourvel
623 ##$aVolanges$bCécile
623 ##$aVicomte de Valmont
623 ##$aChevalier Danceny

Les liaisons dangereuses by Claude Prey.
EX 10
623 ##$6z01702$602702$aAmsterdam Vallon
702 #1$6z01623$aDi Caprio$bLeonardo$4590
702 #1$6z02623$aMcCormack$bCian$4590
Gangs of New York by Martin Scorsese: the main character, Amsterdam Vallon, is played by Leonardo Di Caprio (Amsterdam Vallon adult) and Cian McCormack (Amsterdam Vallon child).

History

2016	New field.
2018	New subfield $3.
2024	Text edit.

626 TECHNICAL DETAILS ACCESS (ELECTRONIC RESOURCES) [OBSOLETE]

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains access points for types of computers, operating systems, and programming languages used for electronic resources. The access points may be used for on-line access or for selecting and arranging records for the production of printed indexes.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
626	TECHNICAL DETAILS ACCESS (ELECTRONIC RESOURCES) [OBSOLETE]	-	Obsolete
a	Make and Model of Machines	-	-
b	Programming Languages	-	-
c	Operating System	-	-

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Make and Model of Machines

The type of machines on which the program will run. Not repeatable.

$b Programming Languages

The programming languages in which the software is written. Not repeatable.

$c Operating System

The name and version of the operating system needed to use the program. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Obsolete: use 337 with controlled vocabulary.

Examples

EX 1
626 ##$aIBM PC$bPascal$cDOS 1.1
An access point for a microcomputer software program intended to run on an IBM PC under DOS operating system version 1.1; it was written in the Pascal programming language.
EX 2
626 ##$aApple II$cDOS 3.3
An access point for a microcomputer software program intended to run on an Apple II computer under DOS operating system version 3.3.

631 OCCUPATION

Field Definition and Scope

The field contains term or phrase used to specify the occupation, avocation, or other life interests of individuals that are documented in the materials described in the record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
631	OCCUPATION	R	O
a	Occupation	NR	O
b	Form	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
8	Materials Specified	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Occupation

Term specifying the profession, business, or avocation of an individual. Not repeatable.

$b Form

Class of material to which materials described in the record belong and which is essential to distinguish special kinds of materials according to their physical character, subject of intellectual content, order of information within (e.g., daybooks, diaries, directories, journals, memoranda, etc.). Not repeatable.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use $x instead. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the occupation the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to occupation which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to occupation which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system or thesaurus from which the term in subfield $a is derived. It is recommended that subfield $2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of subject sources, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field is not used to list the occupations of the creators of the described materials, unless those occupations are significantly reflected in the materials described in the record.

Related Fields

606 TOPICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	This field contains a common noun or noun phrase used as a subject access point.

Examples

EX 1
631##$aJournalists$yRussia
EX 2
631 ##$aPoliticians$bDiaries
EX 3
631 ##$aAuthors$2itoamc
631 ##$aEducators$2itoamc
631 ##$aLibrarians$2itoamc
The record describes collection of Alexis V. Babine papers which include correspondence; lectures and articles concerning the Bolsheviks; Russian manuscript of Babine's history of the United States; notes and typescript of a journal (1917-1922) recording his experiences during the Russian revolution as superintendent of schools for the Vologda Territory, as instructor at the Saratov State University, and as assistant to the American mission in Moscow; his translations of short stories; notes and notebooks; diplomas and other certificates; and passports. $2 contains code for *Index terms for occupations in archival and manuscript collections* (ITOAMC), maintained by Manuscript Division of the Library of Congress.

History

2016	New field
2024	Text edit.

632 FUNCTION

Field Definition and Scope

The field contains term or phrase used to specify the function, activity, organizational processes of persons, families, and/or corporate bodies that generated the materials described in the record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
632	FUNCTION	R	O
a	Function	NR	O
j	Form Subdivision	R	O
x	Topical Subdivision	R	O
y	Geographical Subdivision	R	O
z	Chronological Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	R	O
8	Materials Specified	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Function

Term specifying the function, activity, organizational processes that generated the materials described in the record. Not repeatable.

$j Form Subdivision

A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use $x instead. Repeatable.

$x Topical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the function the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$y Geographical Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to function which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$z Chronological Subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to function which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of the system or thesaurus from which the term in subfield $a is derived. It is recommended that subfield $2 always be present in each occurrence of the field. For a list of subject sources, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format.

Repeatable when it is necessary for more than one Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number to indicate each part of an access point where the indexing system uses a pre-coordinate syntax.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

606 TOPICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	This field contains a common noun or noun phrase used as a subject access point.

Examples

EX 1
632 ##$aRadio
632 ##$aMap collecting
632 ##$aAtlas collecting
Record describes Melville Eastham papers, 1908-1973. Collection includes correspondence, diaries, notebooks, reports, company files, clippings, printed matter, blueprints, plans, sketches, photographs, and other papers relating chiefly to Eastham's career as radio engineer and as head of the General Radio Company. Also documents his avocation of collecting sixteenth- and seventeenth-century maps and atlases.

History

2016	New field.
2024	Text edit.

660 GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains an indication of the region covered by the work, in coded form, according to the MARC Code List for Geographic Areas (GACs) by Library of Congress.

Repeatable for each region indicated.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
660	GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE	R	O
a	Code	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Code

Geographic area code. 7 characters. Not repeatable. For codes use MARC Code List for Geographic Areas (http://www.loc.gov/marc/geoareas/gacshome.html).

Notes on Field Contents

The geographic area code is applied to the resource when its text has a geographic orientation. The coding scheme contains seven lower case alphabetic characters and/or hyphens and, as far as possible, provides a hierarchical breakdown of geographical and political entities. When more than one geographic area code is assigned, each is entered in a separate field.

Related Fields

607 GEOGRAPHICAL NAME USED AS SUBJECT	The area code does not replace the geographical name used as subject, but may be included in the record in addition to it.

Examples

EX 1
660 ##$an-us-md
A geographic area code for a book entitled *Crabs in the United States*, concentrating on the state of Maryland.
EX 2
660 ##$ae-gx---
A geographic area code for a book entitled *Popular songs of working-class culture* relating to Germany.
EX 3
660 ##$aa-np---
A geographic area code for a book entitled *Buddha and Buddhism* about Buddhism in Nepal.
EX 4
660 ##$an-uso--
660 ##$an-usm--

Geographic area codes for a book entitled *Collection of steamboat records relating to steamboats operating* in *the Ohio and Mississippi Valleys* concentrating on both the Ohio and Mississippi rivers. Field 660 is repeated for code for each river.
EX 5
660 ##$an-us---
660 ##$ae-fr---
660 ##$aa-ja---
Geographic area codes for a book entitled Comparative studies of national libraries relating to the United States, France, and Japan. Field 660 is repeated for each region.

661 TIME PERIOD CODE

Field Definition and Scope

An indication of the date covered by the work, coded according to the Time Period Code.

Repeatable for each period covered when the resource deals with a number of distinct periods (EX 1).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
661	TIME PERIOD CODE	R	O
a	Time Period Code	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Time Period Code

It consists of four alphanumeric characters. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

In the absence of an international coding scheme for time period codes, the scheme which used to be used in the USMARC format, now in MARC21, should be used. The Time Period Code Table is found in MARC 21 under the description of field 045 - Time Period of Content available at https://www.loc.gov/marc/bibliographic/bd045.html (see also Appendix A).

The code is not used for prehistoric dates, e.g. geological eras.

The Time Period Code was formerly called the Chronological Coverage Code.

Related Fields

122 CODED DATA FIELD: TIME PERIOD OF RESOURCE CONTENT	This field contains a formatted indication of the period covered by the resource. It holds greater detail.

Examples

EX 1
661 ##$aw3x0
661 ##$ad5d3
The codes (the 19th century and Greek eras) for *The Victorians and Ancient Greece* by Richard Jenkyns.
EX 2
661 ##$ad6d6
The codes for ca 300 B.C. As only one date is involved, the code is repeated to create the four characters.
EX 3
661 ##$ax-x-
The codes for a book on the 20th century.
EX 4

661 ##$aw5
Work on the period 1828-1859.
EX 5
661 ##$ao6r2
Work on the period 1066-1328.
EX 6
661 ##$ax8x8
Work on 1984.
EX 7
661 ##ax-x-
Work on the 20th century.
EX 8
661 ##$ae-e-
661 ##$ax-x-
Work comparing the 1st century A.D. with the 20th century.
EX 9
661 ##$ad5d6
Work on the period 423 B.C. to 390 B.C.
EX 10
661 ##$aa0d6
Work on the period to 300 B.C.
EX 11
661 ##$ap-r-
Work on the 12th to 14th centuries.
EX 12
661 ##$ad9e3
Work on 42 B.C.-A.D. 37.
EX 13
661 ##$ax2x2
Work on 1928.
EX 14
661 ##$av4wl
Work on 1740-1810.

670 PRECIS

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to contain subject indexing data constructed according to the Preserved Context Index System (PRECIS).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
670	PRECIS	R	O
b	Subject Indicator Number	NR	O
c	String	NR	O
e	Reference Indicator Number	R	O
z	Language of Terms	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$b Subject Indicator Number

The Subject Indicator Number (SIN) is a fixed-length number ending in a modulus 11 check digit. It identifies uniquely the address of the subject packet on a machine readable file. Not repeatable.

$c String

The string is a sequence of subject index terms in which each term is preceded by a code which determines how it should appear in entries generated by the computer in printed indexes, COM output, card catalogues, etc. Not repeatable.

$e Reference Indicator Number

A Reference Indication Number (RIN) is a fixed-length number ending in a modulus 11 check digit which identifies the address of a term in the machine-held thesaurus used as the source of *See* and *See also* references in a printed index. Repeatable.

$z Language of Terms

A three character language code giving the language of the terms used in the string. For codes use ISO 639-2. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The set of PRECIS data consisting of string and RINs is identified by the SIN and is termed a subject packet. The use of the data to generate printed index entries is dependent on specific software capable of handling the manipulation coding in accordance with a set of definite rules.

Examples

EX 1
670 ##$b0479322$c*z11030*atimber*z21030*adamage*vby*wto*z31030*atermites$e0236536 $e0236551$zeng

675 UNIVERSAL DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (UDC)

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a class number applied to the resource according to the Universal Decimal Classification scheme, with an indication of the edition being used.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
675	UNIVERSAL DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (UDC)	R	O
a	Number	NR	O
v	Edition	NR	O
z	Language of Edition	NR	O
3	Classification Record Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Number

The class number as taken from the UDC schedules. Not repeatable.

$v Edition

An identification of the edition from which the number in subfield $a is taken. Not repeatable.

$z Language of Edition

The language in coded form of the edition from which the number in subfield $a is taken. For codes use ISO 639-2. Not repeatable.

$3 Classification Record Number

The identifier for the classification record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/ Classification Format. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The number is taken from the version of the UDC schedules used by the agency preparing the record. UDC is produced in various language versions each of which is revised from time to time and published as a new edition. Each published edition of UDC is derived from the UDC Consortium's Master Reference File.

Examples

EX 1
675 ##$a633.13-155(410)"18"$v4$zeng
The class number constructed from the schedules of the 4th English edition of UDC for *Machinery for harvesting oats in Great Britain in the 19th century*.
EX 2
675 ##$a681.3.04.071.8:025.3:05:07$v4$zeng
The class number constructed for Data elements essential to the interchange of serials records.

History

2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Extensive revision to text.

676 DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a class number applied to the resource being recorded according to the Dewey Decimal Classification.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
676	DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION	R	O
a	Number	NR	O
v	Edition	NR	O
z	Language of Edition	NR	O
3	Classification Record Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Number

The number as taken from the Dewey Decimal Classification schedules. Prime marks are indicated by /. Not repeatable.

$v Edition

The number of the edition used (EX 1-7). An "a" is added to the number to indicate abridged edition (EX 6). Not repeatable.

$z Language of Edition

The language in coded form of the edition from which the number in subfield $a is taken (EX 7) For codes use ISO 639-2. Not repeatable.

$3 Classification Record Number

The identifier for the classification record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/ Classification Format. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The number is entered in subfield $a in the form prescribed by the schedules used by the agency preparing the record. The number may include prime marks (/), which indicate internationally agreed points at which the number may be truncated. The number should not include extensions used solely to assign a book-mark to an individual resource.

Subfield $z should be used only if the translated version contains differences from the original, e.g. when parts of the schedule have been rewritten to cover local requirements.

Examples

EX 1
676 ##$3c12458$a943.0840924$v19
The class number for a book entitled *Kaiser Wilhelm II : new interpretations*, a collection of biographical essays on Wilhelm II, Emperor of Germany, 1890-1917. The resource is classified according to the nineteenth edition of the schedules. The corresponding classification record has 001 c12458.

EX 2
676 ##$a823.912$v19
The class number for a book entitled *Paddington at the station*, a children's storybook. The resource is classified according to the nineteenth edition of the Dewey Decimal Classification schedules.
EX 3
676 ##$a823/.912$v19
The class number for the same work where the agency uses prime marks.
EX 4
676 ##$a001.64/092/2$v19
A class number for a book entitled *Computer pioneers*.
EX 5
676 ##$aA823/.2$v19
The class number for a book of Australian fiction of the period 1890-1945. The use of A823.2 to distinguish it from 823.2 (which indicates British fiction of the period 1400-1558) is allowed by the schedules.
EX 6
676 ##$a629.132$v13a
A class number for a book entitled *Pilot's weather: the commonsense approach to meteorology*. The resource is classified according to the 13th Abridged edition. The 21st, full, edition would class the book at 629. 1324.
EX 7
676 ##$a944/.0252$v21$zfre
A class number from the French 21st edition for a book on France at the time of Philip le Bon. The main edition has no subdivisions of 944 beyond 025 (Period of the House of Valois); the French edition has a number for each monarch.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

680 LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CLASSIFICATION

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a class number applied to the resource according to the Library of Congress classification schedules, with the optional addition of a book number applied to an individual book to identify it uniquely in the cataloguing agency's collections.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
680	LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CLASSIFICATION	R	O
a	Class Number	NR	O
b	Book Number	NR	O
3	Classification Record Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Class Number

The class number taken from the Library of Congress classification schedules. Not repeatable.

$b Book Number

The individual book number applied by the cataloguing agency. Not repeatable.

$3 Classification Record Number

The identifier for the classification record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/ Classification Format. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A Library of Congress class number may be applied by any agency in possession of the Library of Congress Classification Schedules.

Examples

EX 1
680 ##$aQL737.C27C723$b.I74
The class number for A proposed delineation of critical grizzly bear habitat in the Yellowstone region : a monograph presented at the Fourth International Conference on Bear Research and Management. A book number has been added.
EX 2
680 ##$aPZ8.3.A6A6
The class number for *The adventures of Egbert the Easter egg* by Richard Willard Armour.

History

2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2020	Errata / text edit.

686 OTHER CLASS NUMBERS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains class numbers from classification systems which are not internationally used but which are widely understood, published schemes.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
680	LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CLASSIFICATION	R	O
a	Class Number	NR	O
b	Book Number	R	O
c	Classification Subdivision	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Classification Record Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Class Number

The class number taken from the classification scheme. Repeatable.

$b Book Number

The book number applied by the assigning agency. Repeatable.

$c Classification Subdivision

A subdivision of the class number taken from the classification scheme. Repeatable.

$v Edition

The number of the scheme edition used (EX 3). An "a" is added to the number to indicate abridged edition. Not repeatable.

$2 Source

A code for the classification scheme used in formulating the number. For a list of subject sources, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

$3 Classification Record Number

The identifier for the classification record for the acess point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/ Classification Format. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
686 ##$aW1$bRE359$2usnlm
A U.S. National Library of Medicine class number.
EX 2
686 ##$a281.9$bC81A$2usnal
A U.S. National Agricultural Library class number.

EX 3
686 ##$a141$2pcdm$v03
686 ##$a1.341$2pcdm$v04
Numbers for Jazz Be-bop according to the third and fourth edition of the Principes de classement des documents musicaux applicables aux collections de prêt.

History

2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.

7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Block

This block contains names of persons and corporate bodies having some form of responsibility for the resource described (creation, ownership, marketing, etc.). This responsibility is defined broadly to include all persons, corporate bodies or families associated with the resource including publishers, producers, distributors, etc., when an access point is required. It also includes trademarks under which certain types of materials such as sound recordings are published. The following fields are defined:

Personal Names	
700	PERSONAL NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY
701	PERSONAL NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY
702	PERSONAL NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY
703	PERSONAL NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP
Corporate Body and Meeting Names	
710	CORPORATE BODY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY
711	CORPORATE BODY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY
712	CORPORATE BODY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY
713	CORPORATE BODY NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP
Family Names	
720	FAMILY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY
721	FAMILY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY
722	FAMILY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY
723	FAMILY NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP
Miscellaneous	
716	TRADEMARK
730	NAME – ENTITY RESPONSIBLE
Uniform Headings	
740	UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS - PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY
741	UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS - ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY
742	UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS - SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

Notes on Field Contents

Responsibility

One person, corporate body or family may be selected as having primary responsibility. In some cataloguing codes this is called the main entry. Any other persons, corporate bodies or families having equal responsibility are considered to have alternative responsibility. If a given cataloguing code does not embody the concept of main entry, all persons, corporate bodies and families having equal responsibility may be coded as if they had alternative responsibility. Persons, corporate bodies or families having tangential responsibility (e.g., editors, producers, distributors, publishers, translators, illustrators, etc.) may be coded as having secondary responsibility. If it is not possible to determine any level of responsibility, all names should be coded as alternative.

Main Entry under Title

In records catalogued according to codes recognising the concept of main entry, when no personal or corporate name has been specified as having primary responsibility for the resource, it can be assumed that main entry is under title. Access points for persons or bodies associated with the resource are given in the alternative or secondary responsibility fields as appropriate. For example, multiple authors, which preclude an author main entry under some cataloguing codes, would each be considered as having alternative responsibility; whereas the editor of a collection (which is entered under title by some

cataloguing codes) would be considered to have secondary responsibility. When the main entry is under title, the main entry will be found in field 500 if present, otherwise in field 200.

History

2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Corrections and additions.
2016	Corrections and additions.

700 PERSONAL NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of the person considered to have primary responsibility for work, in an access point form.

The name of the person in this field provides that the record is created according to cataloguing rules recognising the concept of the main entry.

It may not occur in the same record as field 710 Corporate Body Name - Primary Responsibility, field 720 Family Name - Primary Responsibility or field 740 Uniform Conventional Heading for Legal and Religious Texts - Primary Responsibility, since a record can have only one access point with primary responsibility. If the concept of main entry does not exist in the cataloguing rules or the source format does not distinguish it, this field does not occur: field 701 is used for all personal access points (see Related Fields).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
700	PERSONAL NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY	NR	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Names Other than Dates	NR	O
d	Roman Numerals	NR	O
f	Dates	NR	O
g	Expansion of Initials of Forename	NR	O
k	Attribution Qualifier	R	O
o	International Standard Identifier for the Name	R	O
p	Affiliation/Address	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Form of name indicator
	0	Name entered under forename or direct order
	1	Name entered under surname (family name, patronymic, etc.)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the heading; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists. Mandatory when the field is present. Not repeatable.

$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

The remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name (EX 1-11, 14). It contains forenames and other given names. The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Printing expansions of initials should be entered in $g. Not repeatable.

$c Additions to Names Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office (EX 6, 7, 8, 12, 15, 16). Repeatable for second or subsequent occurrences of such additions (EX 8, 16).

$d Roman Numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics (EX 12). If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included (EX 17). The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

$f Dates

The dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates. Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form (EX 15). All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in $f. Not repeatable.

$g Expansion of Initials of Forename

The full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield $b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required (EX 2). Not repeatable.

$k Attribution Qualifier

Attribution information for names when the responsibility is unknown, uncertain, fictitious, or pseudonymous. Qualifiers should be used that follow the name of a known artist for the work. Repeatable.

$o International Standard Identifier for the Name

The ISNI or another international identifier assigned to the name recorded in the field.

The first four-character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISNI, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$p Affiliation/Address

This subfield contains the institutional affiliation of the individual at the time the work was prepared (EX 18). Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the relator code schema from which the code in $4 is derived, when the code is not from UNIMARC Relator Codes. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. (EX 3). Not repeatable.

$4 Relator Code

A code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the bibliographic resource to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in Appendix B. If greater precision is required for performers, a list of alphabetical codes is found at the end of field 146. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield. If other systems are used $4 can be used to carry other codes, followed by $2. Repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Form

The form of name which appears in the field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record. Dates may be entered according to different calendars.

Selection of Subfields

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules, or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always interfile correctly in one sequence. Until standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

One way of conceiving of the differences between Entry Element ($a), Part of Name Other than Entry Element ($b), and Additions to Names Other than Dates ($c) is by referring to their use. The first element, entry element, is the word under which the entry would be formed in an ordered list. The second element subdivides the list ordered by the first element. The third element, Additions to Names Other than Dates, will either be used as a third filing element, or may in some cases, especially when it precedes the Part of Name Other than Entry Element, be ignored for ordering purposes.

Where family names begin with a particle such as a preposition, it will be placed at the start of subfield $a. If the name files under the next element after the particle, the particle will usually be placed at the end of the name. It is recommended that these particles be entered in subfield $b Part of Name Other than Entry Element (EX 9, 10, 11).

Titles of address, epithets or qualifiers to names added by the cataloguer should be entered as Additions to Names Other than Dates, subfield $c.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. However, it is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. In source formats where punctuation is not available, but is printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the subfields, it is recommended that the punctuation which would be used in display be included in the UNIMARC record.

Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record; therefore agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records. Details should be included in the documentation accompanying exchange tapes (see Appendix D).

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, subfield $f and $g, First Statement of Responsibility and Subsequent Statement of Responsibility.	Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the resource. The name of the person mentioned in $f or in some cases $g to whom is attributed primary responsibility for the resource (if any) will be entered in 700 in a form suitable for an access point.
701 PERSONAL NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY	If there are further persons considered to have equal or alternative responsibility to the person named in field 700, field 701 is used to record the required access points for these. This will occur when documents are written "by Glenn L. Jenkins, Adelbert M. Knevel, Frank E. Di Gangi", or in the provisions of certain cataloguing rules when complementary text and illustrations, for example photographs and accompanying text are the responsibility of different persons. One or other of the persons with equal responsibility will be entered in field 700, the other(s) in 701, without any implication that the ones entered in 701 fields have any less responsibility for the resource than the one entered in 700. Where the cataloguing

	rules do not recognise "main entry" primary personal responsibility, headings are entered in field 701 and field 700 is not used.
702 PERSONAL NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	If there are persons considered to have less responsibility than the person named in field 700 they should be entered in 702 fields.

Examples

EX 1
700 #l$aBenson,$bRowland S.
The name in access point form: Benson, Rowland S.
EX 2
700 #1$aLawrence$bD.H
700 #1$aLawrence$bDavid Herbert
700 #1$aLawrence$bD.H.$gDavid Herbert
The above examples illustrate different 700 fields for the same entity that result from various agencies because of variations in the access point form: Lawrence, D.H. or Lawrence, David Herbert or Lawrence, D.H. (David Herbert). The variations result from the application of different cataloguing rules for headings. The third example above includes parentheses to distinguish between the preferred form of the forenames and the full form.
EX 3
700 #1$3014678$aBridges-Webb,$bCharles
Charles Bridges-Webb (a hyphenated name) is entered under Bridges-Webb. The authority file number in the system is 014678.
EX 4
700 #l$aDay Lewis,$bCecil
C. Day Lewis has a compound surname without a hyphen. The cataloguing code enters the name as: Day Lewis, Cecil.
EX 5
700 #0$aMao Tse Tung
700 #l$aMao,$bTse Tung
Chinese names are in normal usage (outside cataloguing) written with the family name first. This results in differing treatment among cataloguing codes. Mao Tse-Tung (to use one possible rendering of the name into the roman alphabet) may be entered according to some cataloguing codes as: Mao Tse-Tung; according to others as Mao, Tse-Tung. This is because some codes feel that the punctuation, in this case a separating comma "," represents the division between family name and given names while others feel that a comma denotes inversion from the usual form and omit it here since no inversion has been required. Note that when the name is entered in direct order, i.e. under the name which comes first, and the whole of the name is entered in the same subfield, the second indicator, Form of Name Indicator, is set to 0. However, if the first element is regarded as a surname by analogy with Western treatment of surnames, then the second indicator is set to 1.
EX 6
700 #1$aStanhope,$cLady$bHester
An author has a title which comes before the given names according to the cataloguing code used. The order of subfields is retained, as always in UNIMARC.
EX 7

700 #1$aParker,$bTheodore$c(Spirit)
The cataloguing code of the source format stipulates that epithets be used under certain circumstances: Parker, Theodore *(Spirit)*.
EX 8
700 #1$aArundel,$bPhilip Howard,$cEarl of,$cSaint
An individual has two separate titles; they are entered in separate subfields. According to the cataloguing code used, "Arundel" is the entry element.
EX 9
700 #1$aBergh,$bGeorge van der
Entry in catalogue: Bergh, George van der. Depending on the prefix, names are sometimes entered under the prefix, at other times not.
EX 10
700 #1$aLa Fontaine Verwey$bHerman de
Entry in catalogue: La Fontaine Verwey, Herman de
EX 11
700 #1$aDu Perron,$bE.
Entry in catalogue: Du Perron, E.
EX 12
700 #0$aVittorio Emmanuele$dII,$cre d'Italia
Monarchs are entered under their given names in the majority of cataloguing rules.
EX 13
700 #0$aPan Painter
700 #0$aJackie
Pseudonyms sometimes consist of a phrase or other appellation that does not contain a real name and are then usually entered in direct order.
EX 14
700 #1$aOrwell,$bGeorge
700 #1$aOther,$bA.N.
Pseudonyms having the appearance of a forename, forenames or initials, and a surname are according to most cataloguing codes entered under the pseudo-surname.
EX 15
700 #0$aJoannes,$cDiaconus,$ffl.1226-1240
An example of the name of a medieval person consisting only of a given name. An epithet and date are added.
EX 16
700 #0$aAlexandra,$cEmpress,$cConsort of Nicholas II, Emperor of Russia
Two epithets are separately identified in the source format. This distinction should be carried over into UNIMARC.
EX 17
700 #0$aJohn$dII Comnenus,$cEmperor of the East
EX 18
700 #1$aBrown$bB.F.$pChemistry Dept., Harvard University
An example of an affiliation.

EX 19
700#1$aCallas,$bMaria$4721$4vso
In addition to $4721 (singer), one can code specifically for the voice range ($4vso = soprano).
EX 20
700 #1$aBrendel,$bAlfred$4545$4kpf
In addition to $4545 (musician), one can code specifically for the instrument played by the musician ($4kpf = piano).
EX 21
700 #1$aPainter$bUriah Hunt$f1837-1900$4600
The record describes photographic print by Uriah Hunt Painter. Creator role is specified in $4.
EX 22
700 #1$aWalter$bThomas Ustick$f1804-1887$4570
The record describes architectural drawing for a clock ("Indian and the Pioneer"), U.S. House of Representatives, Washington, D.C. created by Thomas Ustick Walter. Creator role is specified in $4.
EX 23
700 #0$aBartolomeo$cFra$f1472-1517$kFollower of
Record describes drawing by unknown author, attributed as follower of Fra Bartolomeo (1472-1517). Attribution qualifier is specified in $k.
EX 24
700 #1$aBach$bCarl Philipp Emanuel$f 1714-1788$4230
702 #1$aBach$bJohann Sebastian$f1685-1750$4385
The record describes Carl Philipp Emanuel Bach's triosonata for flute, violin and continuo H 569, formerly attributed to Johann Sebastian Bach, BWV 1036

History

1994	New subfields/values: Addition of new subfield $p Affiliation/address.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	New subfield $o, for ISNI for name.
2016	Control subfield $2 is added in relation to $4 Relator Codes.
2024	Text edit.

701 PERSONAL NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a person considered to have alternative responsibility for work, in access point form.

If the record is created according to cataloguing rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not separately identify the main entry, all personal names to be used as access points will be entered in Field 701.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
701	PERSONAL NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Names Other than Dates	NR	O
d	Roman Numerals	NR	O
f	Dates	NR	O
g	Expansion of Initials of Forename	NR	O
k	Attribution Qualifier	R	O
o	International Standard Identifier for the Name	R	O
p	Affiliation/Address	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Form of name indicator
	0	Name entered under forename or direct order
	1	Name entered under surname (family name, patronymic, etc.)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the heading; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists. Mandatory when the field is present. Not repeatable.

$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

The remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name (see EX 1-11, 14 in the field 700). It contains forenames and other given names. The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Printing expansions of initials should be entered in $g. Not repeatable.

$c Additions to Names Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office (see EX 6, 7, 8, 12, 15, 16 in the field 700). Repeatable for second or subsequent occurrences of such additions (see EX 8, 16 in the field 700).

$d Roman Numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics (see EX 12 in the field 700). If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included (see EX 17 in field 700). The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

$f Dates

The dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates. Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form (see EX 15 in the field 700). All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in $f. Not repeatable.

$g Expansion of Initials of Forename

The full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield $b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required (see EX 2 in the field 700). Not repeatable.

$k Attribution Qualifier

Attribution information for names when the responsibility is unknown, uncertain, fictitious, or pseudonymous. Qualifiers should be used that follow the name of a known artist for the work. Repeatable.

$o International Standard Identifier for the Name

The ISNI or another international identifier assigned to the name recorded in the field.

The first four-character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISNI, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$p Affiliation/Address

This subfield contains the institutional affiliation of the individual at the time the work was prepared (see EX 18 in the field 700). Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the relator code schema from which the code in $4 is derived, when the code is not from UNIMARC Relator Codes. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. (See EX 3 in the field 700). Not repeatable.

$4 Relator Code

A code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the bibliographic resource to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in Appendix B. If greater precision is required for performers, a list of alphabetical codes is found at the end of field 146. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield. If other systems are used $4 can be used to carry other codes, followed by $2. Repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Form

The form of name which appears in the field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record. Dates may be entered according to different calendars.

Selection of Subfields

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules, or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always interfile correctly in one sequence. Until standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

One way of conceiving of the differences between Entry Element ($a), Part of Name Other than Entry Element ($b), and Additions to Names Other than Dates ($c) is by referring to their use. The first element, entry element, is the word under which the entry would be formed in an ordered list. The second element subdivides the list ordered by the first element. The third element, Additions to Names Other than Dates, will either be used as a third filing element, or may in some cases, especially when it precedes the Part of Name Other than Entry Element, be ignored for ordering purposes.

Where family names begin with a particle such as a preposition, it will be placed at the start of subfield $a. If the name files under the next element after the particle, the particle will usually be placed at the end of the name. It is recommended that these particles be entered in subfield $b Part of Name Other than Entry Element (see examples in field 700).

Titles of address, epithets or qualifiers to names added by the cataloguer should be entered as Additions to Names Other than Dates, subfield $c.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. However, it is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. In source formats where punctuation is not available, but is printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the subfields, it is recommended that the punctuation which would be used in display be included in the UNIMARC record.

Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record; therefore agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records. Details should be included in the documentation accompanying exchange tapes (see Appendix D).

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, subfield $f , First Statement of Responsibility	Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the resource. When there are two or three names in the first statement of responsibility, subsequent names after the first will often be names of persons with alternative responsibility and will be entered in field 701 in access point form.
700 PERSONAL NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY	When field 701 is used strictly for names of persons having alternative responsibility, field 700 (or rarely 710) must be present. If field 701 is used because the cataloguing rules do not recognise the concept of main entry, then field 700 will not be present.
702 PERSONAL NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	When there are persons considered to have less responsibility than the persons named in fields 700 and 701, they should be entered in field 702.

Examples

EX 1
700 #1$aNewton,$bClive R.
701 #1$aParker,$bR.S

The above is an example including an instance of a person with alternative responsibility. The statement of responsibility on the title page is "by Clive R. Newton and Robert S. Parker". The established form for Robert S. Parker is Parker, R.S.

History

1994	New subfields/values: Addition of new subfield $p Affiliation/address.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2024	Text edit.

702 PERSONAL NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a person considered to have secondary responsibility for a work, in access point form.

In the majority of cataloguing codes, the existence of a person with secondary responsibility does not necessarily imply the existence of a person with primary responsibility in the record. Therefore field 702 can be present without a field 700, 710 or 720.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
702	PERSONAL NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Names Other than Dates	NR	O
d	Roman Numerals	NR	O
f	Dates	NR	O
g	Expansion of Initials of Forename	NR	O
k	Attribution Qualifier	R	O
o	International Standard Identifier for the Name	R	O
p	Affiliation/Address	NR	O
r	Part or Role Played	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Form of name indicator
	0	Name entered under forename or direct order
	1	Name entered under surname (family name, patronymic, etc.)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the heading; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists. Mandatory when the field is present. Not repeatable.

$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

The remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name (see EX 1-11, 14 in the field 700). It contains forenames and other given names. The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Printing expansions of initials should be entered in $g. Not repeatable.

$c Additions to Names Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office (see EX 6, 7, 8, 12, 15, 16 in the field 700). Repeatable for second or subsequent occurrences of such additions (see EX 8, 16 in the field 700).

$d Roman Numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics (see EX 12 in the field 700). If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included (see EX 17 in field 700). The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

$f Dates

The dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates. Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form (see EX 15 in the field 700). All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in $f. Not repeatable.

$g Expansion of Initials of Forename

The full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield $b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required (see EX 2 in the field 700). Not repeatable.

$k Attribution Qualifier

Attribution information for names when the responsibility is unknown, uncertain, fictitious, or pseudonymous. Qualifiers should be used that follow the name of a known artist for the work. Repeatable.

$o International Standard Identifier for the Name

The ISNI or another international identifier assigned to the name recorded in the field.

The first four-character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISNI, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$p Affiliation/Address

This subfield contains the institutional affiliation of the individual at the time the work was prepared (see EX 18 in the field 700). Not repeatable.

$r Part or Role Played

The name of a role interpreted, played or sung by the person designed by the access point. This subfield is especially used in records for audiovisual material (motion pictures, sound or video recordings of theatre plays or operas or other vocal works). It is used when $4 is present and contains values such as "275" (Dancer), "721" (Singer), etc. (EX 6). Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the relator code schema from which the code in $4 is derived, when the code is not from UNIMARC Relator Codes. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. (See EX 3 in the field 700). Not repeatable.

$4 Relator Code

A code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the bibliographic resource to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in Appendix B. If greater precision is required for performers, a list of alphabetical codes is found at the end of field 146. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield. If other systems are used $4 can be used to carry other codes, followed by $2. Repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable. (EX 2-5).

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13. Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure).

It is envisaged that these will normally be one of the fields 620 (EX 5) or 621.

Notes on Field Contents

The field is used, where applicable, for printers and publishers.

For former owners and other connected with the production or history of particular volumes use field 703 Personal Name – Provenance or Ownership.

Subfield $5, code of the Institution to Which Field Applies is used only when the physical characteristics are peculiar to an individual copy. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).

Form

The form of name which appears in the field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record. Dates may be entered according to different calendars.

Selection of Subfields

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules, or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always interfile correctly in one sequence. Until standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

One way of conceiving of the differences between Entry Element ($a), Part of Name Other than Entry Element ($b), and Additions to Names Other than Dates ($c) is by referring to their use. The first element, entry element, is the word under which the entry would be formed in an ordered list. The second element subdivides the list ordered by the first element. The third element, Additions to Names Other than Dates, will either be used as a third filing element, or may in some cases, especially when it precedes the Part of Name Other than Entry Element, be ignored for ordering purposes.

Where family names begin with a particle such as a preposition, it will be placed at the start of subfield $a. If the name files under the next element after the particle, the particle will usually be placed at the end of the name. It is recommended that these particles be entered in subfield $b Part of Name Other than Entry Element (see examples in field 700).

Titles of address, epithets or qualifiers to names added by the cataloguer should be entered as Additions to Names Other than Dates, subfield $c.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. However, it is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. In source formats where punctuation is not available,

but is printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the subfields, it is recommended that the punctuation which would be used in display be included in the UNIMARC record.

Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record; therefore agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records. Details should be included in the documentation accompanying exchange tapes (see Appendix D).

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, subfields $f and $g, First Statement of Responsibility and Subsequent Statement of Responsibility	Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the resource. The name of the person mentioned in $f or in $g to whom is attributed secondary responsibility for the resource (if any) will be entered in Field 702 in access point form.
700 PERSONAL NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY	The name of the first person mentioned in the title page with primary responsibility should be entered in field 700. Names of persons with secondary responsibility are entered in 702.
701 PERSONAL NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY	Alternative means a second or further instance of primary responsibility. However, if the record is catalogued according to rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not make the distinction, all personal names should be entered in field 701.

Examples

EX 1
702 #1$aIrvin$bThomas Francis$4440
The name of a person with secondary responsibility including a relator code that he is an illustrator.
EX 2
702 #1$aCunningham$bArthur$4110$5Uk: X.200/175
Binder of a British Library copy, pressmark X.200/175.
EX 3
702 #1$aŠkrlec$bNikola$4390$5CiZaNSB: L III H13
702 #1$aKuševiæ$bJosip$4390$5CiZaNSB: L III H13
Book with book-plate by Nikola Škrlec (a former owner) is part of the Kuševiæ's Library now stored in the National and University Library, Zagreb.
EX 4
317 ##$aRukopisni ex libris: 'Velimir Gaj 1873'. Iz knjiznice Ljudevita Gaja$5CiZaNSB IIC-8º -75
702 #1$aGaj$bVelimir$4390$5CiZaNSB: IIC-8º -75
702 #1$aGaj$bLjudevit$4390$5CiZaNSB: IIC-8º -75
Velimir Gaj inherited his father's, Ljudevit Gaj's, Library which he later sold to the present owner, National and University Library, Zagreb. The Library is known after his father's name.
A further example of the use of this field appears as EX 5 of the 317 field.
EX 5
702 #1$6b01$aByde$bEdward$fd. 1712$4390$5UK-WlAbNL: WingU124
702 #1$6b02$aDimsdale$bThomas$cBaron$f1712-1800$4390$4320$5UK-WlAbNL: WingU124
702 #1$6b02$aZachary$bJohn$4390$5UK-WlAbNL: WingU124
702 #1$6b03$aClark$bGeorge Thomas$f1809-1898$4390$5UK-WlAbNL: WingU124
Place and date of provenance:

621 ##$6b01$aGreat Britain$bEngland$cHertfordshire$dWare$eWare Park$5UK-WlAbNL: WingU124
621 ##$6b02$aGreat Britain$f17731227
621 ##$6b03$aGreat Britain$bWales$cGlamorgan$dPont-y-clun$eTal-y-garn$5UK-WlAbNL: WingU124
Fields for secondary responsibility and associated provenance fields for copy of *Nicolai Vptoni De studio militari, libri quatuor. ... Londini, 1654,* in National Library of Wales. Closely related data in the 621 and 702 fields are linked by $6 subfields. Subfield $5 links all the item specific fields. See 316 EX 15 and 317 EX 10.
EX 6
200 1#$a≠NSB≠L'≠NSE≠enfant et les sortilèges$fMaurice Ravel, comp.$gFlore Wend (l'enfant), Marie Lise de Montmolin (la mère, la tasse chinoise, la libellule), MS$gGeneviève Touraine (la bergère, la chatte, la chauve-souris), S... [et al.]$gOrchestre de la Suisse romande$gErnest Ansermet, dir.
300 $autres interprètes : Adrienne Migliette (le feu, le rossignol), Suzette Danco (la princesse, l'écureuil), Gisèle Bobillier (la chouette, un pâtre), A ; Hugues Cuenod (le petit vieillard, la rainette), T ; Pierre Mollet (l'horloge comtoise, le chat) BAR ; Lucien Lovano (le fauteuil; un arbre), B
700 #1$313898840$aRavel$bMaurice$f1875-1937$4230
702 #1$314238560$aWend$bFlore$f1909-....$4721$4vms$rl'enfant
702 #1$313932816$aMontmollin$bMarie-Lise de$4721$4vms$rla mère$rla tasse chinoise$rla libellule
702 #1$314010343$aTouraine$bGeneviève$f1903-1981$4721$4vms$rla bergère$rla chatte$rla chauve-souris
702 #1$313890812$aAnsermet$bErnest$f1883-1969$4590
The choice was made to create an access only to three of the interpretations of the work. The other singers are only mentioned in a note (including the roles they sing). Nearly all singers have more than one role in the opera.
EX 7
702 #1$aWalter$bThomas Ustick$f1804-1887$4070
702 #1$aCrawford$bThomas$f1813 or 1814-1857$4705
702 #1$aMeigs$bMontgomery C.$gMontgomery Cunningham$f1816-1892$jengineer$4570
Record describes photograph of maquette showing Indian mother and child, detail of "Progress of Civilization" at east pediment of the Senate wing, U.S. Capitol.The figures of "Progress and Civilization" were designed by American sculptor Thomas Crawford; architect Thomas Ustick Walter designed the extension and dome of the U.S. Capitol; Montgomery C. Meigs was supervising engineer for the Capitol extension project. Appropriate creator roles are specified in subfields $4.
EX 8
700 #1$aFalconet$bÉtienne-Maurice$f1716-1791$4705
702 #1$8head of Peter I$aCollot$bMarie-Anne$f1748-1821$4705
702 #1$8serpent$aGordeyev$bFyodor$$f1744-1810$4705
Record describes the monument "Bronze Horseman" created by Étienne-Maurice Falconet whereas the head of Peter I was made by Marie-Anne Collot; Fyodor Gordeyev sculpted the serpent beneath the horse's hooves; Appropriate creator roles are specified in subfields $4, creator extent – in subfields $8.
EX 9
702 #1$6z01623$aHannah$bDaryl$4005
702 #1$6z02623$aReed$bPamela$4005
702 #1$6z03623$aRemar$bJames$4005
Characters
323 ##$aCast: Daryl Hannah (Ayla), Pamela Reed (Iza), James Remar (Creb)
623 ##$6z01702$aAyla
623 ##$6z02702$aIza

623 ##$6z03702$aCreb
Main characters and cast in Michael Chapman's film *The clan of the cave bear*.

History

1994	New subfields/values: Addition of new subfield $p Affiliation/address.
1996	New paragraphs/subfield/examples.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Added subfield $5. Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.
2012	Corrections and additions.
2024	Text edit.

703 PERSONAL NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a person regarding any type of provenance and/or ownership (previous ownership or custodianship, author of signature, informal dedication, annotations, etc.), that apply uniquely to the item, in access point form.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
703	PERSONAL NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Part of Name Other than Entry Element	NR	O
c	Additions to Names Other than Dates	NR	O
d	Roman Numerals	NR	O
f	Dates	NR	O
g	Expansion of Initials of Forename	NR	O
k	Attribution Qualifier	R	O
o	International Standard Identifier for the Name	R	O
p	Affiliation/Address	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Form of name indicator
	0	Name entered under forename or direct order
	1	Name entered under surname (family name, patronymic, etc.)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the heading; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists. Mandatory when the field is present. Not repeatable.

$b Part of Name Other than Entry Element

The remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name (see EX 1-11, 14 in the field 700). It contains forenames and other given names. The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Printing expansions of initials should be entered in $g. Not repeatable.

$c Additions to Names Other than Dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office (see EX 6, 7, 8, 12, 15, 16 in the field 700). Repeatable for second or subsequent occurrences of such additions (see EX 8, 16 in the field 700).

$d Roman Numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics (see EX 12 in the field 700). If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included

(see EX 17 in field 700). The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

$f Dates

The dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates. Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form (see EX 15 in the field 700). All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in $f. Not repeatable.

$g Expansion of Initials of Forename

The full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield $b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required (see EX 2 in the field 700). Not repeatable.

$k Attribution Qualifier

Attribution information for names when the responsibility is unknown, uncertain, fictitious, or pseudonymous. Qualifiers should be used that follow the name of a known artist for the work. Repeatable.

$o International Standard Identifier for the Name

The ISNI or another international identifier assigned to the name recorded in the field.

The first four-character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISNI, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$p Affiliation/Address

This subfield contains the institutional affiliation of the individual at the time the work was prepared (see EX 18 in the field 700). Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the relator code schema from which the code in $4 is derived, when the code is not from UNIMARC Relator Codes. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. (See EX 3 in the field 700). Not repeatable.

$4 Relator Code

A code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the bibliographic resource to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in Appendix B. If greater precision is required for performers, a list of alphabetical codes is found at the end of field 146. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield. If other systems are used $4 can be used to carry other codes, followed by $2. Repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is primarily intended for use in holdings records. However, if the agency which create the record does not use the UNIMARC Holdings Format, and the attributes of the resource are created at bibliographic record level, this field is used, where applicable, for entities (personal names) that have any kind of provenance and / or ownership regarding a specific item.

Subfield $5, code of the Institution to Which Field Applies, is used only when the provenance or ownership apply to a specific item.

Form

The form of name which appears in the field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record. Dates may be entered according to different calendars.

Selection of Subfields

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules, or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always interfile correctly in one sequence. Until standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

One way of conceiving of the differences between Entry Element ($a), Part of Name Other than Entry Element ($b), and Additions to Names Other than Dates ($c) is by referring to their use. The first element, entry element, is the word under which the entry would be formed in an ordered list. The second element subdivides the list ordered by the first element. The third element, Additions to Names Other than Dates, will either be used as a third filing element, or may in some cases, especially when it precedes the Part of Name Other than Entry Element, be ignored for ordering purposes.

Where family names begin with a particle such as a preposition, it will be placed at the start of subfield $a. If the name files under the next element after the particle, the particle will usually be placed at the end of the name. It is recommended that these particles be entered in subfield $b Part of Name Other than Entry Element (see examples in field 700).

Titles of address, epithets or qualifiers to names added by the cataloguer should be entered as Additions to Names Other than Dates, subfield $c.

Related Fields

713 CORPORATE BODY NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP
723 FAMILY NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP

Examples

EX 1
317 ##$aPert. na f. [2]: "T. NORTON"$5PTBN: CAM. 2 P.
317 ##$aNota manuscrita na folha de guarda: "Pertencia a livraria de D. Francisco Manuel de Mello"; na p. de tít.: "Manoel Lopes Teixr.ª"; na última f.: "D. Jer.mo Correa da Costa"$5PTBN: CAM. 4 P.
703 #1$aNorton,$bTomás,$f1800?-1860$4390$5PTBN: CAM. 2 P.
703 #1$aManuel,$bFrancisco de Melo,$f1773-1851$4390$5PTBN: CAM. 4 P.
703 #1$aTeixeira,$bManuel Lopes$4390$5PTBN: CAM. 4 P.
703 #1$aCosta,$bJerónimo Correia da$4390$5PTBN: CAM. 4 P.
EX 2
317 ##$aPert. na f. [2]: "LIVRARIA DE D. FRANC. MANUEL" (carimbo)$5PTBN: CAM. 1 P.

703 #1$aManuel,$bFrancisco de Melo,$f1773-1851$4390$5PTBN: CAM. 1 P.
EX 3
703 #1$aRato,$bBrito,$f1899-1982$4320

History

2012	New field.
2024	Text edit.

710 CORPORATE BODY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of the corporate body considered to have primary responsibility for work, in an access point form.

The name of the corporate body in this field provides that the record is created according to cataloguing rules recognising the concept of main entry.

It may not occur in the same record as field 700 Personal Name – Primary Responsibility, field 720 Family Name - Primary Responsibility or field 740 Uniform Conventional Heading for Legal and Religious Texts - Primary Responsibility, since a record can have only one access point with primary responsibility. If the concept of main entry does not exist in the cataloguing rules, or the source format does not distinguish it, this field does not occur: field 711 is used for all corporate body name access point (see Related Fields).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
710	CORPORATE BODY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY	NR	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
d	Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting	NR	O
e	Location of Meeting	NR	O
f	Date of Meeting	NR	O
g	Inverted Element	NR	O
h	Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element	NR	O
o	International Standard Identifier for the Name	R	O
p	Affiliation/Address	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Kind of Name of a Body
	0	Corporate name
	1	Meeting name
2		Form of Name Indicator
	0	Name in inverted form
	1	Name entered under place or jurisdiction
	2	Name entered under name in direct order

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Specifies the Kind of Name of a Body

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is

regarded as that of a corporate body (EX 13). If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

The second indicator denotes the form of the corporate name.

Value 0: Name in inverted form

An inverted form may be used when the first word of a corporate name or meeting begins with an initial or forename relating to a personal name (EX 9, 10, 14).

Value 1: Name entered under place or jurisdiction

Used for corporate names relating to governments or other agencies of jurisdiction that are entered under the name of the place (EX 3, 5, 6, 7, 17). According to certain cataloguing codes other kinds of institutions associated with a place are also entered under that place, e.g. universities, learned societies, art galleries (EX 15).

Value 2: Name entered under name in direct order

Used for all other kinds of corporate names.

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists, i.e. the part of the name up to the first filing boundary. This subfield is must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

$b Subdivision

The name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy; or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place (EX 2-6, 13, 15).

This subfield excludes any additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see $c, $g, $h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy (EX 3, 4, 5).

$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference. Repeatable. (EX 6-9,11,16).

$d Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting

The number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series. Not repeatable. (EX 12-14).

$e Location of Meeting

The place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (EX 11-14).

$f Date of Meeting

The date of a meeting when it is required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (EX 11-14).

$g Inverted Element

Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable. (EX 9, 10, 14).

$h Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element

In a access point with inverted element, the part of the name following the inversion. Not repeatable (EX 9, 10, 14).

$o International Standard Identifier for the Name

The ISNI or another international identifier assigned to the name recorded in the field.

The first four character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISNI, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$p Affiliation/Address

This subfield contains the address of the corporate body (EX 17). Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the relator code schema from which the code in $4 is derived, when the code is not from UNIMARC Relator Codes. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. (EX 12). Not repeatable.

$4 Relator Code

Used to designate the relationship between the corporate body named in the field and the resource to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in Appendix B. If greater precision is required for performers, a list of alphabetical codes is found at the end of field 146. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield. If another system is used, $4 can be used to carry other codes, followed by $2. Repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Form

The form of the name which appears in this field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always interfile correctly in one sequence. Until further standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

Corporate names are problematic since many corporate bodies do not have a precise name which remains constant. Furthermore individual cataloguing rules formalise the names in different ways and therefore use different kinds of data elements.

Inverted Data

One type of name which often presents difficulties is a corporate name formed from a personal name, e.g., W. H. Smith & Sons Ltd, J. F. Kennedy Center, Winston Churchill Memorial Centre. Some cataloguing codes stipulate that these should be entered in direct order in subfield $a; other rules require that the names be treated as a personal name and inverted hence coded in subfields $g and $h. UNIMARC accommodates both possibilities (EX 9, 10, 14).

Entry under Place

Names of governments at all levels, e.g. national, provincial, and local, are formalisations of a different kind. Many such bodies have long formal names, but the practice of cataloguing codes is generally to take

a short name of the place, e.g., France, Australia, rather than the formal name (Republic of France, Commonwealth of Australia) (EX 7). Subordinate governmental bodies are often prefixed with the name of the government (EX 5, 6). Cataloguing rules vary as to whether bodies under government control but without legislative or executive power, such as national museums, are entered under the name of the government or under their own names. If entered under their own name, e.g., Civic Museum, they may need a qualification to distinguish between other organisations of the same name in other places. Some cataloguing rules have a further category of organisation entered under name of place: bodies like universities, learned societies etc. which are specifically attached to a place and tend to have the place name as part of their name; these may formalised in such a way as to bring the name of the place to the fore (EX 15). The remainder of the name will be stripped of connecting prepositions; thus it is not strictly an inversion.

Qualifications

Guidance may be required on what elements are to be considered qualifications and hence are to be entered in subfield $c. This may be a place added in order to distinguish the body from others of the same name, e.g., Liberal Party (Australia). It may be a statement of type of body to distinguish it from a different type of body with the same name, e.g. Gibraltar (Diocese) to distinguish it from the colony, and New York (State) to distinguish it from the city. A third kind of addition consists of a term added to a name to convey that it is a corporate body, e.g., Eagles (Rugby club), Ecologica (Firm), HVJ (Radio station) (EX 16). Usually cataloguing rules prescribe that the qualification be added in parentheses as in the examples above.

Formalised Additions to Names of Meetings

There are no universally accepted standards for the data elements "Number", "Location" and "Date of meeting". Numbers may be in Arabic or roman numerals, place names may be entered according to the language of the record, or the language on the original (EX 11-14). The date may be entered in any form, although for an exchange record, if month and day are required in the access point, the date in international standard format (e.g., "19831101", for 1 November 1983) is recommended as it can easily be converted into any language if desired.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. It is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. In source formats where punctuation is not available, but is printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the subfields, it is recommended that the punctuation which would be used in display be included in the UNIMARC record. This includes parentheses which occur at the beginning and end of one or a group of subfields.

Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records. Details should be included in the documentation accompanying exchange tapes (see Appendix D).

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, subfields $f and $g, First Statement of Responsibility and Subsequent Statement of Responsibility	Data in Field 200 is recorded as it appears on the resource. The name of the corporate body mentioned in $f or, rarely, in $g, to which is attributed primary responsibility for the resource, if any, will be entered in field 710 in access point form.
711 CORPORATE BODY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY	A corporate body may have alternative responsibility to either a person, body or family named in fields 700, 710 or 720. In this case field 711 is used since there may be no more than one occurrence altogether in a record of fields 700 and 720.
712 CORPORATE BODY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	A corporate name may have secondary responsibility, in which case it will be entered in field 712.

Examples

EX 1
710 02$aLight Railway Transport League
Unnamed members of an organisation called The Light Railway Transport League wrote a book entitled *Johannesburg tramways*, and, according to the cataloguing rules, the organisation has primary responsibility for the work. The cataloguing code used generally stipulates the removal of initial articles from all corporate body access points.
EX 2
710 02$aBell and Howell.$bMicro Photo Division
A division within the organisation Bell and Howell is entitled Micro Photo Division.
EX 3
710 01$aUnited States.$bFarm Credit Administration.$bPublic Affairs Division.
The division responsible for the document is a subordinate body of a subordinate body.
EX 4
710 02$aAslib.$bComputer Applications Group.$bAcquisition, Cataloguing and Circulation Working Party
A working party of a group which is responsible to an organisation requires three levels.
EX 5
710 01$aNew South Wales.$bDepartment of Education.$bDivision of Research and Planning
A government body preceded by the name of the state (province) in the form specified in the cataloguing code.
EX 6
710 01$aEssex$c(County).$bAdvisory Unit for Computer Education
A local government body has a qualification indicating the level of government of the body.
EX 7
710 01$aGermany.$c(Democratic Republic)
Certain cataloguing codes prescribe qualifiers for names of countries where ambiguity might arise.
EX 8
710 02$aNational Conference of Catholic Bishops$c(United States)
A qualifier consisting of place name may be entered in order to distinguish between organisations of the same name in different countries.
EX 9
710 02$aHugh Wilson and Lewis Womersley$c(Firm)
710 00$aWilson$g(Hugh)$hand Lewis Womersley$c(Firm)
The above give examples of both direct order and indirect order for corporate names. Certain cataloguing codes invert the names of corporate bodies which begin with the name of a person. The part of the name which is placed after the "surname" element is entered in $g and the rest of the name of the body which followed the "surname" in direct order is entered in $h.
EX 10
710 02$aE.A. Gibson Shipbrokers
710 00$aGibson$g(E.A.)$hShipbrokers
Another example of both direct and indirect order.
EX 11
710 12$aNASECODE II$c(Conference)$f(1981 :$eTrinity College, Dublin)

Names of conferences are entered as access points in a formalised form. On the title page: "proceedings of the NASECODE II conference held at Trinity College Dublin from 17th to 19th June 1981". Conference is added as a qualifier to explain the term NASECODE II. The subfields are entered in the order required by the cataloguing rules. First indicator is set to 1.
EX 12
710 12$3CRNO4586$aWorld Airports Conference,$d5th,$eLondon,$f1976
When the conference has a number which is not part of the name (compare EX 11 above), it may be included as part of the formalised access point. An Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number is present.
EX 13
710 02$aReading University Agricultural Club$bAnnual Conference$d(11th :$f1977 :$eUniversity of Reading)
If a conference is closely associated with a corporate body, many cataloguing codes stipulate that it be entered as a subordinate body to that corporate body, and therefore indicator position 1 is 0.
EX 14
710 10$aRichards$g(A.N.)$hSymposium$d(17th :$f1975 :$eKing of Prussia, Pa.)
710 12$aA.N. Richards Symposium$d(17th :$f1975 :$eKing of Prussia, Pa.)
Where the name of a conference begins with a personal name it may be formulated in the same way as in EX 9 and 10. The above shows two ways of entering a conference that begins with a personal name. The name may be inverted or not, according to the cataloguing rules followed.
EX 15
710 01$aCalifornia.$bUniversity
A university entered under its place.
EX 16
710 02$aMaria Teresa$c(Ship)
The name of a ship with a qualification in order to convey that it is a corporate body.
EX 17
710 01$aUnited States.$bNational Technical Information Service.$p5202 Port Royal Road, Springfield, VA 22161
The cataloguing code requires an address of a corporate body which is entered in $p.
EX 18
710 02$aEnglish Chamber Orchestra$4545$4och
In addition to $4545 (musician), one can code specifically for the type of orchestra ($4och = chamber orchestra).
EX 19
710 02$a"A.B. Mullett& Co."$4070
Record describes drawing of alterations to bakery building. Creator role of the corporate body responsible for the architectural project is specified in $4.
EX 20
710 02$aArt Metal Construction Co.$4410
Working drawings showing plans, details, and isometric projections. Creator role of the corporate body responsible for the design project is specified in $4.

History

1994	New subfields/values: Addition of new subfield $p Affiliation/address.

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	New subfield $o, for ISNI for name.
2024	Text edit.

711 CORPORATE BODY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a corporate body considered to have alternative responsibility for work in access point form.

If the record is created according to cataloguing rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not separately identify the main entry, all corporate names to be used as access points will be contained in field 711.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
711	CORPORATE BODY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
d	Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting	NR	O
e	Location of Meeting	NR	O
f	Date of Meeting	NR	O
g	Inverted Element	NR	O
h	Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element	NR	O
o	International Standard Identifier for the Name	R	O
p	Affiliation/Address	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Kind of Name of a Body
	0	Corporate name
	1	Meeting name
2		Form of Name Indicator
	0	Name in inverted form
	1	Name entered under place or jurisdiction
	2	Name entered under name in direct order

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Specifies the Kind of Name of a Body

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body (see EX 13 in the field 710). If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

The second indicator denotes the form of the corporate name.

Value 0: Name in inverted form

An inverted form may be used when the first word of a corporate name or meeting begins with an initial or forename relating to a personal name (see EX 9, 10, 14 in the field 710).

Value 1: Name entered under place or jurisdiction

Used for corporate names relating to governments or other agencies of jurisdiction that are entered under the name of the place (see EX 3, 5, 6, 7, 17 in the field 710). According to certain cataloguing codes other kinds of institutions associated with a place are also entered under that place, e.g. universities, learned societies, art galleries (see EX 15 in the field 710).

Value 2: Name entered under name in direct order

Used for all other kinds of corporate names.

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists, i.e. the part of the name up to the first filing boundary. This subfield is must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

$b Subdivision

The name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy; or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place (see EX 2-6, 13, 15 in the field 710).

This subfield excludes any additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see $c, $g, $h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy (see EX 3, 4, 5 in the field 710).

$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference. Repeatable. (See EX 6-9,11,16 in the field 710).

$d Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting

The number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series. Not repeatable. (See EX 12-14 in the field 710).

$e Location of Meeting

The place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (See EX 11-14 in the field 710).

$f Date of Meeting

The date of a meeting when it is required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (See EX 11-14 in the field 710).

$g Inverted Element

Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable. (See EX 9, 10, 14 in the field 710).

$h Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element

In a access point with inverted element, the part of the name following the inversion. Not repeatable (see EX 9, 10, 14 in the field 710).

$o International Standard Identifier for the Name

The ISNI or another international identifier assigned to the name recorded in the field.

The first four character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISNI, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$p Affiliation/Address

This subfield contains the address of the corporate body (see EX 17 in the field 710). Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the relator code schema from which the code in $4 is derived, when the code is not from UNIMARC Relator Codes. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. (See EX 12 in the field 710). Not repeatable.

$4 Relator Code

Used to designate the relationship between the corporate body named in the field and the resource to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in Appendix B. If greater precision is required for performers, a list of alphabetical codes is found at the end of field 146. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield. If another system is used, $4 can be used to carry other codes, followed by $2. Repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Form

The form of the name which appears in this field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always interfile correctly in one sequence. Until further standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

Corporate names are problematic since many corporate bodies do not have a precise name which remains constant. Furthermore individual cataloguing rules formalise the names in different ways and therefore use different kinds of data elements.

Inverted Data

One type of name which often presents difficulties is a corporate name formed from a personal name, e.g., W. H. Smith & Sons Ltd, J. F. Kennedy Center, Winston Churchill Memorial Centre. Some cataloguing codes stipulate that these should be entered in direct order in subfield $a; other rules require that the names be treated as a personal name and inverted hence coded in subfields $g and $h. UNIMARC accommodates both possibilities (see EX 9, 10, 14 in the field 710).

Entry under Place

Names of governments at all levels, e.g. national, provincial, and local, are formalisations of a different kind. Many such bodies have long formal names, but the practice of cataloguing codes is generally to take a short name of the place, e.g., France, Australia, rather than the formal name (Republic of France, Commonwealth of Australia) (see EX 7 in the field 710). Subordinate governmental bodies are often prefixed with the name of the government (see EX 5, 6 in the field 710). Cataloguing rules vary as to

whether bodies under government control but without legislative or executive power, such as national museums, are entered under the name of the government or under their own names. If entered under their own name, e.g., Civic Museum, they may need a qualification to distinguish between other organisations of the same name in other places. Some cataloguing rules have a further category of organisation entered under name of place: bodies like universities, learned societies etc. which are specifically attached to a place and tend to have the place name as part of their name; these may formalised in such a way as to bring the name of the place to the fore (see EX 15 in the field 710). The remainder of the name will be stripped of connecting prepositions; thus it is not strictly an inversion.

Qualifications

Guidance may be required on what elements are to be considered qualifications and hence are to be entered in subfield $c. This may be a place added in order to distinguish the body from others of the same name, e.g., Liberal Party (Australia). It may be a statement of type of body to distinguish it from a different type of body with the same name, e.g. Gibraltar (Diocese) to distinguish it from the colony, and New York (State) to distinguish it from the city. A third kind of addition consists of a term added to a name to convey that it is a corporate body, e.g., Eagles (Rugby club), Ecologica (Firm), HVJ (Radio station) (see EX 16 in the field 710). Usually cataloguing rules prescribe that the qualification be added in parentheses as in the examples above.

Formalised Additions to Names of Meetings

There are no universally accepted standards for the data elements "Number", "Location" and "Date of meeting". Numbers may be in Arabic or roman numerals, place names may be entered according to the language of the record, or the language on the original (see EX 11-14 in the field 710). The date may be entered in any form, although for an exchange record, if month and day are required in the access point, the date in international standard format (e.g., "19831101", for 1 November 1983) is recommended as it can easily be converted into any language if desired.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. It is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. In source formats where punctuation is not available, but is printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the subfields, it is recommended that the punctuation which would be used in display be included in the UNIMARC record. This includes parentheses which occur at the beginning and end of one or a group of subfields.

Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records. Details should be included in the documentation accompanying exchange tapes (see Appendix D).

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, subfield $f, First Statement of Responsibility	Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the resource. If there are two or three names in the first statement of responsibility, subsequent names after the first will often be names with alternative responsibility and, if the name of a corporate body, will be entered in field 711 in access point form.
710 CORPORATE BODY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY	If field 711 is used strictly for names of corporate bodies of alternative responsibility, field 710 (or 700) must be present. If field 711 is used because the cataloguing rules do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not distinguish it, then field 710 will not be present.
712 CORPORATE BODY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	If there are corporate bodies considered to have less responsibility than the corporate bodies named in fields 710 and 711, they should be entered in field 712.

Examples

EX 1
710 01$aPennsylvania.$bState University.$bDept. of Agricultural Economics and Rural Sociology
711 01$aPennsylvania.$bAgricultural Experiment Station, University Park
The corporate bodies have joint responsibility for a continuing resource. The name appearing second is coded as alternative.

History

1994	New subfields/values: Addition of new subfield $p Affiliation/address.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2024	Text edit.

712 CORPORATE BODY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a corporate body considered to have secondary responsibility for a work, in access point form.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
712	CORPORATE BODY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
d	Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting	NR	O
e	Location of Meeting	NR	O
f	Date of Meeting	NR	O
g	Inverted Element	NR	O
h	Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element	NR	O
o	International Standard Identifier for the Name	R	O
p	Affiliation/Address	NR	O
r	Part or Role Played	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Kind of Name of a Body
	0	Corporate name
	1	Meeting name
2		Form of Name indicator
	0	Name in inverted form
	1	Name entered under place or jurisdiction
	2	Name entered under name in direct order

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Specifies the Kind of Name of a Body

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body (see EX 13 in the field 710). If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

The second indicator denotes the form of the corporate name.

Value 0: Name in inverted form

An inverted form may be used when the first word of a corporate name or meeting begins with an initial or forename relating to a personal name (see EX 9, 10, 14 in the field 710).

Value 1: Name entered under place or jurisdiction

Used for corporate names relating to governments or other agencies of jurisdiction that are entered under the name of the place (see EX 3, 5, 6, 7, 17 in the field 710). According to certain cataloguing codes other kinds of institutions associated with a place are also entered under that place, e.g. universities, learned societies, art galleries (see EX 15 in the field 710).

Value 2: Name entered under name in direct order

Used for all other kinds of corporate names.

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists, i.e. the part of the name up to the first filing boundary. This subfield is must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

$b Subdivision

The name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy; or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place (see EX 2-6, 13, 15 in the field 710).

This subfield excludes any additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see $c, $g, $h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy (see EX 3, 4, 5 in the field 710).

$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference. Repeatable. (See EX 6-9,11,16 in the field 710).

$d Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting

The number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series. Not repeatable. (See EX 12-14 in the field 710).

$e Location of Meeting

The place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (See EX 11-14 in the field 710).

$f Date of Meeting

The date of a meeting when it is required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (See EX 11-14 in the field 710).

$g Inverted Element

Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable. (See EX 9, 10, 14 in the field 710).

$h Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element

In a access point with inverted element, the part of the name following the inversion. Not repeatable (see EX 9, 10, 14 in the field 710).

$o International Standard Identifier for the Name

The ISNI or another international identifier assigned to the name recorded in the field.

The first four character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISNI, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$p Affiliation/Address

This subfield contains the address of the corporate body (see EX 17 in the field 710). Not repeatable.

$r Part or Role Played

The name of a role interpreted, played or sung by the corporate body designed by the access point. This subfield is especially used in records for audiovisual material (motion pictures, sound or video recordings of theatre plays or operas or other vocal works). It is used when $4 is present and contains values such as "275" (Dancer), "721" (Singer), etc. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the relator code schema from which the code in $4 is derived, when the code is not from UNIMARC Relator Codes. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. (See EX 12 in the field 710). Not repeatable.

$4 Relator Code

Used to designate the relationship between the corporate body named in the field and the resource to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in Appendix B. If greater precision is required for performers, a list of alphabetical codes is found at the end of field 146. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield. If another system is used, $4 can be used to carry other codes, followed by $2. Repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field is used, where applicable for printers, publishers.

For the name of a corporate body regarding any type of provenance and/or ownership, use field 713.

Subfield $5, Institution to which Field Applies is used only when the added entries are peculiar to a specific item. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).

Form

The form of the name which appears in this field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These

notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always interfile correctly in one sequence. Until further standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

Corporate names are problematic since many corporate bodies do not have a precise name which remains constant. Furthermore individual cataloguing rules formalise the names in different ways and therefore use different kinds of data elements.

Inverted Data

One type of name which often presents difficulties is a corporate name formed from a personal name, e.g., W. H. Smith & Sons Ltd, J. F. Kennedy Center, Winston Churchill Memorial Centre. Some cataloguing codes stipulate that these should be entered in direct order in subfield $a; other rules require that the names be treated as a personal name and inverted hence coded in subfields $g and $h. UNIMARC accommodates both possibilities (see EX 9, 10, 14 in the field 710).

Entry under Place

Names of governments at all levels, e.g. national, provincial, and local, are formalisations of a different kind. Many such bodies have long formal names, but the practice of cataloguing codes is generally to take a short name of the place, e.g., France, Australia, rather than the formal name (Republic of France, Commonwealth of Australia) (see EX 7 in the field 710).. Subordinate governmental bodies are often prefixed with the name of the government (see EX 5, 6 in the field 710). Cataloguing rules vary as to whether bodies under government control but without legislative or executive power, such as national museums, are entered under the name of the government or under their own names. If entered under their own name, e.g., Civic Museum, they may need a qualification to distinguish between other organisations of the same name in other places. Some cataloguing rules have a further category of organisation entered under name of place: bodies like universities, learned societies etc. which are specifically attached to a place and tend to have the place name as part of their name; these may formalised in such a way as to bring the name of the place to the fore (see EX 15 in the field 710). The remainder of the name will be stripped of connecting prepositions; thus it is not strictly an inversion.

Qualifications

Guidance may be required on what elements are to be considered qualifications and hence are to be entered in subfield $c. This may be a place added in order to distinguish the body from others of the same name, e.g., Liberal Party (Australia). It may be a statement of type of body to distinguish it from a different type of body with the same name, e.g. Gibraltar (Diocese) to distinguish it from the colony, and New York (State) to distinguish it from the city. A third kind of addition consists of a term added to a name to convey that it is a corporate body, e.g., Eagles (Rugby club), Ecologica (Firm), HVJ (Radio station) (see EX 16 in the field 710). Usually cataloguing rules prescribe that the qualification be added in parentheses as in the examples above.

Formalised Additions to Names of Meetings

There are no universally accepted standards for the data elements "Number", "Location" and "Date of meeting". Numbers may be in Arabic or roman numerals, place names may be entered according to the language of the record, or the language on the original (see EX 11-14 in the field 710). The date may be entered in any form, although for an exchange record, if month and day are required in the access point, the date in international standard format (e.g., "19831101", for 1 November 1983) is recommended as it can easily be converted into any language if desired.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. It is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. In source formats where punctuation is not available, but is printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the subfields, it is recommended that the punctuation which would be used in display be included in the UNIMARC record. This includes parentheses which occur at the beginning and end of one or a group of subfields.

Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records. Details should be included in the documentation accompanying exchange tapes (see Appendix D).

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, subfields $f and $g, First Statement of Responsibility, and Subsequent Statement of Responsibility	Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the resource. The name of the corporate body mentioned in $f or in $g to which is attributed secondary responsibility for the resource (if any) will be entered in field 712 in access point form.
710 CORPORATE BODY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY	The name of the first corporate body mentioned in the title page with primary responsibility should be entered in field 710. Names of corporate bodies with secondary responsibility are entered in 712. In the majority of cataloguing rules, it is possible for a body to have secondary responsibility without any body with primary responsibility being present in the record. Therefore field 712 can be present without a field 700, 710, or 720.
711 CORPORATE BODY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY	Alternative means a second or further instance of primary responsibility. However, if the record is catalogued according to rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not separately identify it, all corporate names should be entered in field 711.
713 CORPORATE BODY NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP	The name of the corporate body of previous ownership or custodianship, author of signature, informal dedication, annotations, etc.

Examples

EX 1
712 02$aIEA Coal Research
On title page: Coal research projects, United Kingdom, London, IEA Coal Research. IEA Coal Research is given as publisher, but clearly has a greater degree of responsibility for the resource than a publisher usually has.
EX 2
712 02$aNacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka$bKnjigoveznica$5CiZaNSB: R IV-4º -5b
This copy of J. W. Valvasor's *Crain,* 1689 was rebound in the Binding Department of the National and University Library (Nacionalna i sveučilišna biblioteka), Zagreb, on 23 May 1991.
EX 3
702 #1$aBinder$bJoseph$f1898-1972$4040
710 02$aAtelier Binder G.m.b.H.$4040
712 02$aWaldheim-Eberle A.G$4510
Record describes travel poster created by Atelier Binder (probably designed by Joseph Binder). Lithograph in colour was printed by Waldheim-Eberle A.G.

History

1994	New subfields/values: Addition of new subfield $p Affiliation/address.
1996	New paragraphs/subfield/examples.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates. Added subfield $5.

2012	Corrections and additions.
2024	Text edit.

713 CORPORATE BODY NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a corporate body regarding any type of provenance and/or ownership (previous ownership or custodianship, author of signature, informal dedication, annotations, etc.), that apply uniquely to the item, in access point form.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
713	CORPORATE BODY NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP	NR	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
d	Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting	NR	O
e	Location of Meeting	NR	O
f	Date of Meeting	NR	O
g	Inverted Element	NR	O
h	Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element	NR	O
o	International Standard Identifier for the Name	R	O
p	Affiliation/Address	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Specifies the Kind of Name of a Body
	0	Corporate name
	1	Meeting name
2		Form of Name Indicator
	0	Name in inverted form
	1	Name entered under place or jurisdiction
	2	Name entered under name in direct order

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Specifies the Kind of Name of a Body

The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body (see EX 13 in the field 710). If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

The second indicator denotes the form of the corporate name.

Value 0: Name in inverted form

An inverted form may be used when the first word of a corporate name or meeting begins with an initial or forename relating to a personal name (see EX 9, 10, 14 in the field 710).

Value 1: Name entered under place or jurisdiction

Used for corporate names relating to governments or other agencies of jurisdiction that are entered under the name of the place (see EX 3, 5, 6, 7, 17 in the field 710). According to certain cataloguing codes other kinds of institutions associated with a place are also entered under that place, e.g. universities, learned societies, art galleries (see EX 15 in the field 710).

Value 2: Name entered under name in direct order

Used for all other kinds of corporate names.

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists, i.e. the part of the name up to the first filing boundary. This subfield is must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

$b Subdivision

The name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy; or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place (see EX 2-6, 13, 15 in the field 710).

This subfield excludes any additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see $c, $g, $h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy (see EX 3, 4, 5 in the field 710).

$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference. Repeatable. (See EX 6-9,11,16 in the field 710).

$d Number of Meeting and/or Number of Part of Meeting

The number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series. Not repeatable. (See EX 12-14 in the field 710).

$e Location of Meeting

The place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (See EX 11-14 in the field 710).

$f Date of Meeting

The date of a meeting when it is required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (See EX 11-14 in the field 710).

$g Inverted Element

Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable. (See EX 9, 10, 14 in the field 710).

$h Part of Name Other than Entry Element and Inverted Element

In a access point with inverted element, the part of the name following the inversion. Not repeatable (see EX 9, 10, 14 in the field 710).

$o International Standard Identifier for the Name

The ISNI or another international identifier assigned to the name recorded in the field.

The first four character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISNI, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$p Affiliation/Address

This subfield contains the address of the corporate body (see EX 17 in the field 710). Not repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the relator code schema from which the code in $4 is derived, when the code is not from UNIMARC Relator Codes. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. (See EX 12 in the field 710). Not repeatable.

$4 Relator Code

Used to designate the relationship between the corporate body named in the field and the resource to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in Appendix B. If greater precision is required for performers, a list of alphabetical codes is found at the end of field 146. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield. If another system is used, $4 can be used to carry other codes, followed by $2. Repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is primarily intended for use in holdings records. However, if the agency which create the record do not use the UNIMARC Holdings Format, and the attributes of the resource are created at bibliographic record level, this field is used, where applicable, for entities (corporate body names) that have any kind of provenance and/or ownership regarding a specific item.

Subfield $5, code of the Institution to Which Field Applies is used only when the provenance or ownership apply to a specific item.

Form

The form of the name which appears in this field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always interfile correctly in one sequence. Until further standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

Corporate names are problematic since many corporate bodies do not have a precise name which remains constant. Furthermore individual cataloguing rules formalise the names in different ways and therefore use different kinds of data elements.

Inverted Data

One type of name which often presents difficulties is a corporate name formed from a personal name, e.g., W. H. Smith & Sons Ltd, J. F. Kennedy Center, Winston Churchill Memorial Centre. Some cataloguing codes stipulate that these should be entered in direct order in subfield $a; other rules require that the names be treated as a personal name and inverted hence coded in subfields $g and $h. UNIMARC accommodates both possibilities (see EX 9, 10, 14 in the field 710).

Entry under Place

Names of governments at all levels, e.g. national, provincial, and local, are formalisations of a different kind. Many such bodies have long formal names, but the practice of cataloguing codes is generally to take a short name of the place, e.g., France, Australia, rather than the formal name (Republic of France, Commonwealth of Australia) (see EX 7 in the field 710).. Subordinate governmental bodies are often prefixed with the name of the government (see EX 5, 6 in the field 710). Cataloguing rules vary as to whether bodies under government control but without legislative or executive power, such as national museums, are entered under the name of the government or under their own names. If entered under their own name, e.g., Civic Museum, they may need a qualification to distinguish between other organisations of the same name in other places. Some cataloguing rules have a further category of organisation entered under name of place: bodies like universities, learned societies etc. which are specifically attached to a place and tend to have the place name as part of their name; these may formalised in such a way as to bring the name of the place to the fore (see EX 15 in the field 710). The remainder of the name will be stripped of connecting prepositions; thus it is not strictly an inversion.

Qualifications

Guidance may be required on what elements are to be considered qualifications and hence are to be entered in subfield $c. This may be a place added in order to distinguish the body from others of the same name, e.g., Liberal Party (Australia). It may be a statement of type of body to distinguish it from a different type of body with the same name, e.g. Gibraltar (Diocese) to distinguish it from the colony, and New York (State) to distinguish it from the city. A third kind of addition consists of a term added to a name to convey that it is a corporate body, e.g., Eagles (Rugby club), Ecologica (Firm), HVJ (Radio station) (see EX 16 in the field 710). Usually cataloguing rules prescribe that the qualification be added in parentheses as in the examples above.

Formalised Additions to Names of Meetings

There are no universally accepted standards for the data elements "Number", "Location" and "Date of meeting". Numbers may be in Arabic or roman numerals, place names may be entered according to the language of the record, or the language on the original (see EX 11-14 in the field 710). The date may be entered in any form, although for an exchange record, if month and day are required in the access point, the date in international standard format (e.g., "19831101", for 1 November 1983) is recommended as it can easily be converted into any language if desired.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. It is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. In source formats where punctuation is not available, but is printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the subfields, it is recommended that the punctuation which would be used in display be included in the UNIMARC record. This includes parentheses which occur at the beginning and end of one or a group of subfields.

Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records. Details should be included in the documentation accompanying exchange tapes (see Appendix D).

This field is primarily intended for use in holdings records. However, if the agency which create the record do not use the UNIMARC Holdings Format, and the attributes of the resource are created at bibliographic record level, this field is used, where applicable, for entities (corporate body names) that have any kind of provenance and / or ownership regarding a specific item.

Subfield $5, code of the Institution to Which Field Applies is used only when the provenance or ownership apply to a specific item.

Related Fields

703 PERSONAL NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP
723 FAMILY NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP

Examples

EX 1
713 02$aOrdem de Cister.$bMosteiro de Santa Maria$c(Alcobaça)$4390

History

2012	New field.
2024	Text edit.

716 TRADEMARK

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a trademark involved in the production of a work, in a form suitable for an access point.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
716	TRADEMARK	R	O
a	Data Element	NR	O
f	Dates	NR	O
c	Qualification	R	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Data Element

The trademark name access point form. Not repeatable.

$f Dates

The dates between which a particular trademark is in use, when they are required as part of the access point, for example, as qualifiers. Not repeatable.

$c Qualification

Any addition to the name of the trademark added by the cataloguer, other than dates. Repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

Note on Field Contents

Form of Name

The form of name which appears in the field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

Relator Code

The relator code $4 is not necessary, the tag 716 being sufficient to express the relation of trademark.

Definition

A trademark or "mark" is a distinctive word, phrase, logo, design, or any other device that can be represented graphically, used by a business or company to identify its products or services and distiguish them from the products and services made, sold or provided by others. Some examples are: *Levi's* (trademark of Levi Strauss & Co.); *Pentium* (trademark of Intel Corporation), *Decca* (trademark of Decca Record Company).

Under the common term trademark other specific categories of marks such as service marks, trade dress, collective marks, etc., can be found.

The trade name of a business can function as a mark as well. For instance Sony Music Entertainment Inc. uses its trade name Sony Music as a trademark on its line of sound recordings.

As far as sound recordings are concerned, the trademark, commonly known as the "label", together with the label number uniquely identifies each commercial recording. (see field 071 Publisher's Number (Sound Recordings and Music)).

Related Fields

071 PUBLISHER'S NUMBER (SOUND RECORDINGS AND MUSIC), subfield $b, Source (agency which assigned the number)

Examples

EX 1
071 00$a3984292582$bErato
310 ##$aErato 3984292582 (album)
716 ##$3<AR_ID>$aErato
EX 2
071 00$aCOL6653152$cboîte$bColumbia$dCB 608
716 ##$3<AR_ID>$aColumbia$f1889$cÉtats-Unis

History

2002	New field.
2012	Corrections.
2024	Text edit.

720 FAMILY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a family considered to have primary responsibility for work, in access point form.

The name of the family in this field provides that the record is created according to cataloguing rules recognising the concept of the main entry.

It may not occur in the same record as 700 Personal Name – Primary Responsibility, field 710 Corporate Body Name - Primary Responsibility or field 740 Uniform Conventional Heading for Legal and Religious Texts - Primary Responsibility, since a record can have only one access point with primary responsibility. If the concept of main entry does not exist in the cataloguing rules, or the source format does not make the distinction, this field does not occur: field 721 is used for all family name access point (see Related Fields).

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
720	FAMILY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY	NR	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
c	Type of Family	NR	O
d	Places Associated with the Family	R	O
f	Dates	NR	O
o	International Standard Identifier for the Name	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The family name in access point form. This subfield is must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

$c Type of Family

A categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family. Includes categorizations such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc. Not repeatable.

$d Places Associated with the Family

Information pertaining to places where the family resides or resided or had some connection. Repeatable.

$f Dates

The dates of a family when they are required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (EX 3).

$o International Standard Identifier for the Name

The ISNI or another international identifier assigned to the name recorded in the field. The first four character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISNI, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the relator code schema from which the code in $4 is derived, when the code is not from UNIMARC Relator Codes. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

$4 Relator Code

A code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the bibliographic item to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in Appendix B. If greater precision is required for performers, a list of alphabetical codes is found at the end of field 146. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield. If another system is used, $4 can be used to carry other codes, followed by $2. Repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Form of Name

The form of name which appears in the field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

Subfield $a includes the name of the family. Qualifying data are recorded in $c, $d and $f.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. However, it is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. If the source format uses additional subfields it is recommended that punctuation be printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the additional subfields. Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records.

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, subfields $f and $g, First Statement of Responsibility, and Subsequent Statement of Responsibility	Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the resource. The name of the family mentioned in $f, or rarely in $g, to whom is attributed primary responsibility for the resource (if any) will be entered in 720 in access point form.
721 FAMILY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY	A family may have alternative responsibility in similar circumstances to a corporate body. The field should be used in all cases if a source record does not distinguish between primary and secondary responsibility for families.
722 FAMILY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	A family may be regarded as having secondary responsibility, in the same way as a corporate body (see Field 712).

Examples

EX 1
720 ##$aCecil$cfamily

EX 2
720 ##$aBuchanan$cclan
EX 3
720 ##$aShah$cdynasty$f1768-

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Corrections and additions.
2024	Text edit.

721 FAMILY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a family considered to have alternative responsibility for work, in access point form.

If the record is created according to cataloguing rules which do not recognise the concept of the main entry, or the source format does not separately identify main entry all family names in a form suitable for an access point will be contained in field 721.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
721	FAMILY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
c	Type of Family	NR	O
d	Places Associated with the Family	R	O
f	Dates	NR	O
o	International Standard Identifier for the Name	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The family name in access point form. This subfield is must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

$c Type of Family

A categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family. Includes categorizations such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc. Not repeatable.

$d Places Associated with the Family

Information pertaining to places where the family resides or resided or had some connection. Repeatable.

$f Dates

The dates of a family when they are required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (See EX 3 in the field 720).

$o International Standard Identifier for the Name

The ISNI or another international identifier assigned to the name recorded in the field. The first four character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISNI, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the relator code schema from which the code in $4 is derived, when the code is not from UNIMARC Relator Codes. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

$4 Relator Code

A code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the bibliographic item to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in Appendix B. If greater precision is required for performers, a list of alphabetical codes is found at the end of field 146. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield. If another system is used, $4 can be used to carry other codes, followed by $2. Repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The form of the data in the examples under field 720 applies equally here.

Form of Name

The form of name which appears in the field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

Subfield $a includes the name of the family. Qualifying data are recorded in $c, $d and $f.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. However, it is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. If the source format uses additional subfields it is recommended that punctuation be printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the additional subfields. Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records.

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, subfield $f, First Statement of Responsibility	Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the resource. If there are two or three names in the first statement of responsibility, subsequent names after the first will often be names with alternative responsibility.
720 FAMILY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY	If field 721 is used for names of families of alternative responsibility, field 720 (or rarely 710 or 700) must be present. If field 721 is used because the cataloguing rules do not recognise the concept of main entry, or the source format does not distinguish it, then field 720 will not be present.
722 FAMILY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	If there are families considered to have less responsibility than persons or entities in fields 700, 701, 710, 711, 720, 721, they should be entered in field 722.

History

2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2024	Text edit.

722 FAMILY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a family considered to have secondary responsibility for a work, in access point form.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
722	FAMILY NAME – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
c	Type of Family	NR	O
d	Places Associated with the Family	R	O
f	Dates	NR	O
o	International Standard Identifier for the Name	R	O
r	Part or Role Played	R	O
2	Source		O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The family name in access point form. This subfield is must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

$c Type of Family

A categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family. Includes categorizations such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc. Not repeatable.

$d Places Associated with the Family

Information pertaining to places where the family resides or resided or had some connection. Repeatable.

$f Dates

The dates of a family when they are required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (See EX 3 in the field 720).

$o International Standard Identifier for the Name

The ISNI or another international identifier assigned to the name recorded in the field. The first four character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISNI, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$r Part or Role Played

The name of a role interpreted, played or sung by the corporate body designed by the access point. This subfield is especially used in records for audiovisual material (motion pictures, sound or video recordings

of theatre plays or operas or other vocal works). It is used when $4 is present and contains values such as "275" (Dancer), "721" (Singer), etc. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the relator code schema from which the code in $4 is derived, when the code is not from UNIMARC Relator Codes. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

$4 Relator Code

A code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the bibliographic item to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in Appendix B. If greater precision is required for performers, a list of alphabetical codes is found at the end of field 146. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield. If another system is used, $4 can be used to carry other codes, followed by $2. Repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Subfield $5, Institution to which the Field Applies, is used only when the added entry/ies are applied to a specific item. It is generally used for older monographic publications (antiquarian).

The form of the data in the examples under field 720 applies equally here.

Form of Name

The form of name which appears in the field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

Subfield $a includes the name of the family. Qualifying data are recorded in $c, $d and $f.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. However, it is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. If the source format uses additional subfields it is recommended that punctuation be printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the additional subfields. Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records.

Related Fields

200 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY, subfields $f and $g, First Statement of Responsibility, and Subsequent Statement of Responsibility	Data in field 200 is recorded as it appears on the resource. The name of the family mentioned in $f or in $g to whom is attributed secondary responsibility for the resource (if any) will be entered in field 722 in access point form.
720 FAMILY NAME – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY	The name of the first family mentioned in the title page with primary responsibility should be entered in field 720. Names of families with secondary responsibility are entered in 722.
721 FAMILY NAME – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY	Alternative means a second or further instance of primary responsibility. However, if the record is catalogued according to rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry, or the source format does not separately identify it, all family names should be entered in field 721.

Examples

The form of the data in the examples under field 720 applies equally here.

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	Added subfield $5. Field may be linked to indicate to which specific copy a specific instance of a field relates.
2012	Corrections and additions.
2024	Text edit.

723 FAMILY NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the name of a family regarding any type of provenance and / or ownership (previous ownership or custodianship), that apply uniquely to the item, in access point form.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
723	FAMILY NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
c	Type of Family	NR	O
d	Places Associated with the Family	R	O
f	Dates	NR	O
o	International Standard Identifier for the Name	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The family name in access point form. This subfield is must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

$c Type of Family

A categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family. Includes categorizations such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc. Not repeatable.

$d Places Associated with the Family

Information pertaining to places where the family resides or resided or had some connection. Repeatable.

$f Dates

The dates of a family when they are required as part of the access point. Not repeatable. (See EX 3 in the field 720).

$o International Standard Identifier for the Name

The ISNI or another international identifier assigned to the name recorded in the field. The first four character positions contain an alphabetic code specifying the nature of the identifier; in the case of an ISNI, this code corresponds to the letters preceding the number. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form for the relator code schema from which the code in $4 is derived, when the code is not from UNIMARC Relator Codes. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

$4 Relator Code

A code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the bibliographic item to which the record refers.

Relator codes can be either numerical or alphabetical. The list of numerical codes is to be found in Appendix B. If greater precision is required for performers, a list of alphabetical codes is found at the end of field 146. An agency requiring greater precision should use the numeric code followed by the more specific alphabetic code in a repeated subfield. If another system is used, $4 can be used to carry other codes, followed by $2. Repeatable.

$5 Institution to which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used.

If the institution holds more than one copy the shelfmark of the item should be added after a colon. Not repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is primarily intended for use in holdings records. However, if the agency which create the record do not use the *UNIMARC Holdings Format*, and the attributes of the resource are created at bibliographic record level, this field is used, where applicable, for entities (family names) that have any kind of provenance and / or ownership regarding a specific item.

Subfield $5, code of the Institution to Which Field Applies is used only when the provenance or ownership apply to a specific item.

Form of Name

The form of name which appears in the field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authorities used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

Subfield $a includes the name of the family. Qualifying data are recorded in $c, $d and $f.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. However, it is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. If the source format uses additional subfields it is recommended that punctuation be printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the additional subfields. Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records.

Related Fields

703 PERSONAL NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP
713 CORPORATE BODY NAME – PROVENANCE OR OWNERSHIP

Examples

EX 1

723 ##$aAndrade Corvo,$cFamília$4390

History

2012	New field.
2024	Text edit.

730 NAME – ENTITY RESPONSIBLE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains in unstructured form the name of an entity considered to have responsibility for a work.

The name does not follow cataloguing rules. This field should be used only when other 7-- fields are unsuitable.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
730	NAME – ENTITY RESPONSIBLE	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	O
4	Relator Code	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Form of Name Indicator
	0	Type of name cannot be determined
	1	Personal name
	2	Not a personal name
2	#	blank (not defined)

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Form of Name Indicator

This indicator specifies whether the type of name has been detemined or not.

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The name used as the entry element in the access point. Not repeatable.

$4 Relator Code

The code used to designate the relationship between the entity named in the field and the bibliographic resource to which the record refers. The list of codes is to be found in Appendix B. Repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
730 0#$aDerek Weselak$4070
Dublin Core: <META NAME="DC.Creator"CONTENT="Derek Weselak"> The record was converted from a Dublin Core entry which makes no distinction between personal authors and others. “Creator” has the sense of primary responsibility for the resource so the relator code for “author” is added.
EX 2
730 2#$aInformation Systems, British Library$4070
Dublin Core: <META NAME="DC.Creator.Organization" CONTENT="Information Systems, British Library">
EX 3
730 1#$aWeselak, Derek

Dublin Core: <META NAME="DC.Creator.Personal" CONTENT="Weselak, Derek"> CONTENT takes the form “term comma term” and the NAME is “Creator.Personal”. The name could with some confidence be assigned to a more specific 7-- field by the use of computer algorithms.
EX 4
730 0#$aDerek Weselak
Dublin Core: <META NAME="DC.Contributor" CONTENT="Derek Weselak"> The record was converted from a Dublin Core entry which makes no distinction between personal authors and others. “Contributor” has the sense of any responsibility for the resource other than primary responsibility, e.g. illustrator, sponsor, so no relator code can be added.

History

2000	New field.

740 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the uniform conventional headings for legal and religious texts of a prescriptive nature and for treaties and other agreements between two or more parties, issued under a given jurisdiction, usually a country, or a church, in access point form.

Conventional headings for legal and religious texts are usually formed by the name of the jurisdiction of church and a uniform conventional title. The headings for treaties are usually formed by the name of the jurisdiction of the first party, followed by a uniform conventional title and the name of the jurisdiction of the other party. They can also be formed just by a conventional title, commonly recognized.

Uniform conventional headings provide that the record is created according to cataloguing rules recognising the concept of main entry and the use of uniform conventional headings for such kinds of legal and religious texts.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
740	UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY	NR	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
e	Name of the Other Party	NR	O
f	Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of Signing	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
l	Form Subheading	R	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	R	O
t	Uniform Title	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Form of Name Indicator
	1	Name entered under country or other geographical name
	2	Name entered under other form, e.g. a church or a simply a conventional name

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

The second indicator denotes the form of conventional heading.

Value 1: Name entered under country or other geographical name

Used for jurisdictional geographical names.

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The entry element of the name of jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued. This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

$b Subdivision

The name of a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued, when the name includes a hierarchy. Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy (EX 4).

$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation or the treaty or other agreement are issued, added by the cataloguer to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions. Repeatable. (EX 5).

$e Name of the Other Party

The name of jurisdiction of other party(ies) under which the treaty or other agreement between two or more parts is issued. If necessary, subfield $b for a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction, and/or $c to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions, could be used (EX 9, 10). Not repeatable.

$f Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of Signing

The date of legal issue or version when is added to the uniform conventional heading (EX 2, 3). The year, earlier year or earliest year of signing of the treaty, convention or protocols when added to the uniform conventional heading (EX 9, 10). Repeatable.

$i Name of Section or Part

The name of a part when the resource to which the uniform conventional heading is being applied is only a part of the text named in the heading (EX 2). Repeatable for a subdivided part (EX 7).

$l Form Subheading

Standard phrase added to a headine to further specify the uniform conventional heading. Repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield. Repeatable.

$t Uniform Title

Uniform title for the text being catalogued. The term(s) of the uniform title may include specifications by date or version of given types. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Form

The form of the heading which appears in this field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authority entries used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always inter-file correctly in one sequence. Until further standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

Entry Under Place

Names of jurisdictions at all levels, e.g. national, provincial, and local, are formalisations of a different kind. Many such bodies have long formal names, but the practice of cataloguing codes is generally to take

a short name of the place, e.g., Portugal, Australia, rather than the formal name (Portuguese Republic, Commonwealth of Australia) (EX 1, 2, 3).

Qualifications

Guidance may be required on what elements are to be considered qualifications and hence are to be entered in subfield $c. This may be a place name added in order to distinguish the jurisdiction from others of the same name, e.g., Washington (state). Usually cataloguing rules prescribe that the qualification be added in parentheses as in the examples above (EX 5).

Formalised Additions to Uniform Titles

There may be needed to further specify a uniform title by date of legal issue or version of a given type, in order to provide more specific aggregation of resources catalogued when they are numerous. The criteria for this, as well as the type of further specification depends on the cataloguing rules and practice of the cataloguing agency.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. It is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. In source formats where punctuation is not available, but is printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the subfields, it is recommended that the punctuation which would be used in display be included in the UNIMARC record. This includes parentheses which occur at the beginning and end of one or a group of subfields.

Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records. Details should be included in the documentation accompanying exchange tapes (see Appendix D).

Related Fields

741 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY	A uniform conventional heading may have alternative responsibility to either a person or body named in fields 700 or 710 or to another heading named in field 740. In this case field 741 is used since there may be no more than one occurrence altogether in a record of fields 700 and 710.
742 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	A uniform conventional heading could be considered secondary responsibility, in which case it will be entered in field 742.

Examples

EX 1
740 #1$aPortugal$tLeis, decretos, etc.
EX 2
200 1#$aCódigo de processo penal$eaprovado pelo decreto-lei nº 78-87 de 17 de Fevereiro
740 #1$aPortugal$tLeis, decretos, etc.$iCódigo de processo penal,$f1987
EX 3
200 10$aConstituição portuguesa de 1976
740 #1$aPortugal$tConstituição,$f1976
EX 4
740 #1$aCanadá.$bOntario.$tLeis, decretos, etc.
EX 5

740 #1$aEstados Unidos.$bWashington$c(estado).$tLeis, decretos, etc.
EX 6
200 1#$aMissale cisterciense ad usum Sacrae Congregationis Divi Bernardi, in Lusitaniae e Algarbiorum Regnis
740 #2$aIgreja Católica$tLiturgia e ritual
EX 7
200 1#$aMissale Romanum
740 #2$aCatholic Church$tLiturgy$iMissale$iKyriale
EX 8
740 #1$aPortugal.$tTratados, etc.
A collection of treaties between Portugal and others parties.
EX 9
200 1#$aTratado de amizade, navegação, e commercio renovado entre Portugal e a Rússia, e assignado em Petersbourgo aos 16-27 de Dezembro de 1798
740 #1$aPortugal.$tTratados, etc.$eRússia,$f1798
741 #1$aRússia.$tTratados, etc.$ePortugal,$f1798
EX 10
740 #1$aPortugal$tTratados, etc.$eEspanha$f1810
741 #1$aEspanha$tTratados, etc.$ePortugal$f1810
A treaty between Portugal and Spain.
EX 11
200 1#$aConcordatum inter Aulam Romanan, et Olisiponensem, quo nova regula statutus nominandorum beneficiorum in regnis Portugalliae, et Algarbiorum constitutorum…, Olisipone die XX, Mensis Julii… anni MDCCLXXVIII
740 #2$aIgreja Católica$tTratados, etc.$ePortugal$f1778
741 #1$aPortugal$tTratados, etc.$eIgreja Católica$f1778
A treaty between the Catholic Church and Portugal.

History

2008	New field.
2024	Text edit.

741 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the uniform conventional headings for legal and religious texts of a prescriptive nature and for treaties between two or more parties, considered to have alternative responsibility for work, in access point form.

If the record is created according to cataloguing rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not separately identify the main entry, all conventional headings to be used as access points will be contained in field 741.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
741	UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
e	Name of the Other Party	NR	O
f	Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of Signing	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
l	Form Subheading	R	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	R	O
t	Uniform Title	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Form of Name Indicator
	1	Name entered under country or other geographical name
	2	Name entered under other form, e.g. a church or a simply a conventional name

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

The second indicator denotes the form of conventional heading.

Value 1: Name entered under country or other geographical name

Used for jurisdictional geographical names.

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The entry element of the name of jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued. This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

$b Subdivision

The name of a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued, when the name includes a hierarchy. Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy (see EX 4 in the field 740).

$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation or the treaty or other agreement are issued, added by the cataloguer to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions. Repeatable. (see EX 5 in the field 740).

$e Name of the Other Party

The name of jurisdiction of other party(ies) under which the treaty or other agreement between two or more parts is issued. If necessary, subfield $b for a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction, and/or $c to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions, could be used (see EX 9, 10 in the field 740). Not repeatable.

$f Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of Signing

The date of legal issue or version when is added to the uniform conventional heading (see EX 2, 3 in the field 740). The year, earlier year or earliest year of signing of the treaty, convention or protocols when added to the uniform conventional heading (see EX 9, 10 in the field 740). Repeatable.

$i Name of Section or Part

The name of a part when the resource to which the uniform conventional heading is being applied is only a part of the text named in the heading (see EX 2 in the field 740). Repeatable for a subdivided part (see EX 7 in the field 740).

$l Form Subheading

Standard phrase added to a headine to further specify the uniform conventional heading. Repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield. Repeatable.

$t Uniform Title

Uniform title for the text being catalogued. The term(s) of the uniform title may include specifications by date or version of given types. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The form of the data in the examples under field 740 applies equally here.

Form

The form of the heading which appears in this field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authority entries used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always inter-file correctly in one sequence. Until further standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

Entry Under Place

Names of jurisdictions at all levels, e.g. national, provincial, and local, are formalisations of a different kind. Many such bodies have long formal names, but the practice of cataloguing codes is generally to take a short name of the place, e.g., Portugal, Australia, rather than the formal name (Portuguese Republic, Commonwealth of Australia) (see EX 1, 2, 3 in the field 740).

Qualifications

Guidance may be required on what elements are to be considered qualifications and hence are to be entered in subfield $c. This may be a place name added in order to distinguish the jurisdiction from others of the same name, e.g., Washington (state). Usually cataloguing rules prescribe that the qualification be added in parentheses as in the examples above (see EX 5 in the field 740).

Formalised Additions to Uniform Titles

There may be needed to further specify a uniform title by date of legal issue or version of a given type, in order to provide more specific aggregation of resources catalogued when they are numerous. The criteria for this, as well as the type of further specification depends on the cataloguing rules and practice of the cataloguing agency.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. It is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. In source formats where punctuation is not available, but is printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the subfields, it is recommended that the punctuation which would be used in display be included in the UNIMARC record. This includes parentheses which occur at the beginning and end of one or a group of subfields.

Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records. Details should be included in the documentation accompanying exchange tapes (see Appendix D).

Related Fields

740 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY	If the the 741 is used strictly for uniform conventional heading of alternative responsibility, field 740, 700 or 710 must be present. If the field 741 is used because the cataloguing rules do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not distinguish it, then field 740 will not be present.
742 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	A uniform conventional heading could be considered secondary responsibility, in which case it will be entered in field 742.

History

2008	New field.
2024	Text edit.

742 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the uniform conventional headings for legal and religious texts of a prescriptive nature and for treaties between two or more parties, considered to have secondary responsibility for a work in access point form.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
742	UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – SECONDARY RESPONSIBILITY	R	O
a	Entry Element	NR	MA
b	Subdivision	R	O
c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	R	O
e	Name of the Other Party	NR	O
f	Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of Signing	R	O
i	Name of Section or Part	R	O
l	Form Subheading	R	O
n	Miscellaneous Information	R	O
t	Uniform Title	NR	O
3	Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Form of Name Indicator
	1	Name entered under country or other geographical name
	2	Name entered under other form, e.g. a church or a simply a conventional name

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Form of Name Indicator

The second indicator denotes the form of conventional heading.

Value 1: Name entered under country or other geographical name

Used for jurisdictional geographical names.

Subfields Description

$a Entry Element

The entry element of the name of jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued. This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

$b Subdivision

The name of a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued, when the name includes a hierarchy. Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy (see EX 4 in the field 740).

$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation or the treaty or other agreement are issued, added by the cataloguer to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions. Repeatable. (see EX 5 in the field 740).

$e Name of the Other Party

The name of jurisdiction of other party(ies) under which the treaty or other agreement between two or more parts is issued. If necessary, subfield $b for a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction, and/or $c to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions, could be used (see EX 9, 10 in the field 740). Not repeatable.

$f Date of Legal Issue or Version, or Date of Signing

The date of legal issue or version when is added to the uniform conventional heading (see EX 2, 3 in the field 740). The year, earlier year or earliest year of signing of the treaty, convention or protocols when added to the uniform conventional heading (see EX 9, 10 in the field 740). Repeatable.

$i Name of Section or Part

The name of a part when the resource to which the uniform conventional heading is being applied is only a part of the text named in the heading (see EX 2 in the field 740). Repeatable for a subdivided part (see EX 7 in the field 740).

$l Form Subheading

Standard phrase added to a headine to further specify the uniform conventional heading. Repeatable.

$n Miscellaneous Information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield. Repeatable.

$t Uniform Title

Uniform title for the text being catalogued. The term(s) of the uniform title may include specifications by date or version of given types. Not repeatable.

$3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number

The identifier for the authority record for the access point. This subfield is for use with UNIMARC/Authorities format. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The form of the data in the examples under field 740 applies equally here.

Form

The form of the heading which appears in this field is determined by the appropriate cataloguing rules and/or authority entries used by the agency responsible for the preparation of the record.

It may not always appear obvious, when presented with a source record to be converted to UNIMARC, which sub-elements of the name in a source format correspond to which UNIMARC subfields. These notes are intended to give general guidance but are not exhaustive. It is necessary to be aware that names formed according to different cataloguing rules or even originating from different authority files based on the same rules will not always inter-file correctly in one sequence. Until further standards are established UNIMARC can provide only a framework for identifying the distinct data elements.

Entry Under Place

Names of jurisdictions at all levels, e.g. national, provincial, and local, are formalisations of a different kind. Many such bodies have long formal names, but the practice of cataloguing codes is generally to take a short name of the place, e.g., Portugal, Australia, rather than the formal name (Portuguese Republic, Commonwealth of Australia) (see EX 1, 2, 3 in the field 740).

Qualifications

Guidance may be required on what elements are to be considered qualifications and hence are to be entered in subfield $c. This may be a place name added in order to distinguish the jurisdiction from others of the same name, e.g., Washington (state). Usually cataloguing rules prescribe that the qualification be added in parentheses as in the examples above (see EX 5 in the field 740).

Formalised Additions to Uniform Titles

There may be needed to further specify a uniform title by date of legal issue or version of a given type, in order to provide more specific aggregation of resources catalogued when they are numerous. The criteria for this, as well as the type of further specification depends on the cataloguing rules and practice of the cataloguing agency.

Punctuation

There are no standards for punctuation in this field. It is recommended that punctuation be retained where it is available in the source format. In source formats where punctuation is not available, but is printed out by an algorithm generated from the definition of the subfields, it is recommended that the punctuation which would be used in display be included in the UNIMARC record. This includes parentheses which occur at the beginning and end of one or a group of subfields.

Because there are no standards for punctuation in this field, recipients of records in the UNIMARC format will have to be aware of the practices adopted by the agency preparing the record. Agencies distributing records should attempt to be consistent in their own records. Details should be included in the documentation accompanying exchange tapes (see Appendix D).

Related Fields

740 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – PRIMARY RESPONSIBILITY	In the majority of cataloguing rules that recognise the concept of the uniform conventional heading for certain legal and religious texts the field 740 must be present. However It is possible for a work to have sencodary responsibility for a uniform conventional heading without a fiel 740 present.
741 UNIFORM CONVENTIONAL HEADING FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS – ALTERNATIVE RESPONSIBILITY	A uniform conventional heading may have alternative responsibility to either a person or body named in fields 700 or 710 or to another heading named in field 740. If the record is catalogued according to rules which do not recognise the concept of main entry or the source format does not separately identify it, the uniform conventional heading should be entered in field 741.

Examples

EX 1
200 1#$aDocumentação e legislação comercial$fOrlando Augusto Dias Bravo
327 1#$aContém supl. com o tít.: Código comercial, sociedades e empresas comerciais, código do registo comercial
700 1#$aBravo,$bOrlando Augusto Dias
742 #1$aPortugal.$tLeis, decretos, etc.
The work is a collection of commercial law compiled by a personnal author, but including the legal texts themselves.

History

2008	New field.
2024	Text edit.

8-- INTERNATIONAL USE BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains internationally agreed fields that do not fit in the preceding blocks, 0-- to 7--. The following fields are defined:

801	ORIGINATING SOURCE
802	ISSN CENTRE
830	GENERAL CATALOGUER'S NOTE
850	HOLDING INSTITUTION
852	LOCATION AND CALL NUMBER
856	ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS
886	DATA NOT CONVERTED FROM SOURCE FORMAT
857	ELECTRONIC ARCHIVE LOCATION AND ACCESS

History

2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2024	Update.

801 ORIGINATING SOURCE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains an indication of the origin of the record, including one of the following: the agency that created the data, the agency that transcribed the data into machine-readable form, any agency that has modified the original record/data, and the agency issuing the present record.

In the case of exchange of bibliographic data the field is mandatory. In many cases this field will be generated automatically at the time of exchange. Repeatable for each agency function reported.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
801	ORIGINATING SOURCE	R	MA
a	Country	NR	MA
b	Agency	NR	MA
c	Date of Transaction	NR	MA
g	Cataloguing Rules (Descriptive Conventions)	R	MA
h	Original Record identifier	NR	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2		Function Indicator
	0	Original cataloguing agency
	1	Transcribing agency
	2	Modifying agency
	3	Issuing agency

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Function Indicator

This indicator specifies the function of the agency named in the $b subfield.

Value 0: Original cataloguing agency

The agency that prepared the data in the record.

Value 1: Transcribing agency

The agency that converted the data into machine-readable form.

Value 3: Issuing agency

The agency that issued the record.

Subfields Description

$a Country

The country of the issuing agency in two-character coded form. For country codes use ISO 3166-1. Not repeatable.

$b Agency

It is recommended that the agency be identified according to the International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL) ISO 15511. In this case, the whole ISIL, including its first sequence (country code or other prefixes), is entered in the $b subfield. Alternatively, it is possible to use

the code from the MARC Code List for Organizations. Otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used (see EX 8). The displaying of data in clear form (full name, well-known acronym) is recommended in OPACs and union catalogues. Matching between the code and the name to be displayed should be established in an appropriate reference list or tool. Not repeatable.

$c Date of Transaction

This subfield is used when possible to indicate when a modification was made or a record was issued. The data should be recorded according to ISO 8601 in all-numeric form without separators between year, month, and day, i.e. YYYYMMDD. Not repeatable.

$g Cataloguing Rules (Descriptive Conventions)

This subfield contains an abbreviation for the cataloguing code used for bibliographic description and access.

For the codes, see Appendix A. It should be used only when the second indicator value is 0 (original cataloguing agency) or 2 (modifying agency). Optional, repeatable (EX 3).

$h Original Record identifier

This subfield contains the original record identifier when a record's 001 has been overwritten. This will occur when the current database has its own record identifiers, e.g. a union catalogue listing records taken from several databases. Optional, not repeatable (EX 5).

$2 Source

The name of the format used for the machine-readable record. For format codes see Appendix A. Optional, not repeatable (EX 6).

Notes on Field Contents

In many cases the same agency will have carried out some or all indicated functions; however, the field should be repeated only when there are changes to transaction dates, cataloguing rules or formats; where there are no changes only the earliest occurrence of the field should be included.

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL character position 18	
100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Date Entered on File (character positions 0-7)	The date in Field 100 may be the same as the transcription date but it should be repeated in field 801.

Examples

EX 1
801 #0aUSbDLC$c19590000$gAACR1
801 #laUSbMH$c19790506
801 #2aUSbMH$c19790506$gAACR2
801 #3aUSbDLC$c19790912
The resource was originally catalogued by the Library of Congress in 1959. In 1979, Harvard University modified the data and transcribed it into machine-readable form. This record was then issued by the Library of Congress. The codes from *USMARC Code List for Organizations* have been used to identify the Library of Congress and Harvard University.
EX 2
801 #0aUSbDLC$c19860116$gAACR2
A record catalogued according to the second edition of the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* by the Library of Congress.
EX 3

801 #0aUSbDLC$c19830406$gAACR2$gBDRB
A record catalogued by the Library of Congress according to AACR2 and *Bibliographic Description of Rare Books* (Washington : Library of Congress, 1981).
EX 4
801 #0aFRbF$c19851020$gAFNOR
A record catalogued according to the Normes de catalogage publiées par l'Association française de normalisation by the Bibliothèque nationale.
EX 5
801 #0aGBbUkCU$c19940116$gAACR2$h898788257
801 #2aGBbUk$c19940718$gAACR2
A record catalogued by Cambridge University Library, with a record identifier which is not used when the record is modified by the British Library.
EX 6
801 #0aDEbGyFmDB$c19860423$gRAK$2mab
801 #2aUSbDLC$c19860503$gAACR2
A record catalogued according to the *Regeln für die Alphabetische Katalogisierung (RAK)* by the Deutsche Bibliothek, and modified to the AACR2 form by the Library of Congress. The record was converted into UNIMARC from the Maschinelles Austauschformat für Bibliotheken format.
EX 7
801 #0aFRbFR-751072303$c20041026$gAFNOR
A record created by the Bibliothèque de la Fondation Nationale des Sciences politiques, catalogued according to AFNOR standards. Note: The identifier "FR-751072303" in $b refers to the RCR code (RCR: Répertoire des Centres de Ressource), the national standard used in France http://ccfr.bnf.fr/rnbcd_visu/framevisu.jsp?accueil=1
EX 8
801 #3aFRbABES$c20051026$gAFNOR
A record issued by ABES (Agence bibliographique de l'enseignement supérieur), France, catalogued according to AFNOR standards. ABES is not an ISIL code but the abbreviated name of the agency.
EX 9
801 #3aFRbELECTRE$c20060906$gAFNOR
801 #2aFRbFR-674826201$c20061228$gAFNOR
A record originally created and issued by ELECTRE, a French bibliographic data provider, and modified by the Bibliothèque municipale de Strasbourg, catalogued according to AFNOR standards. Note: The identifier "FR-674826201" in $b refers to the RCR code (RCR: Répertoire des Centres de Ressource), the national standard used in France http://ccfr.bnf.fr/rnbcd_visu/framevisu.jsp?accueil=1

History

1998	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	New subfield $j.

802 ISSN CENTRE

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a code for the ISSN Centre responsible for assigning the ISSN and key-title.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
802	ISSN CENTRE	NR	O
a	ISSN Centre Code	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a ISSN Centre Code

Each centre has been assigned a code by the ISSN International Centre. The ISSN Centre code consists of one or two alphanumeric characters. For codes, see List of Country and ISSN Centre Codes. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains two characters. For centres assigned a one-character code, the first character is zero (EX 1, 2).

Related Fields

011 ISSN	These fields contain the ISSN and key title assigned by the ISSN Centre.
530 KEY TITLE	

Examples

EX 1
802 ##$a03
The ISSN Centre is Australia.
EX 2
802 ##$a05
The ISSN Regional Centre for CMEA (Council for Mutual Economic Aid) in Moscow assigned the ISSN and key title.
EX 3
802 ##$a58
The ISSN Centre is the Vsesojuznaja Knijnaja Palata in Moscow.

830 GENERAL CATALOGUER'S NOTE

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to record biographical, historical, or other information about the record.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
830	GENERAL CATALOGUER'S NOTE	R	O
a	Text of Note	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Text of Note

Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field may include cataloguers' working notes on sources of information, questionable data, references to specific rules applied, notes justifying the choice of particular data, etc.

Examples

EX 1
830 ##$aWill need to be amended once last volume arrives
EX 2
200 1#$aCatalogue des livres qui se trouvent en nombre chez Herissant fils, libraire, à Paris, rue S. Jacques, 1769
830 ##$aJean-Thomas II Hérissant est actif en même temps que son père, Jean-Thomas I Hérissant, de 1763 à 1772
830 ##$aCe catalogue ne diffère de celui figurant sous la cote BNF [Q8990 que par le format (in-8)
EX 3
200 1#$aThomae à Kempis, canonici regularis ordinis S. Augustini, De Imitatione
Christi libri quatuor
300 ##$aVersion non identifiée, avec références bibliques en marge
830 ##$aAbsent de Audenaert et de Backer
The general cataloguer's note is used to indicate consulted bibliographies in which no citation of the described edition was found.

History

1996	New field.

850 HOLDING INSTITUTION

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains a list of the codes of institutions holding the items.

The field is repeatable where the cataloguing system imposes limits on the length of a field.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
850	HOLDING INSTITUTION	R	O
a	Code of Institution	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1	#	blank (not defined)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Code of Institution

Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations.

Examples

EX 1
850 ##$aUkLRCM$aNiBfQU$aStEdNL$aStEdPHS$aStEdPL$aStEdRCP$aStEdRCS$aStEdSCL $aStGlC$aStGlM$aStGlQC$aStGlRFP$aStGlU$aStGlUS$aStKiPL$aStPeSPLaUkaUkAc$aUKaGS$a UkAul$aUkB$aUkBl$aUkBlG$aUkBoN$aUkBP $aUkBrP
EX 2
850 ##$aFrAipNA$aFrAmU$aFrAv$aFrAvU$aFrBaADF$aFrBflPS$aFrBgLER$aFrBrUB-D$aFrCoUT$aFrCpGE$aFrCrUPV$aFrCyUS$aFrFIEA$aFrGrULLA$aFrGrUSSL$aFrGyCEAI$aFrLAL$aFrLemU$aFrLgUTV$aFrLimU$aFrLimU-L$aFrLiU$aFrLiUCG$aFrLiUDSD$aFrLiU-S$aFrLy$aFrLyU$aFrMaUAM$aFrMaUAMM$aFrMhUHA
850 ##$aFrMpUPVA$aFrMzU$aFrN$aFrNiU$aFrNiU-D$aFrNiU-S$aFrNrUPN$aFrNtUBA$aFrNU $aFrNU-M$aFrNU-S$aFrNyUI$aFrNyUIIA$aFrNyUI-L$aFrOrRGM$aFrOyUPS $aFrPAAL$aFrPALP$aFrPAUP$aFrPBA$aFrPBF$aFrPBN$aFrPBS$aFrPBSG$aFrPCF$aFrPCNC
The number of codes in each occurrence of the field is limited by the organisation's software to thirty. So the field is repeated.

History

2002	New field.

852 LOCATION AND CALL NUMBER

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used to identify the organization holding the item or from which it is available. This field may also contain detailed information about how to locate the item in a collection.

The content of this field may be used both in the UNIMARC bibliographic record (field 852) and in the UNIMARC holdings record (field 252), according to the usage of the bibliographic agency.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
852	LOCATION AND CALL NUMBER	R	O
a	Institution Identifier	NR	MA
b	Sub-Location Identifier	R	O
c	Address	NR	O
d	Coded Location Qualifier	NR	O
g	Call Number Prefix	NR	O
j	Call Number	NR	O
k	Shelving Form of Title, Author, Author/Title	NR	O
l	Call Number Suffix	NR	O
m	Item Identifier	NR	O
n	Copy Identifier	NR	O
p	Country	NR	O
t	Copy Number	NR	O
x	Non-public Note	R	O
y	Public Note	R	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Shelving Scheme
	#	No information available
	0	Classification scheme (specified in subfield $2)
	1	Fixed location
	2	Sequential number
	3	Author, title or author/title
	4	Parts shelved separately
	5	Other
2		Shelving Order
	#	No information available
	0	No enumeration
	1	Primary enumeration
	2	Alternative enumeration

Indicators Description

Indicator 1: Function Shelving Scheme

A value that indicates the classification or shelving scheme used.

Value #: # No information available

No information about the shelving scheme is provided.

Value 1: Fixed location

Fixed shelving positions not using relative location class marks. This value should be used even if the collection is broadly classified. The full shelf mark is entered in subfield $j.

Value 2: Sequential number

This value is to be used when a library numbers items sequentially in accession or other order, or makes use of publishers' or distributors' own numbering systems for certain classes of material, for example, microforms, sound recordings, standards. The full number is entered in subfield $j.

Value 3: Author, title or author/title

Shelving according to alphabetic order of author, title or author/title part.

Value 4: Parts shelved separately

This value should be used in the record for a monographic series to indicate that the separate volumes are individually classified and shelved. The record for each volume will contain its own location information. The bibliographic record for the series as a whole may contain an overall class number, provided as a service for libraries wishing to keep the series together, but this would not be location information for the set in hand.

Value 5: Other

The basis of arrangement is known but not specified.

Indicator 2: Shelving Order

A value that indicates whether an item is shelved under a primary or alternative numbering scheme.

Value 0: No enumeration

The item is not shelved by enumeration.

Value 1: Primary enumeration

This value is also used when only one numbering scheme is applicable.

Value 2: Alternative enumeration

Item carries two numbering schemes and is shelved by the secondary scheme.

Subfields Description

$a Institution Identifier

Identifies the institution or individual holding the item or from which access is given.

It is recommended that the institution be identified according to the *International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL)* ISO 15511. In this case, the whole ISIL, including its first sequence (country code or other prefixes), is entered in the $a subfield. Alternatively, it is possible to use the code from the MARC Code List for Organizations. Otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used. Institutions using a national identifier must declare this in any documentation describing their use of the exchange format. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

$b Sub-Location Identifier

The specific department, library, collection, or shelving location, within the holding organization in which the item is located or from which it is available. It may indicate the physical location within the collection or sub-location, for example, reference, oversize stacks, and may be given either in full or using standard abbreviations or codes, for example, Ref.

Repeatable only when recording a single hierarchically identified location within an institution.

$c Address

Street address, city, state/county etc., zip code/post code etc., and country information for the current physical location of the item. Give the address of the sub-location ($b) when present and different from that of the main building. Not repeatable.

$d Coded Location Qualifier

A two- or three-character code that identifies the specific issues of the item that are located apart from the main holdings of the same item. Subfield $d immediately follows the subfield $a or $b being qualified. Not repeatable.

Qualifier type

a	previous	The previous, not including the current, time or part unit is housed in a different location.
b	latest	The latest, including the current, time or part unit is housed in a different location.

Number of units

1-9	Number of units

When a number is not required to identify the specific units, the number of units may be omitted. When Qualifier type is Latest (code b), the number includes the current time or part unit. When Qualifier type is Previous (code a), the number does not include the current time or part unit.

Unit type

Time

a	week(s)
b	month(s)
c	year(s)

Part

d	edition(s)
e	issue(s)
f	supplement(s)

$e Non-coded Location Qualifier

Free text that is used when the codes in subfield $d are inadequate for describing the unit that is located apart from the main holdings of the same item. Subfield $e immediately follows the subfield $a or $b being qualified. Not repeatable.

$g Call Number Prefix

Term preceding a call number. Not repeatable.

$j Call Number

This subfield contains the Call Number including punctuation, spacing and capitalization as specified by the institution holding the item. The Call Number may also include an implicit or explicit Copy Identifier, or a Copy number, or a volume number, or shelving or custodial location. When these take the form of separable elements, use the appropriate subfields for them. Not repeatable.

$k Shelving Form of Title, Author, Author/Title

The shelving title part, author's name or author/title of an unclassified item that is shelved by these data. (Indicator 1 = 3). Not repeatable.

$l Call Number Suffix

Term following the call number. Not repeatable.

$m Item Identifier

The subfield contains identification of a single piece, i.e. a physically separate bibliographic item. The designation may be an identification number like bar code number or an accession number. Not repeatable.

$n Copy Identifier

A copy identifier or a range of identifiers for copies that have the same location.

If used, the Copy Identifier element shall be reported in conjunction with the Sub-location Identifier or the Institution Identifier or both. In some cases, the Copy Identifier may be explicitly or implicitly present as part of the Call Number. When it takes the form of the separable element, use subfield $n for it; in such cases it is not necessary to repeat the element in subfield $j. A composite holdings statement may be used to record information about two or more copies of a bibliographic unit held at a single location or sub-location. Not repeatable. Alternatively, separated item specific statements may be used to record holdings for each copy.

$p Country

Contains the country code for the principal location identified in subfield $a when it is not already included in the institutional identifier.

For country codes use ISO 3166-1. Not repeatable.

$t Copy Number

A copy number or a range of numbers for copies that have the same location.

In some cases, the Copy Number may be explicitly present as part of the Call Number. When it takes the form of a separable element, use subfield $t for it; in such cases it is not necessary to repeat the element in the subfield $j. A composite holdings statement may be used to record information about two or more copies of a bibliographic unit held at a single location or sub-location. Not repeatable.

Alternatively, separated item specific statements may be used to record holdings for each copy.

$x Non-public Note

Information that is not written in a form suitable for public display. Repeatable.

$y Public Note

Repeatable.

$2 Source

The specific classification or other scheme and edition used for the arrangement of materials.

This subfield must be used when Indicator 1 has the value 0. For codes, see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
852 41$a[location identifier]$bMain, mezzanine stacks
EX 2
852 ##$aDLC$bManuscript Division$cJames Madison Memorial Building, 1st &; Independence Ave., S.E., Washington, DC USA, 4016
EX 3
852 41$a[location identifier]$bRef$eholographic issue
EX 4
852 1#$aDLC$bMicRR$jMicrofilm 82/528 MicRR
EX 5
852 41$aFrPALP$bAnnex, centre shelves$c10, rue du General Camou,75007 Paris
EX 6
852 ##$a[location identifier]$bMain, oversize shelving
EX 7

852 11pPTaBN$bReservados$jRES 4562
EX 8
852 01pPTaBN$bAcesso$j330 LAN*RIQ$2UDC
EX 9
852 11pPTaBN$bReservados$jRES 2678 A
EX 10
Two copies have the same location, every copy has its own copy identifier ($n). Also every copy has its own copy number ($t) within its location. The copy number is included in the call number as an explicit element. 2003-8 2003-8 -------- /1 -------- /2 2905 2905
Record 1
852 51$aNLR$j2003-8/2905$t1$n560203
Record 2
852 51$aNLR$j2003-8/2905$t2$n578374

History

2005	New field.

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains the information required to locate the electronic resource described by the record and/or reference files related to the described resource such as thumbnails and content pages. The information identifies the electronic location containing the resource or from which it is available. It also contains information to retrieve the resource by the access method identified in the first indicator position. The information contained in this field is sufficient to allow for the electronic transfer of a file, subscription to an electronic journal, or logon to an electronic resource. In some cases, only unique data elements are recorded which allow the user to access a locator table on a remote host containing the remaining information needed to access the resource.

It can be used to generate the ISBD Notes relating to Mode of Access (Electronic Resources).

For electronic resources: if 337 is not used, then 856 must be present.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
856	ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS	R	MA
a	Host Name	R	O
b	Access Number	R	O
c	Compression Information	R	O
d	Path	R	O
e	Date and Hour of Consultation and Access	NR	O
f	Electronic Name	R	O
h	Processor of Request	NR	O
i	Instruction	R	O
j	Bits per Second	NR	O
k	Password	NR	O
l	Logon/Login	NR	O
m	Contact for Access Assistance	R	O
n	Name of Location of Host in Subfield $a	NR	O
o	Operating System	NR	O
p	Port	NR	O
q	Electronic Format Type	R	O
r	Settings	NR	O
s	File Size	R	O
t	Terminal Emulation	R	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	NR	O
v	Hours Access Method Available	R	O
w	Record Identifier	R	O
x	Non-Public Note	R	O
y	Access Method	NR	O
z	Public Note	R	O
2	Link Text	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Access Method
	#	No information provided
	0	Email
	1	FTP
	2	Remote login (Telnet)

	3	Dial-up
	4	HTTP
	7	Method specified in subfield $y
2		Completeness of the Accessible Resource
	#	No information provided
	0	The field provides details to access the described resource
	1	The field provides details to access a thumbnail of the described resource
	2	The field provides details to access the title page, table of contents, and/or other front matter of the described resource

Subfields Description

$a Host Name

Repeatable.

$b Access Number

The access number associated with a host. It can contain the Internet Protocol (IP) numeric address if the resource is an Internet resource, or a telephone number if dial-up access is provided through a telephone line. This data may change frequently and may be generated by the system, rather than statically stored. Subfield $b may be repeated if all the other information in the field applies. A telephone number is recorded as follows: [country code]-[area code]-[telephone number]. Example: 49-69-15251140 (a number in Frankfurt, Germany); 1-202-7076237 (a number in the U.S., Washington, D.C.). If an extension is applicable, include it after the telephone number preceded by "x". Example: 1-703-3589800x515 (telephone number with extension). Repeatable.

$c Compression Information

Repeatable.

$d Path

Repeatable.

$e Date and Hour of Consultation and Access

The time, in the form YYYYMMDDHHMM, at which the electronic resource was last accessed. Not repeatable.

$f Electronic Name

The electronic name of a file as it exists in the directory/subdirectory indicated in subfield $d on the host identified in subfield $a. Subfield $f may be repeated if a single logical file has been divided into parts and stored under different names. In this case, the separate parts should constitute a single bibliographic resource. In all other cases, a file that may be retrieved under different filenames contains multiple occurrences of field 856, each with it corresponding electronic name in subfield $f. A filename may include wildcard characters (e.g., "*" or "?") if applicable, with a note in subfield $z explaining how files are named. NOTE: Filenames may be case sensitive for some systems. This subfield may also contain the name of the electronic publication or conference. Repeatable.

$h Processor of Request

The username, or processor of the request; generally the data which precedes the at sign ("@") in the host address. Not repeatable.

$i Instruction

An instruction or command needed for the remote host to process a request. Repeatable.

$j Bits per Second

The lowest and highest number of bits (binary units) of data that can be transmitted per second when connected to a host. The syntax for recording the number of bits per second (BPS) should be: [Lowest

BPS]-[Highest BPS]. If only lowest given: [Lowest BPS]-. If only highest given: -[Highest BPS]. Not repeatable.

$k Password

Used to record general-use passwords, and should not contain passwords requiring security. Not repeatable.

$l Logon/Login

General-use logon/login strings which do not require special security. Not repeatable.

$m Contact for Access Assistance

Repeatable.

$n Name of Location of Host in Subfield $a

Not repeatable.

$o Operating System

For information, the operating system used by the host specified in subfield $a is indicated in this subfield. Not repeatable.

$p Port

The portion of the address that identifies a process or service in the host. Not repeatable.

$q Electronic Format Type

Contains an identification of the electronic format type, which determines how data are transferred through a network. Usually, a text file can be transferred as character data which generally restricts the text to characters in the ASCII **(**American National Standard Code for Information Interchange) character set (i.e., the basic Latin alphabet, digits 0-9, a few special characters, and most punctuation marks). Text files with characters outside of the ASCII set, or non-textual data (e.g., computer programs, image data) must be transferred using another file transfer mode, usually binary mode. Electronic format type may be taken from lists such as registered Internet Media types (MIME types). Repeatable if the electronic resource is available in more than one format under the same location or URL (EX 30).

$r Settings

The settings used for transferring data. Included in settings are:

1) Number Data Bits (the number of bits per character);

2) Number Stop Bits (the number of bits to signal the end of a byte); and

3) Parity (the parity checking technique used). The syntax of these elements is:
[Parity]-[Number of Data Bits]-[Number of Stop Bits]. If only the parity is given, the other elements of settings and their related hyphens are omitted (i.e., [Parity]). If one of the other two elements is given, the hyphen for the missing element is recorded in its proper position (i.e., [Parity]--[Number of Stop Bits] or [Parity]-[Number of Data Bits]-). The values for parity are: O (Odd), E (Even), N (None), S (Space), and M (Mark). Not repeatable.

$s File Size

The size of the file as stored under the filename indicated in subfield $f. It is generally expressed in terms of 8-bit bytes (octets). It may be repeated in cases where the filename is repeated and directly follows the subfield $f to which it applies. This information is not given for journals, since field 856 relates to the entire title, not to particular issues. Repeatable.

$t Terminal Emulation

Repeatable.

$u Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be used instead of those separate subfields or in addition to them. The field is repeated if more than one URL needs to be recorded. Not repeatable.

$v Hours Access Method Available

The hours that access to an electronic resource is available at the location indicated in this field. Repeatable.

$w Record Identifier

Repeatable.

$x Non-Public Note

Repeatable.

$y Access Method

The access method when the first indicator position contains value 7 (Method specified in subfield $y). This subfield may include access methods other than the main TCP/IP protocols specified in the first indicator. The data in this subfield corresponds with the access schemes specified in Uniform Resource Locators (URL) (RFC 1738), a product of the Uniform Resource Identifiers Working Group of the IETF. The Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) maintains a registry of URL schemes and defines the syntax and use of new schemes. Not repeatable.

$z Public Note

Repeatable.

$2 Link Text

Used for display in place of the URL in subfield $u (Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)). When subfield $2 is present, applications should use the contents of it as the link instead of subfield $u linking to the destination in subfield $u. Repeatable.

Related Fields

857 ELECTRONIC ARCHIVE LOCATION AND ACCESS

Examples

EX 1
856 1#$awuarchive.wustl.edu$cdecompress with PKUNZIP.exe $d/mirrors2/win3/games$fatmoids.zip$xcannot verify because of transfer difficulty
EX 2
856 1#$uftp://path.net/pub/docs/urn2urc.ps
856 4#$uhttp://lcweb.loc.gov/catdir/semdigdocs/seminar.html
EX 3
856 2#$apac.carl.org$b192.54.81.128$mCARL Situation Room$mhelp@CARL.org$nCARL Systems Inc., Denver, CO$v24 hours
EX 4
856 3#$alocis.loc.gov$b140.147.254.3$mlconline@loc.gov$t3270$tline mode (e.g., vt100)$vM-F 6:00 a.m.-21:30 p.m. USA EST, Sat. 8:30-17:00 USA EST, Sun. 13:00-17:00 USA EST

EX 5
856 4#$uhttp://lcweb.loc.gov/catdir/toc/93-3471.html
EX 6
856 4#$uhttp://www.gpntb.ru/win/inter-events/crimea94/report/prog_01r.html$s14519 bytes$v24
EX 7
856 2#$amaine.maine.edu$nUniversity of Maine$t3270
EX 8
856 1#$awuarchive.wustl.edu$dmirrors/info-mac/util$fcolor-system-icons.hqx$s16874 bytes 8560# $akeptvm.bitnet$facadlist file1$s34,989 bytes$facadlist file2$s32,876 bytes$facadlist file3$s23987 bytes
EX 9
856 2#$agopac.berkeley.edu$mRoy Tennant
EX 10
856 3#$b1-202-7072316$j2400-9600$nLibrary of Congress, Washington, DC$oUNIX$rE-7-1 $tvt100$zRequires logon and password
Dial-up numbers with related settings for terminal emulation
EX 11
856 1#$aarchive.cis.ohio-state.edu$dpub/comp.sources.Unix/volume 10$fcomobj.lisp.10.Z$qbinary
EX 12
856 1#$aunmvm.bitnet$lanonymous
EX 13
856 1#$aseq1.loc.gov$d/pub/soviet.archive$fk1famine.bkg$nLibrary of Congress, Washington, D.C.$oUNIX
EX 14
856 2#$amadlab.sprl.umich.edu$nUniversity of Michigan Weather Underground $p3000
EX 15
856 2#$apucc.princeton.edu$nPrinceton University, Princeton, N.J.
EX 16
856 0#$auccvma.bitnet$fIR-L$hListserv$isubscribe
EX 17
856 3#$b1-202-7072316$j2400-9600$nLibrary of Congress, Washington, DC$oUNIX $rE-7-1
EX 18
856 1#$aharvarda.harvard.edu$kguest
EX 19
856 0#$auicvm.bitnet$fAN2
EX 20
856 1#$awuarchive.wustl.edu$dmirrors/info-mac/util$fcolor-system-icons.hqx
EX 21

856 4#$awww.gpntb.ru$b193.233.14.7$dwin/dewey$fMoscow.Russia.GPNTB,Mikhail Goncharov$oWINDOWS-NT$s2048 bytes$qtext/WINI-1251$v24
EX 22
856 2#$aanthrax.micro.umn.edu$b128.101.95.23
Host name and Internet Protocol numeric address
EX 23
856 1#$awuarchive.wustl.edu$d/aii/admin/CAT.games$fmac-qubic.22.hqx
EX 24
856 4#$uhttp://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/EID/eid.htm$qtext/html
EX 25
856 4#$uhttp://www.nlc-bnc.ca/ifla/VI/3/p1996-1/concise.pdf$cRequires Adobe Acrobat Reader
EX 26
856 4#$uhttp://lcweb.loc.gov/copyright/title/17$2United States Code, Title 17
The display can be configured to present the label text in $2 as a clickable link, rather than the rather meaningless URL in $u.
EX 27
856 4#$uhttp://www.bl.uk/services/bsds/nbs/interface/wface01.html$2Interface (Web Version)
EX 28
200 1#$aISMN$bElectronic resource$eInternational standard music number$eusers' manual$f[International ISMN agency]
856 4#$qhtml$uhttp://www.ismn-international.org/manual.html
856 4#$qpdf$uhttp://www.ismn-international.org/manual.pdf
The *ISMN users' manual* is available in both html and pdf formats: field 856 is repeated within the record, because there is a distinct URL for each format.
EX 29
200 1#$aFado racionalista$ebonita collecção de cantigas offerecidas aos livres pensadores...$fJosé Marques Guerreiro Wan-Dyck
856 41$uhttp://purl.pt/6571
856 40$qpdf$uhttp://purl.pt/6571/3/hg-11038-v_PDF/hg-11038-v_PDF_01-B-R0150/hg-11038-v_0000_rosto-42_t01-B-R0150.pdf$2Cópia pública, 1 ficheiro pdf
EX 30
200 1# $aTransatlantica$erevue d'études américaines$fAssociation française d'études américaines$g[dir. publ. Michel Granger]$g[réd. en chef Jean Kempf]
856 40 $uhttp://transatlantica.revues.org/$e20140409$qHTML$qPDF
The serial entitled *Transatlantica* is available both in html and pdf formats under the same URL: as there is no reason for $u to be repeated, only one field 856 is used while subfield $q is repeated to record each format.

History

1998	New field.
2000	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2002	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Field issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2012	Indicator 2 added.
2016	Change subfield $q repeatability.

2024	Update $u. Added section Related Fields.

857 ELECTRONIC ARCHIVE LOCATION AND ACCESS

Field Definition and Scope

This field is used for information needed to locate and access an electronic resource stored in a web archive or digital repository.

It may be used in addition to or in place of, field 856 if additional information about archived resources is needed.

It may also provide location and access information for a digitized archived version of a tangible resource (e.g., a book or CD-ROM described in the record), or a related archived resource.

At least one subfield g, h or u are mandatory.

Repeatable when an electronic resource is stored in more than one web archive or digital archive repository.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
857	ELECTRONIC ARCHIVE LOCATION AND ACCESS	R	O
a	Name of Archiving Agency	NR	O
c	Name of Web Archive or Digital Archive Repository	NR	O
d	Date Range of Archived Material	NR	O
f	Archive Completeness	NR	O
g	Persistent Identifier	R	MA
h	Non-Functioning Uniform Resource Identifier	R	MA
l	Standardized Information Governing Access	R	O
m	Contact for Access Assistance	R	O
n	Terms Governing Access	R	O
o	Access Status	NR	O
p	Access Method	NR	O
q	Electronic Format Type	R	O
r	Standardized Information Governing Use and Reproduction	R	O
s	File Size	R	O
t	Terms Governing Use and Reproduction	R	O
u	Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)	R	MA
x	Nonpublic Note	R	O
y	Link Text	R	O
z	Public Note	R	O
2	Source	NR	O
5	Institution to which the Field Applies	NR	O
6	Interfield Linking Data	R	O
8	Materials Specified	R	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Access Method
	#	No information provided
	1	FTP
	4	HTTP
	7	Method specified in subfield $p
2		Relationship

	#	No information provided
	0	Resource
	1	Version of resource
	2	Related resource
	3	Component part(s) of resource
	4	Version of component part(s) of resource

Indicators Description

Indicator 2: Relationship

Value 0: Resource

Details to access the described resource.

Value 1: Version of resource

Details to access an archived electronic version of the tangible resource (e.g., a printed book or a CD-ROM) described in the record.

Value 2: Related resource

Details on accessing the archived electronic resource that has a direct bibliographic relationship to the bibliographic resource described by the record except for component part(s) of the resource. When there is uncertainty about whether a resource may be a component part of the whole or a related resource, prefer the second indicator value 2 (Related resource).

Value 3: Component part(s) of resource

Details to access one or more archived component parts of the electronic resource described by the record as a whole.

Value 4: Version of component part(s) of resource

Details to access an archived electronic version of one or more component parts of the tangible resource described by the record as a whole.

Subfields Description

$a Name of Archiving Agency

Name of the agency responsible for the web archive or digital archive repository. Not repeatable.

$c Name of Web Archive or Digital Archive Repository

The name by which the web archive or digital archive repository is known. Not repeatable.

$d Date Range of Archived Material

The subfield is intended primarily for archived electronic continuing resources and other dynamic resources to provide information about the range of dates during which the archived material was issued.

The start date of the archived material should always be mentioned when known; the end date is only if the material described in the record is no longer being archived.

Multiple date ranges can be provided in a single subfield $d by separating them with ";". The reason for these gaps, if known, may be provided in subfield $x or in subfield $z. Not repeatable.

$f Archive Completeness

The subfield is intended primarily for archived electronic continuing resources or other archived dynamic resources. It contains information about how often or how many times an electronic continuing resource has been harvested.

This information enables the user to infer the archived material's completeness for the date range in $d when coupled with the resource's frequency.

If providing the number of times a resource has been harvested, provide the date this information was obtained. Not repeatable.

$g Persistent Identifier

Persistent identifier (PID) enables search and retrieval of a resource from a web archive or digital archive repository using existing Internet protocols. It is assigned to the resource for automated access and other resolution services by a PID resolver. PIDs should be provided as actionable hyperlinks (e.g., HTTP URI format).

If a PID resolves to more than one URI, these URIs may be provided in the same 857 field, with repeated subfield $u. Repeatable.

$h Non-Functioning Uniform Resource Identifier

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for any archive or repository that has ceased to exist.

A note on the status change (including the date) may be added in either subfield $x or subfield $z, depending on the local policy. Repeatable.

$l Standardized Information Governing Access

A one-character code indicating information about the access status of a resource. Not repeatable.

Codes:

0	open access	The networked electronic resource is freely and openly accessible online to everyone, without restriction, login, or payment.
1	restricted access	The networked electronic resource is not freely and openly accessible online.
u	unspecified	
z	other	

$m Contact for Access Assistance

Name of the contact for assistance in accessing a resource at the host specified in subfield $a. Repeatable.

$n Terms Governing Access

Textual information about the access status of a resource. Repeatable.

$p Access Method

The access method when the first indicator position contains value 7. Use the codes from the Electronic Access Methods Code List (https://www.loc.gov/standards/valuelist/electronaccess.html). Not repeatable.

$q Electronic Format Type

Identification of the electronic format type and version.

Electronic format type should be specified with a code from the list of registered Internet Media Types (MIME types), taken from: IANA Media Types (https://www.iana.org/assignments/media-types/media-types.xhtml). If necessary (e.g., to specify a file format version to support access or digital preservation) additional information, such as PRONOM Unique Identifier (PUID) codes, may be included in addition to the information provided by the MIME Type by repeating subfield $q. Repeatable.

$r Standardized Information Governing Use and Reproduction

Standardized information regarding the use and reproduction rights of a resource. The information may be in the form of a value from a controlled vocabulary, or a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI).

Source of value is recorded in $2.

Repeatable.

$s File Size

Size of the file(s) as stored in the archive indicated in subfield $c. It is generally expressed in terms of 8-bit bytes (megabytes, gigabytes). Repeatable.

$t Terms Governing Use and Reproduction

Textual information about using and reproduction rights of a resource. Repeatable.

$a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), such as a URL (Uniform Resource Locator) or URN (Uniform Resource Name), serves as a standardized string that identifies a resource and provides electronic access via internet protocols. This allows for automated retrieval or interaction with the resource in a consistent manner.

Subfield $u may be repeated if more than one URI is recorded.

URIs that no longer function to provide access to the described resource may be transferred to $h.

$x Nonpublic Note

Note relating to the electronic location of the source identified in the field. The note is written in a form that is not adequate or intended for public display. It may also contain processing information about the file at the location specified. Repeatable.

$z Public Note

Note relating to the electronic location of the source identified in the field. The note is written in a form that is adequate or intended for public display. Repeatable.

$y Link Text

Used for display in place of the URL in subfield $u. When subfield $y is present, applications should use the contents of subfield $y as the link instead of the content of subfield $u when linking to the destination in subfield $u. The use of the link text is independent of any decision concerning the second indicator value. Repeatable.

$2 Source

An identification in coded form of source of the value used in $r. For the list of Access Restriction Term Source Codes, see Appendix A. Mandatory if $r is used. Not repeatable.

$5 Institution to Which the Field Applies

Name of the institution to which field applies in the coded form if it is considered necessary by the agency which creates the record to identify specific attributes of an item.

If the subfield is used codes should be entered in accordance with the provisions of International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL), ISO 15511 or may contain codes from MARC Code List for Organizations, otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used. Not repeatable.

$6 Interfield Linking Data

This subfield contains information allowing the field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record. (See section 3.13 Interfield Linking Data, 3 Format structure). Repeatable.

$8 Materials Specified

Part of the described materials to which the field applies. Repeatable.

Related Fields

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

Examples

EX 1
530 1#$aBúnaðarblaðið Freyja
856 4#$uhttp://www.sjarminn.is$zResource no longer available online as of 2013
857 41$aLandsbókasafn Íslands - Háskólabókasafn$cVefsafn$d2011-2013$uhttps://vefsafn.is/is/20130315194337/http://www.sjarminn.is/$$x[diagnostic]\a200 OK\b\c20240111$zLast archived 2013.
Web archive URL in 857 $u, the name of the agency responsible for the web archive in $a, and the public note in $z.
EX 2
857 41$aBibliothèque nationale de France$cGallica$d1917-1917$fincomplete$ghttps://gallicaintramuros.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/cb34471903t/date
A persistent identifier (PID) allows automated access and other resolution services by a PID resolver.
EX 3
530 1#$aJournal de votre quartier Fives$b(En ligne)
856 4#$uhttps://www.calameo.com/books/002898805d06e6c940480
857 40$aInternet Archive$cWayback Machine$o1$nAccess is allowed for registered users $uhttps://web.archive.org/web/*/https://www.calameo.com/books/002898805d06e6c940480
EX 4
85741$bInternet Archive$d1892-2014$fComplete$o0$uhttps://archive.org/details/pub_vogue

History

2024	New field.

886 DATA NOT CONVERTED FROM SOURCE FORMAT

Field Definition and Scope

This field contains data for which there is no specific UNIMARC field. It is used when an agency is converting records from another format and wishes to retain elements in fields which have no equivalent.

Subfields & Occurrence

Field/Subfield	Field/Subfield Name	Repeatability	Occurrence
886	DATA NOT CONVERTED FROM SOURCE FORMAT	R	O
a	Tag of the Source Format Field	R	O
b	Indicators and Subfields of the Source Format Field	R	O
2	Source	NR	O

Indicators

Indicator	Value	Description
1		Type of Field
	0	Record label
	1	Variable control field (0-- fields without indicators or subfields)
	2	Variable data field (010-999 fields)
2	#	blank (not defined)

Subfields Description

$a Tag of the Source Format Field

This subfield will not be present if Indicator 1 has the value 0. This subfield can be used only once with the value Tag of the Source Format Field. All other $a subfields in this field have the values assigned by the field of the source format.

$b Indicators and Subfields of the Source Format Field

This subfield will contain the indicators, subfield identifiers and subfields of the original field in their original order. This subfield can be used only once with the value Indicators and Subfields of the Source Format Field. All other $b subfields in this field have the values assigned by the field of the source format.

$2 Source

The name of the format used for the machine-readable record. In this field, $2 appears first. For the format codes see Appendix A. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1
886 2#$2ukmarc$a083$b00$aRussia. Education$b- Biographies – Collections
There is no equivalent in UNIMARC for UKMARC's Verbal Feature Heading: 083 00$aRussia. Education$b- Biographies – Collections.

History

2000	New field.
2020	Errata/text edit.

9-- NATIONAL USE BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block is reserved for national use by agencies where UNIMARC is the basis of the domestic format. It is recommended that fields in this block be excluded from international exchange media. In cases of difficulty, it would be a matter for international agreement as to whether particular types of data should be held in a local field.

Agencies using this block may if they wish to come to an agreement over common use of fields; but this is optional.

Notes on Field Contents

These fields may contain any information which is of local, as opposed to international, importance.

Related Fields, Indicators, and Subfields

All -9- and --9 fields throughout the format are reserved for national and local use; their definitions and indicator and subfield values remain undefined by the Permanent UNIMARC Committee. This is also true of indicator value 9 and subfield $9.

Examples

EX 1
990 ##$a200$bcX$bdN
A local libraries holdings data field. The South African State Library (code 200) has a microfiche copy (code c) which is not available for loan (code X) and a large print copy (code d) for which there is no loan restriction (code N).
EX 2
996 ##$aREF396.4SMI
SAMARC shelf number field.

History

1996	New paragraphs/subfield/examples.

APPENDIX A: SOURCES OF CODES

Introduction

The Appendix A includes the list of sources of codes or reference to the list of codes maintained by other agencies. It includes the following sources of codes:

A1. Languages

A2. Countries

A3. Geographical Area Codes

A4. Time Period Codes

A5. Cartographic Resources Codes

A6. Subject Systems, Classification Schemas and Typologies

A7. Cataloguing Rules and Formats and Value Vocabularies

A8. Access Restriction Term Source Codes

History

2020	New values and definitions, text correction. Consolidated previous appendixes A, B, D, E, F, G, H.
2021	Additions in section A.1 and Vocabulary List.
2022	Additions in section A6 and errata.
2024	New section A.8 (Access Restriction Term Source Codes). Text errata.

A.1 Languages and Scripts

The table contains a list of standard sources of language and scripts codes, assigning a code to each schema. Entries in the list are represented by the source code followed by the bibliographic citation for the source documentation.

Code	Schema
iso639-2	Codes for the representation of names of languages--Part 2: Alpha-3 code (ISO 639-2:1998). Geneva: International Organization for Standardization.
iso639-3	Codes for the representation of names of languages--Part 3: Alpha-3 code for comprehensive coverage of languages (ISO 639-3:2007). Geneva: International Organization for Standardization.
knia	Kody naimenovanii íàzykov: GOST 7.75-97. Minsk: Mezhgosudarstvennyi sovet po standartizatsii, metrologii i sertifikatsi. (System of Standards on Information, Librarianship and Publishing. Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages)
iso15924	Codes for the representation of names of scripts (ISO 15924:2004). Geneva: International Organization for Standardization.

A.2 Countries

The list of country codes consists the two-character alphabetic codes for names of countries that appears in ISO 3166-1, *Codes for the Representation of Names of Countries*. The list is available at https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/.

A.3 Geographic Area Codes

The Geographic Area Codes (GAC) allow broad retrieval of cataloguing records in machine-readable form by geographical areas. It is used in field 660 of UNIMARC/Bibliographic format and field 120 of UNIMARC/Authorities format. Separate codes for geophysical entities at the country or larger level are provided together with codes for the first order political divisions of a few countries. The Geographic

Area Codes were developed by the U.S. Library of Congress for use in MARC records. The MARC Code List for Geographic Areas is available at http://www.loc.gov/marc/geoareas/gacshome.html.

A.4 Time Period Codes

The purpose of the Time Period Code is to allow access to a range of materials covering a particular era or related to a particular date. In UNIMARC, the code is entered in field 661. The code was developed at the U.S. Library of Congress for use in the USMARC format, now is table found in MARC 21 under the description of field 045 - Time Period of Content available at https://www.loc.gov/marc/bibliographic/bd045.html.

The Time Period Code consists of four alphanumeric characters. For B.C. dates, a lowercase alphabetic character represents the millennium and a digit represents the century. If the century is not known, a hyphen "-" is used instead of a number. For A.D. dates, a lowercase alphabetic character represents the century and a digit represents the decade. If the decade is not known, a hyphen is used instead of a number. If a single year or a period within a decade is recorded, the appropriate two-character code is repeated to create the four-character code. In the B.C. table, the letter equals the millennium and the number equals the century. In the A.D. table, the letter equals the century and the number, which must be added, equals the decade.

A.5 Cartographic Resources Codes

The Cartographic Resources Codes are used in field 131. This list was developed by the British Library for use in UKMARC and it is no longer used by them as UKMARC has been replaced by MARC21. The codes can be found in Appendix D of the UKMARC format.

A.6 Subject Systems, Classification Schemas and Typologies

The following are lists of subject systems codes for published thesauri and classification schemes. Maintaining agencies are in parentheses ().

Other codes may be registered with the Permanent UNIMARC Committee by submitting registration details including suggested code, author, title, imprint and maintaining agency.

Subject System List

agrovoc	AGROVOC thesaurus. (Rome: AGRIS)
bic	BIC subject categories (London: BIC)
bmsi	British Museum subject index
cae	Library and Archives Canada (English) Canadian Subject Headings. (Ottawa: National Library of Canada)
caf	National Library of Canada (French) subject headings. (Ottawa: National Library of Canada)
ericd	Thesaurus of ERIC descriptors. (Washington: Educational Resources Information Center)
eudised	Thesaurus (Vandoeuvre-lès-Nancy: Institut de l'Information Scientifique et Technique du CNRS)
fei	Fingerprints = Empreintes = Impronte. (Paris: Institut de Recherche et d'Histoire des Textes in association with the National Library of Scotland, 1984)
francis	Thesaurus (Vandoeuvre-lès-Nancy: Institut de l'Information Scientifique et Technique du CNRS)
geonm	Geonames (Männedorf, Switzerland: Unxos GmbH)
gmgpc	Descriptive terms for graphic materials: genre and physical characteristic headings. (Washington: Library of Congress)
gsafd	Guidelines on subject access to individual works of fiction, drama, etc. (Chicago: Resources and Technical Services Division, American Library Association)
ifremer	IFREMER Thesaurus (Issy-les-Moulineaux: Institut français de recherche pour l'exploitation de la mer)
ima	Le thésaurus monde arabe. (Paris: Institut du monde Arabe)
inist	INIS: Thesaurus. (Vienna: International Atomic Energy Agency)

inspec	INSPEC thesaurus. (London: Institution of Electrical Engineers)
itoamc	Index terms for occupations in archival and manuscript collections (Library of Congress. Manuscript Division)
lc	Library of Congress subject headings. (Washington: Library of Congress)
lcch	Library of Congress Children's subject headings. (Washington: Library of Congress)
lctgm	United States. Library of Congress. Prints and Photographs Division. Thesaurus for graphic materials. (Washington: Library of Congress)
mesh	Medical subject headings. (Bethesda, Md.: United States. National Library of Medicine)
naf	NACO Authoriry File. (Washington, DC: Library of Congress)
nal	U.S. National Agricultural Library subject headings. (Beltsville, Md.: National Agricultural Library)
nsogi	Nuovo soggettario: guida al sistema italiano di indicizzazione per soggetto: thesaurus. (Firenze: Biblioteca nazionale centrale)
pactols	PACTOLS: un thesaurus multilingue pour l'archéologie. (Paris: groupe de travail PACTOLS)
pascal	Thesaurus (Vandoeuvre-lès-Nancy: Institut de l'Information Scientifique et Technique du CNRS)
rameau	RAMEAU: répertoire d'autorité-matière encyclopédique et alphabétique unifié. (Paris: Bibliothèque nationale de France; Montpellier: Agence bibliographique de l'enseignement supérieur)
rbbin	Binding terms: a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloging. (Chicago: Association of College and Research Libraries)
rbgenr	Genre terms: a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloguing. (Chicago: Association of College and Research Libraries)
rbpap	Paper terms: a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloging. (Chicago: Association of College and Research Libraries)
rbpri	Printing and publishing evidence: a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloging. (Chicago: Association of College and Research Libraries)
rbprov	Provenance evidence: a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloging. (Chicago: Association of College and Research Libraries)
rbtyp	Type evidence: a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloging. (Chicago: Association of College and Research Libraries)
rvm	Répertoire de vedettes-matière (Québec: Bibliothèque de l'Université Laval)
sears	Sears, Minnie Earl. Sears List of Subject Headings. (New York: H.M. Wilson)
sgc	Splošni geslovnik COBISS.SI = COBISS.SI general list of subject headings (Slovenian subject headings) (Maribor, Slovenia: Institut informacijskih znanosti (IZUM))
sgce	Splošni geslovnik COBISS.SI = COBISS.SI general list of subject headings (English subject headings) (Maribor, Slovenia: Institut informacijskih znanosti (IZUM))
she	SHE: subject headings for engineers. (New York: Engineering Index, inc.)
sipor	SIPORbase: sistema de indexação em português. (Lisboa: Biblioteca nacional)
test	United States. Dept. of Defense. Thesaurus of engineering and scientific terms. (Washington: Dept. of Defense)
hesw	Thésaurus W (Paris : Direction des Archives de France)
tscien	TermSciences (Vandoeuvre-lès-Nancy : Institut de l'Information Scientifique et Technique du CNRS)
watrest	United States. Bureau of Reclamation. Thesaurus of water resources terms; a collection of water resources and related terms for use in indexing technical information. (Washington: Bureau of Reclamation)

Classification Scheme List

ast	Faceted application of subject terminology. (Dublin, Ohio: OCLC) (http://fast.oclc.org)
atu	Aarne–Thompson–Uther classification system of folk tales.
dournon	G. Dournon. Guide pour la collecte des musiques et instruments. traditionnels (Paris: UNESCO)
ecnb	Enzyme nomenclature list. (Nomenclature Committee of the International Union of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology)

esar	R. Fillion. Le Système ESAR. Pour analyser, classifier des jeux et aménager des espaces.
hs	Hornbostel-Sachs classification of musical instruments. (Musical Instruments Museums Online, MIMO Consortium)
laforte	C. Laforte. Catalogue de la chanson folklorique française.
basic	Book and serials industry communications subject heading codes. (Book Industry Study Group (http://www.bisg.org)
ddc	Dewey decimal classification.
lcc	Library of Congress classification.
msc	Mathematical subject classification. (American Mathematical Society) (http://www.ams.org/msc/)
pcdm	Principes de classement des documents musicaux applicables aux collections de prêt. (Paris: Association pour la Coopération de l'Interprofession Musicale & Médiathèque musicale de Paris)
rubbk	Library bibliographic classification schedules for research libraries. (Moscow: Russian State Library, LBS Research Department).
rugasnti	State rubricator for scientific and technical information. (Moscow: Rector Centre for Scientific Research and Development, Interbranch Commission for Education).
sab	Klassifikationssystem för svenska bibliotek (SAB:s kommitté for katalogisering och klassifikation)
thema	Thema subject categories (London: EDItEUR)
udc	Universal decimal classification. (UDC Consortium) (http://www.udcc.org)
usnal	National Agricultural Library
usnlm	National Library of Medicine. National Library of Medicine classification. (Bethesda (Md.): National Library of Medicine).

Typology List

frTAV	France – Typologies audiovisuelles (Paris: Bibliothèque nationale de France).

Local Non-Standard Code

local	The code list used is not a standard.

A.7 Cataloguing Rules and Formats and Value Vocabularies Codes

The following are lists of the codes for published cataloguing codes and formats required for subfields $g and $2 of field 801 Originating Source and $2 of field 886 Data Not Converted From Source Format.

Other codes may be registered with the IFLA UBCIM Programme by submitting registration details including suggested code, author, title, imprint and maintaining agency.

Cataloguing Rules List

Maintaining agencies are in parentheses ( ).

AACR2	Anglo-American cataloguing rules. - 2nd ed. - (Chicago: American Library Association ; London : Chartered Institute of Library and Information Professionals ; Ottawa; Canadian Library Association)
AFNOR	Normes de catalogage publiées par l'Association française de normalisation. (Paris: Afnor)
amim	White-Hensen, Wendy. Archival moving image materials. (Washington: Library of Congress)
amremm	Pass, Gregory A. Descriptive cataloging of ancient, medieval, renaissance, and early-modern manuscripts (Chicago: Association of College & Research Libraries)
appm	Hensen, Steven L. Archives, personal papers, and manuscripts. (Washington: Library of Congress)
bdrb	Library of Congress. Office for Descriptive Cataloguing Policy. Bibliographic description of rare books. (Washington: Library of Congress)
bm	British Museum cataloguing rules.

bps	McCrum, Blanche Prichard. Bibliographical procedures and style (Washington: Library of Congress, General Reference and Bibliography Division)
bzbo	GOST R 7.0.100–2018 Bibliographic record. Bibliographic description. General requirements and rules. (Moscow: Russian Book Chamber)
cco	Cataloging cultural objects: a guide to describing cultural works and their images (Chicago: Visual Resources Association, American Library Association)
dacs	Describing archives: a content standard (Chicago: Society of American Archivists)
dcrb	Descriptive cataloging of rare books (Washington, DC: Cataloging Distribution Service, Library of Congress)
dcrmb	Descriptive cataloging of rare materials (Books). (Washington, DC: Cataloging Distribution Service, Library of Congress)
din1505	Titelangaben von Dokumenten (Berlin: Beuth)
DKR	Katalogiseringsregler for danske biblioteker og bibliografier. (Ballerup: Bibliotekscentralen)
dmbsb	Dokumentation av materialets behandling i SB 1700-1829 (Stockholm: Kungl. Biblioteket)
enol	Ekspertiza i nauchno-tekhnicheskaia obrabotka lichnykh arkhivnykh fondov: metodicheskiie rekomendatsii (Moskva: Gosudarstvennaia biblioteka SSSR im. V. I. Lenin)
estc	Eighteenth century short title catalogue, the cataloguing rules (London: The British Library)
fobidrtb	Federatie van Organisaties op het Gebied van het Bibliotheek-Informatie-en Dokumentatiewezen (FOBID) Regels voor de titelbeschrijving (Den Haag: Nederlands Bibliotheek en Lektuur Centrum)
gihc	Betz, Elisabeth W. Graphic materials. (Washington: Library of Congress)
hmstcn	Handleiding voor de medewerkers aan de STCN [Short title catalogue of the Netherlands]
KRS	Katalogiseringsregler för svenska bibliotek. 2nd ed. (Stockholm : SAB:s kommitté för katalogisering och klassification)
mmlcc	Manual of map library classification and cataloguing (London: Ministry of Defence)
ncafnor	Normes de catalogage publiées par l'Association française de normalisation (Paris: AFNOR)
NCRT	Nippon cataloguing rules. (Tokyo: Japan Library Association)
ncs	Norme per il catalogo degli stampati (Città del Vaticano: Biblioteca apostolica vaticana)
ohcm	Matters, Marion E. Oral history cataloging manual (Chicago: Society of American Archivists)
pi	Instruktionen für die alphabetischen Kataloge der preussischen Bibliotheken (Wiesbaden: Otto Harrasowitz)
PPIAK	Verona, Eva. Pravilnik i priruènik za izradbu abecednih kataloga. (Zagreb: Hrvatsko bibliotekarsko društvo)
psbo	Rules of Composition of Bibliographic Description. (Moscow : Interregional Commission on Cataloguing)
rad	Rules for archival description (Ottawa: Bureau of Canadian Archivists)
RAK	Regeln für die Alphabetische Katalogisierung (RAK). (Wiesbaden: Reichert)
RAK-WB	Regeln für die Alphabetische Katalogisierung an wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken (RAK-WB). (Berlin: Deutsches Bibliotheksinstitut)
rakddb	Ansetzungsform gemaess der RAK – Anwendung Der Deutschen Bibliothek
RCAA2	Règles de catalogage anglo-américaines. - 2e éd. (Montréal: ASTED)
rcr	Rossiiskiie pravila katalogizatsii (Moskva: Rossiiskaîa Gosudarstvennaîa Biblioteka)
RDA	Resource Description and Access (RDA Steering Committee)
rdc	Reglas de catalogación (Madrid: Dirección General del Libro, Archivos y Bibliotecas)
reicat	Regole italiane di catalogazione : REICAT (Roma : ICCU, 2009), http://norme.iccu.sbn.it/index.php?title=Reicat
RICA	Regole italiane di catalogazione per autore (Roma: Istituto centrale per il catalogo unico delle biblioteche italiane e per le informazioni bibliografiche)
rna	Regeln zur Erschließung von Nachlässen und Autographen (RNA)
RPC	Regras Portuguesas de Catalogação

vd16	Formalerschliessung nach dem Verzeichnis der Drucke des 16. Jahrhunderts (VD 16)
vd17	Formalerschliessung nach dem Verzeichnis der Drucke des 17. Jahrhunderts (VD 16)

Formats List

Unless the code is followed by a year of publication or edition statement the latest edition is meant. Maintaining agencies are in parentheses ( ).

annamarc	ANNAMARC. (Rome: Istituto Centrale per il Catalogo Unico delle Biblioteche Italiano e per le Informazioni Bibliografiche)[Obsolete]
ausmarc	AUSMARC Bibliographic Format. (Canberra: National Library of Australia)
belmarc	Belarus MARC Format (Minsk: National Library of Belarus)
bibsysm	BIBSYS-MARC (Tronheim : BIBSYS)
calco	Formato CALCO: Monografias e Publicaçoes Seriadas. (Brasília: Ministério da Educaçao e Cultura)
canmarc	Canadian MARC Communication Format: Bibliographic Data. (Ottawa: Canadian MARC Office)
catmarc/1987	Manual del CATMARC. (Barcelona: Institut Català de Bibliografa)
catmarc	Manual del CATMARC. (Barcelona: Generalitat de Catalunya Departament de Cultura)
ccf	CCF: the common communication format. (Paris: Unesco)
cnmarc	Zhong guo ji du mu lu ke shi shi yong shou ze = China MARC format manual (Beijing: Hua yi chu ban she)
comarc	COMARC/B format. (Maribor : IZUM)
danmarc	DanMARC: edb-format til lagring og udveksling af bibliografiske data i maskinl'sbar form (Ballerup: Biblioteksscentralens Forlag)
finmarc	FINMARC-yhtenäisformaatin sovellusohje (Helsinki: Helsingin yliopiston kirjasto, Tieteellisten kirjastojen atk-uksikkö)
ibermarc	IBERMARC: Formato Para Monografías. (Madrid: Comisaría Nacional de Bibliotecas)
indimarc	Indian MARC (Calcutta: Bureau of Indian Standards)
indomarc	Format MARC Indonesia (INDOMARC) untuk buku (Jakarta: Perpustakaan Nasional R.I.)
intermrc	INTERMARC (M): Format Bibliographique d'Échange Pour les Monographies: Manuel. (Paris: "Groupe INTERMARC")
iranmarc	IranMarc. (Tehran: National Library of the Islamic Republic of Iran, 2002)
jpnmarc	Japan/MARC Manyuaru = Japan/MARC Manual. (Tokyo: Kokuritsu Kokkai Toshokan)
kormarc	Han`guk munhon chadonghwa mongnokpop (Hancamok) = Korean machine readable cataloging (KOR MARC) (Seoul: Kungnip Chungang Tosogwan)
librism	LibrisMARC (Stockholm: Kunglige biblioteket)
local	Locally defined format
mab	Maschinelles Austauschformat für Bibliotheken (Frankfurt am Main: Die Deutsche Bibliothek)
malmarc	MALMARC (Penang: Universiti Sains Malaysia)
marc21	MARC 21 format for bibliographic data (Washington, DC: Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service)
marca	MARC 21 format for authority data (Washington, DC: Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service)
marcc	MARC 21 format for classification data (Washington, DC: Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service)
march	MARC 21 format for holdings data (Washington, DC: Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service)
marci	MARC 21 format for community information (Washington, DC: Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service)
marcal	Manual abreviado para codificación en formato MARCAL (libros) (México: Consejo Nacional de Ciencia y Tecnología)
marcsui	Manuel USMARC: version suisse ([Berne]: Bibliothèque suisse)

mekof	Kommunikativnyi format dlîâ obmena bibliograficheskimi dannymi na magnetnoi lente (Moskva: Izdatel'stvo Standartov)
normarc	NORMARC: veiledning i MARC-katalogisering og kort oversikt over arbeidsrutiner (Oslo: Universitetsbiblioteket i Oslo)
pica	PICA+ format (s'Gravenhage: Pica-Bureau)
pulmarc	Zhong wen ji du bian mu ke shi = PUL MARC format (Bei jing: Bei jing da xue tu shu guan zi dong hua yan jiu shi)
rusmarc	Rossiyskyi Kommunikativnyi Format Predstavleniia Bibliograficheskikh Zapisei v Mashinochitaemoi Forme (Rossiyskaia versiia UNIMARC; Knigi i Serial'nye Izdaniia). (Ministerstvo Kultury Rossiyskoy Federatsii. Rossiyskaia Bibliotechnaia Assotsiatsiia)
samarc	SAMARC Manual. (Pretoria: State Library)
sbnmarc	Italian SBNMarc format (Roma : Istituto Centrale per il Catalogo Unico delle Biblioteche Italiane e per le Informazioni Bibliografiche)
swemarc	SWEMARC: the Swedish National Bibliography in machine-readable form: format specifications (Stockholm: Kungliga biblioteket)
swemarca	SweMARC – auktoritetsformatet (Stockholm: Kungliga biblioteket)
swemarck	SweMARC – klassifikationsformatet (Stockholm: Kungliga biblioteket)
swemarcs	SweMARC – beståndsformatet (Stockholm: Kungliga biblioteket)
trcmarc	TRC MARC jinmei tenkyoroko (Tôkyô: Toshokan Ryûtsû Sentâ)
ukmarc	UKMARC Manual. (Wetherby: British Library)
unimarc	UNIMARC Manual. (Munich : Saur)
unimch	Chinese MARC Format. (Taipei: National Central Library)
unimci	Priručnik za UNIMARC. (Zagreb: Nacionalna i sveuèiliišna knjižnica)
unimcz	UNIMARC manuál. (Prague: Národní knihivna Èeské republiky)
unimes	UNIMARC. [Spanish implementation]
unimfr	Manuel de l'UNIMARC. Version française. (Munich: Saur)
unimgw	UNIMARC. [German implementation]
unimit	UNIMARC [Italian implementation]
unimrur	Rukovodstvo po UNIMARC = UNIMARC Manual. (Moscow: Gosudarstvennaia Publichnaia Nauchno-Tekhnicheskaia Biblioteka Rossiia)
unimrus	see rusmarc
unimsi	UNIMARC. [Slovenian implementation]
usmarc	USMARC Bibliographic Format. (Washington: Library of Congress)

Value Vocabularies List

rdacarrier	Term and Code List for RDA Carrier Types http://www.loc.gov/standards/valuelist/rdacarrier.html
rdacontent	Term and Code List for RDA Content Types: http://www.loc.gov/standards/valuelist/rdacarrier.html
RDAfrCarrier	Liste de valeurs codées pour les types de support de RDA-FR http://multimedia.bnf.fr/unimarcb_trad/RDA-FR-types-supports.pdf
rdamedia	Term and Code List for RDA Media Types: http://www.loc.gov/standards/valuelist/rdamedia.html
rdafmn	Term and Code List for RDA Form of Musical Notation http://rdaregistry.info/termList/MusNotation/
rdafnv	Term and Code List for RDA Form of Notated Movement http://rdaregistry.info/termList/noteMove/
rdaft	Term and Code List for RDA File Type http://www.rdaregistry.info/termList/fileType/
rdaftn	Term and Code List for RDA Form of Tactile Notation http://rdaregistry.info/termList/TacNotation/
wikidata	Wikidata https://www.wikidata.org/wiki/Wikidata:Main_Page

A.8 Access Restriction Term Source Codes

List *Access Restriction Term Source Codes* of sources of terms used to record access restrictions and assigns a code to each source for use in field 857 is developed by Library of Congress for MARC21 and is available for at https://www.loc.gov/standards/sourcelist/access-restriction.html.

APPENDIX B: RELATOR CODES

Introduction

Codes from this list may be used in subfield $4 of fields in the 7-- RESPONSIBILITY BLOCK. When more than one code is to be used in conjunction with a single name, each code should be carried in a separate subfield $4.

The codes in this list are not mutually exclusive. Institutions making use of such codes should attempt to use the most specific code applicable when one or more would seem to apply. The use of relator codes in UNIMARC is optional.

Alphabetic 3-character codes allowing for a precise identification of relationships for performers which may be used in addition to the numeric codes 545 and 721 when needed by the cataloguing agency are found in field 146.

History

1994	New value 675 Reviewer.
1998	Section issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2000	Section issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2002	Section issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2005	Section issued/re-issued with corrections/additions.
2008	New values.
2016	New values.
2020	New values and definitions, text correction (agent). Renamed, previous appendix C.
2021	New values.
2022	New values.

Code List

000	Undetermined function	An agent with undetermined responsibility. Used when it is necessary to indicate that an attempt has been made to determine the responsibility without success. If the record comes from a source which does not recognise relators do not use 000. Instead do not use any subfield which requires a relator code.
	Academic advisor	USE Academic supervisor (003)
003	Academic supervisor	A person who participates in overseeing academic activity of any kind that results in a work, including theses, research, and projects. Use when relator code 727 (Thesis advisor) cannot be applied.
	Accompanying material, Writer of	USE Writer of accompanying material (770)
005	Actor	A person who principally exhibits acting skills in a musical or dramatic presentation or entertainment.
010	Adapter	An agent that modifies a work to make it accessible to another audience, different from the one it was intended for. Includes rewriting for motion pictures or another audiovisual medium, or to adapt a written text into a new one. For agency that reworks a musical composition, usually for a different medium, use Arranger (030).
	Addressee	USE Recipient of letters (660)
	Advisor to a thesis or dissertation	USE Thesis advisor (727)
015	Agency making a reproduction available	Any agency (library, archives, publisher) involved in the process of production, realization or distribution of a reproduction of a

		resource, for example a microform or digital reproduction; applies to the agency that makes the reproduction as well as to the agency that publishes the reproduction and/or puts it online. USE 310 for Distributor USE 610 for Printer USE 650 for Publisher
018	Animator	An agent contributing to a moving image work or computer program by giving apparent movement to inanimate objects or drawings. For the creator of the drawings that are animated, see Artist (040).
020	Annotator	An agent who makes manuscript annotations on an item.
	Appraiser	USE Expert (365)
030	Arranger	An agent contributing to a musical work by rewriting the composition for a medium of performance different from that for which the work was originally intended, or modifying the work for the same medium of performance, etc., such that the musical substance of the original composition remains essentially unchanged. For extensive modification that effectively results in the creation of a new musical work, see Composer (230).
040	Artist	An agent responsible for creating a work by conceiving, and implementing, an original graphic design, drawing, painting, etc. For book illustrators, prefer Illustrator (440).
050	Assignee	An agent to which a license for printing or publishing has been transferred.
060	Associated name	General relator for a name associated with or found on the copy-specific item or collection, which cannot be determined to be that of a Former owner (390) or other designated relator indicative of provenance.
062	Author, attributed	An agent relating him/her to a resource for which there is or once was substantial authority for designating that agent as author, creator, etc. of the work indicative of provenance.
	Attributed author	USE Author, Attributed (062)
065	Auctioneer	An agent in charge of the estimation and public auctioning of goods, particularly books, artistic works, etc.
070	Author	An agent chiefly responsible for the creation of the intellectual or artistic content of a work. Use also for persons, etc., creating a new work by paraphrasing, rewriting, or adapting works by another creator such that the modification has substantially changed the nature and content of the original or changed the medium of expression. When more than one agent jointly bears such responsibility, this code may be used in association with as many access point as is appropriate.
072	Author in quotations or text extracts	An agent whose work is largely quoted or extracted in works to which he or she did not contribute directly. Such quotations are found particularly in exhibition catalogues, collections of photographs etc.
075	Author of afterword, postface, colophon, etc.	An agent responsible for an afterword, postface, colophon, etc. but who is not the chief author of a work. Use instead of Author of introduction, etc. (080) when the nature of the afterword etc. is completely different from that of the introduction, etc.
080	Author of introduction, etc.	An agent responsible for an introduction, preface, foreword, afterword, notes, other critical matter, etc., but who is not the chief author of the work. See also Author of afterword (075).
090	Author of dialogue	An agent responsible for the dialog or spoken commentary for a screenplay or sound recording.

	Author of the "book" of an opera, musical or ballet.	USE Librettist (480)
100	Bibliographic antecedent	An agent responsible for a resource upon which the resource represented by the bibliographic description is based in whole or in part. This relator may be appropriate in records for adaptations, indexes, continuations and sequels by different authors, concordances, etc.
110	Binder	An agent who binds an item.
120	Binding designer	An agent responsible for the binding design of a book, including the type of binding, the type of materials used, and any decorative aspects of the binding.
130	Book designer	An agent responsible for the entire graphic design of a book, including arrangement of type and illustration, choice of materials, and process to be used.
140	Bookjacket designer	An agent responsible for the design of flexible covers designed for or published with a book, including the type of materials used, and any decorative aspects of the bookjacket.
150	Bookplate designer	An agent responsible for the design of a book owner's identification label that is most commonly pasted to the inside front cover of a book.
160	Bookseller	An agent who makes books and other bibliographic materials available for purchase.
	Bowdlerizer	USE Censor (190)
170	Calligrapher	An agent who writes in an artistic hand, usually as a copyist and or engrosser.
180	Cartographer	An agent responsible for creating a map, atlas, globe, or other cartographic work.
	Cartoonist	USE Animator for a person who uses technology to give his or her artwork the illusion of movement USE Artist for all other cartoonists
190	Censor	An agent who examines bibliographic resources for the purpose of suppressing parts deemed objectionable on moral, political, military, or other ground. Includes bowdlerizer, expurgator, etc., official or private.
	Choir master	USE Choral director (195)
195	Choral director	An agent who conducts the performance of all the singers who constitute a choir.
200	Choreographer	An agent responsible for creating or contributing to a work of movement.
202	Circus performer	An agent who performs in a circus.
205	Collaborator	Use only when a more precise function, represented by another code, cannot be used.
	Colourist	USE Graphic technician (410)
206	Collector of field material	An agent who collects, in the field, elements of musical, oral or natural heritage related to a given territory, population or species, either by transcription or by sound or audiovisual recording
207	Comedian	An agent whose performance is designed to arouse laughter.
210	Commentator	An agent who provides interpretation, analysis, or a discussion of the subject matter on a recording, motion picture, or other audio-visual medium.
212	Commentator for written text	An agent responsible for the commentary or explanatory notes about a text. For the writer of manuscript annotations in a printed book, use Annotator (020).

220	Compiler	An agent responsible for a collection by selecting and putting together matter from works of various persons or bodies. Also, an agent who selects and puts together in one publication matter from the works of one person or body.
230	Composer	An agent responsible for creating or contributing to a musical work, usually a piece of music in manuscript or printed form.
233	Composer of adapted work	A composer of the work (opera, aria, movement, theme) for which the bibliographic resource contains a paraphrase, fantasia, potpourri. Also, the composer of the theme that is the subject of variations written by a different composer.
236	Composer of main musical work	A composer of the main musical work into which a cadenza, an aria, etc. has been inserted by another composer. Use only when the main musical work is not included in the resource.
240	Compositor	An agent responsible for the creation of metal slug, or molds made of other materials, used to produce the text and images in printed matter. USE for Typesetter.
	Computer graphics designer	USE Graphic technician (410) and/or Illustrator (440)
245	Conceptor	An agent responsible for the original idea on which a work is based. This includes the scientific author of an audio-visual resource and the conceptor of an advertisement or slogan.
250	Conductor	An agent responsible for directing the group performing a musical work.
255	Consultant to a project	An agent relevant to a resource, who is engaged specifically to provide an intellectual overview of a strategic or operational task and – by analysis, specification or instruction – to create or propose a cost-effective course of action or solution.
257	Continuator	An agent who succeeds another in the realisation of a work.
	Contractor/Monitor	USE Monitor/Contractor (540)
	Continuity artist	USE Production personnel (633)
260	Copyright holder	An agent to whom copy and legal rights have been granted or transferred for the intellectual content of a work. The copyright holder, although not necessarily the creator of the work, usually has the exclusive right to benefit financially from the sale and use of the work to which the associated copyright protection applies.
270	Corrector	An agent who is a corrector of manuscripts, such as the scriptorium official who corrected the work of a scribe. For printed matter use Proof-reader (640).
273	Curator of an exhibition	An agent responsible for conceiving and organising an exhibition, collection, or other item.
	Counterfeiter	USE Forger (380)
	Costume designer	USE Production personnel (633)
275	Dancer	An agent who principally exhibits dancing skills in a musical or dramatic presentation or entertainment.
280	Dedicatee	An agent to whom a book or manuscript is dedicated (not the recipient of a gift). The dedication may be formal (appearing in the document) or informal (item specific). In the latter case the field containing the 280 code will have a subfield $5 for the institution holding the item.
290	Dedicator	An agent of a dedication. The dedication may be a formal statement or it may be in epistolary or verse form.
295	Degree-grantor	The degree granting institution, who is granting the degree for which the thesis or dissertation included in the resource was presented.

	Designer of binding	USE Binding designer (120)
	Designer of book	USE Book designer (130)
	Designer of bookjacket	USE Bookjacket designer (140)
	Designer of bookplate	USE Bookplate designer (150)
	Designer of type	USE Type designer (740)
300	Director	An agent responsible for the general management of the work or who supervised the production of the performance for stage, screen, or sound recording.
303	Disc jockey	An agent who selects and plays pre-recorded music for an audience.
305	Dissertant	A person who presents a thesis for a university or higher-level educational degree.
310	Distributor	An agent that has exclusive or shared marketing rights for the resource.
320	Donor	Donor of book to present owner. Donor to previous owner is designated as Former owner (390).
330	Dubious author	An agent whom the authorship of a work has been dubiously or incorrectly ascribed.
340	Editor	An agent prepares for publication a work not his own. The editorial work may be either technical or intellectual.
	Editor of series	USE Publishing director (651)
	Editor-in-chief	USE Publishing director (651)
350	Engraver	An agent who cuts letters, figures, etc. on a surface, such as a wooden or metal plate used for printing. In the context of numismatics, an agent responsible for creating the negative image on a die.
355	Epitomator	An agent responsible for an epitome (summary or miniature form, or an instance that represents a larger text) of a work. Use only for ancient works, if the original work is now lost.
360	Etcher	An agent who produces text or images for printing by subjecting metal, glass, or some other surface to acid or the corrosive action of some other substance.
365	Expert	An agent in charge of the description and appraisal of the value of goods, particularly rare resources, works of art, etc.
	Expurgator	USE Censor (190)
370	Film editor	An agent who, following the script and in creative cooperation with the Director, selects, arranges, and assembles the filmed material, controls the synchronization of picture and sound, and participates in other post-production tasks such as sound mixing and visual effects processing.
380	Forger	An agent who makes or imitates something of value or importance, especially with the intent to defraud.
385	Former Attributed author	USE Author, Attributed (062) for current attributed author or Dubious author (330) when a authorship has been dubiously or incorrectly ascribed
390	Former owner	An agent owning an item at any time in the past. Includes a person or organisation to whom the item was once presented as named in a statement inscribed by another person or organisation. Person or institution giving the item to present owner is designated as Donor (320).
395	Founder	An agent who creates a series, magazine, periodical or any other kind of continuing resource.
400	Funder	[Obsolete]. USE Sponsor (723).

405	Game designer	An agent responsible for the structural and graphic design of a board, card, dice, video, etc. game, or a simulation that produces desirable interactions among its participants or spectators, including arrangement of rules, choice of materials, and process used.
407	Glossator	An agent responsible for a glossa (set of interlinear or marginal annotations added to a text for the explanation of words or sentences).
410	Graphic technician	An agent responsible for the realization of the design in a medium from which an image (printed, displayed etc.) may be produced. If person who conceives the design (i.e. Illustrator (440)) also realizes it, codes for both functions may be used as needed. Includes colourists.
	Harmoniser	USE Arranger (030)
420	Honoree	An agent in memory or honour of whom a book is donated.
	Humourist	USE Comedian (207)
430	Illuminator	An agent providing decoration to a specific item using precious metals or color, often with elaborate designs and motifs.
440	Illustrator	An agent who conceives a design or illustration.
	Imprimatur	USE Licensor (500)
445	Impresario	A manager or producer of a music or theatre production: also the director of an opera company.
450	Inscriber	An agent who signs a presentation statement.
460	Interviewee	An agent responsible for creating or contributing to a resource by responding to an interviewer, usually a reporter, pollster, or some other information gathering agent.
470	Interviewer	An agent responsible for creating or contributing to a resource by acting as an interviewer, reporter, pollster, or some other information gathering agent.
	Investigator	USE Originator (560)
	Joint author	USE Author (070)
473	Issuer of numismatic object	An agent responsible for the issuance of a coin. May be different from the ruler in whose name a coin is issued.
475	Issuing body	An agency under whose auspices a bibliographic resource may be published. The body may or may not be intellectually responsible for the bibliographic resource, and may or may not be the publisher.
480	Librettist	Writer of the text of an opera, oratorio, choreographic work, etc.
490	Licensee	An agent who is an original recipient of the right to print or publish.
500	Licensor	An agent who is a signer of the license, imprimatur, etc.
	Lighting designer	USE Production personnel (633)
	Literary editor	USE Publishing director (651)
510	Lithographer	An agent who prepares the stone or grained plate for lithographic printing, including a graphic artist creating an original design while working directly on the surface from which printing will be done.
520	Lyricist	Writer of the text of a song.
	Make-up supervisor	USE Production personnel (633)
	Mask designer	USE Production personnel (633)
	Meeting organiser	USE Organiser of meeting (557)
	Memorial	USE Honoree (420)

	Medallist	USE Artist (040)
530	Metal-engraver	An engraver responsible for decorations, illustrations, letters, etc. cut on a metal surface for printing or decoration.
535	Mime artist	An agent who performs mime.
536	Mint	A manufacturer of coins that can be used as currency
537	Mint staff	An agent holding an office other than moneyer in a mint.
538	Monetary authority	An agent under whose authority a coin is issued. Frequently used to indicate the ruling monarch appearing on a coin.
539	Moneyer	An agent responsible for the manufacturing of coins that can be used as currency.
540	Monitor	An agent that supervises the compliance with the contract and is responsible for the report and controls its distribution. Sometimes referred to as the grantee, or controlling agency.
	Motion picture editor	USE Film editor (370)
	Music engraver	USE Engraver (350)
	Musical reduction, arranger of	USE Arranger (030)
545	Musician	An agent performing music or contributing to the musical content of a work. May be used for vocalist or instrumentalist. Use when it is not possible or desirable to identify more precisely the person's function. For an ensemble, specify with an alphabetic code from the list in field 145 the kind of ensemble.
550	Narrator	A speaker delivering the narration in a motion picture, sound recording or other type of work.
552	Notary	A person with the authority to perform certain legal formalities, especially to draw up or certify contracts, deeds, and other documents for use in other jurisdictions.
555	Opponent	An agent solely or partly responsible for opposing a thesis or dissertation.
	Orchestral director	USE Conductor (250)
	Orchestrator	USE Arranger (030)
557	Organiser of meeting	An agent organizing the exhibit, event, conference, etc., which gave rise to a resource.
560	Originator	An agent performing the work, i.e. the name of a person or organisation associated with the intellectual content of the work. Includes person named in the work as investigator or principal investigator. This category does not include the publisher or personal affiliation, or sponsor except where it is also the corporate author.
570	Other	Use whenever a relator or relator code in a national format has no equivalent in UNIMARC.
580	Papermaker	An agent responsible for the production of paper, usually from wood, cloth, or other fibrous material.
582	Patent applicant	An agent that applied for a patent described in the record.
584	Patent inventor	An agent who invented the device or process covered by the patent described in the record.
587	Patentee	An agent that was granted the patent described in the record.
590	Performer	An agent acting or otherwise performing in a musical or dramatic presentation or entertainment. Use if more specific codes are not required, e.g. actor, dancer, musician, singer.
595	Performer of research	The corporate body responsible for performing the research reported in the resource.

600	Photographer	(1) An agent who took a still photograph. This relator may be used in a record for either the original photograph or for a reproduction in any medium. (2) An agent responsible for the photography in a motion picture.
	Plates, Printer of	USE Printer of Plates (620)
605	Presenter	An agent who introduces and appears in a television or radio programme etc.
610	Printer	An agent responsible involved in manufacturing a manifestation of printed text, notated music, etc., from type or plates, such as a book, newspaper, magazine, broadside, score, etc
	Printer of photographs	USE Graphic Technician (410)
620	Printer of plates	An agent responsible for illustrations or designs from plates.
630	Producer	An agent with final responsibility for the making of a motion picture, including business aspects, management of the productions, and the commercial success of the film. USE Impresario (445) for the manager or producer of music or theatre production.
632	Production designer	An agent responsible for all the visual aspects of a production, including lighting, scenery, costumes, etc.
633	Production personnel	An agent associated with the production (props, lighting, special effects, etc.) of a musical or dramatic presentation or entertainment. Includes continuity artists.
635	Programmer	An agent responsible for the creation of computer program design documents, source code, or machine-executable digital files and supporting documentation.
637	Project manager	An agent who manages a programme of work towards a predefined objective.
	Promoter	USE Thesis advisor (727)
640	Proof-reader	Corrector of printed matter only. For manuscripts use Corrector (270).
	Property manager	USE Production personnel (633)
650	Publisher	An agent responsible for publishing, releasing, or issuing a resource.
651	Publishing director	An agent who presides over the elaboration of a collective work to ensure its coherence or continuity. This includes editors-in-chief, literary editors, editors of series, etc.
655	Puppeteer	A performer contributing to a resource by manipulating, controlling, or directing puppets or marionettes in a moving image production or a musical or dramatic presentation or entertainment.
	Realiser of the thorough bass	USE Arranger (030)
660	Recipient of letters	An agent to whom letters are addressed.
665	Record producer	An agent who controls the recording sessions, coaches and guides the musicians, organizes and schedules production budget and resources, and supervises the recording, mixing and mastering processes.
670	Recording engineer	An agent supervising the technical aspects of a sound or video recording session.
	Redactor	USE Secretary (710)
	Reporter	USE Secretary (710)
672	Remixer	An agent who uses audio mixing to realize an alternate master recording of a song, adding or subtracting elements, or simply

		changing the equalization, dynamics, pitch, tempo, playing time, or almost any other aspect of the various musical components.
673	Research team head	An agent directed the research or managed the project reported in the resource.
677	Research team member	A member of a research team responsible for the research reported in the resource.
675	Reviewer	An agent responsible for the review of a book, motion picture, performance, etc.
678	Restorationist	An agent responsible for the set of technical, editorial and intellectual procedures aimed at compensating for the degradation of an item by bringing it back to a state as close as possible to its original condition.
680	Rubricator	An agent responsible for parts of a work, often headings or opening parts of a manuscript, that appear in a distinctive color, usually red.
690	Scenarist	Author of a screenplay.
695	Scientific advisor	An agent who brings scientific, pedagogical, or historical competence to the conception and realization of a work, particularly in the case of audio-visual resources.
700	Scribe	Maker of pen-facsimiles of printed matter and also an amanuensis or a writer of manuscripts proper.
705	Sculptor	An artist responsible for creating a three-dimensional work by modeling, carving, or similar technique. USE when the more general term Artist (040) is not required.
710	Secretary	Redactor, or other agent responsible for expressing the views of a body, being responsible for their intellectual content.
	Series editor	USE Publishing director (651)
720	Signer	Use for signature which appears in a book without a presentation or other statement indicative of provenance.
721	Singer	An agent contributing to a resource by using his/her/their voice with or without musical accompaniment to produce music. A singer's performance may or may not include actual words.
	Slogan creator	USE Conceptor (245)
	Sound effects engineer	USE Production personnel (633)
	Special effects creator	USE Production personnel (633)
723	Sponsor	An agent responsible for supporting financially a bibliographic resource or an exhibition or meeting which is associated with the bibliographic resource. For issuing or sponsoring bodies of continuing resources USE Issuing body (475).
	Stage designer	USE Production designer (632)
	Stage director	USE Director (300)
725	Standards body	An organization responsible for issuing or enforcing a standard.
726	Stunt performer	Surrogate for an actor, who performs dangerous or difficult actions.
	Textual engraver	USE Engraver (350)
727	Thesis advisor	A person under whose supervision a degree candidate develops and presents a thesis, mémoire, or text of a dissertation.
730	Translator	An agent who renders a text from one language into another, or from an older form of a language into the modern form.
735	Transliterator	An agent responsible for a transliteration.
740	Type designer	An agent who designed the type face used in a particular book.
750	Typographer	An agent primarily responsible for choice and arrangement of type used in a book. If the agent who selects and arranges type is also

		responsible for other aspects of the graphic design of a book, i.e. Book designer (130), codes for both functions may be needed.
753	Vendor	An agent who sold the bibliographic resource being described.
755	Vocalist	A person who principally exhibits singing skills in a musical or dramatic presentation or entertainment.
760	Wood-engraver	An agent who makes prints by cutting the image in relief on the end-grain of a wood block.
770	Writer of accompanying material	An agent who writes significant material which accompanies a sound recording or other audio-visual material.
	Writer of dialogue	USE Author of dialogue (090)

APPENDIX C: CHARACTER SETS

D.1 Introduction

UNIMARC records may be encoded using either 7-bit or 8-bit character code values. The specifications for identifying and using various character sets are described in the following sections of this appendix; they are in conformance with those contained in ISO 2022. That standard should also be consulted.

UNIMARC records may also be encoded using 16-bit character code values. See D.6 ISO 10646 character set.

D.2 Framework

A matrix for all character codes possible with 7-bits is constructed as illustrated. Bits 7-5 are represented by the columns, and bits 4-1 by the rows. The ISO method of numbering is used, e.g. 7/15 not 7F for DEL.

7 bit Code Matrix

	columns									
rows	0	1			2	3	4	5	6	7
0					SP					
1										
2	32				94 graphic characters					
	control									
.	functions									
.										
.										
.										
15										DEL

A 7-bit code set accommodates 32 control functions, 94 graphic characters, SPACE, and DELETE. The individual characters are commonly referred to by their column and row position in the matrix using the notation "c/r", thus the SPACE character is 2/0. Code values are assigned according to the following rules. The first two columns of a code matrix are reserved for system control functions; columns 2-7 are for graphic characters. The two corner codes of the graphic columns are reserved for SPACE and DELETE characters.

Data may also be encoded using 8-bits per character, in which case the number of possible codes doubles, hence the code matrix doubles. Bits 8-5 are represented by the column and bits 4-1 by the rows. The 8-bit matrix has four parts which are specified for control functions and graphic characters as illustrated.

8-bit Code Matrix

	00 01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08 09	10	11	12	13	14	15
0		SP												
1														
2	32	94 graphic characters						32	94 graphic characters					
.	control							control						
.	functions							functions						
.														
.														
.														
15							DEL							

The additional bit is the left-most bit and it is 0 for a left-hand part and 1 for a right-hand part. Graphic sets may be represented by either one 7 or 8 bit combination per character or, where there are a large number of characters in the set, by multiple 7 or 8 bit combinations per character.

Use of code sets require first the designation of the sets, then the invocation of a designated set as the working set. For both 7-bit and 8-bit codes, two sets of control functions and four graphic character sets may be designated at any given time. These designated sets are called the C0, C1 and G0, G1, G2, G3 sets. In 7-bits, two C*n* sets and one G*n* set may have invoked, working set status at a given time. In 8-bits, two C*n* and two G*n* sets may be in an invoked, working set, status at a given time. The following appendix sections specify the designation and invocation of code sets in UNIMARC.

D.3 Control Function Sets

The C0 and C1 control function sets are fixed for UNIMARC. Thus they do not need to be designated and invoked in the record.

The C0 set is the set of 32 control functions defined in ISO 646. This set contains the basic transmission controls and the subfield delimiter, field terminator, and record terminator.

The C1 set is the set of control functions defined in ISO 6630, Bibliographic Control Characters. Only the NSB "Non-sorting character(s) beginning", NSE "Non-sorting character(s) ending", PLD "Partial Line Down" and PLU "Partial Line Up" functions from that set are currently allowed in UNIMARC.

In the 7-bit and 8-bit environment, the C0 set occupies columns 0 and 1 at all times. In a 7-bit record, the characters from the C1 set are represented by the two character "ESC F" where ESC is the 1/11 control function in the C0 set and F is a bit combination from columns 4 and 5. The F bit combinations associated with each of the functions defined in ISO 6630 were assigned by ISO at the time of registration of the set and are identified for ISO 6630 in section D.7 of this appendix. Note especially that in the 7-bit environment the "ESC F" substitutes for the code table bit combinations of the ISO 6630 functions.

In an 8-bit record, the C1 set resides in columns 08 and 09, and the functions are represented by their code table bit combinations.

D.4 Graphic Character Sets

The G0 graphic set for UNIMARC is always ISO 646. All of the characters in the RECORD LABEL, the DIRECTORY, and the coded fields/subfields are from ISO 646, as are the field indicators and subfield codes. Thus a record always begins with ISO 646 as the working set. Up to three additional graphic sets may be designated as G1, G2 and G3 in field 100, subfield $a, character positions 28-29, Character Sets, and positions 30-33, Additional Character Sets. If no more than four sets are used in a record, the field 100 information is all that is required to designate the graphic sets. The0y can then be invoked as needed. Note that since the RECORD LABEL, DIRECTORY, and coded data fields are all coded using ISO 646, the G1, G2, and G3 designations in field 100 can be accessed before any additional graphic sets are encountered in the record.

D.4.1 7-bit Environment

In a 7-bit character record the four designated sets are invoked using the following ISO 2022 locking shifts:

Acronym	Full Name	Bit Combination(s)	Set Invoked
SI	Shift in	0/15	G0
SO	Shift out	0/14	G1
LS2	Locking shift two	ESC 6/14	G2
LS3	Locking shift three	ESC 6/15	G3

These shifts are locking, so the set invoked remains the working set until another set is specified by a shift function.

Since the record begins with the G0 (ISO 646) set as the working set, the SI shift to the G0 set will only be used when there has been an invocation of one of the other G*n* sets as the working set. The G0 (ISO 646) set must be the working set at the end of each subfield and field since the succeeding subfield codes or directory processing require ISO 646 as the working set. This shift back to the G0 (ISO 646) set should take place before the subfield delimiter or end of field mark.

In 7-bits, a non-locking invocation of single characters from the designated G2 or G3 set is also possible. The following non-locking shifts are defined by ISO 2022:

Acronym	Full Name	Bit Combinations	Set from which Single Character Invoked
SS2	Single shift two	ESC 4/14	G2
SS3	Single shift three	ESC 4/15	G3

There is no need to reinvoke the working set after the single shifts as it is automatically reinstated after one character from the G2 or G3 set.

Examples (for clarity, bit combinations are in bold)

EX 1
SO SI
50011$aEdda S**0/14**æS**0/15**mundar.$mEnglish.$1Selections.
In this record, the ISO 5426 Extended Latin set has been designated the G1 set and the single character “æ” is accessed via an invocation of that set.
EX 2
SS2
50011$aEdda S**1/11 4/14**æmundar.$mEnglish.$1Selections.
If in EX 1 ISO 5426 had been designated a G2 set, the single shift function could be used to invoke the “æ”.
EX 3
LS2 SI LS2 SI
210##$a**1/11 6/14**Москва**0/15**$c"**1/11 6/14**Правда**0/15**"$d1968
In this record, ISO 5426 has been designated the G1 set and the basic Cyrillic set has been designated the G2 set. This field contains a Cyrillic name. Shifts into the G2 set must be made at the beginning of each subfield with shifts back into the G0 set at the end of each.

D.4.2 8-bit Environment

In an 8-bit code record the four designated sets are invoked using the following ISO 2022 locking shifts:

Acronym	Full Name	Bit Combinations	SetInvoked/ Into Columns
LS0	Locking shift zero	00/15	G0/02-07
LS1	Locking shift one	00/14	G1/02-07
LS1R	Locking shift one right	ESC 7/14	G1/10-15
LS2	Locking shift two	ESC 6/14	G2/02-07
LS2R	Locking shift two right	ESC 7/13	G2/10-15
LS3	Locking shift three	ESC 6/15	G3/02-07
LS3R	Locking shift three right	ESC 7/12	G3/10-15

These shifts are locking, so the set invoked remains the working set until another set is invoked by a shift function.

Since the record begins with the G0 set (ISO 646) in columns 02-07 and the G1 set in columns 10-15, the shift functions to those sets will only be used when there has been an invocation of the G2 or G3 set into those columns. The G0 set must be the working set in columns 02-07 at the end of each subfield and each field. The shift back to the G0 set when it has been temporarily displaced should occur before the subfield delimiter or end of field mark. The G1 set designated in field 100 is considered the default set for columns 10-15; thus it should always be restored at the end of a field that has shifted another set into those columns.

In 8-bits, non-locking single shifts are not used in UNIMARC.

Examples (for clarity, bit combinations are in bold)

EX 1
50011$aEdda Sæmundar.$mEnglish.$1 Selections.
The ISO 5426 Extended Latin set has been designated the G1 set. No shift is required to use it in the 8-bit environment.
EX 2
LS2R LS1R
50011$aEdda S**1/11 7/13**æ**1/11 7/14**mundar.$mEnglish.$1Selections.
The basic Cyrillic set has been designated the G1 set and the ISO 5426 Extended Latin set has been designated the G2 set. The G2 set is invoked to columns 10-15 using the LS2R, displacing the default G1 set. Following the use of the G2 set, the G1 set is reinvoked into columns 10-15.
EX 3
LS2R LS1R
210#$a**1/11 7/13**Москва$c"Правда**1/11 7/14"**$d1968
ISO 5426 is the default G1 set and the basic Cyrillic set has been designated the G2 set. The G2 set is invoked into columns 10-15 when needed. Since the subfield code comes from the G0 set and it is still the column 02-07 working set at the end of the $a subfield, no shift need take place before the "$c". The default G1 set is restored to columns 10-15, however, at the end of the use of the Cyrillic set in this field.
EX 4
305##$aВпервые иэдано в С.петерБурге на нем. яэ. в 1770-1784 в 4-х
LS2R LS1R
частях под эаглавием "Reise durch Ru**1/11 7/13**ß**1/11 7/14**land zur Untersuchung der drey Natur-Reiche". Ч.4 на рус. яэ. не переведена
Basic Latin and Basic Cyrillic are the designated G0 and G1sets, and Extended Latin the G2 set (100 $a/26-33 = 010203##). The Basic Latin and Cyrillic characters can be accessed without change to the settings. The German "ss" character (ß) is found in the Extended Latin set, which is invoked into columns 10-15 byLS2R (ESC 7/13), temporarily displacing Basic Cyrillic. This is then restored by LS1R(ESC 7/14).

D.5 Additional Graphic sets

In some instances more than the four graphic sets designated in field 100 may be required in a UNIMARC record. Additional sets may be substituted for the sets designated in field 100 through an escape of the form 'ESC I F'. 'I', which may be one or more characters in length, indicates the G*n* designation of the set according to the following values:

Single Byte per Character	Multiple Bytes per Character	G*n* Designation
2/8 or 2/12	2/4 2/8 or 2/4 2/12	G0
2/9 or 2/13	2/4 2/9 or 2/4 2/13	G1
2/10 or 2/14	2/4 2/10 or 2/4 2/14	G2
2/11 or 2/15	2/4 2/11 or 2/4 2/15	G3

F', the Final character, indicates the graphic set being designated. It is a bit combination from columns 4 to 7 that is assigned by ISO when the set is registered. The Final characters for the sets approved for use with UNIMARC are listed below. Final characters for other approved sets have not yet been assigned.

F	Graphic Set
4/0	ISO 646 (IRV), Basic Latin set
5/0	ISO 5426-1980, Extended Latin set
4/14	ISO Registration #37, Basic Cyrillic
5/1	ISO 5427-1984, Extended Cyrillic set

5/3	ISO 5428-1980, Greek set
4/13	ISO 6438-1983, African coded character set

If a fifth, etc., graphic set is needed in a UNIMARC field, it must first be designated through the escape sequence, then it may be invoked with shift functions as specified in Section D.4. When an additional set has been designated and invoked in a field, before the end of the field the original set specified in field 100 should be redesignated for the G*n* via an escape sequence. When a field is exited, the G0, G1, G2, G3 designated sets must be those specified in field 100.

Example (for clarity, bit combinations are alternately bold and italic)

Designation of Greek set as G1 LS1R
454 #0$1700#0$aXenophon.150010a1/11 **2/9 5/3** 1/11 7/14'Άπομνημονευματα1/11 **2/9 5/0** 1/11 7/14
Redesignation of Extended Latin set as G1 set LS1R

The record is for a Bulgarian translation of a Greek work and the language of cataloguing is English. The agency has designated in field 100 the following sets:

G0	ISO 646, Basic Latin
G1	ISO 5426, Extended Latin
G2	ISO Registration #37, Basic Cyrillic
G3	ISO DIS 5427, Extended Cyrillic

When the Greek set is needed in the 454 field to give the original title in Greek, it is designated as the G1 set via the sequence ESC 2/9 5/3 and then invoked into columns 10-15 via the sequence ESC 7/14. Before exiting the field, the Extended Latin set is restored to the G1 designation via ESC 2/9 5/0 and it is reinvoked into columns 10-15 via ESC 7/14.

D.6 ISO 10646 character set

ISO 10646, being a 16-bit character set, contains all necessary characters. This will be used for the C0, C1 and all G sets.

D.7 Character set tables

Sections D.8 through D.10 contain the code tables for some of the character sets specified for use in UNIMARC records. These character sets are reproduced with the permission of the International Organization for Standardization (ISO). Copies of the complete standards can be obtained from the ISO Central Secretariat, Case postale 56, 1211 GENEVA 20, Switzerland, and from any ISO Member Body.

D.8 Basic Control Set – ISO 646 (IRV)

This control set is the C0 set for UNIMARC records.

The following positions are the only ones to be used in UNIMARC

Position	Acronym	Name
0/14	SO	Shift Out
0/15	SI	Shift In
1/11	ESC	Escape
1/13	IS3	Information Separator Three
1/14	IS2	Information Separator Two
1/15	IS1	Information Separator One

In this Manual, the symbols for the Information Separators are :

IS1	$	(Subfield deliminator)

IS2	@	(Field separator) In most examples the end of field mark is not shown
IS3	%	(Record terminator)

D.9 Bibliographic Control Set – ISO 6630: 1986

This control set contains control functions required for filing, sorting, permuting, etc. It is the C1 set for UNIMARC records.

The following positions are the only ones to be used in UNIMARC:

Position	Acronym	Name
08/08	NSB	Non-Sorting Character(s), Beginning
08/09	NSE	Non-Sorting Character(s), End
08/11	PLD	Partial Line Down
08/12	PLU	Partial Line Up

In this Manual, the symbols for the non-sorting characters are:

NSB ≠NSB≠

NSE ≠NSE≠

PLU is used both to produce superscript text and to restore to the previous position subscript text created by the use of PLD. The reverse is also true, as is shown in the following example:

2^3+3^2 is expressed as 2≠PLU≠3≠PLD≠+3≠PLU≠2≠PLD≠

D.10 Basic Latin Set – ISO 646 (IRV)

This graphic set is specified in ISO 646. It is the default G0 set for UNIMARC records.

Position	Name	Position	Name
2/0	Space, Blank	5/0	Capital Letter P
2/1	Exclamation Mark	5/1	Capital Letter Q
2/2	Quotation Mark	5/2	Capital Letter R
2/3	Number Sign	5/3	Capital Letter S
2/4	Dollar Sign	5/4	Capital Letter T
2/5	Per Cent Sign	5/5	Capital Letter U
2/6	Ampersand	5/6	Capital Letter V
2/7	Apostrophe	5/7	Capital Letter W
2/8	Left Parenthesis	5/8	Capital Letter X
2/9	Right Parenthesis	5/9	Capital Letter Y
2/10	Asterisk	5/10	Capital Letter Z
2/11	Plus Sign	5/11	Left Square Bracket
2/12	Comma	5/12	Reverse Solidus
2/13	Hyphen, Minus Sign	5/13	Right Square Bracket
2/14	Full Stop, Period	5/14	Circumflex Accent
2/15	Solidus	5/15	Underline
3/0	Digit Zero	6/0	Grave Accent
3/1	Digit One	6/1	Small Letter a
3/2	Digit Two	6/2	Small Letter b
3/3	Digit Three	6/3	Small Letter c
3/4	Digit Four	6/4	Small Letter d
3/5	Digit Five	6/5	Small Letter e
3/6	Digit Six	6/6	Small Letter f
3/7	Digit Seven	6/7	Small Letter g
3/8	Digit Eight	6/8	Small Letter h

3/9	Digit Nine	6/9	Small Letter i
3/10	Colon	6/10	Small Letter j
3/11	Semi-colon	6/11	Small Letter k
3/12	Less than Sign	6/12	Small Letter l
3/13	Equals Sign	6/13	Small Letter m
3/14	Greater than Sign	6/14	Small Letter n
3/15	Question Mark	6/15	Small Letter o
4/0	Commercial At	7/0	Small Letter p
4/1	Capital Letter A	7/1	Small Letter q
4/2	Capital Letter B	7/2	Small Letter r
4/3	Capital Letter C	7/3	Small Letter s
4/4	Capital Letter D	7/4	Small Letter t
4/5	Capital Letter E	7/5	Small Letter u
4/6	Capital Letter F	7/6	Small Letter v
4/7	Capital Letter G	7/7	Small Letter w
4/8	Capital Letter H	7/8	Small Letter x
4/9	Capital Letter I	7/9	Small Letter y
4/10	Capital Letter J	7/10	Small Letter z
4/11	Capital Letter K	7/11	Left Curly Bracket
4/12	Capital Letter L	7/12	Vertical Line
4/13	Capital Letter M	7/13	Right Curly Bracket
4/14	Capital Letter N	7/14	Tilde
4/15	Capital Letter O		

N.B. If this set is used in combination with ISO 5426 positions 5/15, 6/0 and 7/14 in ISO 646 should not be used. Positions 5/8, 4/1 and 4/5 in ISO 5426 should be used instead.

History

2020	Previous appendix J.

APPENDIX D: DOCUMENTATION TO ACCOMPANY EXCHANGE RECORDS

Purpose

As well as containing the basic exchange information about the physical medium (tape, diskette, etc.), the documentation should enable the receiving agency to tell, without a detailed examination of the records, which UNIMARC options have been chosen. The following is an indication of the areas which could be helpfully included.

Basic information

Numbers of records.

Record label specifications.

For tape exchange, options under ISO 1001 that have been followed for tape structure.

Nature of documents catalogued

A description of their nature would state the type of materials, e.g. monographs only, all materials except computer files.

Fill character

Indicate where the fill character has been consistently used instead of a value.

Mandatory fields

Indicate if any mandatory fields are omitted or contain less than full information (see also Section 3, 3.5).

Record label

Character position 5: Record Status Code. Indicate the range of values.

Character position 8: Hierarchical Level Code. Indicate whether the tape links records hierarchically. (See also 4-- below)

Character positions 17 & 18: Encoding Level and Descriptive Cataloguing Form codes. Indicate the range of values.

0-- Identification Block

Give information on any of the possible fields not used at all.

014 Article Identifier

Name the code used.

100 General Processing Data

Character positions 22-24: Language of Cataloguing. Indicate languages used.

Character positions 25, 26-33: Transliteration Code and Character Sets codes. Indicate transliterations and character sets used.

102 Country of Publication or Production

If $b Locality of Publication has been used, give information on the code list.

2-- Descriptive Information Block

In cases where the full range of subfields cannot be used (for example, when a record is converted from another format), give details.

3-- Notes Block

Indicate the extent to which field 300 General Notes has been used instead of any of the more specific fields in this block.

4-- Linking Entry Block

Indicate whether this block has been used at all. If so, indicate which of the two methods has been used and give the sort of detail which has been included. The guidelines for contents of the block should be examined as an indication of the possible options.

5-- Related Title Block

No details needed.

6-- Subject Analysis Block

Indicate which of the lists of subject systems codes have been used for subject data (see Appendix A).

7-- Responsibility Block

Indicate the policy over the inclusion or exclusion of punctuation at subfield boundaries. If punctuation is not included, give examples of typical fields.

If $3 Authority Record Identifier or Standard Number has been used, give information on the name authority list.

Some information on cataloguing practice could be helpfully included, such as an indication of whether the cataloguing code recognises the practice of main entry. But a full description of the characteristics of the code, e.g. a categorisation of which types of corporate bodies are entered under place or jurisdiction, is not necessary.

801$g Cataloguing Code

Indicate which cataloguing code(s) have been used. For the cataloguing rules codes see Appendix A.

9-- Local fields

Indicate whether local fields (9--, -9- or --9) have been used and give details.

Local practice

Give details of cases where the *UNIMARC Manual* standard has not been followed.

History

2020	Previous appendix K.
2024	Text edit.